November 1983 Volume 2 $2.50

softalk

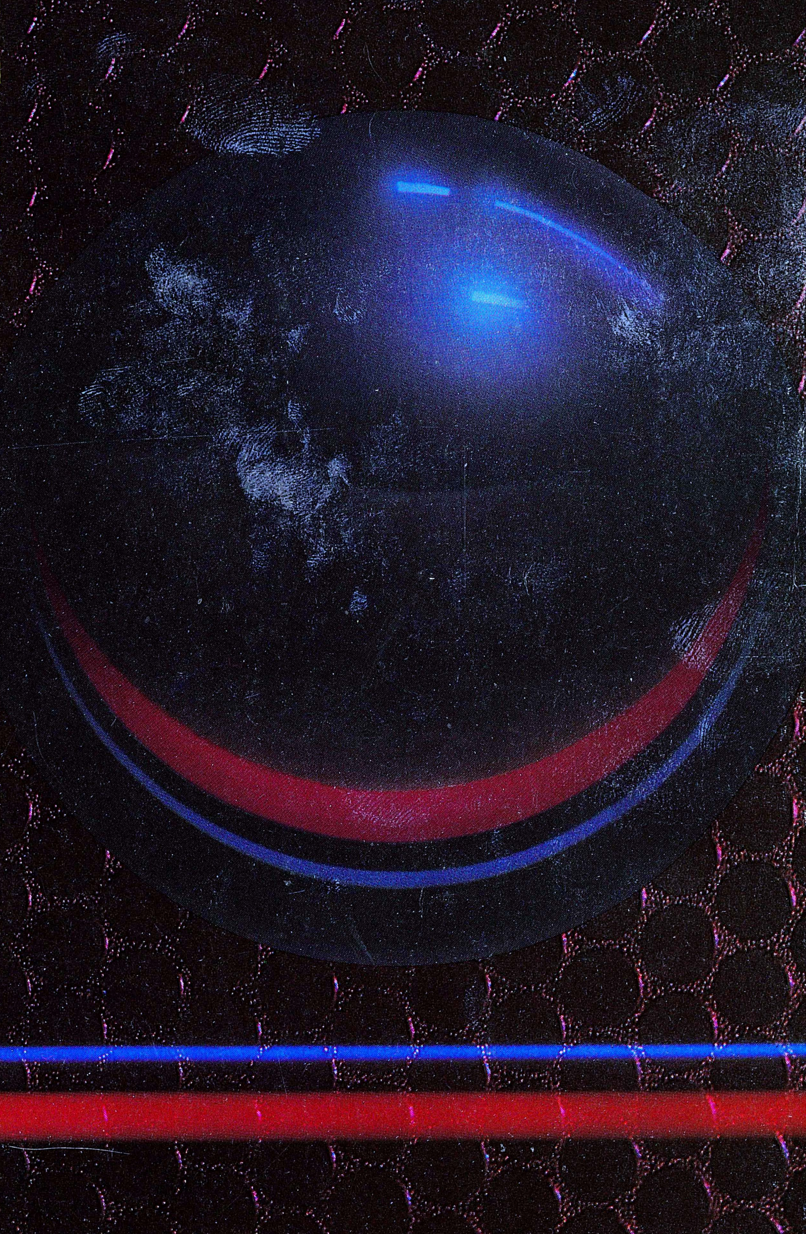
for the IBM Personal Computer

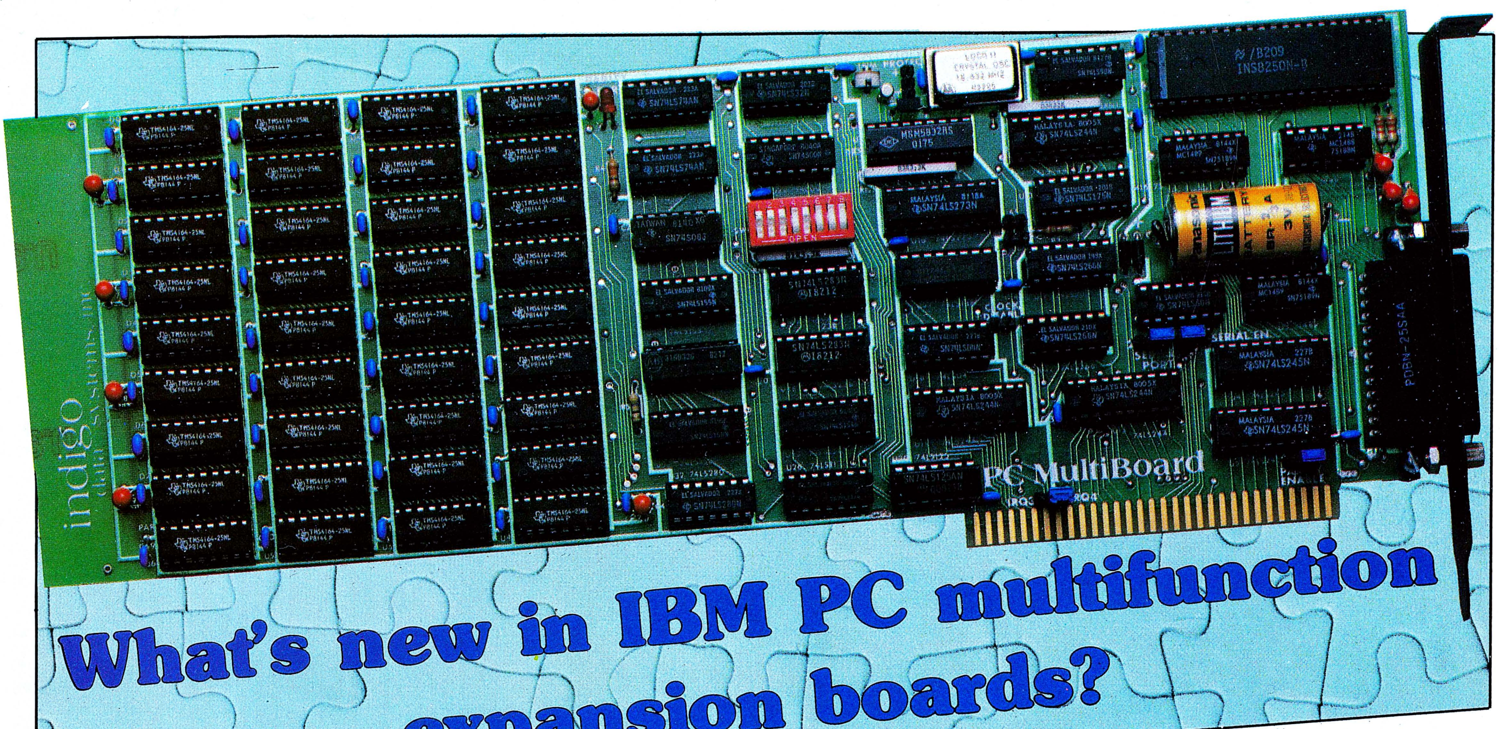
COMPUTING THE LIGHT FANTASTIC

EXTEND YOUR KEYBOARD BUFFER

HOW BASIC PARSES PROGRAMS

EXEC QUADRAM





What's new in IBM PC multifunction expansion boards?

Indigo has put together the most versatile expansion product available for the new IBM PC and IBM PC / XT

the PC MultiPak™

IBM
PC MultiBoard

- **4 most requested hardware functions**
  The PC MultiPak™ includes a serial communications port, a real time clock calendar with a 10 year lithium battery, 0 to 256K memory and optional parallel printer port. The PC MultiPak™ without the parallel printer port is ideal for users with the IBM monochrome/parallel printer adapter installed.
- **Zero memory option**
  The PC MultiPak™ is available with no memory installed so you can fill your I / O needs today and still have memory expansion capability to an additional 256K for your future needs. This makes the PC MultiPak™ the perfect mate for the new IBM PC and IBM PC / XT.
- **4 software packages**
  The PC MultiPak™ includes our four most popular software packages. **Drive-It™** converts 32K to 320K of extra memory into an ultra-fast drive. **Spool-It™** utilizes up to 64K of extra memory as a printer buffer and eliminates valuable time spent waiting on the printer. **Print-It™** prints any IBM text or graphics screen to Epson printers. **Color-It™** prints screens to IDS printers. Color images can be printed on IDS prism printers. These software programs have received critical acclaim in Infoworld, Softalk, PC Age and Creative Computing magazines. Thousands have been sold separately. This $200 retail value is included in the PC MultiPak™ at no additional charge. DOS 2.0 Compatible.
- **5 year warranty**

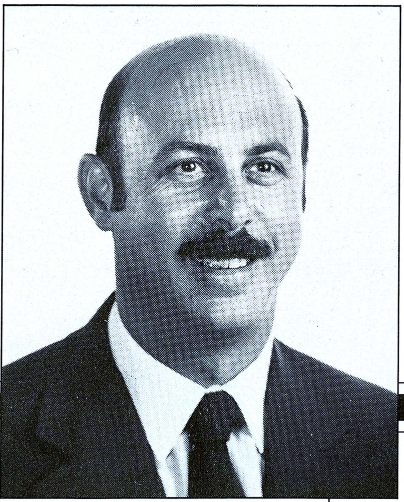
$297
- ALL SOFTWARE INCLUDED
- NO INSTALLED MEMORY

64K-$365, 128K-$432, 192K-$499, 256K-$565
PARALLEL PORT OPTION ADD $30
64K MEMORY EXPANSION KIT $87
SOFTWARE AVAILABLE SEPARATELY
DRIVE-IT $59.95, **SPOOL-IT** $44.95
PRINT-IT $44.95, **COLOR-IT** $49.95

VISA

Indigo products may be found at **ComputerLand** and other fine stores.
Dealer And Customer Inquiries call TOLL FREE 1-800-231-9480
in Texas Call Collect (713) 488-8186

indigo
data systems, inc.
100 E. NASA Rd. 1, Suite 106, Webster, Texas 77598



"VersaForm™ saved us hiring two people."

By Ken Silverman,
President, International Datawares, Inc.

My company, International Datawares, is a manufacturer and wholesale distributor of media storage devices for the computer industry. It has a line of over 62 different items dealing with media storage, mailing, shipping and so on.

With more than 3,000 orders a year, the staff was often processing, shipping and invoicing 20 or more orders a day. Getting better operational control of the business, without adding more staff, became my biggest headache.

"It took a little searching, but I finally found VersaForm, the business database."
What the business really needed was a powerful database manager that was easy to use. Impossible? Not at all. VersaForm gives our company the power and processing speed of a computerized database, combined with the simplicity and convenience of using our familiar business forms.

"Now we process everything that comes in or out of the business with VersaForm."
VersaForm processes and records (and even prints, when necessary) everything that comes in or goes out of the business. Orders. Invoices. Packing Slips. Labels for shipment. The shipment itself. And then, it provides the best thing of all: monthly reports for our accountant!

VersaForm is like an electronic file cabinet that stores all this information, and puts it at my fingertips when I need it! And it's designed with a non-technical user in mind, so we had none of the usual technical database headaches.

"Our accounting fees were cut in half... and the accountant loves it."
Since all the business transactions are recorded with VersaForm, it takes just a little over an hour a month to pull together every managing report that our CPA needs. Including the Sales Journal, Deposits for the month by day, Receivables Journal, Tax Liability Statement, even the Bank Reconciliation Statement.

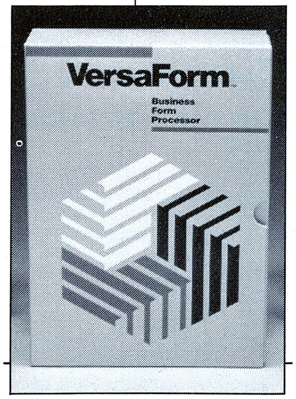
This makes the work for our accountant so easy, the fees were cut in half, and his time is put to much more profitable use. (He loves it).

"Our full-time bookkeeper is VersaForm."
VersaForm does it all now. It locates, controls, and interrelates just about any kind of information. It handles customer orders and inventory. It fills out invoices, statements and mailing labels. It prints reports for the accountant, and does the calculating for these functions automatically. It even writes out the checks. In fact, it handles all the bookkeeping so efficiently, we thought it was about time to start expanding.

"Welcome to the line, VersaForm."
There's no better endorsement we could give than to carry VersaForm as part of the company line. Speaking from experience, VersaForm is the most important database and bookkeeping system a small business can buy. It's truly in a class of its own.

We'll deliver VersaForm with a *complete 30-day money-back guarantee.* It's available now for just $339.00 for floppy disk system (Reg. $389). And to make it even easier for you to get started, for a limited time we'll send you a FREE pre-designed Application Template with your order (worth up to $49.95).

So why wait? You've got nothing to lose, and control of your business to gain. Fill in the form below right now.



Please send me ________ ***VersaForm Business Database Programs.*** I understand I may return these materials within 30 days of receipt for a full refund if not completely satisfied.

☐ Check or money order enclosed.
☐ Charge to my: ☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard
Exp. Date ____________ Card No. ____________
☐ C.O.D. (Add $10)

NAME ____________
FIRM ____________
ADDRESS (NO BOX NO., PLEASE) ____________
CITY ____________ STATE ____________ ZIP ____________

Hardware Choices and Cost:		Template Choices:
☐ Apple II (floppy)	**$339**	☐ Invoicing
☐ Apple II (hard)	**$445**	☐ Purchase Order
☐ Apple III (floppy/hard)	**$445**	☐ Mailing List
☐ IBM PC	**$339**	☐ Cash Receipts Journal
☐ IBM XT	**$339**	☐ Expense Journal/Distribution

California residents add 6½% sales tax. (Please allow 3-4 weeks for delivery.)

For ordering or to get more information, mail to: International Datawares, Inc., 910 George Street, Santa Clara, CA 95050
Or phone: (800) 538-8157 x 934. Inside CA: (800) 672-3470 x 934

softalk

for the IBM Personal Computer

Features

Exec Quadram

A pair of Georgians, Leland Strange and Tim Farris, pioneered the development of multifunctional add-on boards for the pc.

Mark Kellner 30

Microsoft's Fortran 77 Version 3.1

The most satisfactory MS-DOS Fortran compiler to date gives pc users access to a quarter-century of programming history

Jack Wilschke 44

Moving Month

Did someone say it was simple to upgrade from a pc to an XT? Here's one man's dissenting report.

John Dickinson 61

The Basic/Assembly Line

A machine language subroutine to help the Basic programmer store and restore screen images.

Howard Glosser 76

How Basic Parses Programs

How does the Basic interpreter decipher your program code?

Howard Cole 92

Computing the Light Fantastic

How the pc assists Bill Colson in his research into free-electron lasers.

Michael Ferris 98

BSCBas: Structured Programming in Basic

Have your structure and Basic too.

Mark Gardner 109

Cover: The laser has graduated from the pages of science fiction into the realm of high-tech respectability and research. Story begins on page 98.

Cover design and photography by Kevin McKeon and Tim Durr; art by Dan Winkler; laser projections by Howard Shore, Bifrost Technical Effects.

The Keyboard Buffer Enhanced

Banish that plaintive warble forever with a 159-character type-ahead buffer.

John Socha 116

A Primer on Networking

The final episode in a series on local area networking.

Bruce Churchill 156

Columns

The Basic Solution, by Joe Juhasz 27

Boards and Buses, by Kevin Goldstein 187

Comm Lines, by Kevin Goldstein 22

Micro Finance, by Ken Landis and Douglas J. Weber 123

Pascal from Begin to End, by Bruce Webster and Deirdre Wendt 86

The Printed Word, by John Dickinson 172

The Processed Word, by Terry Tinsley Datz and F. Lloyd Datz 140

The Profit Plot, by Jack Grushcow 54

Questions and Answers, by Nancy Andrews 18

The Right To Assemble, by Ray Duncan 203

System Notebook, by Alan Boyd 70

Departments

Bestsellers 211

Classified Advertising 8

Contest 4

Crosstalk 9

Marketalk News 179

Marketalk Reviews 134

Newspeak 191

Tradetalk 41

Index of Advertisers

Abacus Associates 46
Access Micro 162
AI Design 164
Alpha Delta Communications 128
The Alternate Key 27
American Training International 17
Analytical Applications 95
Anderson-Bell 115
Ann Arbor Software 136
Applied MicroSystems 150-151
AST Research 11,106-107
Awareco Active Software 200
Beaman Porter 60
Best Programs 165
Blaise Computing 13
Boise Computer 174
The Book Company 149
Bourbaki Inc 59
BPI Systems 163
Robert J. Brady Co. 55,57
Broderbund Software 74
Cameo Electronics 190
CBS Software 161
Cdex Corporation Cover 4
Charter Software 35
Comprehensive Software Support 21
Computer Case Company 121
Computer Creations 51
Computer Innovations, Inc. 177
Contemporary ComputerWear 68
Continental Software 75
Cypher 194
Data Base Decisions 185
Davidson & Associates 127
Decision Support Software 16
Digital Engineering Group 130
Digital Research 71
Earth Data Corporation 145
Ensign Software 212
Europro, Inc. 80
Falcon Safety Products 10
Financier, Inc. 69
FMJ 209
FriendlySoft 15
Funtastic, Inc. 189
Gourmet Software 90
Hayes Microcomputer Products 152
Healthware 12
Hercules Computer Technology 78
Howard Software Services 210
Human Systems Dynamics 160
I.B. Magazette 153
IBM Personal Computer 82-83
Indigo Data Systems Cover 2
Individual Software 5
Infocom 97
Innovative Software 91,171,Cover 3
International Datawares 1
The Iron Interface Group 208
Knoware 26
Kraft Systems Co. 47
Laboratory Microsystems 122
Lifetree Software 195
Lighthouse Distributing 142
LinTek Computer Accessories 182
Maynard Electronics 72
MediSoft 114
Megahaus Corporation 33
Mentor 188
Micro Design International 184
Microlog 183
Microrim 38-39
Microsoft 105
Micro-tax 64
Multi-Tech Systems 181
Muse Software 176
My Supplier 193
Network Consulting, Inc. 66
Newburyport Computer Accessories 146
NF Systems Ltd. 87
Peter Norton 36
Oak Tree Computing 159
One Step Software 50
Orchid Technology 143
Orion Software 141
Palantir Software 126
Panamax 104
PC-Demo 137
Pegasus 167,202
Penguin Computer Consultants 58
Personal Computer Accessories 147
Plantronics/Frederick Electronics 129
Potential Software 148
Prelude Computer Corporation 56
Prentice-Hall, Inc. 52-53
Presta Digital 85
Professional Software 6-7
Programming International 135,199
Pryority Software 28
Pure Data Ltd. 207
Pyxel Applications 138
Qubie Distributing 84
Quest Research 18
Rana Systems 101,103
Reston Publishing 43,131
Rocky Mountain Software Systems 201
Rogue River Software 96
RR Software 108
Satellite Software International 19
Satori Software 144
Security Microsystems Consultants 158
SJB Distributors 170
Small Business Systems Group 166
Smith Micro Software 124
Softalk 81,134
SoftDesign 180
Softquest 79
SoftStyle, Inc. 40,102,196
Software Arts 168-169
The Software Guild 154-155
Software Laboratories 197
Software Link 186
Software 128 14
Soft Wares And Technologies 125
SoftWord Systems 173
Solutions By Example 20
SolveWare 178
Southwestern Data Systems 211
Specialty Designs 9
SSR Corporation 89
STB Systems 29
Stone & Associates 198
Strategic Software Systems 42
SubLogic Corporation 132
Sundex Software Corp. 37
Symmetric Software 119
Systems Management Associates 205
Tayco Business Forms 140
Teleware, Inc. 139
3M Company 175
Virtual Combinatics 24
Walonick Associates 34
XOR Corporation 23,25

softalk

for the IBM Personal Computer

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer

Editor	Craig Stinson
Managing Editor	Michael Tighe
Art Director	Kevin McKeon
Assistant Art Director	Tim Durr
Associate Editors	James Bradbury, Kevin Goldstein, Kathy Talley-Jones
News Editor	Michael Ferris
Newspeak Editor	David Hunter
Editor-at-Large	Jean Varven
Copy Editor	Cordell Cooper
Editorial Coordinator	Betsy Barnes
Editorial Assistant	Marlene Lunnon
Proofreaders	Harry McNeil, Judith Pfeffer
Contributing Editors	
Assembly Language	Ray Duncan
Basic	Joe Juhasz
Financial Modeling	Jack Grushcow
Hardware	Steve Schmitt
Investing	Ken Landis
Pascal	Bruce Webster, Deirdre Wendt
Printers	John Dickinson
Questions and Answers	Nancy Andrews
Special Assignments	John Socha
Systems Software	Alan Boyd
Word Processing	Terry Tinsley Datz and F. Lloyd Datz
Art Production	Don Robertson, Michael G. Pender
Art Assistants	Lucas McClure, Nancy Baldwin, Glenn Thorne, Dan Winkler, Weldon O. Lewin, Ruth Seid Malcolm Rodgers

Softalk Publishing Inc.

Chairman	John Haller
Publisher	Al Tommervik
Editor-in-Chief	Margot Comstock Tommervik
Senior Art Director	Kurt Wahlner
Associate Publisher	Mary Sue Rennells
Director of Operations	Three Tyler
Accounting	Evelyn Burke
Accounting Assistants	Mary Jo Milam, Carla Swanson, Lois Mencsik
Circulation	
Trial Subscriptions	Hal Schick, Deirdre Booth, Marsha Stewart, Pam Kelley, Cliff Martinez
Dealer Sales	Pattie Lesser, Dan Yoder
Back Issues	Michael Jones
Systems	Pat Adams
Marketing	Gail Ward
Advertising Coordinator	Linda McGuire Carter
Assistant	Cathy Stewart
Advertising Services	Julie Fletcher
West Coast Sales	Mike Antich Softalk 11160 McCormick Street Box 60 North Hollywood CA 91603 (213) 980-5074
East Coast Sales	Ian Ross Paul McGinnis Advertising Sales 690 Broadway Massapequa, NY 11758 (212) 490-1021
Midwest and Rocky Mountain Sales	Ted Rickard John Bollweg John Sienkiewicz Kevin Sullivan Market/Media Associates 435 Locust Road Wilmette, IL 60091 (312) 251-2541

Composition by Type Works, Pasadena, California. Printing by Volkmuth Printers, Saint Cloud, Minnesota.

IBM and Personal Computer are trademarks of International Business Machines, Armonk, New York. Compaq is a trademark of Compaq Computer Corporation, Houston, Texas.

Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer. Volume 2, Number 6. Copyright © 1983 by Softalk Publishing Inc. All rights reserved. ISSN: 0733-2173. *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* is published monthly by Softalk Publishing Inc., 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91603; telephone (213) 980-5074. Second-class postage paid at North Hollywood, California and additional mailing offices.

Postmaster: Send address changes to Softalk/IBM, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603.

Subscriptions: Complimentary trial subscription to all owners of IBM Personal Computers or Compaq computers in the USA. If you own a pc or a Compaq but you aren't receiving *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer,* send your serial number and mailing address to Softalk/IBM Circulation, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603. Non-pc-owner subscriptions: $24 per year. Please allow six to eight weeks for processing. *Softalk for the IBM Personal Computer* is totally independent of International Business Machines.

Back issues (from June 1982): $3.

Problems? If you haven't received your *Softalk* by the fifteenth of the month, or if you have other problems with your subscription, Hal Schick can help out. Call (213) 980-5074.

Moving? Send new address and a recent mailing label from your old address to Softalk/IBM Circulation, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603; telephone (213) 980-5074. Please allow six to eight weeks for processing.

CRYPTO

NTUMCI CLSPLT

VH UIY NSR TLSZ CGVP1 UIY BRIE UIY7TL PYOPCVCYCVRA TSRZIF XLCCLTP HIT CGL TLAYXST SXMGSOLC2 SXX UIY GSWL CI ZI CI EVR 3/!! EITCG IH PIHCESTL VP DYFM JYVNB SRZ QVM YP S NIMU IH CGL PYOPCVCYCL SXMGSOLC YPLZ HIT CGVP WLKSCVIYP NIRCLPC2 ZLSZXVRL4 ZLNLFOLT /=2 EVRRLT EVXX OL NGIPLR TSRZIFXU2 FSVX UIYT LRCTU CI4 NTUMCI BVCNGLR1 PIHCSXB VOF1 OIK =!1 RITCG GIXXUEIIZ1 NS >/=!*2 VRNXYZL UIYT RSFL1 SZZTLPP1 MGIRL1 RLSTLPC ZLSXLT1 SRZ EGSC UIY ESRC VH UIY EVR 5NGIPLR HTIF SZWLTCVPLTP VR CGVP VPPYL62

WINNERS

```
10 CLS:LOCATE 20,10: PRINT "The response to the one-line program contest was overwhelming. Winners will be announced next issue after we dig out. ":FOR I=1 TO 3000:NEXT I:CLS
```

Diskette
DOS
in A
Printer

```
* DOS likes to announce itself by typing A>. The cursor sits next to the >.
  This is called the "DOS PROMPT". When you see the DOS prompt you can count
  on this:

      DOS IS ALIVE AND IS PATIENTLY WAITING FOR YOU TO COMMAND IT.

@ GIVE DOS YOUR FIRST NAME
```

Incredible Trainers!

No matter what level IBM Personal Computer training you want, our interactive tutorial software gives you the answers. Easier, faster, smarter.

Take **The INSTRUCTOR,** for first-time users. PC Magazine called it, **"The best . . . introduction to the PC around."** It's #1 because it takes the work out of learning initial PC operations.

And **Now! Brand New!** Setting a new standard for interactive training, we give you . . .

PROFESSOR DOS.

You've got to see (and hear) it to believe it! Designed for PC users ready to learn higher level PC concepts, including DOS commands. Professor DOS will challenge you, amuse you, and amaze you.

Both programs use vivid graphic images, creative animation, sound and living color to take you from mystery to mastery of your IBM PC. Each is totally self-paced. And they're "people-literate." So you really do learn.

The most sought-after computer-assisted training anywhere. Available at IBM PC dealers and software retailers everywhere, separately or in a tutorial set. Affordable at a suggested list price of **ONLY . . .**

$44.95 — The INSTRUCTOR
$59.95 — Professor DOS
or
$94.95 — Tutorial Set

We've made **The INSTRUCTOR** and **Professor DOS** so realistic, you'll agree . . . **THEY'RE INCREDIBLE!**

individual
SOFTWARE INCORPORATED

24 Spinnaker Place
Redwood City, CA 94065
(415) 591-4166

Requires MS-DOS, any IBM Personal Computer or Compaq Personal Computer with at least one diskette drive and a monochrome or color display.

Phone and dealer inquiries welcome.

ANNOUNCING THE END OF WORD PROCESSOR CONFUSION

WORDPLUS-PC
Professional Software Inc.
Copyright 1982

It's one confusing business, choosing a word processor. All those companies assuring you theirs is the most fantastic one of all. And leaving you to cut through all the smoke and hopefully whittle them down to the best one for you.

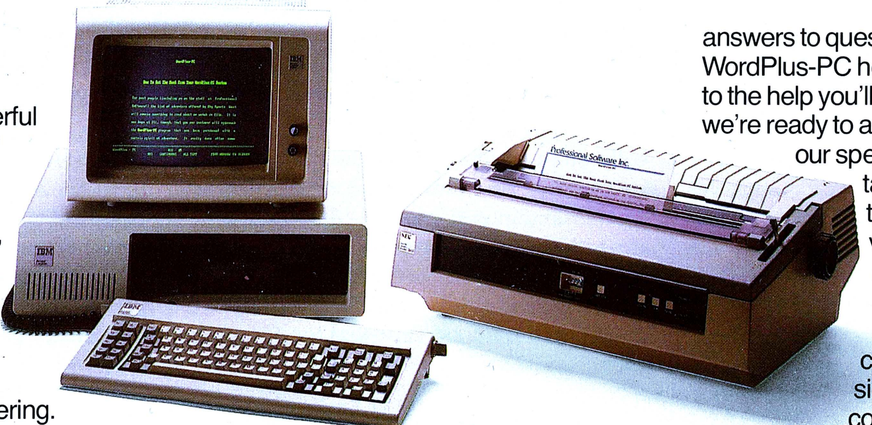
Well, we can help. If you'll just invest the next three minutes reading this, we'll tell you about a word processor that makes picking the right one a real breeze.

FIRST, A WARNING. There are two things you must do when evaluating any word processor. First, be careful. It's no secret that many of today's claims about being easy to learn and use just don't stand up to careful comparison. Watch carefully for complicated codes and programs that require "training sessions." Secondly, be selective. Buy a word processor you can use on a daily basis, not one that requires another "training session" when someone goes on vacation. In other words, be very careful to select the word processor that's absolutely the best and easiest to use. Which is what we'll now introduce you to.

WHY ONE WORD PROCESSOR MAKES THE MOST SENSE OF THEM ALL. Meet WordPlus-PC. It's the advanced, "user-oriented" software package that turns your IBM-PC computer into a word processor equipped with the sophisticated capabilities of far larger, more expensive systems.

THE REMARKABLE WORDPLUS-PC STORY. In a nutshell, it's this. WordPlus-PC was designed from the ground up to be the very latest in word processing technology. It has all the important features you could ask for. And the program is so easy to learn and use it defies comparison with other software.

HOW WE CAN BE SO SURE OF OURSELVES. We're Professional Software, a leader in word processing software with over 30,000 customers contentedly churning out letters and documents around the world on personal and business computer systems. We know precisely what a top quality word processor must do. And we've studied all the shortcomings of our competitors. That's how WordPlus-PC came to be the easiest-to-use word processor ever.



ALL THE FEATURES YOU'D EXPECT.

WordPlus-PC is both powerful and versatile. Its long list of major functions includes movement of paragraphs, global search-and-replace, and creation of multiple "boilerplate" and personal letters with the touch of a few buttons. There are 3-line headers and footers and automatic page numbering. When you underline or boldface words as you type, WordPlus-PC displays them in that form on the screen. You can merge information created by popular spread sheet programs. You'll create personal letters quickly and easily, or merge name and address information from other programs. You can easily create standard layouts for preprinted forms and use WordPlus-PC to prepare invoices or quotations. For large corporate customers, WordPlus-PC has the capability to merge information from files created by the firm's mini or mainframe computer. You can even type new documents while the system is printing other ones. And you'll find WordPlus fully compatible with virtually all popular ASCII letter-quality and dot matrix printers.

A BREEZE TO LEARN AND USE.

With WordPlus-PC's easy-to-use documentation, you'll be using your word processor right from the first minute. After an hour, you'll feel at home with all the basic functions and ready to explore the more sophisticated ones. After a few hours you'll put the manual away. There are never any complicated or confusing codes to memorize or look up. Rather, the screen's "message area" reminds you how to do what you want. WordPlus-PC's unique keyboard color coding makes things even easier. And whenever there's a question, simply press the HELP function to get back on track.

ALL THE HELP YOU NEED VIA TOLL-FREE PHONE. Learning something new goes best when you have encouragement, reassurance and answers to questions. That's how WordPlus-PC helps you learn. In addition to the help you'll get from your dealer, we're ready to assist you when you call our special toll-free number and talk to one of our carefully trained advisors. This service is available at no charge during the 90 days following receipt of your user registration card. It's all part of Professional Software's total commitment to customer service and support.

SEE WORDPLUS-PC FOR YOURSELF AT YOUR COMPUTER DEALER. Call us today. We'll answer all your questions. And we'll give you the name of the Professional Software dealership nearest you. Then go witness WordPlus-PC in action. Because once you're sitting in front of WordPlus-PC you'll quickly see where all our confidence and enthusiasm come from. After all, you already own the best personal computer. The best word processor is only $395. So call us today.

CALL US TOLL FREE:

1-800-343-4074

GUARANTEE

Professional Software Inc. guarantees its WordPlus-PC customers:

1. Free telephone assistance for 90 days after receipt of customer registration card.
2. Free updated program diskette if any software improvements are made within 90 days of purchase.

Professional Software Inc.

51 Fremont Street, Needham, MA 02194 Telephone (617) 444-5224

Dealer, distributor, OEM manufacturer, and corporate inquiries are invited. Call us at (617) 444-5224.
WordPlus-PC is a trademark of Professional Software Inc.
Specifications are subject to change without notice.
WordPlus-PC was designed and written by Andres Escallon.

SOFTALK CLASSIFIED ADVERTISING

Adventure

ADVENTURE SOLUTION!

Win every treasure and become a Grandmaster by following our step-by-step solution to Microsoft's ADVENTURE for the IBM PC. Ten dollars complete. Milgram Solutions. 2621 Palisade Ave. Riverdale, New York 10463.

Business

1-2-3/VC FORMULAE PRINTER

DocuCalc is used by financial analysts to review complex models during development. Grid arrangement shows equations in correct position without truncating. All global details, ranges, graphs etc. reported. $95 from: MICRO DECISION SYSTEMS, Box 1392, Pittsburgh, PA 15219; (412) 276-2387.

Graphics

"COMPUTER ART" POSTERS

Use your IBM PC to print striking "computer art" posters up to 2'x 3' in size. Choose from over 20 subjects including the Mona Lisa, Venus DeMilo, Einstein, pets, and more. Requires DOS and any IBM/EPSON Compatible Printer. For a complete package, which includes 3 diskettes, send $28 to: BUDGE & CO., 7926 Willowcrest Road, Salt Lake City, UT 84121.

Hardware

WINTER SPECIALS

IBM STUFF * HARDWARE * SOFTWARE
Send $2.00 and receive a diskette containing:
our "WINTER SPECIALS CATALOG"
and selected "Public Domain Programs".
OTI
10431 Los Alamitos Blvd
Los Alamitos, CA 90720
(213) 594-4534

VERBATIM DISKS

5¼" SSDD $218/100, MX-80 cartridge $5, Flip 'N' Sort (75 capacity) $18.95, Gemini 10X Printer $310. Dealer inquiries invited. Free brochure. UNIK Associates, 12545 W. Burleigh, Brookfield, WI 53005; (414) 782-5030.

3M SCOTCH DISKETTES $20.95

Authorized 3M distributor. Buy wholesale. 5.25" SS/DD $20.95 DS/DD $29.95 Reinforced hub. Why buy generic? Complete price list available. Call (415) 778-2595 or write Argonaut Distributing, 1104 Buchanan Rd. STI, Antioch, CA 94509. Prompt delivery!

Home

HI-RES CARD GAMES FOR IBM

Three Hi-Res color games for IBM PC: *Draw Poker, Blackjack, Keno.* Gambling Games I, Only $35 plus $2 shipping. Anthro-Digital, Inc., Box 1385, Pittsfield, MA 01202. (413) 448-8278.

STAMP COLLECTOR

A COMPUTERIZED RECORD of your stamp collection and its value for the IBM pc. Keep by category or country with quantity, type, and/or condition if wanted. Make additions, corrections, show or print records, add value for succeeding years and get total values by category. Send check for $30 plus $2 shipping (PA residents add 6% sales tax) to: Able Software, Box 422, Kulpsville, PA 19443.

THE ULTIMATE HANGMAN

Hangman for the Superintelligent entertains you while challenging your knowledge of esoteric vocabulary and famous sayings (from Sophocles to Mae West). The computer provides brief clues, but it's still your job to avoid the hangman! Over 1,000 words and phrases, $15. PC DOS, 64K 80-column display, 1 dd. NORLAND SOFTWARE, 1014A W. Badger Rd., Madison, WI 53713.

Publications

FREE FREE FREE

BASIC AIDS 2.0 FACT SHEETS and our guide "MAKE YOUR PC PROFITABLE" are sent free to persons who request them. This new release of BASIC AIDS is the most powerful program Development/Documentation tool available! Tulsa Computer Consortium, BOX 707, Owasso, OK 74055 or call 918-747-0151.

Services

SOFTWARE JUNKIE?

RENT today's most popular recreational and educational computer software for your IBM personal computer. LOW prices. FREE brochure. The Soft Source-R Inc. Dept. K Box 2931 Joliet, IL 60434.

FLOOBY DUST is HERE!

The computer industries first and only frustration drug is available now. Only $2.95 per bottle. For more information write: Wallace Micro-Mart, Inc., Flooby Dust Div., 2619 N. University, Peoria, IL 61604.

Utility

FULL SCREEN EDITOR

For the UCSD p-System(tm) on the IBM PC! Features function keys, help menus, full scrolling, and *extremely fast* response. Requires 96K. $90. Manual alone: $10. JRV Computing, 8570 N. Mulberry Dr., Dept. 3431, Tucson, AR 85704.

PCALCULATOR

—Turn Your PC Into a Calculator With Memory—A stand-alone program or merge it into BASIC programs. May be invoked from function keys and has machine code screen save feature. Use with any 80 column display. Send $29.95 to: Lorral Associates, Box 562, Apalachin, NY 13732.

BASIC DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM

BDS is a set of BASIC language programming tools *co-resident* with the interpreter so that all functions are immediately available within the BASIC environment. Includes Scrolling Keys, Single Step Trace, Cross-Reference, Variable Dump, Super RENUM, and utilities for program Compression and Uncompression. $79 plus $3 S&H. Visa/MC accepted. SofTool Systems, 8972 E. Hampden Ave., #179, Denver, CO 80231; (303) 793-0145.

THE PROWRITER UTILITIES

"Epson-Simulator" makes your printer fully IBM software compatible without sacrificing performance. Enjoy full use of programs like 1-2-3. Included is "ProSc" to print the full IBM character set plus hi-res graphics. Menu driven setup of all functions with "Proset." Also compatible with the NEC 8023A printer 3 in 1. A joy to use at $34.95. CA res + 6%.

COURTRIN ENTERPRISES (619) 569-8308
P.O. BOX 231190 San Diego, CA 92123.

1-2-3 & VisiCalc LOADER

LoadCalc converts text data downloaded from mainframes into WKS (1-2-3) or DIF files. Handles mixed text and values without special formatting or programming. Now you can move your mainframe database into 1-2-3 or VisiCalc. $95 from: MICRO DECISION SYSTEMS, Box 1392, Pittsburgh, PA 15219; (412) 276-2387.

Wanted

Make GREAT Money!!!

for your dBASE II knowledge! Trainers needed across the country for aggressive computer training company. Micro Educators Inc. Call Mr. Mathe at (805) 522-2303.

Softalk/IBM's classified advertising section offers a considerably less expensive way than display advertising to reach tens of thousands of IBM Personal Computer owners.

Classified advertising space is available at the rate of $10 per line for the first ten lines, with a five-line minimum. Each line over ten lines is $25 per line. Ad copy should be received no later than the 10th of the second month prior to the cover date of the issue in which you want the ad to appear. Payment must accompany ad copy.

The publisher reserves the right to reject any advertising that he feels is not in keeping with the publication's standards.

Heads will be set in 10-point boldface, all capitals only. Italics are available for body text only; please underline the portions you would like italicized.

The body text of the ad will hold roughly 45 characters per line. Spaces between words are counted as one character. Heads will hold roughly 24 characters per line, with spaces between words counted as one character. Please indicate whether you would like the head centered or run into the text.

Please write or call for additional information. Softalk/IBM Classified Advertising, 11160 McCormick, Box 60, North Hollywood, California 91603. Attention: Linda McGuire Carter (213) 980-5074.

crosstalk

Fun with Life

When I saw my article, "The Game of Life," in the September issue of *Softalk*, I noticed a couple of minor mistakes. First the screen area is 50 by 25 cells wide, not the 50 by 235 or 50 by 50 mentioned.

The other mistakes deal with turning comment statements (* and *) into just (and). This seemingly unimportant change will probably render the program uncompilable. There are six statements at the beginning of the program that should be comments. The six statements start with (*$TITLE: and go through $STACKCK-*). For each of those statements, the simple parentheses must be turned into the comment parentheses (* and *) or { and }. There is one more comment that needs to be changed. It occurs in the PROCEDURE SET_UP. In the CASE statement there is an OTHERWISE clause with the comment after it. The comment should be (*VALID KEY NOT USED*). Note that the parentheses have been changed to comments.

With the corrections mentioned here, everyone should be able to have fun with Life.

Robert Fruit, Hinsdale, IL

In Defense of Defense

I'd like to express my appreciation for the fine mix of articles in your magazine. I've found many interesting programming tricks in your articles and in the letters from users. I also appreciate the articles showing the immense range of uses the IBM pc is being put to. The spectrum of uses never ceases to amaze me—from geology to defense to medical to heaven knows what.

Since I find these uses so interesting, I was surprised to see a letter in the September issue complaining about the article "Automating America's Air Defense: A Network of XTs Stands Ready" (June 1983). It should have come as no surprise, as I've often noted that the disciples of Neville Chamberlain (or perhaps Andropov) will try to get their political maunderings into any and all media in order to show their resentment of America's willingness to have armed services for defense. His hope that we would dismantle such systems as the Alaskan Defense System seems ironic in view of the recent Korean Airlines incident.

Please continue to exercise your editorial judgment as in the past and keep giving us the same fine variety of information.

George L. Hopkins, Greensboro, NC

MicroPro Redeemed

MicroPro has pretty regularly been criticized in these (and other) pages for not providing much in the way of end-user support for *WordStar* and its other programs. A few months ago, prompted by a letter I saw in "Crosstalk," I wrote MicroPro for an extended user-patch listing, fully expecting to be disappointed.

I wasn't! In two weeks I received an extensive listing that enabled me to customize several different versions of *WordStar* for program source code and data files, long and short documents, and Epson and letter-quality printers. MicroPro has apparently decided, as have many other publishers, that one of the best protections against piracy is not copy protection but active end-user support. They should be congratulated.

Robert L. Wears, Orange Park, FL

Useless Utilities

First, I would like to take the opportunity to express my gratitude to Softalk Publishing for producing a good, solid, meat and potatoes magazine devoted to the pc; it may not have the pizzazz of the "big two" but, in my judgment, it is far ahead of both of them in substance.

If the auto industry is any harbinger of things to come in the field of computers, there will soon be a very significant shift taking place in the demography of personal computer users. Indeed, one could persuasively argue that the shift has already begun to take place.

In the early years of the auto, the preponderant majority of users were the tinkerers, the quasi-mechanics, and the skillful amateur automotive engineers who could lift the hood of a vehicle, grab a handful of tools, and make a recalcitrant engine shape up. Today, the overwhelming majority of auto users cannot tell the difference between a distributor and a regulator.

From my vantage point, this is not the case in the field of the personal or home computer either. Yet there appear to be some folks in the field who have not yet recognized this change, one that will be as critical to the computer industry as it was to the automobile business. DR (Dan Robinson, I would guess), who reviewed the *Norton Utilities* in your September issue, is a good case in point.

In his review DR states that the *Norton Utilities* are "as simple to use as they are effective [and that they are] as simple, reliable, and easy to use as a screwdriver." This may be true if one is a tinkerer or a skillful amateur computer scientist. But I submit that if one is part of the burgeoning tide of users who know only how to "fire up the engine and go," the simplicity of the *Norton Utilities* is questionable.

Having a damaged disk to contend with, I purchased the *Norton Utilities* on the advice of a friend. Invoking the SSAR program, as the documentation advises, I received the following screen message for my pains:

```
? Error: File name error in file b:
  Error Code 1005
PC = 32D: 667, FP = E788, SP =
E782
```

followed by the DOS prompt.

Now I challenge DR on the basis of the *Norton Utilities* documentation alone to tell me just exactly what the message means. I have challenged others to do so (including Mr. Norton himself, who declined to answer the question) without success, although most of them had lauded the *Norton Utilities* beforehand. I'm inclined to think that it's another case of the "emperor's new clothes" and that Mr. Norton's apparently well-deserved reputation as an outstanding intellect in the field of computer science had as much to do with DR's review as did the latter's own hands-on analysis of the *Utilities*—perhaps even more.

Now I'm willing to concede that in matters computer-scientific I'm apparently just a plain knucklehead. But I believe that I have plenty of company in the realm of computer-knuckleheadedness and that we computer illiterates are a rapidly growing percentage of end users.

Consequently, I suggest that in future software reviews, reviewers qualify their reports

PC - CALCULATOR

PRINTING CALCULATOR EMULATOR PROGRAM for the IBM - PC (and PC-XT Compatibles)

Why You need PC - Calculator

BOTH SCREEN AND PRINTOUT ARE MUCH MORE READABLE THAN THOSE TAPES AND DISPLAYS LIMITED TO 8 TO 14 (NUMERIC ONLY) CHARACTERS.

ANYWHERE THERE'S A PC YOU HAVE A TOP QUALITY CALCULATOR AVAILABLE.

AUTO-DECIMAL, FIXED, AND FLOATING DECIMAL POSITION FOR ACCOUNTING PLUS SCIENTIFIC NOTATION STYLE FOR SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING.

EASY TO LEARN TO USE SINCE MOST FUNCTIONS IMITATE A COMMON OFFICE CALCULATOR.

EASILY MAKE REMARKS ON YOUR CALCULATION PRINTOUT SO YOU KNOW WHAT YOU HAVE DONE TWO HOURS, TWO DAYS, OR TWO YEARS AFTER YOU HAVE FILED IT AWAY WITH ARCHIVAL ACCOUNTING OR SCIENTIFIC MATERIALS.

NOT COPY PROTECTED! ! !

Requires:
IBM Personal Computer (or compatible)
IBM PC - DOS (any version) or MS - DOS
One diskette drive
An 80 column monitor (color or mono)
Optional printer for hard copy

Only $39⁹⁵ VISA MasterCard

Specialty Designs Computer Products
7739 El Pensador; Dallas, TX 75248
Phone (214) 960-2455

PROMPT SHIPPING!

IBM - PC and PC - DOS are trademarks of International Business Machines Corp.
MS - DOS is a trademark of Microsoft, Inc.

as to whether it is for the pro or for the amateur. I hope that since more and more readers are the fire-up-and-go type, reviewers will develop the necessary skill to address their reports to the full spectrum of readership.

Irving David Shapiro, Oakland, CA

Graphics Plots

I would like to write compiled programs in BasicA that will include a test to determine if the monochrome and/or color cards and monitors are available. If only the mono card is present, the programs would not attempt to perform graphics plots. If only the color board is present, the programs would automatically allow the user to plot graphics. If both cards are available, the programs would ask which card to use or allow text to be directed to the monochrome monitor and graphics to the color/graphics monitor. With the array of talent that you have writing (and reading) *Softalk*, you should easily find a solution to this problem. I expect that many readers will be interested in your solution.

M. Daniel Vanderbilt, Fort Collins, CO

See "The Basic Solution," in the June 1983 issue. If you don't have that issue, you may obtain it by sending $3 to Softalk/IBM Back Issues, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603.

p-System

As I read John Socha's article, "Comdex: The Spring Harvest," in the June 1983 *Softalk*, I became more and more uncomfortable with his coverage of the p-System. While I appreciate his inclusion of SofTech Microsystems's p-System, his review contained several inaccuracies that need to be corrected.

Socha wrote that we had rewritten the p-System, suggesting that we had done this very recently. Furthermore, he said that we had done this rewriting to achieve portability. Full-scale object code portability has always been the hallmark of the p-System. While we initially marketed Version II of the p-System, Version IV was introduced two years ago as an enhancement of Version II, not a rewrite. We at SofTech Microsystems continually strive to improve and enhance our software products, and we have achieved this without rewriting them.

Next, Socha misunderstood my comments on the application development environment the p-System provides. In the p-System we strive to provide the best application development environment available on personal computers. However, it has always been our philosophy that the best application development environment is one that allows the best applications to be written. We have not "forgotten that programs are ultimately used by users." On the contrary, many of the capabilities offered by the p-System to the application programmer allow bigger, better, and more

PREVENT THE DISASTER OF HEAD CRASH AND DROPOUT.

FALCON
Dust-Off II
Dust-Off
The Advanced Cleaning System
Moisture-Free Formula

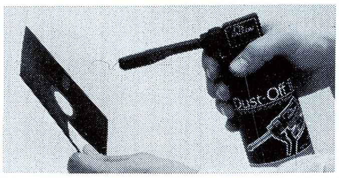
The war against dust and dirt never ends. So before you boot-up your equipment, and everytime you replace a cassette, disk or drive filter, be sure to use Dust-Off® II; it counteracts dust, grit and lint. Otherwise you're flirting with costly dropouts, head crashes and downtime.

Dust-Off II is most effective when used with Stat-Off II. Stat-Off II neutralizes dust-holding static electricity while Dust-Off II blasts loose dust away. There's also the Dual Extender and Mini-Vac for vacuuming dust out of hard-to-reach places.

Photographic professionals have used Dust-Off brand products consistently on their delicate lenses and expensive cameras for over ten years. They know it's the safe, dry, efficient way to contaminant-free cleaning.

Cleaning not provided by liquid cleaners.

Dust-Off II's remarkable pinpoint accuracy zeros in on the precise area being dusted. And you have total control—everything from a gentle breeze for delicate computer mechanisms to a heavy blast for grimy dirt.



Stat-Off II neutralizes dust-holding static electricity from media and machines.

Don't let contamination disrupt your computer operation. Stock up on Dust-Off II—the advanced dry cleaning system, at your local computer or office supply dealer.

Or send $1.00 (for postage and handling) for a 3 oz. trial size and literature today.

Dust-Off System II
The Advanced Cleaning System With Accessories
Dust-Off System II

Dust-Off® II

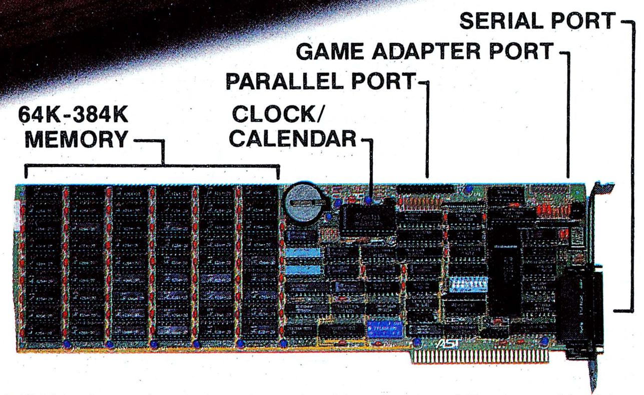
The safe dry cleaning system

Falcon Safety Products, Inc., 1065 Bristol Road, Mountainside, NJ 07092

Pick up a SixPakPlus™ for your IBM® PC.

Introducing... SixPakPlus,™ the refreshing new 384KB multifunction card! In response to the changing needs of the IBM PC and PC-XT marketplace, AST Research, Inc. is proud to announce the latest addition to our line of multifunction enhancement products, the **SixPakPlus**! This new product is the result of extensive marketing research into the needs of IBM PC users whether they have the original 64K system board, the newer 256K system board, or the PC-XT. The **SixPakPlus** has been engineered to meet these needs at a competitive price while maintaining AST's high standards for quality and reliability.

1/8
Com
Me
AST
RESEARCH INC.
FOR ALL OF YOUR
IBM® PC
ADD-ON NEEDS!
MEMORY 64K-384K
ASYNC (RS232) PORT
PARALLEL PORT
SixPakPlus
SixPakPlus
SixPakPlus
AST
AST



The **SixPak**, as we like to call it, could have been named for the six banks of RAM on it. However, we like to think that it was named for the six functions of the card. The features of the **SixPak** include:

1. RAM memory starting at 64K, user-expandable in 64K increments to 384K. This makes the **SixPak** ideal for the PC or PC-XT with a 256K system board; 384K on a **SixPak** added to 256K on the system board yields 640K, the maximum addressable user memory in these systems.

2. One Serial (async) communications port, configurable as either COM1 or COM2, for use with serial printers, modems, a "mouse," and other serial devices. The serial port has on-board jumpers for easy management of the RS-232C lines, simplifying the wiring of cables in many installations.

3. One Parallel (printer) port, configurable as LPT1 or LPT2 (LPT2 or LPT3 when the IBM monochrome card is installed), for use with the IBM/Epson and other compatible printers. The port is compatible with IBM diagnostics.

4. A Clock-Calendar with battery backup, featuring an easily replaceable Lithium battery and a quartz-controlled timebase for a high degree of accuracy.

5. An optional IBM-compatible Game Adapter port, for use with an IBM-type joystick. In conjunction with application programming, this game port may be used for cursor control, in generating graphics or for playing games at the end of your work day!

6. Every **SixPak** comes with an AST SuperPak utility diskette which includes SuperDrive and SuperSpool, the most powerful disk emulator and print spooler software you can get. These programs will greatly enhance the throughput of your PC or PC-XT by emulating disk drive and printer access at RAM speeds rather than the normal slower speed of mechanical devices. SuperPak is the first of such software to be compatible with both DOS 1.1 and DOS 2.0.

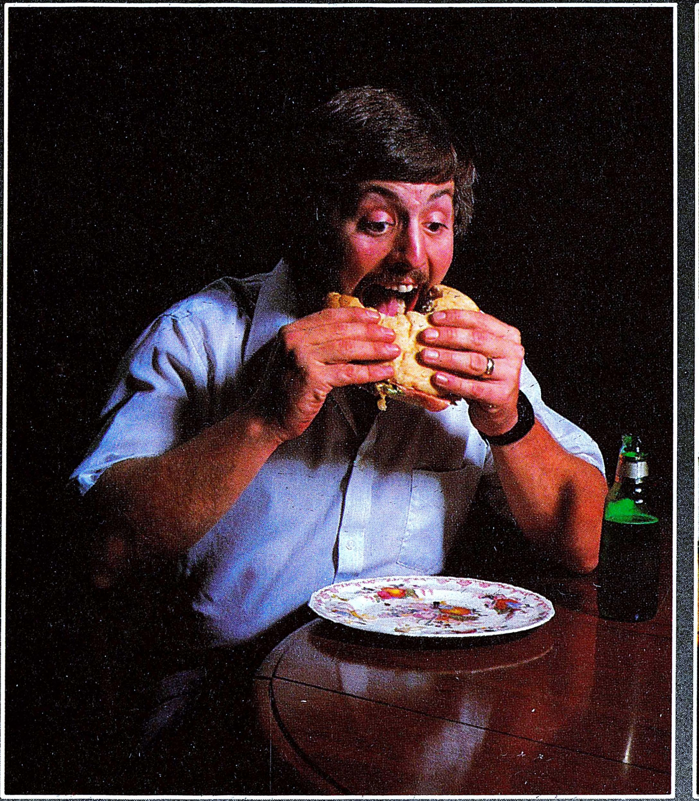
Most important of all, the **SixPak** comes with the AST "Plus," AST's unsurpassed reputation for quality, reliability, after-the-sale support, and overall design excellence that gives our products the best price/performance ratio in the industry! Hence the name, **SixPakPlus**!

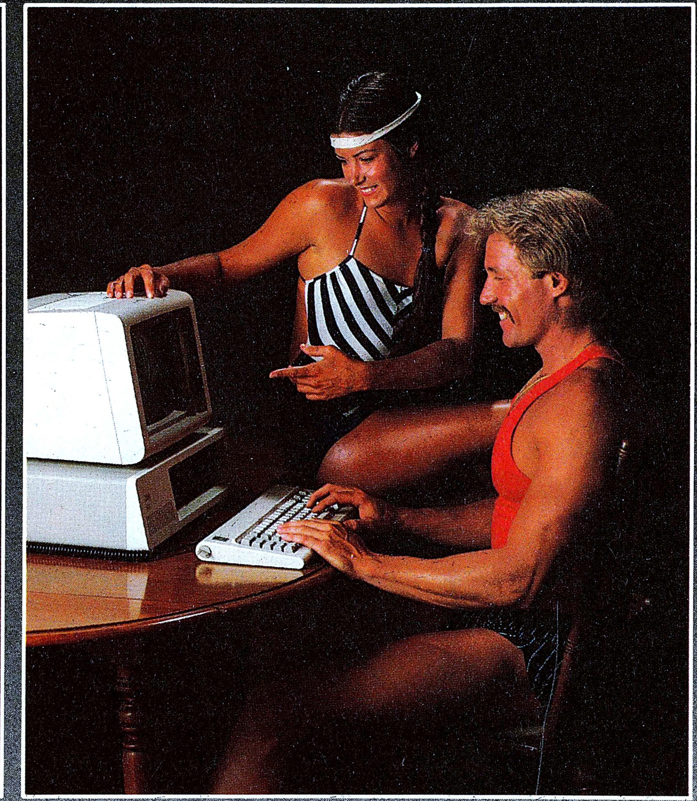
AST products are available from Computerland, Entre', ComputerMart, and selected dealers worldwide. Call factory if your dealer does not have the AST products you want.

AST
RESEARCH INC.
2372 Morse Avenue • Irvine, CA 92714
(714) 540-1333 • TWX 295370ASTRUR
Dealer Inquiries Welcome

® IBM is the registered trademark of International Business Machines

Help Yourself





MASTER CONTROL
A DIET & EXERCISE PROGRAM

A physician-designed, comprehensive weight management program.

Guiding you to a new eating and exercise lifestyle.

Allowing you to monitor your food intake and energy expenditure instantaneously.

Graphic reports provide feedback on your long range weight loss success.

Valuable programmed instruction in exercise and nutrition and other related topics.

A complete diet guide that will show you how to lose weight without relying on willpower.

·HEALTHWARE·

Dealer inquiries invited

Introductory Offer 69.95

Mail to:
Healthware/1504 Leander Rd./Georgetown, TX 78626/(512) 863-6910
Enclose $69.95 for each package and $3.00 shipping and handling.

☐ Send me _____ copy(s) of the Master Control Diet and Exercise Program.
☐ Check or money order enclosed
☐ MasterCard ☐ VISA

Name: ____________________

Address: ____________________

City: __________ State: __________ Zip: __________

Card No.: ____________________

Expiration Date: __________ Bank No. (if MC): __________

Signature: ____________________

MONEY-BACK GUARANTEE!
Return program package within 30 days if not completely satisfied and receive full refund.

user-friendly applications to be written, and written more easily. Although the p-System provides special facilities allowing the application developer to hide the operating system entirely within a "turnkey" application package, it was also the first personal computer operating system to use hierarchic menus and single-keystroke selection from those menus.

John's remarks about the byte-sex issue were also somewhat misleading.

The p-System incorporates several mechanisms that ensure that object code programs are in fact portable across machines of differing "byte-sex." Data files are, unfortunately, a different technical issue. Character (text) files are, of course, fully byte-sex-portable. Data files containing integers, floating point numbers, and/or mixtures of such arithmetic constants and text present very different problems. To put it simply, different machines use very different formats for arithmetic constants, and the operating system cannot know the detailed record structure of application data records. It is, therefore, impossible for the p-System automatically to convert such constants to the correct host format. There are, however, application programming practices that produce programs that can, for their data files, accommodate byte-sex variations. All of our software development products do just that, and there are many applications that do so as well. I think that it would also have been fairer had John pointed out that no other operating system allows object code portability across different microprocessors with the same byte-sex!

Socha's statement that the p-System, especially on the IBM pc, is "painfully slow" is just not true. That is a generalization he would be hard put to tag on any system. In fact, there have been several benchmarks published that rate the p-System very high on the performance scale. The 68000-based Sage computer running the p-System was reported as among the fastest of many machines/languages/operating system combinations in a widely published benchmark (see January 1983 *Byte* Benchmark). If the p-System is slow, these benchmarks have proven that other operating systems are painfully slower.

Finally, his "too little, too late" comment is too much of an editorial statement for me to let go by without response.

We firmly believe that the operating sytem war is not yet over. In the last two months alone we have added Wang, Epson, NCR, NEC, and Olivetti to an OEM list that already included IBM, DEC, Zenith, TI, Commodore, and so on. In short, we have made a solid commitment to increase the p-System's market share, and we are confident you will see SofTech Microsystems and the p-System emerge as one of the victors on the OS front. (By the way, while we may have some bias, we are not alone in this belief. The fall readership study conducted by *PC Magazine* indicated we have surpassed CP/M-86 in popularity on the IBM pc!)

C.A. Irvine, SofTech Microsystems,
San Diego, CA

I've used the UCSD p-System for several years, first on an Apple II and then on an IBM pc, and I very much like the p-System for writing ordinary Pascal programs. But I prefer to use MS-DOS because most of the programs I use are written for it. There is so much momentum behind DOS that SofTech won't easily convince many people to convert to the p-System. And, although SofTech offers true portability—that is, the p-System allows one program to be used on several different microprocessors without change—speed still seems to be a more important issue on the pc.

Although the p-System on a 68000 computer is very fast and a delight to use, the 68000 is a much faster microprocessor than the pc's 8088. Programs written for the p-System on a pc, such as MBA, *haven't fared well against similar programs written for DOS, partly because they're slower and partly because most*

Pascal and C Programmers

Blaise Computing's productivity tools allow Pascal and C programmers to develop reliable software taking full advantage of the capabilities of the IBM PC and XT. Support for Microsoft and IBM Pascal, and Microsoft (Lattice) C is provided. Because all routines are carefully constructed in the language for which they were designed, the tools provide an excellent model. Pascal procedure support is implemented as separately compiled units, and the C functions are delivered as part of a function library. Now you can write your applications rapidly in the two most powerful languages available for the IBM PC. All packages come with a comprehensive Reference Manual, extensive examples and sample programs.

TOOLS All Source Code is included

Total string capability, complete screen access, keyboard handling a graphics interface, access to all BIOS functions, and much more are provided in over 40 routines. All routines are carefully crafted and documented to give you the information and flexibility you need. A general Macro Assembler BIOS gate allows you to access any BIOS function from Pascal or C, and demonstrates how to interface assembly language routines. Everyone using Pascal or C should have TOOLS. User Manual only, $30.

TOOLS 2 All Source Code is included

The power of DOS 2.0 is supported using high level Pascal procedures or C functions. Program chaining, DOS internal and external command execution, use of all available memory, extended file handling, and other utilities are some of the features provided. A general DOS gate allows you to access any DOS function from Pascal or C. User Manual only, $30.

VIEW MANAGER Source Code available

VIEW MANAGER is a screen support system of a mainframe for the IBM Personal Computer. VIEW MANAGER is a menu driven, screen oriented system allowing you to develop user oriented screen interfaces. Screens are constructed with a true Screen Painter supporting any attribute or color, and the screens are stored efficiently in a Screen Database. Database utilities allow you to copy screens to stand-alone databases and to archive screens. VIEW/LIBRARY supports access to screens and true block mode data capture and display from application programs. Available soon will be VIEW/LIBRARY for Microsoft (Lattice) C. The source to the procedure library is available for an additional $150.00. Demonstration diskette and User Manual $35.

VIEW MANAGER, TOOLS and TOOLS 2 run on the IBM Personal Computer and XT. TOOLS 2 requires DOS 2.0; TOOLS and VIEW MANAGER can be used with any version of DOS. Specify if you wish Pascal (Microsoft and IBM) or Microsoft (Lattice) C versions. Blaise Computing can also provide you with the Microsoft Pascal and C compilers with qualified support. Call or write for details.

TOOLS	125.00
TOOLS 2	100.00
VIEW MANAGER	275.00
VIEW MANAGER (with Library Source)	425.00
MS-Pascal Compiler	325.00
Microsoft C Compiler	450.00

BLAISE
COMPUTING
INC.

1609 Acton Street
Berkeley, CA 94702
(415) 524-6603

people use DOS for all their work.

John Socha, Ithaca, NY

Where Is *Wizardry?*

I am writing about the article "Winning at *Wizardry*" (February 1983), by Forrest Johnson. Mr. Johnson said that Sir-tech Software had come out with *Wizardry* for the IBM pc. I have looked in many software stores, but I have not yet found *Wizardry.*

I would like to know if Sir-tech has or will come out with *Wizardry* for the pc. If it has already come out, where can I get it, or, if it is yet to come out, when is it due?

Robert Albert, Sunnyvale, CA

The folks at Sir-tech tell us Wizardry *for the pc has been delayed and they expect it to be available around January. A spokesperson says the company's announcement of the game for this market was a little premature.*

Resetting Kolor.com

I've written a simple program to be used in conjunction with George Bohannon's Kolor.com ("Add Color to Your Text," June 1983). My program is called Reset.com and does nothing more than replace the original video call vector to ROM BIOS. Kolor.com inserts its own address so that all calls to the video interrupt will be intercepted and processed by the program.

I took George Bohannon's Kolor.bas format and wrote Reset.bas, which creates the file Reset.com (the Basic version is twenty-one bytes long). After creating the file and running it, you will not see any change until you clear the screen or use any other video call such as scrolling. One important thing to remember is that each time Kolor.com is run, another copy is stored in memory (496 bytes). If the program is run too many times, you may run out of memory.

There are two reasons why I'm offering these programs: First, I thought someone might like to switch colors after running Kolor.com without having the chaining effect that occurs if Kolor.com is run more than once (or possibly if someone just wants to turn off the color without having to reboot). Second, I wanted to show off my first and only assembler program, which was created just by reading the listing in George's article! That may not sound like much of an accomplishment to some people, but it made me very happy to see the program actually work.

I started with the program Resetvid.bas, which is a simple Basic program used to poke the original call vector back into location. Alas, the color-coded batch files I was working on took too long to load Basic and execute. I tried to compile the program, only to find that the Basic compiler had created a file of 18K bytes just to poke four bytes of code into lower memory.

There was only one answer left—the Macro Assembler. It didn't appear to be difficult to place a couple of bytes into memory at a specific location, although for a novice anything to do with machine language can be somewhat frightening.

Well, it took quite a few hours and I occasionally sent my computer into the ozone, but finally—SUCCESS! The final result was a twenty-byte .com program that was easily included into my batch file system of color selection.

I'm sure a seasoned assembly-language programmer would find this exercise simple and might even wonder why I didn't use INT 21 function 25, which invokes the DOS function to set an interrupt vector, but I read about it after I wrote Reset.com.

I hope Reset.com is useful for those of you using George Bohannon's Kolor.com. If anyone would like a copy of the menu-driven color selector based on Kolor.com, send me a disk in a prepaid return mailer to 87 Nelson Street, Farmingdale, NY 11735, and I'll send you a copy.

Tim Mason, Farmingdale, NY ▲

Puzzled by BASIC's missing pieces?
Relax...

Now there's *MetaBASIC*, a powerful language preprocessor for IBM PC BASIC.

Anyone who has tried to develop large programs in BASIC will appreciate what MetaBASIC has to offer:

- **TRUE SUBROUTINES.** You can break a large program up into small, manageable pieces. MetaBASIC links the modules together doing all the statement renumbering and variable renaming automatically.
- **TRUE ARGUMENT LISTS FOR SUBROUTINES.** MetaBASIC subroutines are real subroutines which accept lists of passed arguments.
- **SOURCE CODE COMPRESSION.** No more writing "scrunched up" BASIC for interpreter speed. MetaBASIC will do the "scrunching" for you. Your BASIC programs can be written with wide spacing, logical indentations, and plenty of comments.
- **NAMED GLOBAL COMMON AREAS.** Any number of distinct global data areas may be set up for sharing between subroutines.
- **STRUCTURED CONDITIONAL CONTROL.** A complete IF...ELSEIF...ELSE statement performs conditional execution of program blocks of any length.
- **SIMPLIFIED FILE I/O.** MetaBASIC automates the handling of random access files using a PASCAL-like Record Data Structure.
- **FULL COMPILER COMPATIBILITY.** All MetaBASIC features work with the IBM BASIC Compiler for even higher-powered software development.

At its introductory price of $59 MetaBASIC represents honest value in software. Phone or write to order.

MetaBASIC (for the IBM PC with 64K & disk drive) **$59**

MasterCard Add $3 for shipping. Mass. residents add 5% sales tax. VISA

SOFTWARE 128

363 Walden St. Concord, MA 01742 (617) 369-6400

FRIENDLYWARE™
PC INTRODUCTORY SET
MASTER DISKETTE No.1

1) History and introduction to Computers
2) Operating Systems
3) Languages
4) Screen Prompts
5) Memory and Storage
6) Files, Fields, Records
7) Helpful DOS Commands
8) Anatomy of a Program
9) Mastermind
10) Nevada Dice
11) Killer Maze
12) Sea Battle
13) Boggy Marsh
14) Hangman
15) Tic Tac Toe
16) Home Vision
17) Home Hearing

FRIENDLYWARE™
PC INTRODUCTORY SET
MASTER DISKETTE No.2

1) Wildcatter
2) You Draw It
3) Peg Leap
4) Dominoes
5) Match
6) Towers of Atlantis
7) Personal Biorhythms
8) PC Golf
9) Head Coach
10) Blackjack
11) Othello
12) Biorhythm Sports Predicting

FRIENDLYWARE™
PC INTRODUCTORY SET
MASTER DISKETTE No.3

1) Check Book Register
2) Amortization Analysis
    Calc. Interest Rate
    Calc. Payoff Amount
    Calc. Loan Amount
    Calc. Loan Payoff
3) Inv. Reorder Anal.
4) Present/Future Value
5) Break Even Analysis
6) Economic Order Analysis
7) Depreciation Analysis
    Straight Line
    Double Declining
    Units/Production
    Sum of Years Digits
8) Computer Accounting Demonstration
9) Stock Ratio Analysis
    Current Ratio
    Quick Ratio
    Inventory Util.
    Inventory Turnover
    Fixed Asset Util.
    Total Asset Util.
    Debt-to-Worth
    Operating Ratio
    Profits-to-Worth
    N. Profit/N. Sales
    ROI in Assets
    Price to Earnings
    Earnings per Square

THE 3 DISKETTE CURE FOR COMPUTER-PHOBIA

IBM
WELCOME TO
FRIENDLYWARE
PC INTRODUCTORY SET
from FriendlySoft, Inc.
FRIENDLY WARE™
P.C. Introductory Set

The novice computer user wants more than a lesson.

He wants an easy and enjoyable way to get to know his machine, feel at home around it, and find out what he can do with it.

Tens of thousands of PC and XT owners have gotten what they wanted with the **Intro Set.**

It's proving to be the perfect blend of education, entertainment, and practicality for the new user.

Nothing else on the market has helped more people overcome "computer phobia" than the **Intro Set.**

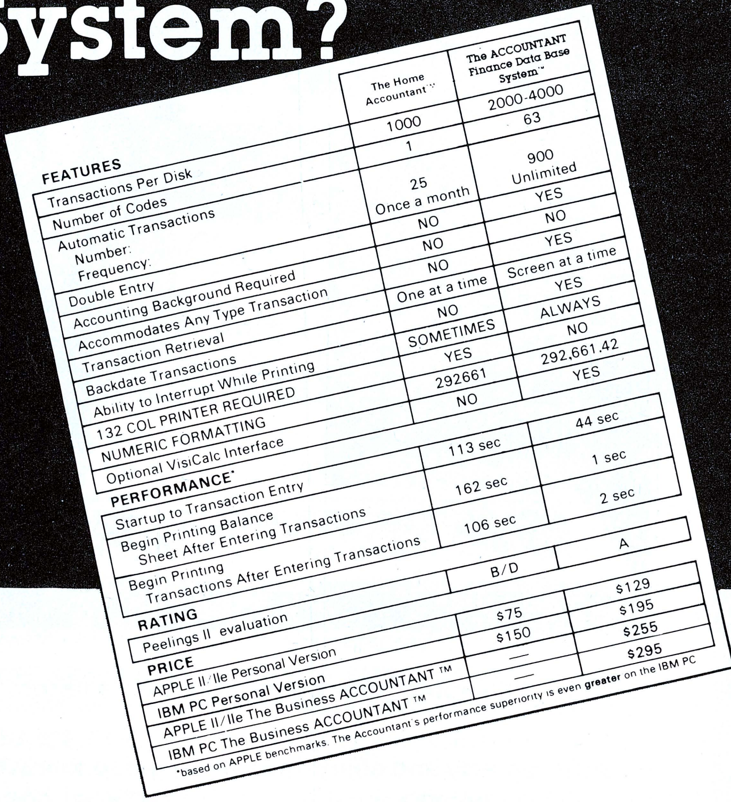
Suggested Retail: **$49.95**

Compatible with the IBM PC or XT — DOS 1.1 or 2.0

FRIENDLYSOFT, INC.
ARLINGTON, TEXAS

Producers of innovative, quality software products EXCLUSIVELY for IBM Personal Computer.

Do you want the #1 Seller or the #1 Financial System?



	The Home Accountant™	The ACCOUNTANT Finance Data Base System™
FEATURES		
Transactions Per Disk	1000	2000-4000
Number of Codes	1	63
Automatic Transactions Number:	25	900
Frequency:	Once a month	Unlimited
Double Entry	NO	YES
Accounting Background Required	NO	NO
Accommodates Any Type Transaction	NO	YES
Transaction Retrieval	One at a time	Screen at a time
Backdate Transactions	NO	YES
Ability to Interrupt While Printing	SOMETIMES	ALWAYS
132 COL PRINTER REQUIRED	YES	NO
NUMERIC FORMATTING	292661	292,661.42
Optional VisiCalc Interface	NO	YES
PERFORMANCE*		
Startup to Transaction Entry	113 sec	44 sec
Begin Printing Balance Sheet After Entering Transactions	162 sec	1 sec
Begin Printing Transactions After Entering Transactions	106 sec	2 sec
RATING		
Peelings II evaluation	B/D	A
PRICE		
APPLE II/IIe Personal Version	$75	$129
IBM PC Personal Version	$150	$195
APPLE II/IIe The Business ACCOUNTANT™	—	$255
IBM PC The Business ACCOUNTANT™	—	$295

*based on APPLE benchmarks. The Accountant's performance superiority is even **greater** on the IBM PC

MONEY MAGAZINE — Nov. 1982
"Among bookkeeping programs, earns high marks and is easy to use."

CREATIVE COMPUTING — Jan. 1983
"The documentation is thorough, easily read, and complete."
"The program is so easy to use that rarely will reference have to be made to the manual."

SOFTALK — Jan. 1982
"For the home user (and perhaps in some less complex small business), *the best package we evaluated was The ACCOUNTANT by Decision Support Software."*
"The ACCOUNTANT does, indeed, make financial management a simple and straightforward procedure."

Now available for IBM PC

INFOWORLD — Jan. 3/10, 1983
"Complete flexible financial data base package for the home user."
". . . exceptionally fast. . . . highly recommend."

The ACCOUNTANT
Finance Data Base System™

Decision Support Software Inc.
1438 Ironwood Drive, McLean, VA 22101 • (703) 241-8316 • Orders Only: (800) 368-2022

Apple™, IBM®, VisiCalc™, The Home Accountant™ are trademarks of Apple, IBM, VisiCorp., and Continental Software respectively.

Statement of Ownership and Circulation

1.-2. Softalk (publication number 07332173); October 17, 1983.

3. Softalk is published monthly, 12 issues annually, at an annual subscription price of $24.

4.-5. Office of publication and general business offices are located at 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601.

6. Publisher: Al Tommervik, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601. Editor: Craig Stinson, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601. Managing Editor, Mike Tighe, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601.

7. Statement of ownership: Softalk Publishing Inc., 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601; Robert Comstock, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601; William Depew, 5547 Satsuma Avenue, North Hollywood, CA 91601; John Haller, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601; Mary Sue Rennells, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601; William V. R. Smith, 5547 Satsuma Avenue, North Hollywood, CA 91601; Craig Stinson, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601; Margot Comstock Tommervik and Al Tommervik, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601; Kurt Wahlner, 11160 McCormick Street, North Hollywood, CA 91601.

8. None.

9. Not applicable.

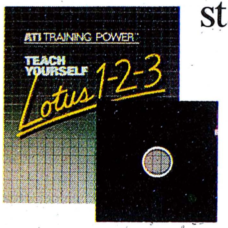
10. Extent and nature of circulation

	Average number of copies each issue during preceding 12 months	Actual number of copies of single issue published nearest to filing date
A. Total number copies printed (net press run)	54,886	80,644
B. Paid Circulation		
1. Sales through dealers and carriers, street vendors, and counter sales	1,644	2,530
2. Mail subscription	196	496
C. Total paid circulation	1,940	3,026
D. Free distribution by mail, carrier, or other means, samples, complimentary, and other free copies	49,276	76,722
E. Total distribution	51,216	79,748
F. Copies not distributed		
1. Office use, left over, unaccounted, spoiled after printing	3,605	896
2. Return from news agents	65	—
G. Total	54,886	80,644

11. I certify that the statements made by me above are correct and complete.
Al Tommervik, Publisher

No one else is using this simple method to teach you Lotus 1-2-3.

You didn't learn to swim by reading about it. You took the plunge. With a little extra support at first, 'til you could stay afloat on your own.



ATI's training software teaches you Lotus 1-2-3 in the same way.

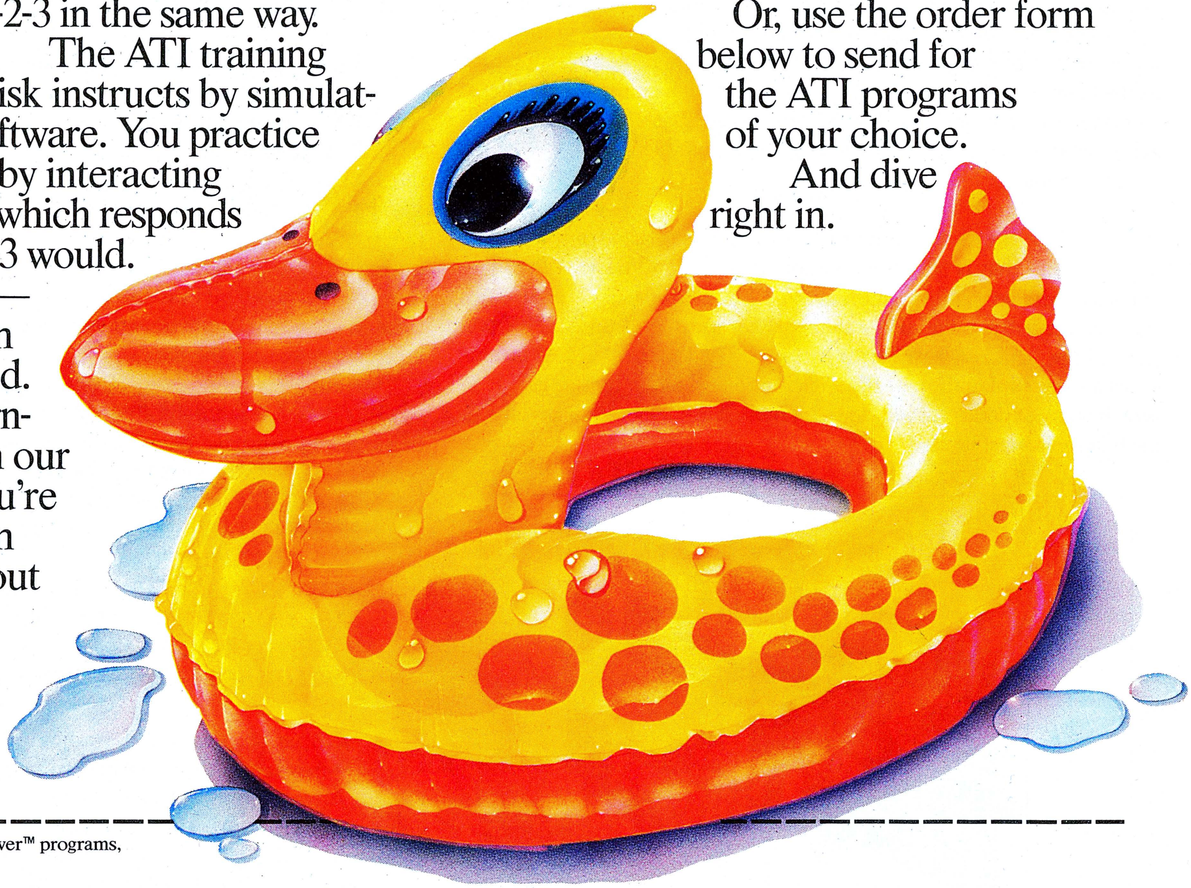
The ATI training disk instructs by simulating the actual software. You practice each command by interacting with the screen, which responds just as Lotus 1-2-3 would.

It's faster—and easier—than any other method. Once you've learned the skills with our helping hand you're ready to swim on your own. Without sinking.

The ATI Training Power package for Lotus 1-2-3, with disk and handbook, is available at your computer dealer. Along with our line of training programs, based on the same simulation method, for other popular software.

Or, use the order form below to send for the ATI programs of your choice.

And dive right in.



Please rush me ATI Training Power™ programs, at $75 each for this software:

Integrated Software
☐ Lotus 1-2-3

Database Management
☐ dBASE II-vol. 1 & 2
☐ EasyFiler

Word Processing
☐ WordStar-vol. 1 & 2
☐ EasyWriter II
☐ Perfect Writer
☐ Spellbinder
☐ Benchmark

Financial Planning
☐ Multiplan
☐ SuperCalc
☐ VisiCalc
($50 Limited Offer)
☐ Perfect Calc
☐ EasyPlanner
☐ Microplan

Operating Systems
☐ PC DOS
☐ MS DOS
☐ CP/M

Programming
☐ BASIC
☐ APPLESOFT BASIC

Accounting
☐ BPI Gen. Acct.
☐ Peachtree General Ledger*
☐ Peachtree Accounts Receivable*
☐ Peachtree Accounts Payable*

*PC(MS) DOS formats only.

ATI Money Back Guarantee
If you're not completely satisfied with how fast you learn with ATI Interactive Training Power Programs, simply return within 3 days for full purchase refund.

Enclosed is $75 each plus $2.50 shipping. Visicalc Training $50. (CA add 6.5%)

Name____________________ Phone(_____)__________

Street______________________________

City________________ State______ Zip________

My computer uses:
☐ PC DOS ☐ XENIX
☐ MS DOS ☐ APPLE II CP/M
☐ CP/M ☐ APPLE IIe 80 col.
☐ CP/M-86

My computer brand is________________

Dealers:
call for sales kit
(213) 546-4725

For rush order call:
(213) 546-5579

VISA MasterCard

Mail order form to:
Software Training Company
A Division of ATI
3770 Highland Avenue, Suite 202 B
Manhattan Beach, CA 90266

ATI Training Power™

The following names are trademarks of the following companies: ATI Training Power, of American Training International; CP/M, of Digital Research; PC-DOS, of IBM; WordStar, of Micropro; Benchmark, of Metasoft; EasyWriter, EasyFiler, and EasyPlanner, of Information Unlimited Software; MS-DOS, and Multiplan, of Microsoft; dBASE II, of Ashton-Tate; SuperCalc, of Sorcim; VisiCalc, of VisiCorp.; Microplan, of Chang Laboratories; Peach Calc, of Peachtree Software; ATI Training Power, Software Sampler, of American Training International; Spellbinder, of Lexisoft; Perfect Writer, and Perfect Calc, of Perfect Software; Lotus, of Lotus.

© 1983 American Training International.

QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

by Nancy Andrews

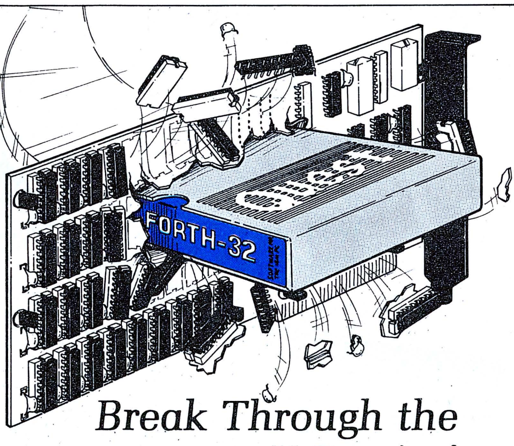
Q: In the August issue you mentioned the *shell* command; I have not been able to find any documentation on that command. I have tried it out and it seems to work to a degree.

I used the *shell* command to execute a .bat file. I then got a DOS prompt, which indicated to me that I was back in DOS, so I tried to load BasicA after the prompt and got the error message, "You cannot run Basic as a child of Basic." Sounded rather mystical, and I could not find any explanation of the message.

I suspect the *shell* command does not wipe out BasicA in memory, unlike the *system* command, and expects that the program will return to the BasicA level again. Is this correct? Is *shell* a command in Microsoft Basic that has not been documented in IBM Basic? I would appreciate an explanation of *shell*, including some possible uses.

Santi Vibul

A: Yes, the *shell* command does not erase Basic from memory, and that is why you cannot simply reload Basic. When you use *shell* with something that leaves you in DOS (such as your batch file), you must use the *exit* statement to return to BasicA. This will prevent the "child of Basic" error message. The October "Q&A" column gives a brief explanation of the *shell* command and a hypothesis as to why it was not documented. Since it's not yet implemented correctly, its usefulness is very limited.


Break Through the
64K Barrier!

Make full use of the memory you have by programming with the **FORTH-32** language. A Complete Development System! Floating Point and other Extensions.

Call toll-free or contact a participating Computerland store.

Quest
Quest Research, Inc.

303 Williams Ave.
Huntsville, AL 35801
(205) 533-9405

Available for DOS 1.0, 1.1, 2.0
FORTH-32 and the Quest logo are trademarks of Quest Research, Inc.

800-558-8088

Q: I have come across two inconsistencies between the Basic interpreter and the Basic compiler when writing programs for IBM pc. Both differences deal with the tab key.

When you press the tab key in the interpreter mode, the cursor moves to the next tab position. In the compiled version pressing the tab key moves the cursor to the next tab position, but the characters that are tabbed over are cleared from the screen. In addition, the other cursor-positioning keys (that is, the arrows on the keypad) don't function. So to get to a field in the middle of a line you must rekey the data that precede the field you wish to get to.

The second inconsistency is that tab settings are off one position between interpreted and compiled Basic. I try to align my fields so that they begin at a tab setting.

I find both of these situations unacceptable and disturbing, and I'm curious why they exist and if there is a way to get around them.

Royce Rogge

A: You're right—you can't edit input statements in compiled Basic. This is a recognized deficiency and it is supposed to be corrected in future versions of the compiler. For now, here is a short program that may point you in the direction of correcting the destructive tabbing and the variation in tab size.

This program lets you use the F1 key as a tab key to tab nondestructively over characters to the correct field. However, you can't use F1 during an input statement. What you need to do is include a pause so that your users can hit F1 to tab to the correct field, trap another key for them to press to let you know they're finished tabbing, and then use the input statement for the data.

By setting the value of the variable Interpreter, you can have the tab size be either that of interpretive or compiled Basic. If you want tabs to be similar to compiled Basic, set Interpreter to 0; otherwise set it to 1.

```
10 A$ = "123456789 ": FOR I=1 TO 8: PRINT A$;: NEXT
20 TABSIZE = 10: INTERPRETER = 0
30 DEF FNTABB(COL) = INT(COL/TABSIZE+1)*TABSIZE
   + INTERPRETER
40 ON KEY(1) GOSUB 1000: KEY(1) ON
50 KEY(1) STOP: C = POS: PRINT "*";: LOCATE ,C,1:
   KEY(1) ON: GOTO 50
1000 LOCATE ,FNTABB(POS(0)): RETURN
```

Q: After six months of reading all the fine print in computer magazines (I subscribe to five!), I am blurry-eyed and defeated. After many hours and miles of slogging from one store to another asking question after question of salespeople who knew little more than I, I've given up. Bright idea—ask *Softalk.*

I have bought and installed both the monochrome adapter and the IBM color/graphics card. I have the monochrome monitor and an excellent color TV. I can make both hookups and already have the switch program written on my DOS disk. Now, who in the world makes an RF modulator that I can install on the little DIN connector on the color board? I do not need or want something that looks like an Atari game switch, or has its own transformer, or has to be hard-wired in place, or costs $70, for that matter. All I want is a solid-state device that plugs into the board on the connection IBM (in its infinite wisdom) has provided but will not support. Do you have any connections for these connections?

Ed Halley

A: M&R Enterprises in Santa Clara, California, used to make an RF modulator like the one you're describing, and it cost about $20. However, about a year ago the FCC banned this unit. Now, apparently, all that is available is the universal RF modulator that costs $70 and plugs into any composite jack. So now you can thank the FCC.

If you happen to have a VCR, you can use it as an RF modulator.

WordPerfect

"Congratulations on such an outstanding word processing software package! We, at Texaco, are really enjoying using your remarkable software system."

Richard W. Horchler, Computer Center Manager, Texaco

"Your system is light years ahead of any other word processor that we have tested."

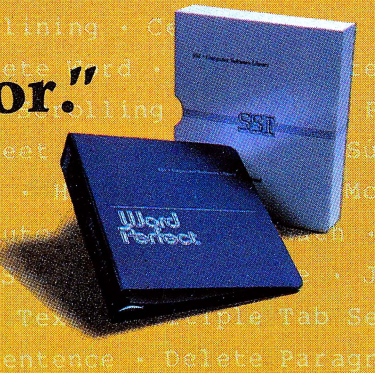
Douglas L. Mayor, DL Mayor Corp.

"If you're a new PC owner who's scouting around for a top-of-the-line program, check this one out."

Lindsy Van Gelder, PC Magazine

"My favorite word processor."

Will Fastie, Creative Computing



SSI SATELLITE SOFTWARE INTERNATIONAL

TOLL FREE (800) 321-5906 TELEX 453-168 (801) 224-8554
AVAILABLE ON IBM PC, AND MANY OTHER MS-DOS COMPUTERS.

Simply connect it to your color board with an RCA jack. This is a more expensive alternative than the RF modulator, but then you can't record TV movies with an RF modulator.

Q: I have not had much experience with the the pc yet but am learning every day. I've been fascinated by the pc's music capabilities. I have read that you can produce polyphonic sounds on the pc's existing speaker, yet I have not seen any way to do this. Can you tell me how to do this?

My second question is easy, but you may not have the information to answer it. I own a pc at work but would like to have pc capabilities at home, too. Unfortunately, I can't afford to buy another pc. Do you have any information on the IBM Peanut? I have heard rumors that it will be coming out soon. Do you know of any features or configurations?

John M. Schoenberger

A: Playing polyphonic music can be done, but it's a fairly sophisticated programming project and cannot be done from Basic. You have to program at the machine level. Take each note of a chord and play it for a very short time (say one one-hundredth of a second) and then cycle through the notes of the chord so it sounds as if the notes are being played simultaneously. There is a program called *Keyboard Piano* (Europro, Box 390605, Mountain View, CA 94039) that converts the pc into a piano keyboard. You might contact them and see if their application supports polyphonic music.

We wish we could give you the scoop on the Peanut, but at this point we'd just be sharing rumors. After it's announced, if you have specific questions, just write and we should be able to get the information you need.

TURN YOUR IBM® PC INTO A FINANCIAL REPORTER.

There's an important difference between spreadsheets and high-quality financial reports. Run a VisiCalc® or Lotus 1-2-3™ program on your IBM Personal Computer and you'll see what we mean: Virtually no understandable format, no punctuation, not the kind of report you'd send to the Chairman of the Board.

SBX's Reports By Example™ program transforms spreadsheets into highly readable financial reports. All the instructions you need are on one page. There are no commands to learn. No new vocabulary. You don't have to use your keyboard.

Send the coupon for your Reports By Example program diskette today. Or call 617-244-5880.

SOLUTIONS BY EXAMPLE
Box 307, New Town Branch
Boston, MA 02258

☐ Please send ________ (quant.) Reports By Example™* diskette(s) @ $199.†

☐ Enclosed is check for $________. (VISA and MasterCard accepted.)

☐ Please send more information.

Printer Name & Model

Name

Address

City

State/ZIP

*For my IBM PC with 128K memory and two disk drives.
†Mass. residents add 5% Sales Tax.

SBX SOLUTIONS BY EXAMPLE
Box 307, New Town Branch, Boston, Massachusetts 02258

Q: I ran the Scrollk.com program on my pc and it works perfectly. After that I followed your advice and entered it in an Autoexec.bat file and it worked correctly. The problems I am having are not with the scroll program but with batch processing and working with the Autoexec.bat file.

First, if I enter any DOS 1.1 command after Scrollk.com, the automatic execution stops running after Scrollk, and DOS displays the A> prompt. This occurs only after Scrollk. If I enter *scrollk basica menu*, DOS runs Scrollk and stops there, but then if I enter *basica menu*, it runs perfectly.

Second, I use a menu program that uses the *inkey* command as input. During the *inkey* time I run the clock on my display. This program ran perfectly until I ran it in an Autoexec.bat file. The problem is that while running the portion of the program with the *inkey* and *time* commands, you can see traces of the cursor going on and off on the display. I understand why (because of the repetitive movement of the cursor on the screen) but if I make a break in the program (control-break) and run it again immediately, it runs with no trace of the cursor. This only occurs when the program is executed in the Autoexec.bat file; if I run it manually, traces of the cursor never appear.

Henry Balaban

A: Your first problem may occur if you have *scrollk, basica,* and *menu* on the same line. If that is the case, DOS interprets *basica* and *menu* as arguments for the Scrollk program. When it finishes running Scrollk, it goes to the next line, finds the end of file marker, and returns you to DOS. To correct this, put *basica* menu on a separate line.

Your second problem is more difficult to solve. You might try putting the line

```
LOCATE ,,0
```

following the line in your program where you print the time. This will turn off the cursor until your next *locate* statement. You can turn the cursor back on with a *locate ,,1* statement. Let us know if this works. If not, we'll do some more digging.

Q: Perhaps I am asking too much of our IBM pc, but someone out there must have some ideas. In my business I need to calculate cross-sectional areas of irregular shapes. I would like to trace a drawing ten times the size of these shapes, get a display on the monitor, and then a calculation of the cross-sectional area. Knowing what a cubic inch of rubber weighs, I can then calculate the weight per thousand feet that is the base for our pricing.

Maybe a light pen, a mouse, or a more sophisticated "draw" program is available that would do what I want. I would appreciate help from anyone.

Terry E. Starr

A: There are a couple of programs that will do some of what you want. One is called *The Drawing Processor* (BG Graphics, 824 Stetson Avenue, Kent, WA 98301); you could use it and a digitizer tablet to draw two-dimensional figures, and it will calculate the area of a closed figure. It won't, however, do three-dimensional volume calculations. They plan to have a program to do these calculations, and it will be available by the end of the year.

With the program *Computer Aided Design* (MicroCAD, 764 Twenty-fourth Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94121), you can use a digitizer tablet or mouse to trace three-dimensional figures; however, at this point you would have to write your own program to calculate the area. The points of your drawing are stored in an easily accessible database so this would not be too difficult to do. MicroCAD plans to have a program out by the end of the year that will calculate volume, area, and cross-sectional properties. They claim that their program is well-known and users have had good success with it. ▲

- PC Keyboard
- Electronic Spreadsheets
- Word Processing
- BASIC
- PC Hardware

PC
PAL
Comprehensive Software

PC PAL EQUALS FIVE PROGRAMS IN ONE

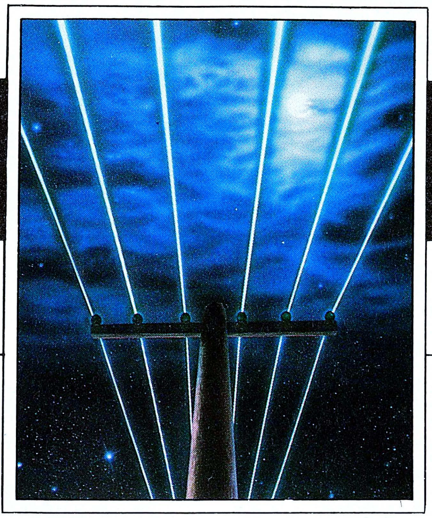
When I'm working, running around all over town and carrying extra weight is risky. PC PAL makes my work easier because it's 5 programs in 1. PC PAL teaches me about the PC keyboard and electronic spreadsheets. And also about word processing, BASIC, and the PC hardware. 5 programs in 1 makes learning easy, fast . . . and inexpensive.

PC PAL requires 64KB, a double-sided diskette drive, an 80-character display and MS-DOS.

Suggested retail $39.95.

See your PC dealer. Dealer inquiries welcome.

Comprehensive Software Support
2316 Artesia Blvd, Suite B
Redondo Beach, CA 90278
213/318-2561



COMM LINES

by Kevin Goldstein

Hardware Choices—a Buyer's Guide

If you've followed this column to this point, you should have a pretty good understanding of why a modem is needed, how it works, what it does, and—just as important—what it doesn't do. That should put you one giant step ahead of almost everyone else in the computer business, because, of all the black boxes you'll likely run into, modems appear to be particularly mysterious. But, in a sense, everything we've covered so far is prelude to the important stuff—choosing the right modem, matching it to the right software, connecting the modem, troubleshooting the whole shebang, and then getting some useful work done. That "introduction" is going to prove very useful, however; it will make it easier for you now to wade your way through the advertising and buy the right equipment.

The place we'll start is the same place you'll start if you decide to add a comm line to your pc: choosing the hardware. We won't review all the available hardware here, nor is that even necessary; we'll simply point out some of the factors to consider when setting up your own comm link.

One of the first questions to ponder is, what kind of modem should you buy? As earlier installments of this column have suggested, modems run the gamut from inexpensive boxes with minimal features to high-performance, fully featured, very expensive boxes.

With but a few exceptions, all the modems you will look at are capable of operating at up to either 300 baud or 1200 baud, with 1200 baud being the affordable state of the art for personal computers.

It is possible, of course, to get higher-performance modems, but unless you intend to do an incredible amount of long-distance telecommunicating, you'd likely spend more money buying the higher performance than you would save on communications charges. Even if money means nothing to you, remember that modems need to operate in pairs. It's less than useless to buy a 9600-baud synchronous modem if everybody you want to communicate with is using 1200 baud. Since 300/1200-baud links are almost universal in the world of personal computers, the implication is that you would want to consider getting a higher-performance modem only if you were specifying the equipment at both ends of the line. And even then that would pay only if you were going to send a lot of data each month.

If you find yourself in this situation, it's time to fire up the spreadsheet and figure a few "what ifs." The first variable is, of course, the price of the modem. Above about 1200 (or now, in a few cases, 2400) baud, the price of telecommunications gear seems to rise exponentially with the unit's speed. Even so, it's not hard to amortize the cost of expensive gear over the life span of the equipment; unlike a car, communications gear tends to last a while. The trickier variable is the cost of the phone line itself. As noted in earlier installments, the standard dial phone line—called a *direct distance dial line*, or DDD—is not capable of supporting full-duplex data transmission beyond about 1200 baud. (Some companies are just now starting to offer modems that can run at up to 2400 baud on a DDD line; but because of the trickery necessary to achieve that speed on a standard line, these devices are also quite expensive.) To get more speed you must rent what is known as a *conditioned line*, a line that gets special treatment from the phone company to extend its bandwidth. Conditioned lines bypass some or all of the switching equipment normally used to route a call from its source, through the myriad phone lines, to its destination. This switching equipment is the source of both noise and bandwidth restrictions, so conditioned (sometimes called dedicated) lines can operate at higher speeds than DDD lines.

Conditioned lines come in many flavors, but they share one characteristic: They carry a far higher monthly rental than standard dial lines. Your "what ifs" will have to balance this higher monthly charge against the time charges of a standard dial line. Unless you have a lot of data to send on a regular basis, you are unlikely to realize any savings with a conditioned line.

If you nonetheless still feel the need for a higher performance comm link, you might consider a half-duplex line. A half-duplex link lets data travel only one way at a time; to receive data, you've first got to stop sending data. After data is transmitted, a certain amount of time is required to let the line "quiet down" before data can be received on a half-duplex line; this delay time is called *line turnaround.* On a line that's being used for interactive communication, this combination of being able to send only one way at a time and the extra penalty of line turnaround makes half-duplex links both annoying and inefficient. However, if most of what you are doing is downloading or uploading long files, half-duplex links can be fairly efficient and are worth considering.

As of now, the comm link that you'll run across most often is 300-baud asynchronous. Twelve-hundred-baud modems were pretty rare in the world of personal computers until fairly recently, so if all you want is the occasional ability to communicate with whomever whenever, you can't go far wrong with a 300-baud link. It's true that 1200-baud lines are rapidly becoming more common, but most such lines support 300-baud operation equally well. As a case in point, you'll find that most public bulletin boards that now support 1200-baud operation automatically adapt to 300 baud when required; in the worst case you'll simply have to dial a different number.

Thus if your communications requirements are not excessively heavy, or your pocketbook is a little light, a 300-baud line should serve you well. If you can survive without such fancy features as automatic dialing, you can find some very good bargains.

One thing to consider when buying a bargain modem is whether it can be used in both the answer mode and receive mode. Recall that a full-duplex modem uses two pairs of frequencies for data transmission. The modem placing the call, called the *originating modem*, grabs one of those pairs and uses it to send all its data. Let's say that pair of frequencies is 1070 and 1270 Hz (called the low band). If the modem that placed the call is transmitting on the low band, then the modem receiving the call, called the *answer modem*, must be receiving on the low band. The answer modem must then use the high band to transmit data, while the originating modem receives its data on the high band (2025 and 2225 Hz).

Now, what happens if everybody hangs up, and the modem that was receiving the call—let's call it modem B—now places the call? Since it's originating the call, modem B will now grab the low band and use it to transmit on, meaning that modem A must now transmit on the high band. But that's just the opposite of what happened before: B is now transmitting on the frequency it was receiving on before—and vice versa.

Most of the modems you will see advertised are billed as "originate/answer" modems, which means they are capable of transmitting on either the high or the low band, depending on whether they are originating or answering the call. A modem advertised as "originate only" can transmit only on the low band, and thus you cannot use it to answer a call from another modem; likewise an "answer only" modem cannot be used to place a call. The difference in price between originate (or answer) only modems and originate/answer modems is fairly small, so there's no particular reason to get stuck with an originate-only or answer-only modem.

On the other hand, some originate/answer modems can automatically switch to the proper mode, while others require you to set a switch telling the modem whether you will be answering or originating a call. Here's a feature on which you can save money (by not getting it), because while the automatic switchover is nice, it doesn't let you do anything that you couldn't already do anyway.

At the high end of low-priced 300-baud modems are those that can detect the ringing of the telephone and answer automatically. Such auto-answer modems allow unattended operation, a feature that can save you (or, more correctly, the calling party) money. For example, if your friend wanted to send you a very long file, you could tell her to send it after 11 p.m., when the phone rates drop appreciably; just set your auto-answer modem, go to sleep, and the file will (you hope) be waiting for you in the morning. (You will, of course, need appropriate software, but that's another story.)

If you will be doing a fair amount of telecommunicating, and you can afford it, consider getting a 1200-baud modem. While 1200-baud modems cost in the range of two to three times as much as 300-baud modems, they reduce the time required to send data, so your phone bill will drop commensurately.

Most of the information sources, such as the Source or CompuServe, now offer 1200-baud link-ups. You'll pay a premium to access an information service over a high-speed link—perhaps two to two and a half times what a low-speed (300-baud) link would cost. On the other hand, you'll be passing data at four times the rate, so you can save money.

Most of the 1200-baud modems advertised for personal computers conform to what is known as the Bell 212A standard. Like the Bell 103 standard, the 212A standard is a full-duplex, asynchronous protocol. Beware of modems advertised as Bell 202-compatible; the 202 protocol is an older half-duplex standard, incompatible with the popular high-speed modems now being offered by companies such as Hayes and Novation.

From the user's point of view, the 212A standard is simply a speeded-up version of our old faithful 103 standard, which, you'll recall, was good only up to 300 baud. Technically speaking, however, a 212A modem is a good deal different from a 103 modem.

While a 212A modem accepts data from and sends data to the computer asynchronously, it actually transmits that data over the phone line synchronously! If you could "listen" to the phone line, you'd discover that the frequencies employed by 212A modems are also different: 1200 Hz for the low band, and 2400 Hz for the high band. Even the transmission method is different, with 212A modems using what is known as synchronous, dibit,

Think Fast
EDO 易重力 ™
The Game of Many Strategies

EDO is the game of many strategies. Change is rapid and movement is constant on a colorful game screen. You must think straight but think fast. Control territory while you can, but keep in mind that danger often wears a smile. Edo, inspired by study of the Oriental mind, now comes into your mind through first class software.

Requires IBM® PC with DOS 1.1 or 2.0, 64K memory, color/graphics adapter and color monitor.

Ask for EDO™ at fine computer stores. Other First Class Software from Xor:

AGENT 2.0™ A Test of Analytical Skill
BLU CHIP™ Portfolio Manager
C TOOLS™ C Language Utilities
THOTH™ Action List Data Base Manager
ST. HIPPOLYTE'S WALL™ The Complex Challenge

XOR™
CORPORATION

FIRST CLASS SOFTWARE

5421 Opportunity Court
Minnetonka, MN 55343
(612) 938-0005

phase-shift keying. We won't get into synchronous modems in detail here, but (briefly):

Synchronous means that, rather than using start and stop bits to frame (distinguish) each character, a modem sends a continuous string of bits; the modems at each end count the bits to determine where one character stops and the next begins.

Dibit means that, rather than being encoded separately as either high or low frequencies, the bits are grouped in pairs; each pair is transmitted as one of four possibilities. The fact that the bits are grouped in pairs means that the data rate on the line is half the data rate into or out of the computer. To indicate that the bit rate on the phone line is different from the data rate, a new term was dreamed up. That term, as you may have guessed by now, is *baud rate.* The baud rate is the information rate, which in this case is half the bit rate. Being perfectly accurate, a modem using dibit encoding is transmitting data over the phone line at 1200 bits per second, or 600 baud. Looking at the connection between the computer and the modem, however, both the baud rate and the bit rate are equal—1200.

Phase-shift keying means that rather than switching between two distinct frequencies to represent a 0 or a 1, a modem "slips" a single frequency forward or backward in time with respect to some reference clock. We'll examine later just what this means.

The reason we're not going into detail here on the differences in the signaling schemes between 103 and 212A modems is that, to the computer, both schemes are made to look identical. The transformations that a 212A modem makes to the data—asynchronous to synchronous conversion and dibit encoding, for example—are done transparently; the modem at the far end simply undoes what the near-end modem did. But knowing this much about it should give you an idea of just why 1200-baud modems are so much more expensive than 300-baud devices.

Since the signaling schemes used by 1200-baud modems are so different from those used by 300-baud modems, you might be wondering about those ads for modems that can run at either 300 or 1200 baud. And right you would be to wonder: a Bell 212A modem cannot talk to a 300-baud modem. The manufacturers offering such modems take the most direct way around the problem: They simply pack the equivalent of two modems into a single box. That's why you'll frequently see such modems advertised as dual modems—they truly do have the guts of two modems inside.

Just as buying an audio receiver with integrated preamp, amp, and tuner is less expensive than buying those three components separately, so packing two modems into a single box is cheaper than buying two separate modems. Many of the components—from the physical packaging to the power supply and even the electrical interface to the computer (the RS-232 interface)—can be shared.

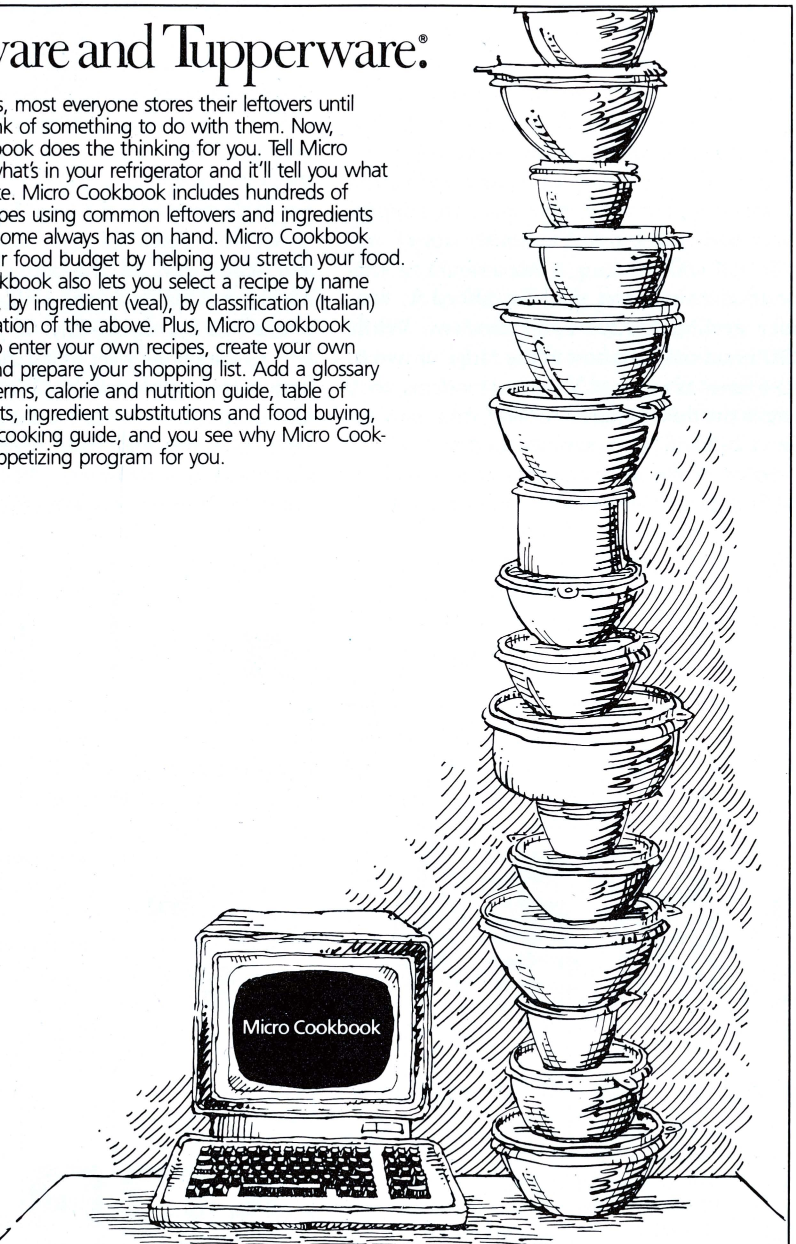
That sharing is also why you can't establish two simultaneous comm links with a dual modem. When running at 1200 baud, for example, the 212A-compatible circuitry uses the RS-232 interface; at 300 baud, the interface is switched electronically to the 103-type modem. But the sharing also offers an advantage: Because the shared circuitry is switched between the two modems electronically, it is a fairly simple matter to add a little extra circuitry that can automatically detect which type of signal a calling modem is putting out, and switch to that. For complete speed transparency, the UART (universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter; see last month's installment of this column for more about UARTs) within the computer must also be capable of detecting and automatically adapting to the proper speed.

As long as we're on the subject, let's note one important difference between a 103-type modem and a 212A-type modem. Recall that a 103 modem doesn't know or understand anything about characters; it simply encodes each bit as it is sent from the UART. Asynchronous

Software and Tupperware.®

These days, most everyone stores their leftovers until they can think of something to do with them. Now, Micro Cookbook does the thinking for you. Tell Micro Cookbook what's in your refrigerator and it'll tell you what you can make. Micro Cookbook includes hundreds of delicious recipes using common leftovers and ingredients most every home always has on hand. Micro Cookbook stretches your food budget by helping you stretch your food.

Micro Cookbook also lets you select a recipe by name (Veal Picatta), by ingredient (veal), by classification (Italian) or a combination of the above. Plus, Micro Cookbook allows you to enter your own recipes, create your own cookbook and prepare your shopping list. Add a glossary of cooking terms, calorie and nutrition guide, table of measurements, ingredient substitutions and food buying, storage and cooking guide, and you see why Micro Cookbook is an appetizing program for you.



VIRTUAL COMBINATICS

P.O. Box 755, Rockport, MA 01966 (617) 546-6553

Versions available for APPLE II+, APPLE IIe (80 col) and IBM PC (64K, PC DOS). The cost $40. Advanced Functions Package for IBM PC (128K, PC DOS or MS DOS) and APPLE II+, IIe (64K, 80 col). The cost $70. Soups & Salad, Appetizer or Dessert options, $12 each. Check with your favorite dealer first. MC/VISA phone or mail orders. Checks accepted. Please specify computer and add $2 handling.

APPLE, IBM and Tupperware are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., IBM Corporation and Dart Industries Inc., respectively.

modems have no internal clocks for determining the bit rate—and don't need any; that's why you can use a 103 modem at virtually any speed up to and including its maximum rate of 300 baud. Change the UART's clock from, say, 110 baud (Teletype rate) to 300 baud and the modem works just fine. Synchronous modems, on the other hand, do have internal clocks; a synchronous modem can be run only at the rate for which it was designed. Although 212A modems look to the outside world as if they were asynch, they really operate, as we have seen, synchronously. It follows, then, that 212A modems can operate only at the data rate for which they were designed, 1200 baud. Put a 900-bit-per-second data stream into a 212A modem and you'll get garbage out (if you get anything at all).

By now you can see that you're getting a whole lot of hardware for the money when you buy a 1200-baud modem. If you're looking for maximum flexibility in a high-speed modem, concentrate your search on dual modems, such as the ones discussed above; that way you'll be compatible with almost anything you'll likely encounter in the world of personal computers. Almost without exception, such modems will also be originate/answer modems, capable of both placing and receiving calls, and will you give you maximum utility for your money.

If your pockets are deep enough, you may wish to consider some of the fancy options. Depending on your intended use, automatic answer may be a valuable feature to look for; if you decide to get a modem with auto-answer capabilities, you will have to decide whether you also want auto-speed selection—that is, the ability to switch between 103 operation and 212 operation as required.

Finally, if you really want to go whole hog, you might get a modem that offers auto-dialing capabilities. As noted earlier, auto-dialing is not, technically speaking, a modem function; as a matter of fact, until relatively recently, auto-dialers were available only as separate boxes that connected via their own cables to separate I/O ports. The combination of auto-dialer and modem in the same box offers certain economies, however, and has thus become a very popular feature.

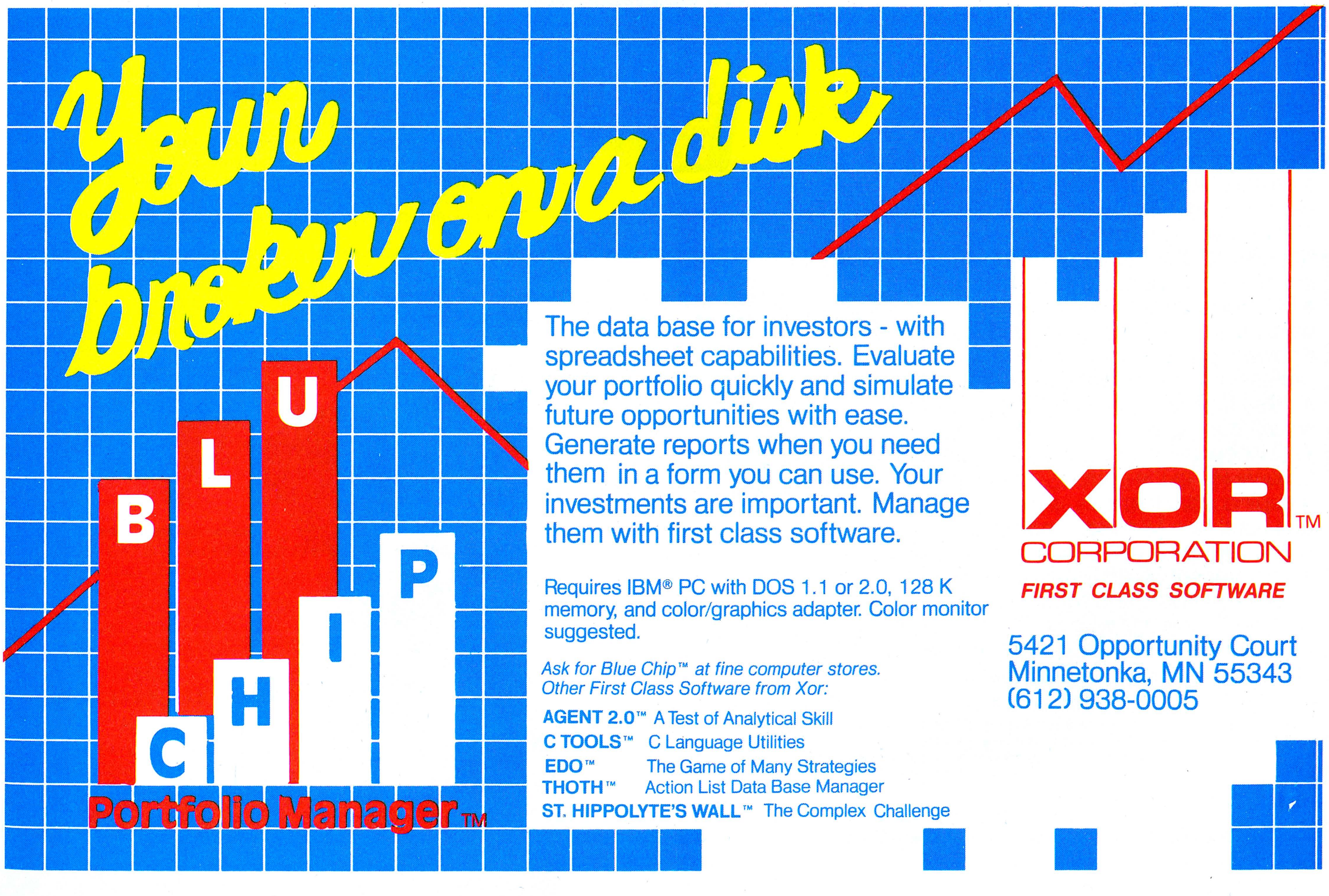
By the time you reach the level of 300/1200-baud dual-modems with auto-dialing, you're talking about a relatively expensive device (around $500), and manufacturers seem unable to resist the temptation to throw in all kinds of fancy programmability to support the dialing and other bells and whistles. It's probably not a good idea to be too overawed by the programming possibilities: For the most part it's easier to do the programming in the computer. (You do need the basic hardware, however: auto-dial, auto-answer, auto-speed-select, and, in the case of the 1200-baud modem, programmable data format.)

Before we conclude this buyer's guide to modems, one more option needs to be considered: Do you want a modem that sits on a card that plugs into your pc, or is a black box that sits on the desk better?

The answer depends on the exact configuration of your machine and, in particular, on how many free card slots you have. If your pc is already crammed to the gills and you have an unused communications port or three sitting idle on a combo card, an external box is the way to go. Besides not consuming a slot, a standalone modem can offer the additional advantage of monitoring important interface lines via LEDs: Actually seeing the "carrier detect" LED lit is a reassuring sign that your dog hasn't bitten through the phone line. And although it's unnecessary to watch the receive data light blink on and off as your pc receives a file, it does give you something to do.

On the other hand, if you have some spare slots, you can save a little money by getting a single-board modem. An "in-the-pc" modem saves space and reduces the spaghetti of cables behind your machine; and many such single-board modems come with a communications port right on the board. That saves you the bucks you would otherwise spend buying a separate communications port board.

Next month we'll look at some of the intricacies of installing communications gear. ▲



The data base for investors - with spreadsheet capabilities. Evaluate your portfolio quickly and simulate future opportunities with ease. Generate reports when you need them in a form you can use. Your investments are important. Manage them with first class software.

Requires IBM® PC with DOS 1.1 or 2.0, 128 K memory, and color/graphics adapter. Color monitor suggested.

Ask for Blue Chip™ at fine computer stores.
Other First Class Software from Xor:

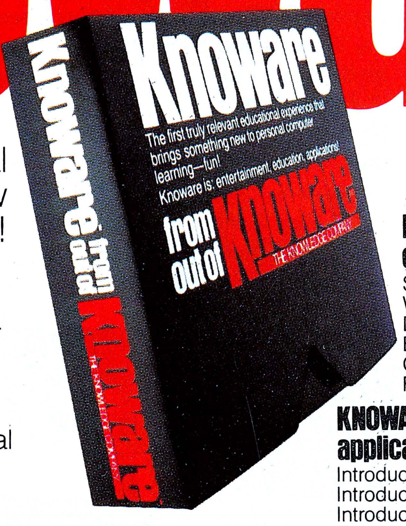
AGENT 2.0™ A Test of Analytical Skill
C TOOLS™ C Language Utilities
EDO™ The Game of Many Strategies
THOTH™ Action List Data Base Manager
ST. HIPPOLYTE'S WALL™ The Complex Challenge

FIRST CLASS SOFTWARE

5421 Opportunity Court
Minnetonka, MN 55343
(612) 938-0005

First there was Hardware.
Then there was Software.
Now there is Knoware™ INC. THE KNOWLEDGE COMPANY.

Introducing
Knoware™


Knoware
The first truly relevant educational experience that brings something new to personal computer learning—fun!
Knoware is: entertainment, education, applications!
from out of KNOWARE
THE KNOWLEDGE COMPANY
Knoware from out of KNOWARE
THE KNOWLEDGE COMPANY

The first truly relevant educational experience that brings something new to personal computer learning—fun!

KNOWARE gives you experience with:

- Spreadsheet
- Word processing
- Database management
- Basic programming
- Graphics
- Financial decision support

KNOWARE gives you these useful application programs:

- Introductory spreadsheet for data analysis
- Introductory word processor for writing letters and memos
- Introductory database manager for maintaining lists
- Graphics program for making bar and pie charts
- Financial analysis programs for investment decisions

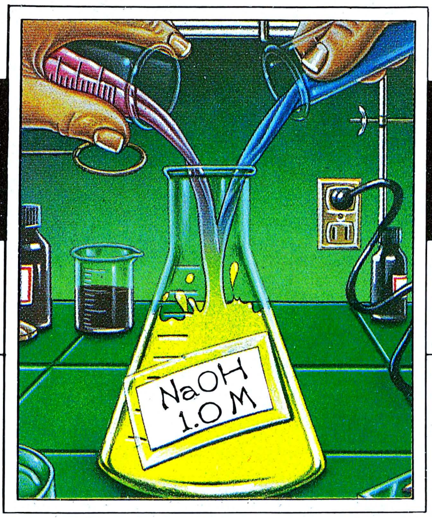
Are the personal computers out of control in your company? Do your professionals understand their PCs? Do they use them effectively? Do they use them at all? Someone has to bring some direction to your company's use of personal computers. Why not you? And at a fraction of the cost of one of those expensive computer seminars. And in a fraction of the time. All you need is Knoware…from out of KNOWARE, The Knowledge Company. Knoware is entertaining software in game form that can teach just about anyone how to use a PC productively—without written instructions, wordy manuals, or long-winded explanations. Knoware can break down even your most stubborn professional's resistance to PCs. It's easy to use and it's also fun! Knoware combines entertainment with practical software experience and useful application programs. With Knoware, your people can learn productive ways to use a PC in their offices or at home. (Imagine what that can save on training, travel and hotel bills.) Knoware has been developed by Professor John J. Donovan and Professor Stuart E. Madnick, M.I.T. faculty members and award-winning educators. Will you be the one who helps your company unlock the potential of its personal computers? All it takes is Knoware…from out of KNOWARE.

"I'm not going to work in the mailroom forever. The people who understand computers are the ones going places. I'm getting Knoware fast!"

Available on Apple® II+ and IIe, 64k. IBM® PC and XT, DOS 1.1 or 2.0, 128k, color graphics. Knoware for IBM® personal computers is published by IBM.®
For information about how you can get Knoware fast contact your retail dealer—or write or call us at 617-576-3825.

Knoware 301 Vassar Street, Cambridge, MA 02139

THE BASIC SOLUTION



by Joe Juhasz

Coping with the Garbage Collector, Part 2

As last month's column pointed out, there are two approaches to minimizing the effects of the Basic interpreter's garbage collection. The first strategy is to reduce or eliminate string space fragmentation. The second is to reduce the amount of time required for the interpreter to collect the garbage.

The two most powerful tools in your fight against garbage collection, the *lset* and *rset* commands, were introduced last month. This month we'll concentrate on *mid$*, your third weapon. The reason why the *mid$* function is an anti-garbage-collection agent is that it reuses already allocated string storage space, rather than causing the allocation of new storage and the consequent fragmentation of string storage space.

Let's look at an example. The statement

```
10 I$ = "abcde"
```

causes the interpreter to set aside five bytes of storage for the variable I$. You can envision that storage looking like this:

```
| a | b | c | d | e |
```

The subsequent statement

```
20 MID$(I$,2,3) = "234"
```

moves three characters into I$'s storage space, without consuming any new storage area. After this statement, the same five bytes of memory look like this:

```
| a | 2 | 3 | 4 | e |
```

Putting Mid$ to Use. Dates can be stored in many ways. One popular way is in the format YY-MM-DD. This format is convenient for sorting purposes, since it orders the largest time unit first and the smallest last. But it isn't the way we're accustomed to looking at dates. People in this country like to see dates written MM-DD-YY.

Examine the following two ways to convert dates from the YY-MM-DD format to MM-DD-YY. *Print fre(0)* statements have been included in each example, so you can see the garbage ramifications of each of these methods.

After you enter the code, you can run the first method by entering

```
RUN 1000
```

Notice when you do that each format conversion eats up twenty-one bytes of storage.

You can run the second method by typing

```
RUN 2000
```

Notice that by using the *mid$* function you avoid fragmenting the string storage area.

Swap. Another useful tool in the battle against garbage collection is *swap*. The statement *swap A$,B$* causes the values of A$ and B$ to be exchanged. Basic merely switches the address and length information

℞

FOR **WordStar™ Frustration**

DDPLUS™

A Powerful Text Formatter for WordStar or Any Standard ASCII Text File

ORDER NOW: **$39.95**
Include $2.00
Shipping.
Credit Card Orders
Welcomed.
Write or Call.
**THE
ALTERNATE
KEY**
P.O. Box 148
Williamston, MI 48895
(517) 484-1664
9 a.m.-6 p.m. EST

Friendly: Menu-Driven, Fully Documented, Needs No Patches to WordStar.
Powerful: Merges Form Letters/Addresses, Micro Justifies on Dot Matrix (Epson, Prowriter) as well as Letter-Quality Printers.
Versatile: Extensive Formatting Features, Macros for Advanced Users, Uses Any Serial or Parallel Port.
Requires: IBM-PC, PC-DOS 1.1 or 2.0, 96K memory, 80 col. monitor.

IBM-PC/PC-DOS, WordStar, Prowriter and Epson are trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., MicroPro International Corp., Leading Edge Prods. Inc., and Epson America Inc. respectively.

YOU CAN:

Say good-bye to Ctrl-B. Choose page width, length, and margins from the menu. Select multiple copies, headers, footers, and line spacing. Print one to four columns of fully justified text per page. Automatically number and indent outlines or lists. Use DDPLUS "as is", or define your own printer and menu default values.

This text was produced using WordStar, a dot matrix (Prowriter) printer, and DDPLUS.

```
1000 'METHOD #1:
    1010   '
    1020   YYMMDD$="83-09-15"      'yy-mm-dd format
    1030   '
1040 'convert
    1050   MMDDYY$=RIGHT$(YYMMDD$,5)+"-"+LEFT$(YYMMDD$,2)
    1060   PRINT YYMMDD$;" <=> "; MMDDYY$;FRE(0)
    1070   SOUND 32767,18*1: SOUND 32767,1   '-pause for 1 second
1080 GOTO 1040
1090  '
1100 '<============================>
1110  '
2000 'METHOD #2 (uses MID$ function to avoid storage fragmentation):
    2010
    2020   YYMMDD$="83-09-15"  'yy-mm-dd format
    2030   MMDDYY$="xx-xx-xx"  'must give NEW$ length of 8, also dashes
    2040   '
2050 'convert
    2060   MID$(MMDDYY$,1,5)=MID$(YYMMDD$,4,5)
    2070   MID$(MMDDYY$,7,2)=LEFT$(YYMMDD$,2)
    2080   PRINT YYMMDD$;" <=> "; MMDDYY$;FRE(0)
    2090   SOUND 32767,18*1: SOUND 32767,1   '-pause for 1 second
2100 GOTO 2050
```

associated with each variable. No new storage is allocated, and therefore no storage fragmentation occurs.

This method of exchanging string variable data is preferable to

TMP$ = A$: A$ = B$: B$ = TMP$

because the latter method causes many bytes of storage to be used up.

Storage fragmentation can even be caused by certain *print* statements. For example, *print "DATE=" + Date$* causes storage fragmentation, while *print "DATE="; Date$* does not. The moral here is to avoid the concatenation of strings whenever possible.

How To Shorten the Collection Time. A number of factors together determine the length of time needed by Basic to complete its cleanup work. Strangely enough, the amount of garbage (fragmented storage) is not one of these factors.

The relevant factors are the amount of storage, the number of string variables, and (most important) the number of string variable array elements. Eliminate string variable arrays from your programs and you will reduce the time they spend in garbage collection to nearly zero.

Some string arrays cannot be eliminated, but many can. For example, many string arrays can be replaced by numeric arrays. Zip codes should be stored in a single-precision array, not as strings, and state names can be stored as numbers representing states.

The use of these techniques, as well as those presented last month, will keep your programs free of lengthy housekeeping delays. Some thought and care during the design phase of your programming effort will result in smoother, faster-running programs.

Next Month. In medium-resolution graphics mode on the IBM pc, you are normally limited to forty characters per line by the print statement. In high-resolution mode, you have eighty columns of smaller text per line. Next month's column will offer techniques for displaying both text sizes in either resolution graphics mode. ▲

FORBIDDEN QUEST
LAIR

A BOLD NEW CONCEPT IN COMPUTER ADVENTURES

FORBIDDEN QUEST™ is the first in a series of **ARTEXT**™ adventures combining spellbinding prose and five 8½ by 11 original graphic art prints. Clues within the 5 prints must be cleverly deduced and applied to solve your quest.

As the hero in this science fiction thriller, you alone are responsible for your fate. You must call upon all of your skill and cunning to prevail against hostile environments and treacherous aliens to attain the ultimate conclusion.

The beautiful princess in the illustration (**Forbidden Quest ARTEXT** print No. 3) is one of the many challenges you will face in conquering the worlds of **FORBIDDEN QUEST.**

THE DESTINY OF THE CITIZENS OF YOUR GALAXY DEPENDS ON YOUR SUCCESS!

TREAT YOURSELF TO A NEW ENTERTAINMENT EXPERIENCE

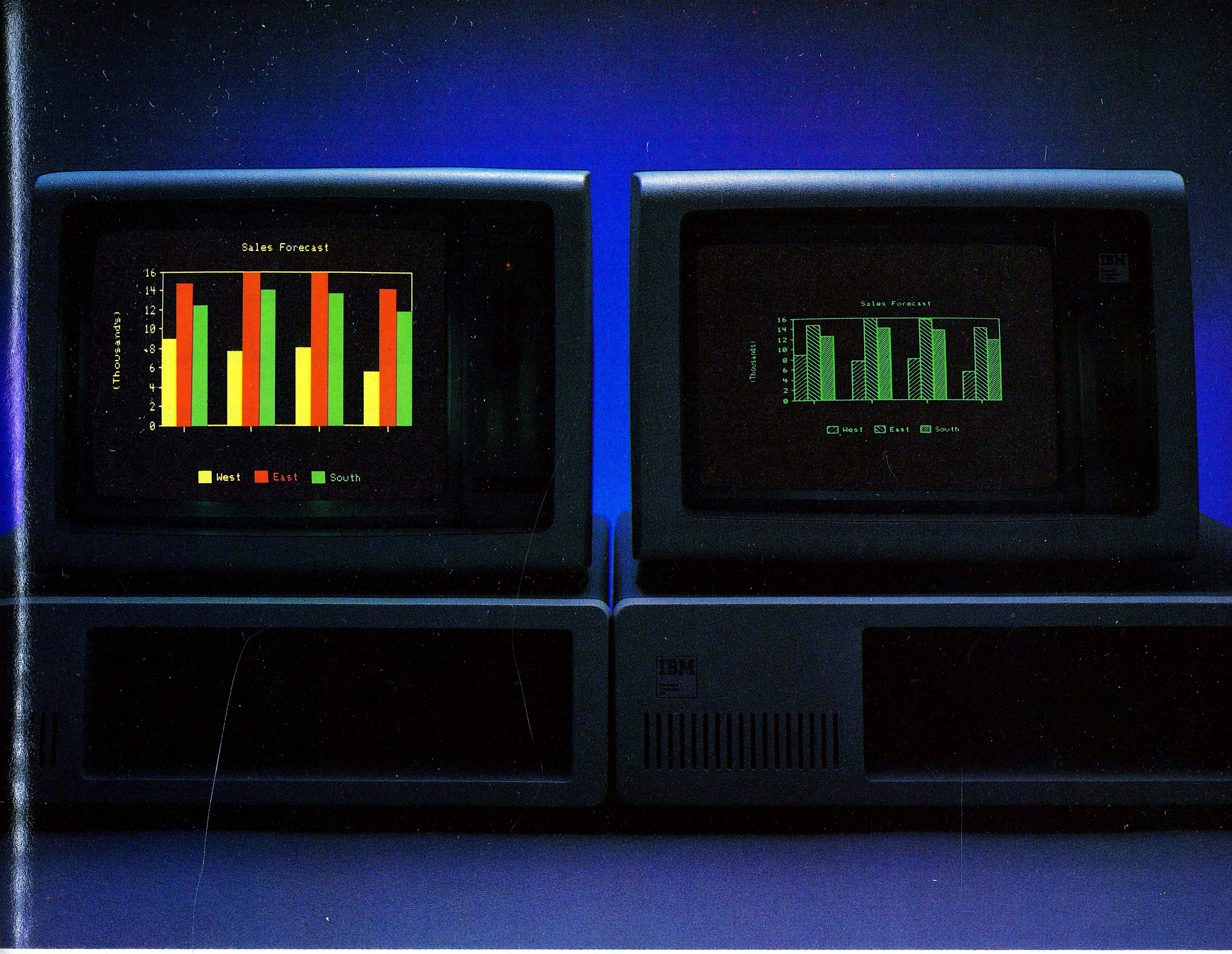
Ask your local dealer or CALL
TOLL-FREE 1-800-522-1500 ext. 831
(orders only)
1-408-625-0125
(orders, general information, HINTS)
OR SOURCE (TCP007) ☐ COMPUSERVE (74035,130)
$39.95 plus $1.50 postage, add $3.00 for C.O.D. Calif. add 6% sales tax
Mastercard, Visa, C.O.D. WELCOME

Forbidden Quest available IBM®-PC, PC-DOS™ 64k, Mono or color card, 80 col., 1 disk drive, Apple®][/][e (48k) DOS 3.3 and Apple /// (CP/M® versions available soon)

Pryority Software INCORPORATED
P. O. Box 221959
Carmel, Calif. 93922

DEALER AND DISTRIBUTOR INQUIRIES ARE INVITED

APPLE, IBM, and CP/M are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., International Business Machines, Inc., and Digital Research, Inc., respectively. **Forbidden Quest** and **ARTEXT** are trademarks of Pryority Software, Inc. © copyright 1983 Pryority Software, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



The STB Graphix Plus™: an affordable way to put a whole new complexion on your IBM PC or XT.™

You get color or monochrome graphics plus a parallel printer port, all in one slot.

Our Graphix Plus multi-function video board gives you three of the most in-demand text and graphics capabilities for one very attractive price.

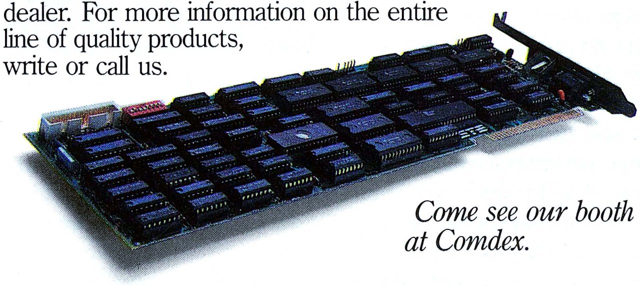
Graphix Plus includes functions for color or monochrome graphics and text displays, and a parallel printer. A clock calendar is available as an option.

This versatile board will drive an RGB color monitor or composite B&W monitor with the identical colors, resolution and modes as IBM's Color/Graphics Monitor Adapter. Graphix Plus improves on IBM's adapter with 50% faster scrolling, which eliminates annoying flashing and flicker.

Graphix Plus also drives the IBM monochrome display, in graphics and high resolution text modes, and is compatible with Lotus 1-2-3™, Microsoft Flight Simulator™ and other popular software. And, Graphix Plus provides for extended text capability.

Graphix Plus also includes a lightpen interface and PC Accelerator, STB's super ram disk emulator and print spooler program.

For a graphic demonstration of how Graphix Plus can expand your personal computing capabilities, see your local dealer. For more information on the entire line of quality products, write or call us.



Come see our booth at Comdex.

Expanding Microcomputing

STB™
STB Systems, Incorporated

601 N. Glenville Avenue, Suite 125
Richardson, Texas 75081 / (214) 234-8750

IBM PC/XT is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
Lotus 1-2-3 is a registered trademark of Lotus Development Corporation.
Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
PC Accelerator is a registered trademark of ResiCorp.

© 1983 STB Systems, Inc.

Exec Quadram:

MULTITALENT,

Talk to Leland Strange and Tim Farris about the product that propelled Quadram, the company they founded, into the forefront of the pc peripheral market and they'll offer a simple explanation: They planned, Farris designed, and Strange marketed. With their complementary personalities and computer interests, Strange, an outgoing, exuberant marketing expert and computer store owner, and Farris, a reserved, just-this-side-of-shy computer engineer, make a very good team.

In the latter half of 1981, the two longtime friends decided to join forces to produce and market peripherals for the Apple II. Farris also had in mind a computer terminal he wanted to manufacture that would feature a screen capable of displaying a spreadsheet, graphic chart, and the text of a letter—all at once.

But in November of that year, plans would change. For it was then that Strange and Farris had the opportunity to examine a new computer that would, like the Apple, revolutionize an industry. The computer, of course, was the IBM pc. As they walked out to their car after the demonstration, Farris told Strange what he hoped to do. "I think I can make some boards for this," he said simply.

It was just the kind of thing Strange, an entrepreneur and college-level marketing teacher, wanted to hear. And by day's end, with *Technical Reference* manual in hand, Farris was already at work designing a plug-in board that would add 192K of memory to the pc's 64K.

The men who founded Quadram—Leland Strange(left), now president of Intelligent Systems Corp., and Tim Farris (right), president of Quadram.

By the end of the year, the board was in production and for sale, even though the twosome did not yet own a pc. Borrowing one from a friend, they tested their boards at night and on weekends.

The boards worked, and the partners followed up with enhancements designed to please both hacker and neophyte. A quartz calendar/clock was one option, a spooler was another, and serial and parallel ports were other needed items. Those products, too, worked and worked well. Then came the idea to combine all four options on one board—freeing up expansion slots, giving retailers a powerful "extra" to sell, and offering the consumer an all-in-one option.

A Board for All Seasons. Thus was born the Quadboard, Leland Strange recalled recently. And thus was born a company, Quadram, based in Norcross, Georgia.

For Strange and Farris, nearly overnight success has meant becoming multimillionaires; for Atlanta (of which Norcross is a suburb), the firm has meant new jobs—250 of them at the two-year-old company and dozens more with nearby suppliers. And for the pc user, Quadram has meant a range of peripherals, including a new board that allows the by Mark Kellner

MULTIFUNCTION

A concern for both Strange and Quadram general manager Otis Jones (left) is managing the company's breakneck growth.

pc to run Apple II software, virtually creating two computers under the same hood.

"But," says Otis Jones, longstanding friend of Strange and Farris and now general manager of Quadram, "you don't ride one horse to death; you find other winners." In keeping with this view, Quadram today manufactures a host of products for the pc and other computers. In one brainstorming session, Farris and Strange reportedly came up with ideas for thirty different salable enhancements. In addition, Quadram's parent company, one-third owned by the two founding Georgians, has launched a software division that concentrates on new products for the pc. Two financial planning programs are already on the market (see accompanying article, page 36).

Consider: a homegrown operation that sold twelve million dollars' worth of product in 1982, that is conservatively projecting $50 million in sales for this year, predicting a tenfold increase in personnel in as many months, and that's moving into a sixty-thousand-square-foot building one year after the five-thousand-square-foot plant believed adequate for five years had already been supplanted four times. To Strange, Farris, and Jones, this rapid growth is just part of a corporate triumph—the management of breakneck growth.

"Our biggest challenge has been managing all this success," Strange says, and, looking around to see workmen finishing the landscaping and front-office staffers scrambling for color boards and cables, a visitor is inclined to believe him.

"Obviously, we knew that we would be successful," he adds, "but we thought that it would take us five years to get where we are in two. The rapid increase in IBM pc sales has contributed to the growth of the company."

But sales of IBM-related peripherals account for only about half of Quadram's business, according to Strange. In late spring, sales of the company's Microfazer printer buffer, which frees up a computer for other tasks while a printer outputs files, constituted 25 percent of the company's sales volume.

Georgia's Own. Strange and Farris are both natives of the Peach state and members of the same Southern Baptist church—Duluth Baptist, located in an Atlanta suburb.

Before Quadram came to be, Strange was busy serving his computer store customers and Farris was involved in computer engineering. As Strange's computer business grew, he realized that he needed a special kind of technical help; his Apple customers were seeking enhancements that weren't commercially available. That's where Farris entered the picture: to build the unavailable.

"Originally," says Strange, "we'd help each other at my kitchen table or on his back porch. One day Tim came to me and said, 'Let's do this together.' "

That happened at about the time the two men inspected the pc, and Farris had the notion that he "could" build boards for it. The memory expansion board was popular and so were the port, clock, and printer add-on boards. Then came the decision to combine the four products, and with it the question of how to market them.

"We were not the first to have a multifunction board, but we were the first to tell the world about it in a meaningful way," Strange recalls. "If you think back to January or February of 1982, there were few people using four-color ads, and nobody was using four-color spreads. We were the first to devote two full pages to a board and to illustrate it."

That strategy found critics in the marketplace, people who said it was benefits that should be sold and that the board might never be seen by the end user, certainly not after it was installed.

"I taught marketing, so I understand the critics who said, 'Sell benefits,' " says Strange. "But the industry was ready for something different. You don't just have to communicate; you have to communicate properly."

The marketing professor did several innovative things besides using ad space and color lavishly. He chose a typeface that was substantial-looking and spoke about a "tradition of quality," which, while true, was an unusual thing for a then-six-month-old company to claim.

The ads worked. "I used to smile when people would call us and say, 'I know you; I've dealt with Quadram for years,' " says Strange.

"We were also the first to put a board in a consumer box, the first to shrink-wrap it," he adds. "We knew the box would be thrown away, but it made a statement about the company that we had the volume to do that kind of packaging. It differentiated us from a garage operation."

Strange also smiles while he recalls one headline that said Quadram "sold boards like soap." That writer's comparison was not too far off, he notes.

"We have product managers who watch each market," he explains. "A board can be considered a commodity. If you don't add value, a board sells at a low cost. Some of the value we add is in features, some is in support and documentation. And that's not fluff—it's important to consumers."

Future Stock. Also important to consumers are future products, and the company is actively working on some right now. Top-priority items include hardware and software for networking and a two-megabyte RAM add-on that will enable users to run such programs as *VisiCalc* and *1-2-3* even faster than they can be run on a hard disk.

Quadram is also considering the possibility of making multifunction boards for other computers, as well as determining which boards are compatible with pc "clones," such as the Compaq, which accepts Quadlink with a minor cable modification.

"We're not going to be an OEM manufacturer," says Farris. Instead, he clarifies, the company is going to help consumers "put it all together" by making peripherals. And they're "trying to pick winners" in the burgeoning computer market.

IBM's pc is obviously one of those winners. So is Apple, with more than seven hundred fifty thousand units sold. Two other brands Farris is impressed with are the Compaq and the Victor; the latter is big in Europe, he says. Farris is also optimistic about new markets for computers. "Today, personal computers are primarily for small business systems, so we'll look next at the home market," says Farris, making reference to IBM's forthcoming Peanut, rumored to have 64K and a $500-to-$1,000 price tag.

Strange concurs, saying that if Quadram's boards can be installed directly, the firm may offer an expansion box designed to complement the Peanut. "We don't know what features will be there, but we'll be on the scene."

An Exercise in Faith

Comdex, which was held this spring in Atlanta, can be a show of sameness. Exhibit after exhibit, party after party, hospitality suite after hospitality suite—all geared toward enhancing images and bottom lines. And while Quadram was there, had an exhibit booth, and was hospitable to many, the company's graciousness took a different form. Instead of having a cocktail party, Quadram sponsored a prayer breakfast and invited Norman Vincent Peale to speak.

The marriage of the power of positive thinking to dynamic memory chips is not as far-fetched as it might sound. Quadram founders Leland Strange and Tim Farris and general manager Otis Jones are all "born-again" Christians and members of the same Southern Baptist church.

Strange and Farris decided early on to tithe the company's profits, giving 10 percent to Christian work. Now that the firm is part of a publicly held company, the tithing has been supplanted by a stock transfer to the Quadram Christian Foundation, the formal sponsor of the prayer breakfast and maker of heretofore unpublicized donations. Jones is the foundation's president.

Jones, who came to Quadram after working "sixteen years and four months" for IBM's general systems division, prayed for two weeks before signing on with the new firm. His faith finds plenty of exercise in the company, where his greatest concern is "quality in products, people, principles, and service." The prayer breakfast "lets people know what we stand for," Jones says. After the Atlanta event, he reports, "the firm received letters from store owners and competitors, praising the breakfast. There was no negative feedback."

The Quadram Christian Foundation screens requests for aid through its board of directors. So far, the foundation has helped pay off the debts of a family, so that the husband and father could feel free to enter the ministry. It has also helped a church in the Northeast make a mortgage payment. "Until now," says Jones, "the group has not publicized its work. The family that was helped doesn't know who its benefactors are."

"We're not zealots," Strange explains. "I hope our example will speak for itself." Strange is especially pleased by the venture capital deal negotiated before Quadram was acquired by Intelligent Systems Corporation. The deal was structured to allow Quadram to continue its tithing policy.

"We got three of the biggest venture capital funds to agree to this," Strange recalls proudly. "It was the first time they'd ever heard of such a thing."

But the company's Christian principles are not limited to a distribution of profits and sponsoring prayer breakfasts. Last March, Quadram cut prices on its Quadboard and then made the decision to credit or refund money to dealers who had boards in stock. The move cost the firm $500,000 and depressed ISC's earnings for that quarter, but Strange felt it was the company's responsibility to its dealers.

"The cost didn't matter," he says. "For the long term it was the right thing to do." ▲

megahaus

presents

MEGAWRITER FOR THE IBM PC

THE SUPERSTAR WORD PROCESSOR FOR YOUR IBM PC THAT MAKES ALL OTHERS "ORDINARY PERFORMERS"

HERE'S WHAT WE DO	**HERE'S WHAT WE DON'T DO**
We give you all the features you'd expect to find in a quality word processor.	We do not duplicate, feature-for-feature, every word processor in the world.
We give you an easy-to-learn, easy-to-use manual.	We do not give you a difficult manual that requires constant reference to use.
We give you easy-to-remember commands. ("I" = Insert, "D" = Delete, etc.)	We do not require you to remember complicated key strokes.
We give you built-in mail list merging at no extra cost.	We do not require you to buy mail list merging separately.
We give you a built-in document finder at no extra cost.	We do not require you to buy a document finder separately.

We do it all for $99.95

AND

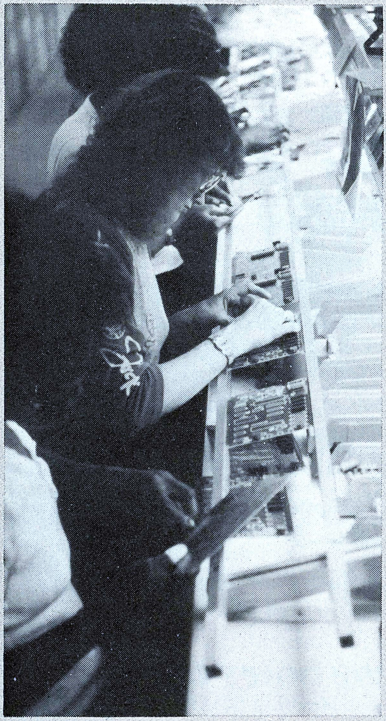
We don't believe quality has to be extravagantly priced.

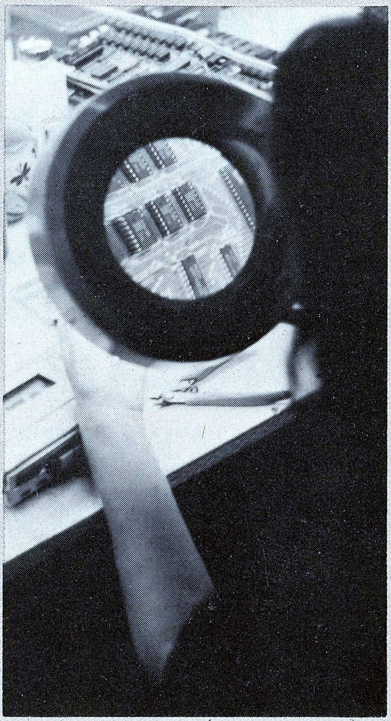
MEGAWRITER is available for the Apple][+ and Apple //e as well as for the IBM PC.

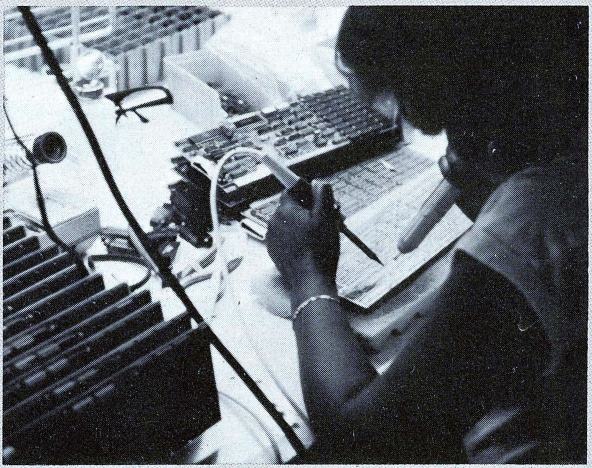
megahaus **We Make Computers Work ~~Harder~~.** Easier!

MEGAHAUS and Megawriter are registered trade marks of: MEGAHAUS Corporation, 5703 Oberlin Drive, San Diego, CA 92121 / (619) 450-1230

Going by the Boards







Quadram's bread and butter, various function boards for the pc and other machines, are assembled in the company's Norcross, Georgia plant. (Far left) The all-important chips are first located on the boards for positioning, then later soldered in place. After soldering, a technician (center) checks the boards and chips for positioning and possible flaws or defects. After inspection, spot soldering (above) takes care of any missed spots or weak connections.

StatPac™

Statistical Analysis Package

A complete data manager and statistical analysis package similar to mainframe SPSS.*

StatPac's features include:
batch processing, variable and value labels, select if, recode, recode if, compute, compute if, sort cases, list cases, write subfile, frequencies, descriptive statistics, crosstabs & chi-square, correlation & linear regression, t-test for matched pairs or independent groups, multiple regression, anova for pregrouped or ungrouped data, two kinds of multiple variable response.

StatPac can handle fixed or free format data files and 5000 cases with up to 255 columns of information per case. Statistic selections and printing options are available on all analyses including paper saving ecology feature.

Walonick Associates
5624 Girard Av. S.
Minneapolis, MN 55419
612-866-9022

The Quality Analysis Package for the Professional

*SPSS is a trademark of SPSS, Inc.

Quadram's future took on an even brighter cast last December, when the company merged with Intelligent Systems Corporation, a ten-year-old computer company specializing in color graphics applications for business. Quadram had been looking for venture capital, and it found the resources it needed when ISC, where Farris once had worked, came knocking.

At first the entrepreneurs turned ISC's offer down, but then they reconsidered and agreed, making Farris part owner of his former employer ("something I'd never thought of") and setting the stage for a reorganization of ISC that would see Strange assume the role of company president.

The man who was president of the company before the merger decided to resign after it took place, Strange recalls, noting that the man "saw that we did things differently." The greatest difference between the two was reflected in Quadram's aggressive stance, something ISC had lost in recent years. Strange was elected ISC president in March of this year, although he still spends 40 to 50 percent of his time at Quadram.

ISC is now a holding company, of which Quadram is one division. ISC's color graphics operations now trade under the name Intercolor, and the new firm is using the Quadchrome monitor for one product and the Quadcolor board for another. According to Strange, such "cross-pollination" between the two companies will continue.

Besides sponsoring new ventures, Quadram is becoming a quasi-distributor of other products or, as Strange puts it, the firm is going to be "a manufacturer that operates like a distributor." Among the products Quadram may market in the future are printers and hard disk drives; results are due at Comdex (at the end of this month, in Las Vegas).

"We're gonna be here for the long term," declares Strange. "One reason for the merger with ISC was to ensure longevity for Quadram. Our difference is a broad line. If we look at our competition, one has only buffers, another only boards.

"What we've developed is one of the strongest retail marketing

First Base:

high powered information filing at a very low price.

$39.95

For the IBM PC

"It's the best software buy I ever made!"

"I've been looking for a filing system that's easy to use but still delivers the power and flexibility I need. I spent several hundred dollars on high priced programs and all I got was confused! Then I tried FIRST BASE for $39.95. It's fantastic!"

FIRST BASE can be learned in minutes, yet it has more useful features than data base programs costing much more. With FIRST BASE you have complete control of the screen layout of your records and of the heading, type, and length of each line of information. You can sort your records, search for specific information, and update any entry. You can design customized printed reports, sum or average fields of numeric data, and create formatted mailing labels. You also get a thorough manual with extensive examples. All this and more for just $39.95.

With FIRST BASE you can create mailing lists, customer lists, inventory records, personnel records, job cost summaries, and files on just about anything.

FIRST BASE: available for the IBM PC and IBM PC compatibles.

You can order FIRST BASE with VISA, MASTERCARD, or C.O.D. by calling: 217-762-5301. Or by sending a check or money order payable to Charter Software for $39.95 plus $5.00 postage and handling to:

Charter Software

P.O. Box 70 Monticello, Illinois 61856
Illinois resident add 5% sales tax.

☐ Enclosed is my check or money order

☐ Please send C.O.D. ☐ MasterCard ☐ Visa

Card # ____________________ exp. date ____________

Name on card ______________________________

Signature ______________________________

Quantity ________ x $39.95 = ______________

Shipping $5 each copy = ______________

Total ______________

Name ______________________________

Address ______________________________

City, State, Zip ______________________________

Phone ______________________________

XQ—New Venture for Quadram's Parent Company

Marrying the skill of an accountant to the dedication of a programmer, Richard Prather, C.P.A. and computer buff, recently developed two programs for use by financial planners and sophisticated investors. Those programs caught the eye of Leland Strange, cofounder of Quadram and now president of Quadram's holding company, Intelligent Systems. Strange gave Prather the wherewithal to start XQ Software, a firm that will market the programs.

Prather describes his programs as "the next generation above home accounting programs." The *Tax Strategist* and the *Investment Strategist* are intended for people in the $40,000-and-up income bracket who want to figure out how much of a tax-shelter loss they need in order to hit a certain tax level and then to analyze which tax shelters are best for that target.

According to Prather, the *Investment Strategist* will analyze tax shelters for a period of up to fifteen years and calculate results, including internal rates of return, adjusted rate of return, direct benefits, interest on reinvested benefits, after-tax proceeds of sale, and future value of the contribution if put into a savings account instead of the tax shelter. As far as Prather knows, this kind of analysis is not available on any other commercial programs.

Prather, a former staff accountant with Touche, Ross, and Company, who also worked with MSA Software before starting XQ, says forty million Americans have incomes in that forty-thousand-a-year-and-up range. He feels that all of them could benefit from programs like these.

Since last fall, Prather's programs have been beta-tested by a small group of financial planners—a new breed of money managers who advise upper-income people about shelters and investments, as well as about tax planning and insurance needs. One planner told Prather that both his productivity and his business volume had doubled as a result of using the programs.

XQ is using some of Quadram's former office space as well as members of Quadram's marketing and support staff to produce and promote the two programs. Prather is now at work on modifications to the programs designed to take advantage of the color displays offered by the Quadcolor board and Quadchrome monitor. ▲

channels for enhancements. That gives us a lot of flexibility. And ours is the only public company that's a factor in the peripherals market. We'll be there for warranty service years from now."

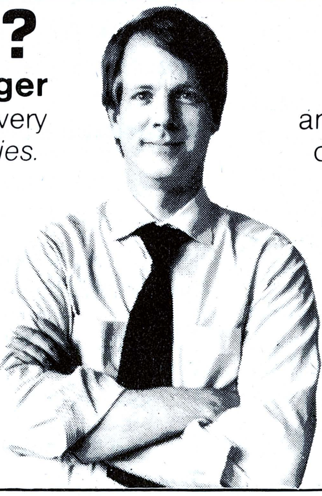
A Touch of Strange. One of the ways Strange attempts to make sure that Quadram will continue to be in the market is by keeping in touch with that market. "I will try to speak to at least one computer dealer a day and find out what the consumer is asking for," he says. "Sometimes I ask to talk to the technician. The technicians have a great understanding of the marketplace."

Even while vacationing in Florida recently, Strange stepped off the beach long enough to wander into a computer store and talk to a salesman about business and products. It's a source of ideas, he says, and it helps build rapport.

That salesman might not have known that he was talking with one of the principals of the company, however. Neither Strange nor Farris, nor any other Quadram executive, has a title on his business card. The cards reflect an aspect of the company's operating philosophy—that everyone is able to pitch in on a job.

Another element of that philosophy is a strong commitment to advertising. In May of this year, Adtrack rated Quadram as the number one consumer advertiser, saying that Quadram spent more money educating the public about its products than did any other firm. Strange reports that 7 to 12 percent of the firm's sales dollars go back into advertising. And future plans call for television spots, something he feels is necessary to reach the growing computer-buying public.

And when that public confronts Quadram, they'll meet up with a group of people for whom quality is a watchword—as well as a tradition. ▲



WORRIED?
Your data is in danger
without the powerful file recovery routines in the *Norton Utilities.*

Protect your data
with the essential file recovery routines
- *Recover erased files*
- *Recover from damaged diskettes*
- *Recover scrambled data*

Dozens of extra functions
included in the Norton Utilities
- *Disk labeling*
- *Screen control*
- *Sound, timing, file printing and more!*

SNOOPY?
Explore your disks
and learn the mysteries of disk data with the *Norton Utilities.*

Top 30 SOFTALK POPULARITY WINNER!

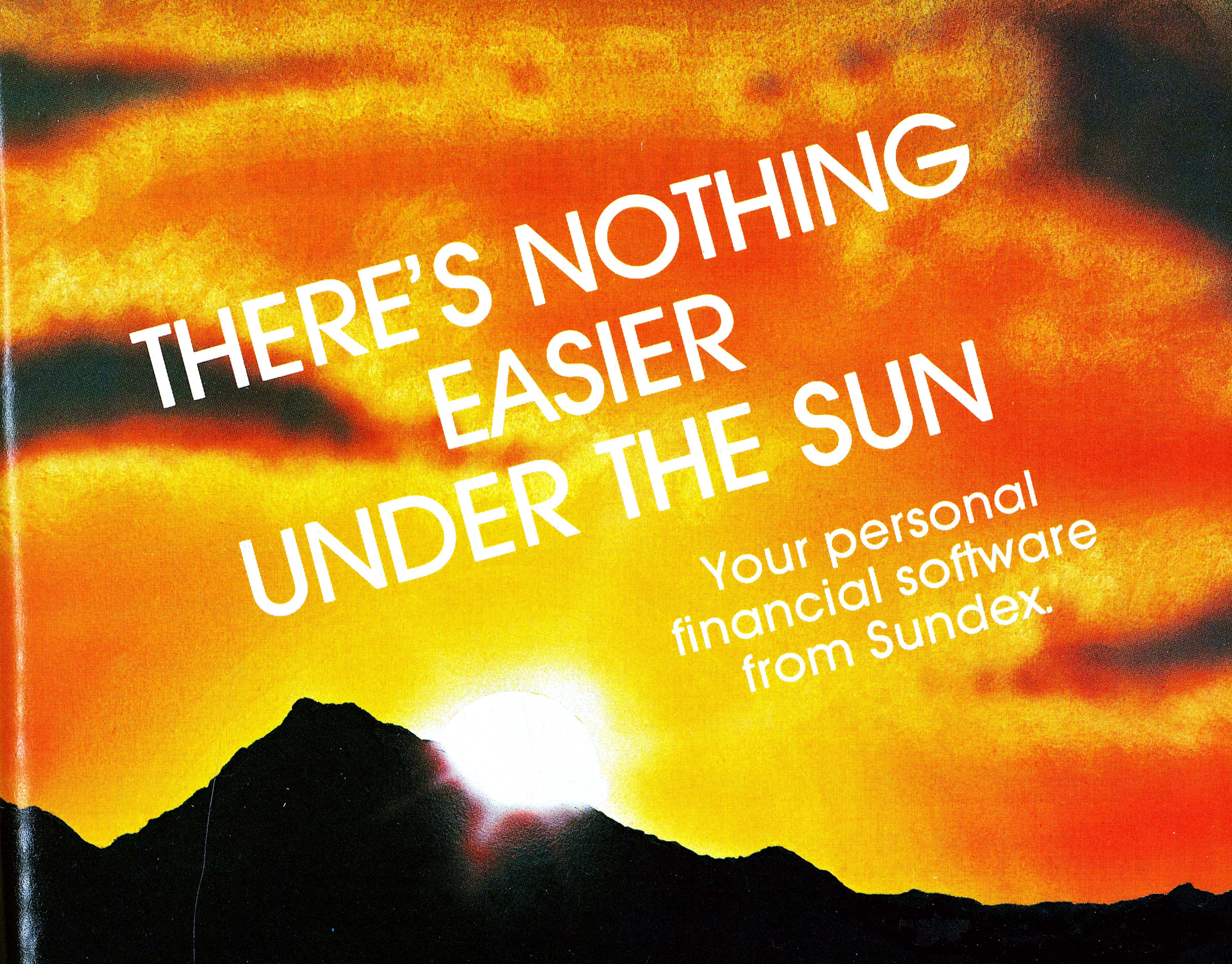
Explore your disks
with the powerful and educational snooping tools
- *map disk formats*
- *Browse through all files*
- *Explore and patch all disks*

Works on **ALL** models of **IBM**
Works on **ALL** versions of **DOS**!

"Nothing short of superb!"
— P.C. Age

You can't afford to be without them!

The Norton Utilities Power Tools for the IBM/PC
Available from ComputerLand, other dealers, and directly from me for $80.00.
Peter Norton 2210 Wilshire Blvd., #186E, Santa Monica, CA 90403
VISA ***PHONE ORDERS — (213) 399-3948*** master charge



IT'S EASY TO LEARN...
EASY TO USE...
AND, DURING OUR SPECIAL PROMOTION...
INCREDIBLY EASY TO BUY!!

- Control your finances and taxes with the Sundex Certified Personal Accountant™ program. With your financial status at your fingertips, easily analyze and manage your finances effectively. It even pays your bills automatically! Normally $99.95 to $149.95.
- Enjoy the ease and security of having your investment records on your Sundex Certified Personal Investor™ program. Ideal for personal portfolio management, analysis, and tax form preparation. Normally $99.95 to $149.95.
- Have fun with the Sundex Personal Payables™ program as it automatically pays all your bills from as many as 10 different checking accounts and prints out your checks. Normally $49.95.

EASY TO LEARN ... EASY TO USE

5 minutes with a Sundex program will show you how "on screen" instructions plus a "HELP" key, make these programs so easy.

DURING OUR "SUNDOWN" PROMOTION ...
INCREDIBLY EASY TO BUY!

Beginning October 31, 1983 and for 14 consecutive weeks, you will find Sundex Software in your local computer store for once-in-a-lifetime prices ...

STARTING AT $19.95 ... BUT,

the prices go up every two weeks, so the sooner you buy the less you pay.

Test this remarkable software yourself. Ask your computer dealer to let you try a Sundex program. Then look for the colorful "Sundex Sundown" display, to find that week's price on the programs you want.

HURRY ... DON'T LET THE SUN GO DOWN ON THIS INCREDIBLE INTRODUCTORY OFFER!

Visit your computer dealer today!

Just call 1-800-835-3243 to find out the name of the dealer nearest you.

THERE'S NOTHING EASIER UNDER THE SUN.

Dealer inquiries welcome:
1-800-835-3243
Colorado: 303-440-3600

Sundex Software Corp.
3000 Pearl Street
Boulder, Colorado 80301

Sundex

Sundex Sundown Promotion
Sundex

IF YOU'RE CONSIDERING CONSIDER

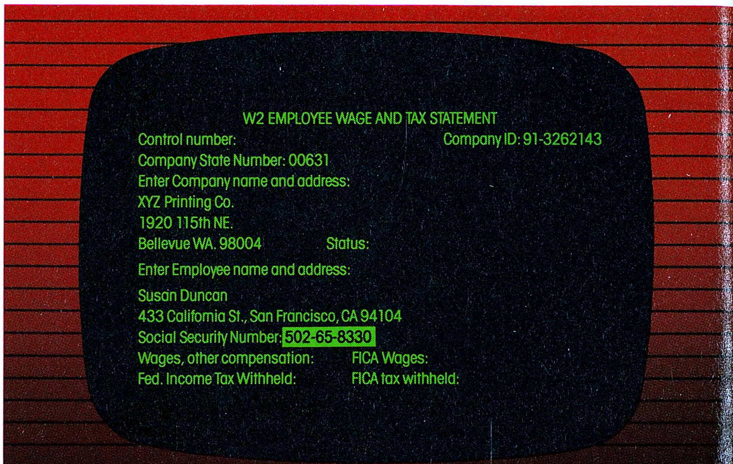
As a knowledgeable personal computer user, you know that there's a world of difference between first generation software products and second. (Think of VisiCalc™ and Lotus 1-2-3,™ for example.)

It's the difference between setting standards. And then raising them.

INTRODUCING R:BASE,™ FROM MICRORIM.™

R:base is the new generation of relational database software. With a combination of capacity, speed and transportability that today's more powerful PC applications need. (Check out the comparisons.)

Not only that, R:base is much simpler to use and learn. So your applications are up in days, instead of weeks. And anyone—computer literate or not—can enter and view data, and generate reports. Just what you would expect from a second generation product.



W2 EMPLOYEE WAGE AND TAX STATEMENT
Control number: Company ID: 91-3262143
Company State Number: 00631
Enter Company name and address:
XYZ Printing Co.
1920 115th NE.
Bellevue WA. 98004 Status:
Enter Employee name and address:
Susan Duncan
433 California St., San Francisco, CA 94104
Social Security Number: 502-65-8330
Wages, other compensation: FICA Wages:
Fed. Income Tax Withheld: FICA tax withheld:

Any form, from a standard W-2 to your company's own invoices, can be created on the screen without any programming at all— a few simple prompts is all it takes.

MANAGING A DATABASE. CONVENIENTLY.

With R:base, it's simple. A series of prompts guides you every step of the way. Which means you don't have to be a programmer to create data entry or report forms just like the ones you're used to using.

As you become more proficient, you'll create shortcuts by customizing menus of stored commands. And print reports as simple or complex as you like at the touch of a key. With R:base, prompted, ad-hoc queries and customized report formatting become the reality that first generation products could only promise!

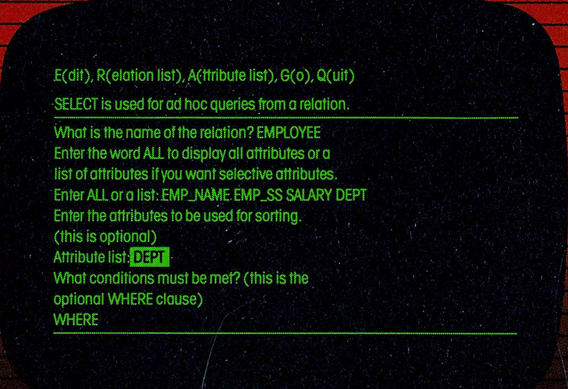
R:base is also very forgiving. It's very hard to make a mistake. That's because commands are simple English expressions—like SELECT, PROJECT, WITH, WHERE, FROM, etc. Dates and dollar amounts are written normally: 11/16/83;

	MAXIMUM RECORDS/ DATABASE	*FILES AVAILABLE CONCUR-RENTLY*	*MAXIMUM NUMBER FIELDS/ DATABASE*	*TIME TO SORT 1000 RECORDS* (MIN: SEC)*	*UPDATE MULTIPLE FILES CON-CURRENTLY*	*PRICE (LIST)*
R:BASE 4000	100 billion	40	400	0:59	Yes	$495
dBASE II	65,535	2	32	5:47	No	$695
CONDOR	32,768	2	127	2:03	No	$650

*Sort 1000 records on 1 key value. (IBM PC with 256K and DS/DD diskettes)

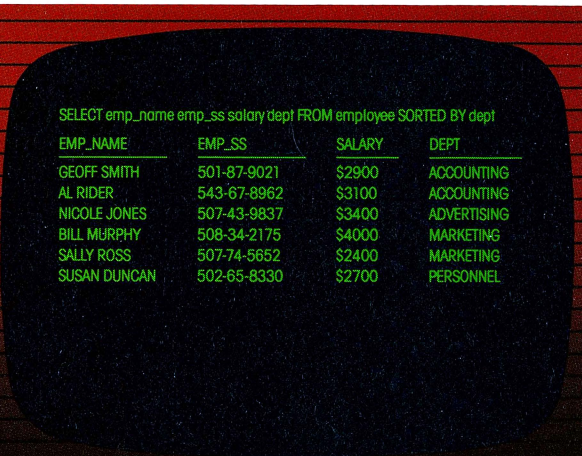
dBASE II is a trademark of Ashton-Tate. VisiCalc is a trademark of VisiCorp. 1-2-3 is a trademark of Lotus. MultiPlan and MS-DOS are trademarks of MicroSoft. CTOS is a trademark of Convergent Technologies. Unix is a trademark of Bell Labs.

PURCHASING dBASE II,™ THIS FIRST.



```
E(dit), R(elation list), A(ttribute list), G(o), Q(uit)
SELECT is used for ad hoc queries from a relation.
------------------------------------------------------------
What is the name of the relation? EMPLOYEE
Enter the word ALL to display all attributes or a
list of attributes if you want selective attributes.
Enter ALL or a list: EMP_NAME EMP_SS SALARY DEPT
Enter the attributes to be used for sorting.
(this is optional)
Attribute list: DEPT
What conditions must be met? (this is the
optional WHERE clause)
WHERE
------------------------------------------------------------
```

New users can also choose to have command prompting. All you do is answer a sequence of plain-English questions by filling in reversed-out fields. R:base does the rest.



```
SELECT emp_name emp_ss salary dept FROM employee SORTED BY dept
EMP_NAME        EMP_SS          SALARY      DEPT
-------------   -------------   ---------   -----------
GEOFF SMITH     501-87-9021     $2900       ACCOUNTING
AL RIDER        543-67-8962     $3100       ACCOUNTING
NICOLE JONES    507-43-9837     $3400       ADVERTISING
BILL MURPHY     508-34-2175     $4000       MARKETING
SALLY ROSS      507-74-5652     $2400       MARKETING
SUSAN DUNCAN    502-65-8330     $2700       PERSONNEL
```

And here's your list. Notice that the command formed by "filling in the blanks" on the previous screen is written out to teach new users about R:base.

$500.00. And, because data entry verification rules are defined up front, you just can't put any "garbage in"—even if you try!

What's more, R:base allows you to sort and select data on up to ten different criteria, perform totals, and then display the results—all with a single, powerful command (see screens).

QUESTIONS? ASK FOR HELP.

The R:base HELP feature provides detailed information that describes every command and process required for complete mastery of the database. (As does our plain-English documentation.) For example, if you're not sure what SELECT does, simply key in HELP SELECT and R:base will tell you what the command does, how it works, even the proper syntax. This way you don't have to keep referring back to the user manual—it's all right there in front of you.

R:base + MULTIPLAN™ = POWER^2

Unlike first generation microdatabases offering the "amazing" capacity of one file and some 60,000 records, R:base literally blows the lid off database size. You may never create an application using forty files with 100 billion records. But with R:base, you can.

Now imagine being able to tap all that power in conjunction with one of the most popular spreadsheet programs on the market today: MultiPlan. R:base is fully compatible with MultiPlan, so you can zip back and forth between programs without cumbersome file manipulation.

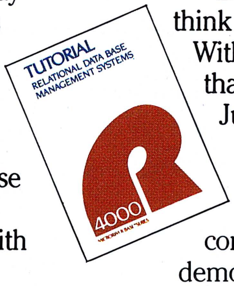
THE R:base PRODUCT FAMILY.

R:base™ 4000 is a single-user relational database (MS-DOS™ version is list $495). R:base™ 6000 is a multi-user version, available early 1984. In addition to MS-DOS, both packages will also be available in CTOS,™ with UNIX™ to follow.

The optional extended ReportWriter™ provides enhanced reporting and calculating capabilities (MS-DOS version is list $150). Program Interface™ is a set of subroutines which allows direct database access from PASCAL or FORTRAN programs (MS-DOS Version is list $395).

And what happens if you've already got dBASE II? Not to worry. It's easy to transfer your files to R:base.

FULL DEMO PACKET, $9.95.

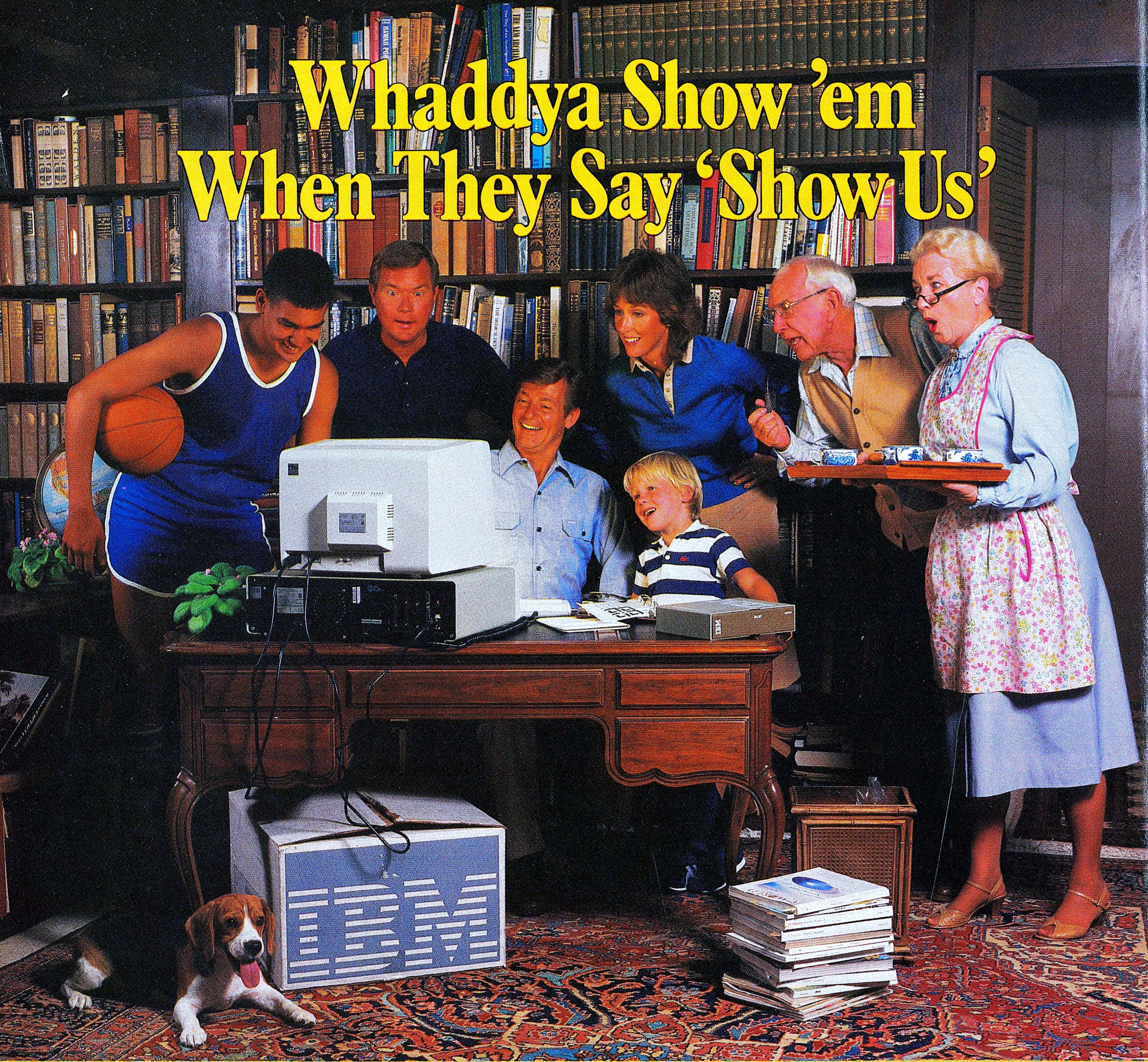


Does all this sound too good to be true? If you think it does, let us prove to you that R:base is for real. With a comprehensive tutorial and demo diskette that will give you convincing hands-on experience. Just call our order desk at (800) 227-6703 (in California, 800-632-7979) and have your VISA or MasterCard number handy.

Better yet, hurry over to your nearest computer or software retailer for an eye-opening demonstration.

MICRORIM™
Relational Information Management

Microrim, Inc.
1750 112th N.E.
Bellevue, WA 98004



Whaddya Show 'em When They Say 'Show Us'

Okay, they all know you just invested in a new IBM Personal Computer. Most of them figure they'll have to get one some day, too. Most of them want to see fireworks. Most of them expect to see a lot of words and numbers. After all, the IBM is a serious machine.

Now, what are you going to show them when they say, "Show us."? Surprise them. Impress them. Impress yourself. Show 'em PC-Showoff.

- Explode bombshells in living color
- Design your own personal rainbows.
- Set off roman candles in 16 colors.

PC-Showoff will turn that mild-mannered machine into a show-stopper. And turn you into a guaranteed crowd pleaser. There's more fun to an IBM than just opening the box. Let PC-Showoff show you how. So the next time the gang asks for a look at your new "toy", show 'em your stuff! And ours. PC-Showoff!

Coming November 15 to a PC near you. Ask your dealer, or order direct. $39.95 plus $2.00 handling.

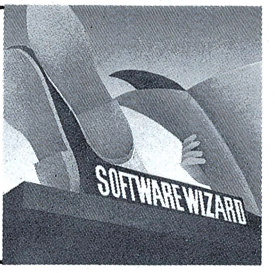
Package includes spectacular visual effects, in high, medium, and low resolution graphics, plus examples of graphics applications on easy-to-use diskette. Also includes manual with over 30 pages of tips and techniques for achieving the same results for both beginning and advanced programmers.

Requires IBM-PC with graphics adaptor, 1 disk drive, 64K and DOS 1.1 or 2.0 (96K with DOS 2.0). Color display or television recommended.

Suite 200, Dept. D, 7192 Kalanianaole Hwy., Honolulu, Hawaii 96825
Telephone: (808) 396-6368

SoftStyle™

tradetalk



Δ **Bruce Zweig,** founder of **Lightning Software** (Palo Alto, CA), has sold Lightning to **Scarborough Systems** (Tarrytown, NY) for cash and royalties equaling seven figures, according to **Sanford Bain,** vice president of marketing at Scarborough. "This was a personal decision about whether I ever wanted to write something again or not. With Lightning I was just too bogged down," Zweig said. In the future he plans to work on several software ideas and may start a new company. Zweig will also serve as a consultant to Scarborough. **Russ Jones,** formerly general manager of Lightning, has become director of West Coast operations for Scarborough and will oversee Lightning's operations in California. Scarborough is a new publisher of educational and productivity software.

Δ The hard disk accounting series from **Great Plains Software** (Fargo, ND) has received the first Good Housekeeping-style "seal of approval" given to a microcomputer software system by the **National Association of Retail Dealers of America.** According to NARDA, the package performs its functions as advertised. The retailers' group is four thousand strong and represents twelve thousand retail outlets.

Δ The corporate communications director for **Techne Software** (Lafayette, CA), **Dr. Michael Weiskopf,** has taken a one-year leave of absence from the company to take up the post of visiting assistant professor of ancient history at Tulane University. An expert on ancient Persia, Weiskopf will teach courses and do research in his field of specialization. Before joining the software firm, Weiskopf was a doctoral student at the University of California, Berkeley. He will keep in contact with the home office and continue to handle relations with the press.

Δ **ABM Computer Systems** (Laguna Hills, CA), a pc add-on manufacturing company, has filed with the SEC for an initial public offering of one million shares at two dollars per share. Underwriter for the stock offering is **Wilson Davis & Company** (Salt Lake City, UT).

Δ **MicroPro International** (San Rafael, CA) has named **H. Glen Haney** president and chief executive officer and **Seymour Rubinstein** chairman of the board of directors. Haney was formerly vice president, business strategy and new markets for Sperry Computer Systems. He brings more than twenty-five years of mainframe and minicomputer experience to his new position. Rubinstein, founder of MicroPro, was the original president and chief executive officer of the company.

Δ World War I was restaged this past August at the Schellville Airport (Sonoma, CA) by **Synapse Software** (Richmond, CA), in promotion of the company's new air combat arcade game, *Blue Max.* One of the events, which included a vintage biplane air show and free rides, was a simulated bombing raid contest. Synapse president **Ihor Wolosenko** and executive president **Ken Grant** withstood wave after wave of attacks from magazine editors in biplanes. The embattled top brass were positioned in a target zone on a dirt airstrip, protected by bales of hay, champagne, and an unloaded machine gun. An editor of *Video Store* magazine won the contest by scoring a direct hit with a loaded flour bag.

Δ **Softsmith,** the distribution arm of **The Software Guild** (Union City, CA), has announced it will begin a six-month test with the nineteen **Waldenbooks** stores in the San Francisco Bay Area. Softsmith will provide initial training to the managers of the nineteen stores, since none of the area outlets has previously carried software. A sales kiosk and opening inventory are part of the deal. "We've always felt that bookstores, both independents and those of major national chains, are natural outlets for the sale of personal computer software," said **Rob Lundgren,** vice president and general manager of Softsmith. "Waldenbooks will give us an excellent chance to prove it." If all goes well, the test program will extend to the "rest of the eight hundred Waldenbooks outlets nationwide."

Δ **Dale Rose** has been appointed national sales manager at **Sirius Software** (Sacramento, CA). Rose assumes responsibility for the management of the company's national distribution network and sales-related activities. He previously spent twelve years in sales and sales management at American Standard.

Δ A video-based tutorial publisher, **Micro-Video Learning Systems** (New York, NY), has announced its move to new headquarters: 119 West Twenty-second Street, New York, NY 10011. The Manhattan digs house the company's full-service video production facility under one roof.

Δ **Educational Computer** magazine (Cupertino, CA) has announced the appointment of **Lynne Stickrod** as director of marketing. Stickrod will be responsible for developing marketing strategy and will be involved in ad design, new programs, ad rep support, and sales. Having taught high school English and history for four years, she has a strong educational background as well as sales and marketing experience.

Δ National and international news from

United Press International (UPI) is now available on **NewsNet** (Bryn Mawr, PA). Business, sports, politics, and news can be monitored and downloaded using the NewsFlash system, a set of keywords denoting areas of interest. When a chosen subject comes on the wire, a match is reported in headline form at sign-on time. Δ NewsNet has also announced the availability of News-a-tron's twice-daily *Petro Futures* newsletter. Each day's report provides cash prices for crude oil, gasoline, propane, and Number 2 heating oil. Analysis of interaction between cash and future markets is included.

Δ **IBM** (Delray Beach, FL) has announced a new authorization program that permits qualified retail software stores to sell IBM's pc software. Previously, only authorized IBM Personal Computer retail dealers, IBM Product Centers, and IBM market reps could sell the software. **Softwaire Centres International** (Los Angeles, CA) is one of the first outside dealerships to qualify under the new program. Several Softwaire Centre locations are now authorized IBM Personal Computer software dealers. Δ **American Training International** (Manhattan Beach, CA) has signed with IBM to market the company's interactive computer training software through IBM Product Centers, IBM's National Accounts Division, and its National Marketing Division.

Δ Some distributor action at **Lotus Development Corporation** (Cambridge, MA): **Compuserve** (Vancouver, B.C.) has been signed as sole distributor to retail outlets in Canada, including ComputerLand. The distributor is one of the largest in Canada, selling to more than four hundred dealers. Δ **Micro D** (Fountain Valley, CA) and **Softeam** (Culver City, CA) have been added to the company's U.S. distribution network. Softeam distributes to more than twenty-five hundred independent computer software dealers.

Δ Four sales regions covering the United States and Canada have been established by **Enter Computing** (San Diego, CA), in a move to decentralize the company's tech training and support. Reporting directly to company president **David Purcell** are four newly appointed regional sales managers: **Robert Sherwood,** West; **John Merris,** Midwest; **Sanford Dean,** Southeast; and **Robert Curtis,** New England. The four regions also support those Canadian provinces that border them.

Δ **Softeam** (Culver City, CA) has signed with **Business Software Pty. Ltd.** (Chastwood N.S.W., Australia) to manufacture and distribute the latter's financial software in America. The two packages, *Planfin* and *Profin,* will be featured products in this month's Future Star dealer program.

Δ **Daniel B. Rosenthal** has joined **Techland Systems** (New York, NY) as vice president of finance. Rosenthal was former director of corporate finance planning at Sperry & Hutchinson. His first duty is to implement a complete financial control system on the company's in-house network of pcs.

Δ **VisiCorp** (San Jose, CA) has acquired worldwide rights to the *StretchCalc* program and technology from **Multisoft** (Beaverton, OR). The program had previously been marketed independently as an enhancement to *VisiCalc.* "This enables VisiCorp to further strengthen its leadership position in electronic spreadsheet software. The combined capabilities of the two programs result in a level of price and performance that is clearly superior," according to **Bruce Shafer,** Multisoft president.

Δ Two packages from **Continental Software** (Los Angeles, CA) will be marketed in modified form for junior high school, high school, university, and adult education classes by **South-Western Publishing** (Cincinnati, OH). Both companies consider the educational market an important area of growth; it's Continental's first venture into the realm. *Home Accountant* and *Tax Advantage* disks modified to include teacher instruction, student workbook manuals, and a teacher's manual will be part of the educational repackaging.

Δ The *TK!Solver* package from **Software Arts** (Wellesley, MA) has gone international, having been shipped to distributors in the U.K., New Zealand, Australia, Sweden, and Canada. These distributors in turn will shoot the problem-solving software off to dealers in Ireland, West Germany, Holland, Italy, France, Norway, Finland, and Denmark. Sections of documentation will be translated as necessary. Marketing support reps will be traveling the Continent conducting demos and sales training programs.

Δ **Integral Data Systems** (Boston, MA), a leading manufacturer of microcomputer printers, reached a corporate milestone as it delivered its one hundred thousandth printer. The color printer was presented to **ComputerLand of Boston,** which in turn donated it to Boston's **Cotting School for Handicapped Children.** The school will use it in its computer sciences program for elementary and secondary students. It is their first color printer.

Δ **Source Telecomputing** (McLean, VA) has contracted with **Uninet**, a major telecommunications network, to provide long-distance services for members of the company's videotext service, the Source. Local access in thirty-six cities previously not served by other networks will help accommodate the two thousand new members joining the Source each month. New cities now serviced include Babylon, NY; Cape Canaveral, FL; Sheboygan, WI; and Pomona, CA. ▲

Business Managers,
If you have to ask

WHAT IF...?

when making business management decisions, you need Bottomline V.

for MULTIPLAN™ on the IBM™ personal computer
Bottomline V

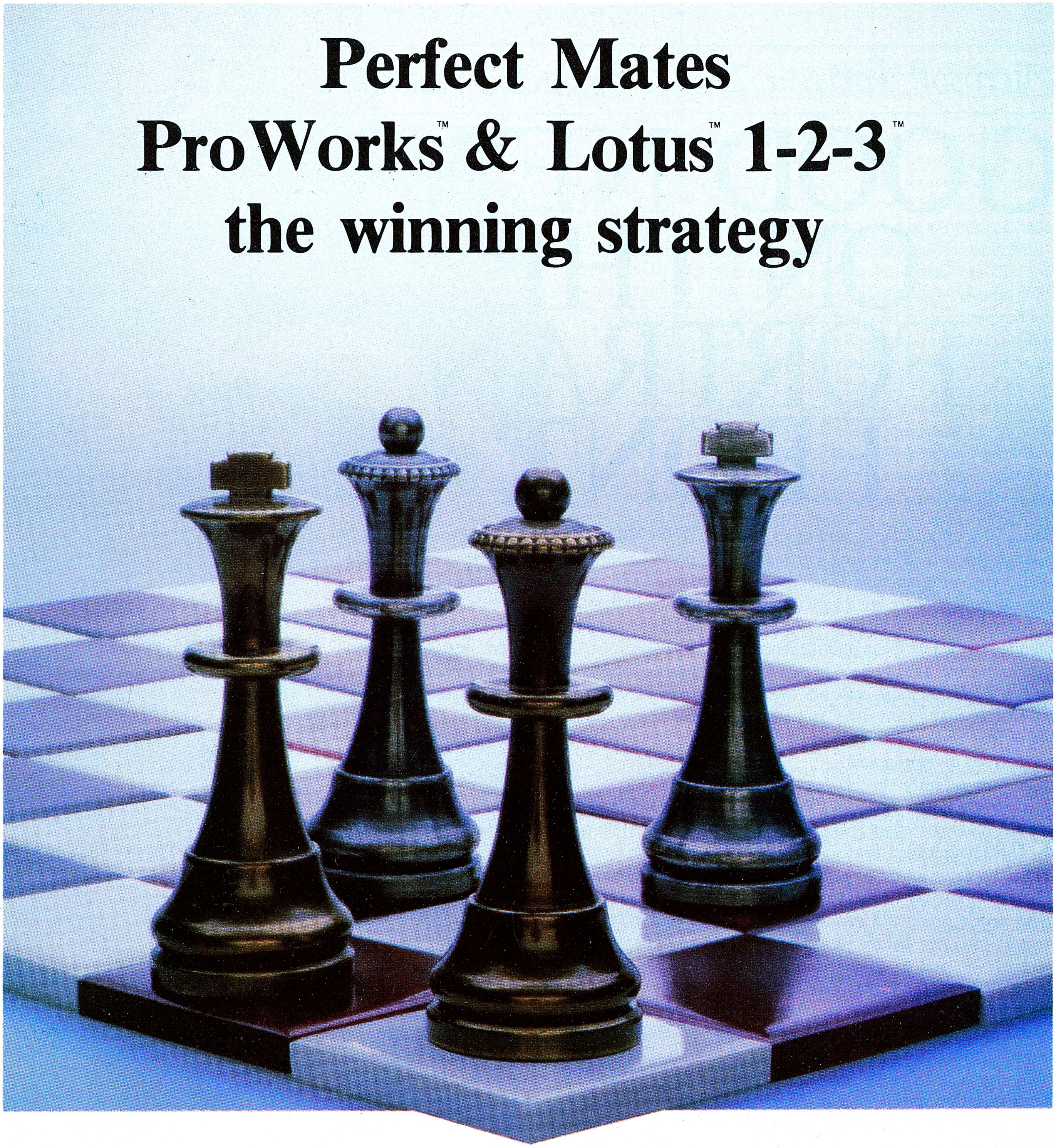
When you are preparing a budget, arranging for a loan, planning production, forecasting cash flow or other business management functions, you are going to have questions. Decisions involving a look at long-range information are difficult. Variables affect the entire financial picture. With Bottomline V, just enter your data and a logically integrated financial analysis will result.

Bottomline V is a ready-to-use management tool that allows you to integrate income statements, balance sheets, sources and uses of cash, or other pertinent data for instant analysis.

Bottomline V

For use with the following personal computer spreadsheets: MULTIPLAN™ on the IBM™ personal computer, SuperCalc™ on the Osborne,™ VisiCalc™ on the Apple,™ and other systems soon to be announced.

A $6,000 plus value retailing for $295.00.
Ask your local dealer for a demo today.
Or call direct: Strategic Software Systems, Inc., 1300 Dove Street, Suite 200, Newport Beach, CA 92660. Telephone (714) 476-2842.



ProWorks™ means new solutions to old problems. ProWorks and Lotus' 1-2-3™ combine for the winning strategy—a strategy that marries the raw power of 1-2-3 with the consistency, speed, and flexibility of ProWorks. They're the perfect mates, saving you valuable time that can be focused on analyses and solutions—today, not next week. Instead of spending time setting up and building models, use the strategy that wins—ProWorks, business and personal applications for today's professional.

ProWorks™ software series includes:
Executive Assistant, Key Business Measures, and Business Forecasting.

Reston Computer Group
Reston Publishing Company, Inc.
A Prentice-Hall Company
11480 Sunset Hills Road
Reston, Virginia 22090

For more information call us at:
(800) 336-0338

ProWorks is a trademark of Reston Publishing Company.
1-2-3 is a trademark of Lotus Development Corporation.

©Reston Publishing Company, Inc.

Microsoft Fortran 77 *by Jack Wilschke*

GOOD NEWS ON THE FORTRAN FRONT

Pascal, Modula, Ada, C, and other "modern" languages notwithstanding, Fortran is still a vital, living programming language with a strong following. There are a good many reasons for its continuing vitality, including but not limited to the fact that a quarter century of programming has already been invested in the language. Probably more code has been written in Fortran than in any other language, and much of that code is available for incorporation into your own programs.

But until recently the programmer who wanted to use Fortran on the IBM Personal Computer had a variety of frustrations to deal with. There hadn't been a satisfactory Fortran compiler available for the pc—until the release of Microsoft's Fortran 77 Version 3.1 last May.

This article presents a review of the new Microsoft compiler. Before we get to the details, however, and to comparisons between this compiler and the earlier versions of Fortran for the pc, we need to review the history of Fortran and establish some criteria for evaluating a Fortran compiler.

IBM developed Fortran in the mid-fifties and released the first version in April 1957. Fortran I was followed in 1958 by Fortran II and, in the early sixties, by Fortran IV (Fortran III got lost inside IBM).

Fortran was the first language standardized by the American Standards Association (later called the American National Standards Institute, ANSI) Committee X3.4. The standard that was produced, ANS X3.9-1966 (Fortran 66), roughly matched IBM's Fortran IV. In the seventies, an enhanced standard, ANSI X3.1978 (Fortran 77), was produced by the ANSI X3J3 Technical Committee. Fortran 77 provides enhanced I/O and structure capabilities as well as a character data type similar to strings in Basic. IBM supports this standard on its large computers as VS Fortran.

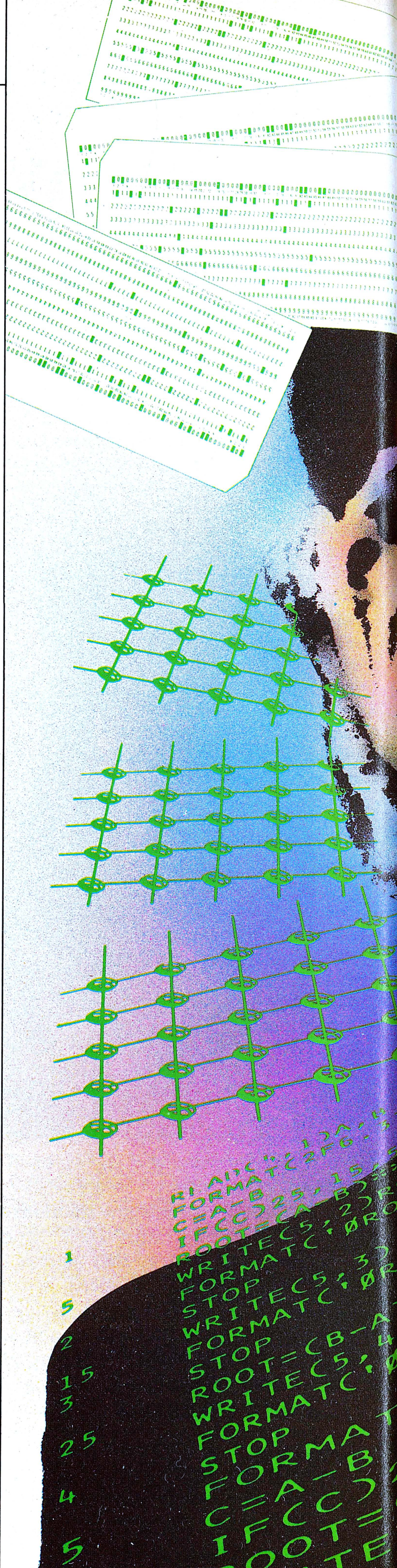
Fortran is currently used in industry, engineering, and academia. Almost all computers, from minis on up, have at least one version of Fortran available.

What Makes a Good Fortran Compiler?

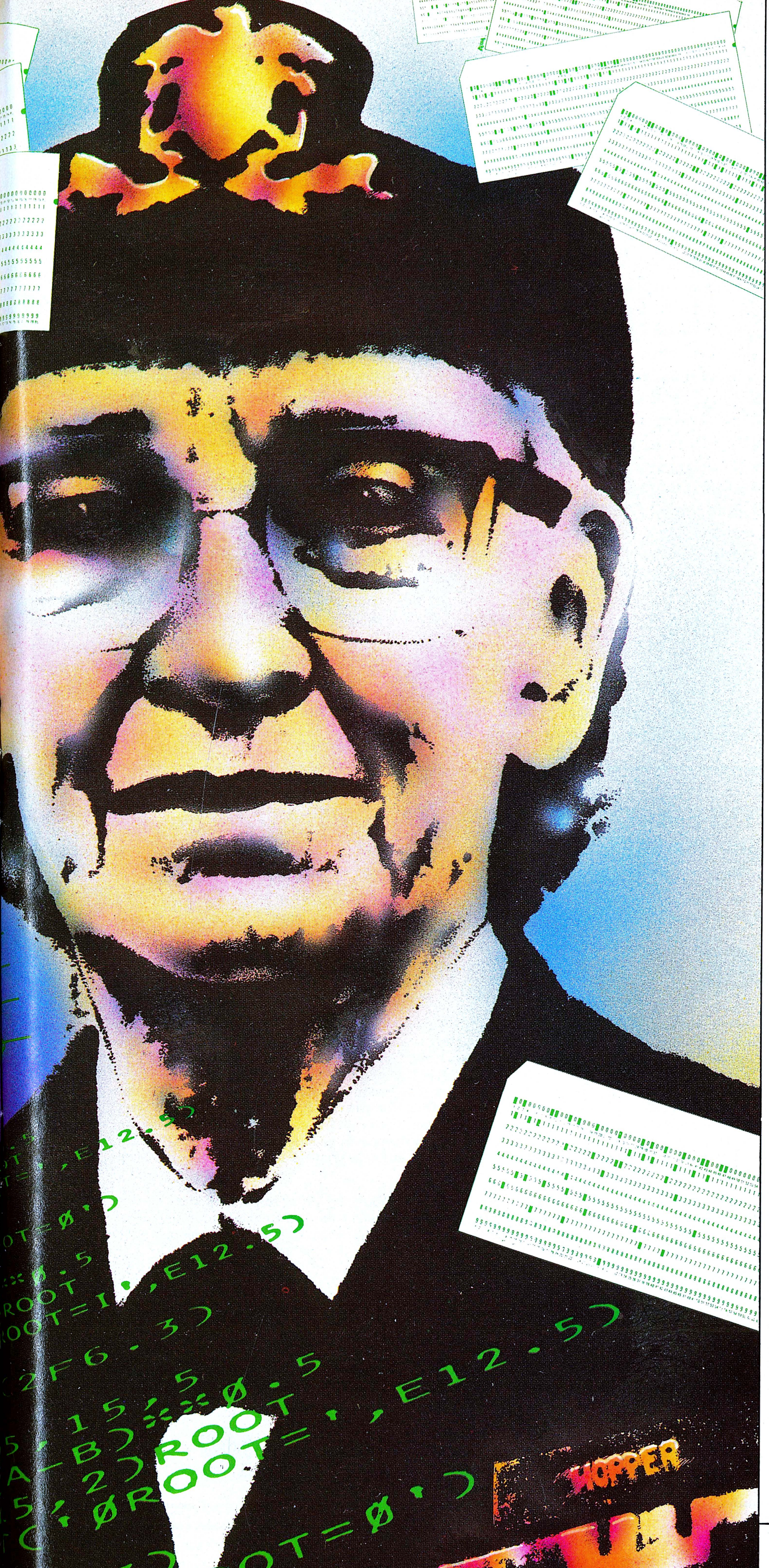
Standardization. The language accepted by the compiler should be as close as possible to a standard Fortran. It should match either the 66 or the 77 standard (preferably the 77). There is a huge amount of code out there that you can avoid redeveloping if you have a standard compiler. And wouldn't it be nice if that program you sweated blood over on your pc would also compile on a PDP/11 or an IBM 3081?

High Precision. Your Fortran compiler should allow you to use double-precision numbers—numbers accurate to fourteen or fifteen decimal places instead of the six or seven provided by single-precision numbers. Even a small business may have to add beyond 99999.99, and no one wants pennies to start disappearing as numbers are rounded off. Also, remember that when you subtract one number from a nearly equal second number using single-precision variables, you may lose a lot of significant figures; 12345.6 minus 12340.0, for example, leaves you with 5.6, a number of only two-place precision.

Fast, Efficient Machine Code. The larger



Although the first version of Fortran was released by IBM in 1957, the work of Grace Murray Hopper in the early '50s led to its creation. Hopper developed the first compiler, A-0, in 1952 and the first compiler to handle symbolic manipulation, A-2, in 1953. Based on her work with these compilers, Hopper completed the first English language data processing compiler, B-0 (Flowmatic), in 1957, which proved to be the foundation on which Fortran was developed.



your program, the faster you will need the machine to work. Since the pc is not the fastest computer in the world, your compiler should help by providing the most efficient possible machine code. And since a number-crunching program spends most of its time adding, subtracting, and so on, the compiler should be able to use the 8087 numeric coprocessor powerhouse that IBM has finally announced (we all knew that socket would be used some day).

Control over the Environment. The compiler and/or operating system should allow you to have control over your microcomputer environment. Provisions should be available to handle input from the keyboard and output to the screen and printers. Control of the cursor should be available, and graphics capability is becoming more important all the time. You should be able to link your programs to other routines written in assembly language or maybe even other languages. Disk files should provide the ability to pass data on to other programs not necessarily written in Fortran.

Large Program and Data Area Size. Fortran was designed to do large amounts of numerical calculations. These calculations could give an answer to an algebraic problem or a position on a display, or even the scores and averages of your bowling team. In any case, large amounts of memory could be required for both the program and the data you want to crunch. A Fortran program should allow you to use that 256K or more that you paid good money to put in your pc.

Good Documentation. A compiler cannot be used to its fullest extent if the programmer doesn't know what it can and can't do. The documentation must explain any nonstandard parts of the implementation as well as any of the compiler's limitations. Examples of the compiler's use are essential, as is a full description of all errors and their probable causes.

Earlier Fortrans for the pc

For comparison, let's review some of the other Fortran compilers available for the pc.

IBM Fortran Version 1.0. As the original creator of Fortran, Big Blue should be turning red with embarrassment. Their first Fortran compiler for the pc should never have been allowed on the market. At last count there were forty-five (yes, 45) pages of known errors with patches or ways to work around the problems. Those of you who were unfortunate enough to have purchased Fortran 1.0 can get an already patched update, but you have to know to ask your dealer for it.

Here are some of the remaining problems.

No double precision. Although IBM's Basic has it, it's not provided in Fortran, a language that deals in high precision.

Real number format incompatible with the 8087. Even if the compiler had the capability to use the 8087 (which it doesn't), the compiler doesn't use the IEEE standard format to store its real (floating-point) numbers. Since the 8087 requires the IEEE format, access to the 8087 by this compiler would be impeded by numeric format conversions. MicroWare (Box 79, Kingston, MA 02364) does offer routines that would allow use of the 8087, but even they admit that the usefulness of these routines is limited by the compiled code's structure. As a historical note, Fortran I was developed to take advantage of one of the first computers to have floating-point hardware, the IBM 704.

Poor communication between keyboard and program. IBM provides a patch to allow you to input data without filling in the exact number of digits expected. However, your cursor still has to be exactly at the right place on the screen.

Poor documentation of defaults. Many users were unaware that the compiler was generating up to two-thirds more code than was necessary. Unless a *$NoDebug* metacommand is used, special debugging code is inserted with every statement, as a means of tracking errors. Four-byte integers are provided by default, even though two-byte integers are usually sufficient and can be processed many times faster. Much of the frustration experienced by early users of this compiler must have been due to these overlooked penalties (see table 1).

Inefficient code. Even with all the correct options set, the compiler still produces inefficient code. IBM Fortran programs can run more than three times slower than the equivalent compiled Basic programs (see table 2).

SuperSoft Fortran IV Extended (Version 1.04). A much more interesting contender as a pc Fortran compiler is the product by SuperSoft. It could be the most efficient Fortran compiler available for the IBM pc. The compiler does offer double precision as well as complex numbers (complex numbers are very powerful tools for solving problems in such areas as electrical engineering). It also has the IEEE real-number format and supports the 8087 coprocessor. This gives it the potential for producing the fastest-running programs of any Fortran compiler. In addition, the libraries supplied contain a variety of subroutine utilities that allow direct access to the system and memory as well as cursor and screen-attribute control.

However, there are flaws that need correction before the SuperSoft compiler can really be considered for many applications.

The compiler limits data space to 64K. This includes all common data (data shared between subroutines), local variables (those used only inside a subroutine), format definition statements (for input and output), the stack (for transfer of data between subroutines), and the heap (file control blocks). With even moderately sized programs, the 64K limitation could be frustrating.

Perhaps this compiler's most serious problem is that it isn't close to being a standard Fortran. Although it calls itself a Fortran IV (66), it has included some, but not all, of the Fortran 77 enhancements. Fortran 77 features, such as Character data, must be manipulated by subroutine calls rather than by the standard operators. The interactive List Directed I/O and error handling are also not 77-standard. In addition, the compiler's lack of a four-byte integer might necessitate extensive reprogramming of older programs.

SuperSoft says it will provide a later version that will overcome several of these problems. It will be very interesting to compare that revised compiler with Microsoft's.

UCSD p-Code Fortran. For two reasons, the Fortran for the UCSD p-System is not in the same class with the other Fortran compilers under consideration here. First, it operates under the UCSD system, which is not the de facto standard for the IBM pc. Second, UCSD Fortran incurs an efficiency penalty by compiling only to the level of p-code.

A REPORTING SYSTEM FOR A SPREADSHEET DATABASE
(for any VisiCalc© or Lotus 1-2-3™ User)

Most database systems consider rows of data fields as records. The 3-D concept promoted by Abacus says to consider an entire report as a record. Therefore, visualize "pages" of reports stacked-on or scattered-around your desk; these would constitute your database.

VIZ-A-MERGE™

With Viz-A-Merge (Namely-A-Merge System) you can "cut and paste" sections of spreadsheet reports together to form new reports - - - Electronically!!! As a spreadsheet utility Viz-A-Merge allows you to combine sections, rows, columns, or single cells from any number of spreadsheet pages into one new report, or into an existing report, then recalculate selected formulas. For example, you could "cut" total year end columns from Department reports and the consolidated reports, then "paste" them together for overall company analysis. Or, you could place a total sales row into an income statement and recalculate all formulas.

VIZ-A-CON™

With Viz-A-Con (Namely-A-Consolidation System) you can add 3-Dimensional capability to your spreadsheet program. As a Report Writer to your database, Viz-A-Con allows you to select records ("pages"), get sub-totals and totals for all number fields, and have customized labels on the final report. For example you can perform hierarchical consolidations (Dept., Div., Company) or time period roll-up (Day, Week, Month, Qtr., Year). You can consolidate up to 50 files in one process and you can tie together as many as 80 processes in one group. Then play "what if" with VisiCalc and regenerate all reports in one single step.

Each Product has a simple Question & Answer procedure to assist you in organizing your report processes. You can create a complete reporting network from a spreadsheet database. They have the ability to "remember" the steps they went through to create the final reports. You can use your spreadsheet program to recalculate new data, then use our products to regenerate all new reports in one single step. Also, you can set-up special formulas to calculate additional data fields within the new reports. You can customize titles, row and column headings, footnotes, etc. for each report.

Both products include sample sessions which are easy to understand, allowing the average person to learn them in only 15 minutes. They are both compatible with dBase II™ (IBM), PFS Graph® and a host of popular products.

Abacus Associates is dedicated to producting products that allow users to create customized reporting systems tailored to the way they manually organize their data.

Please order either Viz-A-Merge or Viz-A-Con directly from Abacus Associates. Send your check or money order to Abacus Associates, 6565 W. Loop South, Suite 240, Bellaire, TX 77401, or credit card customers may CALL TOLL FREE (800) 547-5995, ext. 170. In Nebraska, (800) 642-9606, ext.170.

Apple II, II+, IIe, TRS-80 I, III, IV .... $ 99.95
Apple III, TRS-80 II/12/16, IBM-PC $139.95
Add $3.95 S & H per package.

VISA MasterCard AMERICAN EXPRESS

Look for forthcoming 3-D application templates

KRAFT PREMIUM

JOYSTICK

For Apple II, IBM PC, TRS-80 Color*

TAKE COMMAND!

Kraft puts total mastery of home computer games at your command. Only Kraft gives you:

- PRECISION LINEAR POTENTIOMETERS for more accurate cursor control and quicker response.
- TOGGLE SWITCHES for instant selection of "spring-centering" or "free-floating" operation.
- PATENTED STICK MECHANISM for smooth, fingertip control.
- DUAL-AXIS TRIM CONTROLS for fine tuning joystick to individual software.
- TWO FIRE BUTTONS, conveniently placed for fast action.

The Kraft difference is advanced engineering. Kraft's high-performance design features are the result of intensive, on-going research — and backed by over twenty years manufacturing experience.

Color coordinated, plug-in Kraft Premium Joysticks are suitable for game, business and graphics software. Take command with Kraft computer products . . . you can feel the difference. Ask your retailer about our complete line of computer products.

All Kraft computer peripherals carry a FULL 1-YEAR LIMITED WARRANTY.

KRAFT

KRAFT SYSTEMS COMPANY, 450 W. California Ave., Vista CA 92083
A division of Carlisle Corporation since 1972

---

*Apple II, IBM and TRS-80 are trademarks of Apple Computers, Inc., International Business Machines Corp. and Tandy Corp. respectively.

Microsoft Fortran 77 Version 3.1

In May, Microsoft released version 3.1 of their Fortran 77 compiler. While not ideal, version 3.1 does provide the essentials in a Fortran compiler. It requires at least 116K of RAM plus space for DOS. Thus if you're using DOS 2.0, you need at least 160K.

MS-Fortran 3.1's language is very similar to that offered by the original IBM Fortran compiler. It even retains many of the same metacommands for control of the compiler options. Thus if you have developed a program for the IBM version, it should compile almost immediately with MS-Fortran 3.1.

The documentation gives a useful description of the limitations imposed on the language by the segmented addressing scheme of the 8088. No main program or subroutine can be larger than 64K. No named common block can be larger than 64K, and the storage space for all the local variables, blank common, format definitions, the stack, and the heap cannot total more than 64K. However, if you break your program up into subroutines of moderate size and use named common blocks, programs and data space can be as large as your available memory.

Access to the 8087. One of the most important features of this compiler is that it uses the IEEE floating-point number format and allows access to the 8087 coprocessor. In fact, Microsoft was so concerned about implementing the 8087 that they gave the programmer a confusing number of ways to get to it.

First, if you do not have an 8087, your program has to call a library subroutine to do such things as add, subtract, or multiply real numbers. The most efficient way is for the compiler to insert into your code a call to the appropriate subroutine. However, it is not most efficient to use a subroutine if you do have an 8087. In order for your program to use the 8087, it has to interrupt the 8088. This is best done with an interrupt command.

Microsoft has given you the option to select at compile time which method you want to use. You can use either method, whether or not you have the 8087. The libraries will compensate if you choose the "wrong" method. However, if you use the wrong method for the configuration of your machine, you can pay a penalty in execution time and program size. The recommended method is to use subroutine calls if you don't have an 8087 (use the metacommand *$NoFloatCalls*) and interrupts if you do (the default).

Your next decision occurs at link time. All compiled programs must be linked to a set of utility subroutines that are contained in a library. These routines handle some very important functions, such as initialization of programs; input/output to the keyboard, screen, printer, and disk drives; and real-number calculations. You have two choices with the Microsoft Fortran libraries. You can link with an 8087 library (Fortran.L87), which requires that you have an 8087 installed. That will give you the smallest program. Or you can link with the emulator library (Fortran.Lem). The latter approach allows you to run your program on any pc. If the pc has an 8087, your program will use it. If it doesn't have an 8087, then your program will carry the extra baggage of unused real-number routines. That may be a small price to pay for the versatility this method allows.

The 8087 speeds up real-number calculations (including real functions such as *sqrt, sin,* and *cos*) tremendously. However, most programs do a lot of other things in addition to

COMPILER COMPARISONS

One of the tests of a compiler is to run a benchmark program on it and on several others. A benchmark program called the Whetstone test was run on the compilers discussed in this article. The program was developed by two British researchers, B.A. Wichmann and H.J. Curnow, based upon Wichmann's statistical analysis of 949 Algol 60 programs. It attempts to do a cross section of integer and real number calculations in a variety of loops and subroutine calls with scalar and array variables. The results presented in the following table show the relative speed of this program as measured in thousands of Whetstone instructions per second. These tests were run as part of a Desktop Computer Study completed in July 1983 by the Douglas Aircraft Company, Long Beach, California.

	.OBJ size Bytes	.EXE size Bytes	Speed 1000 Whetstone Instr/sec
Standard defaults	14681	47744	3.43
With 2-byte integers	12244	45440	3.88
With 2-byte integers and NoDebug on	8797	42880	6.33

Table 1. IBM Fortran Compiler 1.0 Option Comparison

COMPILER/INTERPRETER	.OBJ size Bytes	.EXE size Bytes	Speed 1000 Whetstone Instr/sec
IBM Basic interpreter 2.0	—	—	1.64
Compiled IBM Basic 1.0	5988	22144	21.27
IBM Fortran 1.0	8797	42880	6.33
SuperSoft Fortran IV 1.04 w/o 8087	8832	24832	12.37
Microsoft Fortran 3.1 Subroutine calls w/o 8087	8734	43340	4.30
Microsoft Fortran 3.1 Interrupt Calls with the 8087	8368	33356	72.80

Table 2. Compiler Comparison

numeric calculations. Some time is spent moving numbers from one location to another and doing branching or looping. So even if your program is 95 percent numeric calculation and even if your calculations are performed with infinite speed by the 8087, you'll see only a twentyfold improvement. Benchmark trials typically record speed improvement by factors of 5 to 20. You should expect very small programs that do a lot of calculating to run ten to twenty times faster; for larger programs that do a lot of data moving and other nonnumeric work, a much more modest improvement is likely. Thus the 8087 cannot solve all speed problems, and compiler efficiency is still important.

One benefit of the 8087 is its ability to use double-precision numbers. As previously discussed, accuracy can be lost in calculations if they are imprudently programmed. One way to protect against this loss of accuracy is to use double precision. However, if you were to do double precision without the 8087, you would slow your calculations by at least a factor of four, as well as incur the overhead of moving eight-byte numbers around instead of four-byte numbers. The 8087 does all of its calculations in ten-byte precision. Thus the user of the 8087 incurs only the penalty of moving the larger numbers around in memory. For a benchmark program this amounted to only a 30 percent increase in time (see table 4).

COMPILER	Execution time (minutes)
IBM Fortran 1.0	91 (1-1/2 hours!)
SuperSoft Fortran IV 1.04 w/o 8087	Unable to compile.
Microsoft Fortran 3.1 Subroutine calls w/o 8087	30
Microsoft Fortran 3.1 Interrupt Calls with the 8087	6.2

Table 3. Large Program Comparison (90K code + 100K data)

Microsoft Fortran 3.1 Interrupt Calls with the 8087	Speed 1000 Whetstone Instr/sec
Single precision	72.80
Double precision	55.19

Table 4. Double-precision Comparison

MACHINE/COMPILER	Speed 1000 Whetstone Instr/sec
IBM PC+8087 Microsoft Fortran 3.1 Interrupt Calls	72.8
PDP 11/34 RSX11M F77 Floating Point Hardware MOS memory	181.0
PDP 11/44 RSX11M F77 Floating Point Hardware MOS memory	252.9
VAX 11/780 VMS FORT Floating Point Hardware	668.3

Table 5. IBM pc versus Minis Comparison

Other Features. The file system used by MS-Fortran allows types of files in addition to those provided by Basic. Where Basic requires all sequential files to be formatted (numbers stored as ASCII characters) and random-access files to be unformatted (numbers stored as they are internally in the computer), MS-Fortran allows both formatted and unformatted files to be sequential or random access. In addition, there is a binary type that stores data without any formatting or record structure at all. Sequential files can be opened for both reading and writing at the same time.

The next major feature of the Microsoft Fortran compiler is its ability to interface with the microcomputer environment. The interactive input/output capability is called list-directed I/O and conforms to the Fortran 77 standards. While certain languages, such as Basic, started with a simple I/O scheme where the computer did most of the work, Fortran always used to require the programmer to provide format statements, similar to the print-using commands of Basic. These format statements not only defined how a given output would look on a printer or screen but also required the input to be at given column locations on a punched card or on a screen. Thus a program user could not type in a list of inputs separated by blanks or commas.

All that changed when the 77 standard was introduced, and the ability to free-format both the input and output became part of the language. Microsoft's extensions to this standard also allow the operator to input to the same screen line where a prompt message appears. In addition, MS-Fortran's ability to assign the correct format to the output at execution time provides text-presentation capabilities beyond those expected in a "scientific" language.

The greatest flaw in Fortran, its lack of cursor and screen-attribute control, has been overcome by PC-DOS 2.0. If a Config.sys file containing a *device = ansi.sys* command is available when the system is started, characters sent to the screen are intercepted. They are then interpreted as screen-control commands if they are preceded by an escape code (ASCII 27). This procedure is similar to sending escape codes to the printer for format and option control. By this method, a Fortran program can send codes to clear the screen, position the cursor, and change the text color and type.

It is also possible to change the display from forty to eighty characters and go into graphics mode. It is unclear whether actual graphics can be done without special subroutines, but such subroutines should be available from independent sources in the near future. Thus the power that Basic provides to manipulate the screen is now available in any language that allows the transmission of escape codes.

Disappointments. One of the major shortcomings of MS-Fortran is that it does not include the character-manipulation operators that are called out in the full Fortran 77 language. The ability to concatenate character variables or manipulate substrings has not been provided. You can do these manipulations crudely by using the internal file feature to write data out to memory and then selectively read it back in under a different format. This method is clumsy at best and is no match for the convenience and power of the ANSI 77 operators.

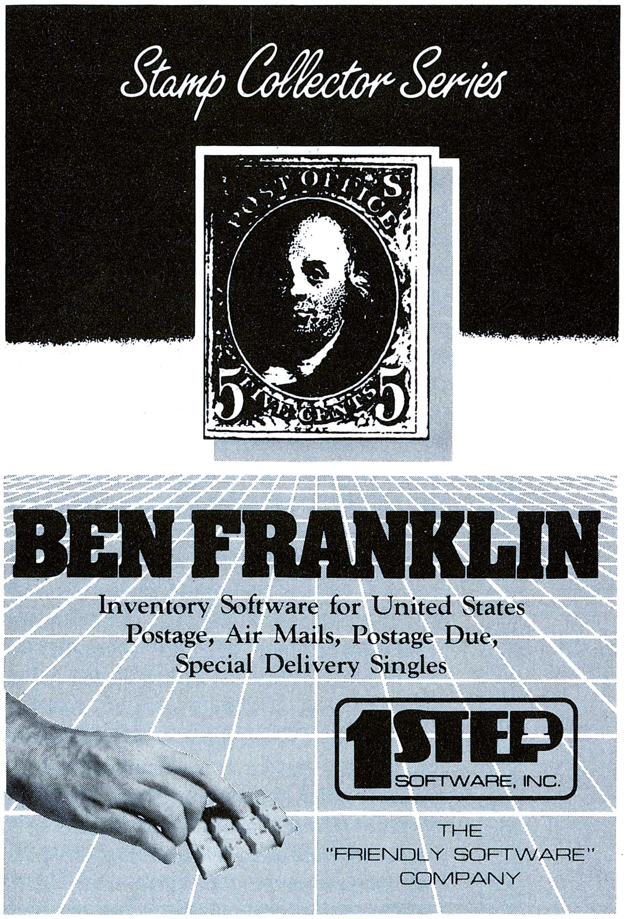
There is a paradox that cannot yet be explained. For a short program the Microsoft compiler produced code that ran as much as 20 to 30 percent slower than the same code produced on the old IBM compiler. However, for a large program that uses 90K of code and 100K of data, the Microsoft compiler produced a program that ran three times faster than the IBM-compiled version. All these comparisons were run without use of the 8087 coprocessor. Since the SuperSoft compiler is still approximately twice as fast as either IBM or Microsoft for the benchmark programs, there still seems to be room for improvement (see tables 2 and 3).

One feature that never seems to get enough attention is error messages. Microsoft has not set any new standards in this respect. The manual lists eight pages of compile-time errors, none of which have more than eight words of explanation! While some explanations are sufficient, most are not. It would be very helpful to the beginning programmer if the documentation gave a fuller description of the error (and maybe even an example). Why do they think we all grew up programming and automatically know what "FORCES LOCATION IN NEGATIVE DIRECTION" means? Any document meant for the microcomputer market has to assume a wide variation in user knowledge and must provide better error documentation. In addition, a flaw that all the microcomputer Fortran compilers seem to share is a failure to check for format statement errors at compile time. They don't even check for the required parentheses until you have your program running.

The MS-Fortran documentation is very helpful in getting you started with the compiler. You are given examples of the use of the compiler and linker, as well as excellent advice on staying within code and data size limitations. A section on linking Fortran programs to assembly language and to MS-Pascal subroutines is provided, along with a description of the file and library structure.

The second section of the documentation is a reference guide to the Fortran language as implemented by this compiler. It is just a reference, and, although good, it does not teach you Fortran. Other texts are referenced for those wanting to know more about the language itself.

Summary. Microsoft has come out with the first Fortran 77 compiler that takes advantage of the full addressing capability of the 8088 and the power of the 8087. It allows the IBM pc to compare quite favorably with minicomputers of much higher cost (see table 5). One can only hope that some further improvements in the basic efficiency of the non-8087 code can be provided. Shortcomings notwithstanding, Microsoft has given the pc owner access to twenty-six years of programming history by providing a workable Fortran. ▲



Never Write Your Stamp Inventory List Again!

COMPUTERIZE YOUR STAMP COLLECTION WITH ONE STEP!

Now with the new BEN FRANKLIN® Stamp Collectors Series Program* you can keep your collection in Scott Number order and use one main menu to step you through the system. The inventory information for each stamp entry includes the Scott Number, quantity (up to 999), condition of stamp (9 different ones), price paid ($99999.99), and date purchased (MM/DD/YY). Inventory as many of the same Scott Number as you want. BEN FRANKLIN® stores up to 4500 stamp entries on a single-sided diskette, 9000 on a double sided diskette and 300,000 on a 10 megabyte hard disk. With BEN FRANKLIN® you can:

- Add stamps to your collection
- Make corrections to stamps in your collection
- Delete stamps from your collection
- Print a complete listing of your collection with total entries and your collection cost too!!

I'm ready to Computerize with ONE STEP!

*For the IBM PC, IBM PC-XT, with 64K RAM, one diskette drive, a monochrome or color display, and printer.

BEN FRANKLIN® is a trademark of 1 STEP SOFTWARE, INC. IBM is the registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

Send me # __________BEN FRANKLIN® Stamp Collection Software Program(s) at $49.95 per.

Name ________________________

Address ________________________

City, State, Zip ________________________

(N.C. residents add 4% sales tax)

Total amount enclosed $ ____________

Signature ________________________

1STEP SOFTWARE, INC.
CHARLOTTE PLAZA
SUITE 1300
CHARLOTTE, N.C. 28244
704/554-7255

or charge my ☐ VISA
☐ MasterCard

Card No. ____________

Exp. Date __________

© 1 STEP SOFTWARE, INC. 1983 All Rights Reserved

STEP UP TO

THE ULTIMATE

A POWERFUL 4 IN 1 (SOON TO BE 5 IN 1) PROGRAM FOR IBM PC AND COMPATIBLES. ALSO A UNIVERSAL Z 80 CP/M VERSION!

WORD PROCESSING

- Menu driven
- Complete cursor movement
- Footnoting
- Simultaneous printing and editing
- Global search and replace
- Many other powerful features

DATA BASE

- On-screen formatting
- Multi-level select and sort
- Reports
- Form fill-in
- Column movement

MAIL MERGER

- Personalized letters
- Labels
- Lists

DICTIONARY

- 13,000 words (initially)
- Add your own words
- Delete words

E-COM

E-COM will soon be the fifth member of "THE ULTIMATE" program. The power of electronic mailing can now be yours through your modem and "THE ULTIMATE." Your personalized letters, memos, and invoices can now be sent anywhere in the country within 48 hours. Ask your dealer about this free enhancement.

THE ULTIMATE
IN USER FRIENDLINESS!!!

TAKE THE FIRST STEP! Get a $110.00 INSTANT rebate with this ad:

Suggested retail price	$385.00
Less instant rebate	$110.00
Your price with this ad	$275.00

(offer good thru Dec. 31, 1983, only)

CONTACT YOUR NEAREST PARTICIPATING DEALER TODAY!

COMPUTER CREATIONS, Inc.
766 El Camino Real, Suite D
San Carlos, CA 94070
(415) 595-4466

Computer Creations

E-COM is a Registered Trademark of the U.S. Postal Service

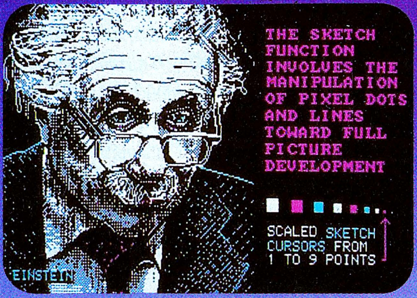
IBM is a Registered Trademark of IBM, Inc.

CP/M is a Registered Trademark of Digital Research

Introducing

V·C·N EXECUVISION™

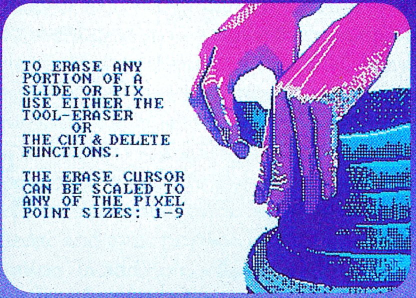
The Presentation Graphics Program™



THE SKETCH FUNCTION INVOLVES THE MANIPULATION OF PIXEL DOTS AND LINES TOWARD FULL PICTURE DEVELOPMENT

SCALED SKETCH CURSORS FROM 1 TO 9 POINTS

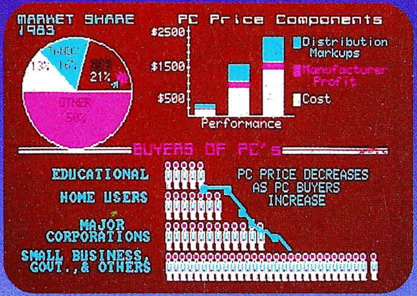
Complete design capabilities... 64 color schemes...10 type styles.



TO ERASE ANY PORTION OF A SLIDE OR PIX USE EITHER THE TOOL-ERASER OR THE CUT & DELETE FUNCTIONS.

THE ERASE CURSOR CAN BE SCALED TO ANY OF THE PIXEL POINT SIZES: 1-9

Electronic cut and paste facility allows you to move, combine or erase any object or text.



Automatic pie, bar or line graphs with a special PLOT function.

Now you can prepare tomorrow morning's presentation, tonight!

If you're like most professionals, you spend a lot of time preparing and delivering presentations. To your associates. To clients. And, of course, to top management. Unfortunately, you don't always have the time or resources at hand to put together a visual presentation which will put you in the best possible light.

Enter VCN EXECUVISION...state-of-the-art presentation graphics software from the Business and Professional Division of Prentice-Hall, Inc. VCN EXECUVISION takes all of your research, facts and analyses, and transforms them into powerful graphic images for use in any multi-media presentation.

The Only Presentation Package You Need.

Not only will VCN EXECUVISION allow you to create charts and graphs with its automatic PLOT function, it offers you complete design capabilities in 10 typefaces and 64 color schemes to enhance the impact and professional quality of your presentation. There is no limit to the variety of pictures, graphs and charts that can be created, displayed and updated.

VCN EXECUVISION can even animate your presentations with an astounding array of motion processes, without cumbersome software changes.

Best of all, you don't have to be an artist to use VCN EXECUVISION skillfully. Every function is offered in a series of easy to follow menus so that you utilize maximum graphics capabilities with speed and simplicity. The program comes with its own highly acclaimed interactive demonstration disk, plus easy to understand systems documentation with full color sample illustrations.

VCN EXECUVISION can immediately be put to work making all of your presentations—and you—**look sharper, more prepared, more professional.** And VCN EXECUVISION does so with substantial reductions in cost compared with professional graphic artist fees or dedicated graphics processor fees.

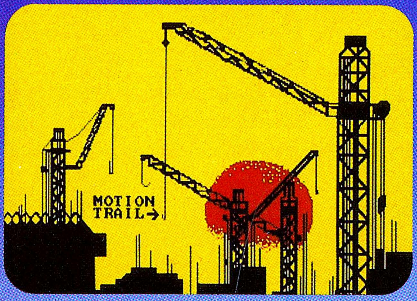
EXCLUSIVE! Your Own Graphic Libraries!

With VCN EXECUVISION you can make use of these special add-on software libraries of professionally pre-rendered images:

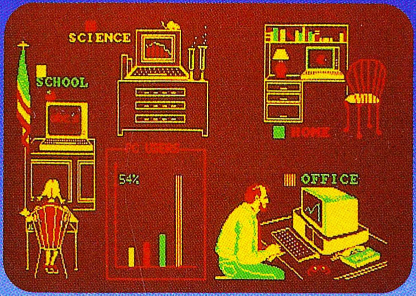
- The Professional Series
  (depictions of figures representing every major profession)
- The Business and Industry Series
- Maps and International Symbols
- Initials and Backgrounds
- Graphic Borders

You can also create your own library of charts, pictures, symbols or logos and store them for future reordering or rearranging.

from Prentice-Hall, Inc.



Animation...automatic run-time options.



Complete libraries of hundreds of highly detailed images...from people to products...energy to entertainment.

VCN EXECUVISION
THE PRESENTATION GRAPHICS PROGRAM
PRENTICE-HALL INC

VCN EXECUVISION FEATURES:

1. Complete menu-driven operation
2. Full color user manual
3. Tutorial demonstration disk with program
4. Libraries of hundreds of pre-rendered images
5. Electronic cut and paste facility to move, combine or erase any object or text
6. Pie, bar, and line graphs with special automatic PLOT function
7. Animation and motion techniques
8. Automatic run-time options
9. Complete design capabilities
10. 64 color schemes and 10 type styles

VCN EXECUVISION Presentation Graphics Program is designed by Visual Communications Network, Inc. (VCN) for the IBM PC. It is the only presentation graphics package to meet the standards of the **Business and Professional Division** of Prentice-Hall, Inc.

For a demonstration of VCN EXECUVISION, visit your nearest computer store. Or call toll-free 800-345-8112 (PA residents: 800-662-2444), or write to: Denise Baer, Prentice-Hall, Inc., 200 Old Tappan Road, Old Tappan, NJ 07675.

© 1983 Prentice-Hall, Inc.
® IBM is the registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

AMERICA
5503591BM
WASHINGTON, D.C.
12
12
H190
5

THE PROFIT PLOT

by Jack Grushcow

Spreadsheets and the Securities Market, Part 2

Last month, Profit Plot discussed the nature of stock portfolios and how you can tailor your investments to suit your own personal needs. You'll remember that there are two types of investments: growth investments, which are more aggressive, and income investments, which are more conservative. This month we will learn how to plumb the depths of a company's soul and explore the fundamentals of analyzing financial statements to rank companies on the growth/income spectrum.

Your careful investigation of financial statements can reveal the inner workings of a company. Hidden within the numbers lie clues to the effectiveness of a company's management, the desirability of its product or service, and its general financial health and future prospects. If you learn enough about the basics of financial statements, you can build and intelligently use a spreadsheet to analyze corporate health.

You can use financial ratios (comparing numbers found in different sections of the statements) to analyze the entire spectrum of a company's operation. There is a wide range of information to choose from, and different people look for different things when they analyze a financial statement. You will save a lot of time and avoid mistakes if you decide what you need to know before you begin looking.

Who Uses Financial Ratios? Most of the people using financial ratios are stock market investors, who have developed ratios to the point of being an art form. Potential investors need answers to such questions as: Can the company afford to pay dividends now and in the future? How large a price must be paid for the earnings of a company? How many times over do the corporate earnings cover the interest payment on long-term debt? How aggressive or conservative is an investment in this company?

Bank managers are creatures of a different sort. They'll usually be interested in a company's ability to generate the necessary profits to repay a loan and whether there are enough assets available to guarantee the loan against default. It's no wonder that many people say that by the time a bank will lend you money you probably don't need it.

If you are a potential trade creditor, your lot will be similar to the bankers'. You'll be concerned mainly with short-term debt and how well a company can handle it.

On the other hand, owners and managers often use financial ratios to assess their own companies' health. These people want answers to such questions as: How well are the corporate assets being used? Where can operating efficiency be improved? Are receivables being collected quickly? Does inventory stay on the shelf too long?

Managers also need to find out if there is a comfortable working capital cushion or if the company has enough cash to consider expansion plans. Managers want to increase operating efficiency and need enough information about the company's financial position to formulate intelligent plans.

Bank managers, trade creditors, owners, and managers as seekers of corporate truth have a lot in common, even though the specific information they each require is different. Each wants to understand the financial position of a company and better gauge its future prospects. Regardless of your vantage—investor, banker, trade creditor, or concerned manager—you will want to learn how to build your own crystal ball with key financial ratios.

Widget Manufacturing Company. The income statement and balance sheet of the hypothetical Widget Manufacturing Company will help you practice using the financial ratios. There is no point building a spreadsheet filled with financial ratios until you know how to construct and interpret each one. (Resemblance of Widget Manufacturing to any company living or dead is purely coincidental.)

WIDGET MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Balance Sheet (in thousands)
December 31, 1982

ASSETS		
1. Cash	20,500	
2. Receivables	46,500	
3. Inventory	37,000	
4. Deferred Taxes (current)	6,000	
5. Total Current Assets		110,000
6. Investments	1,000	
7. Property, Plant, and Equipment	298,000	
8. Accumulated Depreciation	201,000	
9. Net Property, Plant, and Equipment	98,000	
10. Goodwill	5,000	
11. Total Assets		213,000
LIABILITIES		
12. Accounts Payable	38,500	
13. Income Tax	11,000	
14. Long-term Debt (due within one year)	3,500	
15. Total Current Liabilities		53,000
16. Long-term Debt	49,000	
17. Deferred Income Tax	11,000	
18. Total Liabilities		113,000
SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY		
19. Preferred	12,500	
20. Common	54,000	
21. Retained Income	33,500	
22. Total Shareholders' Equity		100,000
23. Total Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		213,000

Figure 1.

Harold Schemblecker always dreamt of growing up to be the president.

Today, he won the Democratic primary.

Tomorrow, the Oval Office!

NOMINATION

The Ultimate Party Game

One to five players run against the actual candidates for the 1984 Democratic nomination in 6 primaries. Take a stand on the issues, toss your hat in the ring, and make *your* dream come true. 1983/1 diskette/documentation/ISBN 0-89303-699-4/$29.95

NOMINATION for the IBM PC is one in the R.J. Brady Company game series. It is available at Computerlands, Sears Business Centers, The Xerox Stores, Computer Marts, Entré Computer Centers, CompuShops, B. Daltons, Waldens and other fine bookstores and computer dealers. If you cannot find NOMINATION, call toll-free 800 638-0220 for information.

BRADY

Robert J. Brady Co. A Prentice-Hall Company Bowie, MD 20715

The Four Cardinal Points of the Financial Compass. Financial ratios can be classified as liquidity, long-term solvency, efficiency, and profitability ratios. Each category reveals information about a different aspect of a business' operations. Let's take a brief look at each one of these ratios before looking at the liquidity ratios in more detail. We'll be covering the other three next month.

Liquidity measures how much cash a company can raise on short notice and indicates how well the company is positioned to meet its short-term operating requirements. Working capital is probably the best-known measure of liquidity. After all, you have to meet payroll before you do anything else.

Opposite liquidity are the ratios dealing with long-term solvency. These ratios reveal how well a company is balanced to meet the challenge of the future. Capital available for expansion and growth are measured, and the impact of any long-term borrowing strategy is also examined. A company burdened by debt has a serious obstacle on its road to success.

Efficiency ratios form the third group. As the name implies, these ratios measure how well a company manages its resources. Receivables and inventory management can seriously affect corporate profits. Efficiency ratios also measure how well working capital is used.

The final group of ratios are the profitability ratios. These measure profits both in dollar volume and as they relate to the prices of a company's stock. Investors need to learn how to compare these values to stock values of different companies.

Liquidity Ratios

As mentioned earlier, liquidity refers to the amount of cash a company can raise, in relation to its total assets, given relatively short notice. This is a good measure of how secure a company is over a short period of time and also shows whether cash and other short-term assets are being managed efficiently. Keep in mind that these liquidity ratios are focused specifically on the short term.

Working Capital Ratio. A key measure of liquidity is working capital: the difference between current debts and current assets. You examine your working capital at least once a month; it's one way to keep checks from bouncing. You have a certain amount of money coming in and a certain amount going out; the object of the game is to try to pay the bills that need to be paid and still have money left over for fun.

A company goes through the same type of balancing act, except that its idea of fun is making profits for the shareholders. Cash comes in and goes out each month, and the excess of corporate current assets over current liabilities is a company's working capital. When a company runs low, it is usually a sign that it is on the verge of going out of business; inability to meet short-term operating commitments is often the first stage of a corporate collapse.

Current liabilities represent money that a company owes and must pay in the near future. These liabilities are usually short-term bank loans, payroll, accounts owing for raw materials or other supplies that are necessary for the daily operation of the business, and any other debt that must be paid within a year.

Current assets, the other side of the working capital picture, are the assets a company could turn into cash within one year, should the need arise. Securities, accounts receivable, and many types of inventory are typical examples of current assets.

To determine the working capital ratio (or current ratio), you divide the current assets by the current liabilities.

WIDGET MANUFACTURING COMPANY
Income Statement (in thousands)
For year ended December 31, 1982

24.	Net Sales	249,000	
25.	Cost of Goods Sold	215,500	
26.	General and Administrative	18,000	
27.	Depreciation	3,500	
28.	Total Operating Costs		237,000
29.	Operating Income	12,000	
30.	Interest and Debt Expense	(3,500)	
31.	Investment and Other Income	2,500	
32.	Income before Taxes		11,000
33.	Provision for Income Tax	3,100	
34.	Net Income		7,900

Consolidated Statement of Retained Income
For the years ended December 31, 1982

35.	Retained Income (beginning)	31,700
36.	Net Income	7,900
	Dividends	
37.	Preferred	800
38.	Common (2,500,000 outstanding)	5,300
39.	Retained Income	33,500

Figure 2 .

You'll notice that the Widget financial statements (figures 1 and 2) are numbered by item; these item numbers will provide a convenient way to refer to the numbers used in our ratio calculations.

Working Capital = Current Assets/Current Liabilities
= Item 5/Item 15
= 110,000/53,000
= 2:1

The working capital ratio comes out to 2:1 for Widget. Is this result good, bad, or so-so? Generally speaking, a working capital ratio of 2:1

EXPAND YOUR IBM PC OR XT
With The New Prelude Six Function Card

- IBM Compatible Game Adapter Port
- IBM Compatible Serial Port
- IBM Compatible Printer Port
- Clock Calendar With Battery Backup
- 0-256K Memory, Expandable In 64K Increments
- Print Spooler and Clock Software

Prelude boards meet the highest standards of design and production quality available. Ask for them at your local dealer... or Visa or MasterCard holders may order directly. List price $329 with no installed memory. One year warranty.

64K Expansion Kit (Tested)... $69

Introductory Price $269 Through December 30, 1983

prelude
Computer Corporation
20380 Town Center Lane, Suite 217
Cupertino, CA 95014
(408) 257-6033

IBM is the registered trademark of International Business Machines

Introducing BRADY GAMEWARE for the IBM PC

LASERCYCLE

by Cornerstone Computer Company

LASERCYCLE
Cornerstone Computer Company
Brady
LASERCYCLE™
Cornerstone Computer Company
LASERCYCLE

LASERCYCLE

An exhilarating, futuristic race game in which players accelerate their powerful LaserCycles through perilous arenas. You'll skillfully ward off deadly, light-seeking Attack Spheres as you complete the circuit to become a Champion of Champion Riders. A game of maneuvers and countermaneuvers, you'll play in light and sound as you progress from arena to arena, accumulate points, and advance in rank among the skill levels of the Circuit Riders. Be aware "this is not a game for the weak-spirited."

1983/ISBN 0-89303-619-6/Diskette with documentation/D6196-2/$29.95

Ordering Information

The adventure begins through Brady. Just call us Toll Free at 1-800-638-0220 between 8 a.m. and 5 p.m. EST or look for us at your local computer store.

BRADY

ROBERT J. BRADY CO. • BOWIE, MARYLAND 20715 • (301) 262-6300
A Prentice-Hall Publishing and Communications Company

is good for a manufacturer, but not exceptional. It says simply that Widget has about two dollars of current assets available to cover each dollar of current debt. Based on this ratio, it looks as if there isn't any problem with Widget's working capital reservoir.

If 2:1 is good, is 20:1 ten times better? Definitely not. If a company's working capital ratio exceeds 5:1, it probably has an unnecessary accumulation of cash and other current assets. This indicates several possible problems.

If sales are slow, then a company may be carrying an overly large inventory. Since inventory appears in the financial statements as an asset, the working capital ratio increases.

Poor credit management can cause accounts receivable levels to increase as well. If bills are not being collected, then accounts receivable increase and thereby increase the working capital ratio. An investor should investigate further to discover the cause of an unreasonably high working capital ratio.

In counterpoint, a ratio of less than 2:1 indicates a possible cash bind, which forces creditors to wait a long time for payment. A low ratio warns potential trade creditors and investors that all is not well with the company.

When examining the working capital ratio, keep in mind that not all current assets are created equal. For example, suppose there are two manufacturing companies with similar current ratios. Company J may have a large percentage of its current assets in inventory, while Company K may have the majority of its current assets in cash and accounts receivable. Company J is not as liquid as Company K, because inventories are sometimes very hard to turn into cash and are difficult to value, especially in times of high inflation. As a result, inventory values can be overstated, giving a false impression of the company's liquidity. The quick-asset ratio will help us deal with the problem of inventory evaluation, but first, here are a few important points to remember about interpreting ratios.

Professional Software for the IBM Personal Computer

•MAINT —Equipment maintenance scheduling system for companies performing preventive maintenance on any type of equipment.
- — Work scheduling, job work orders
- — Jeopardy, scheduling, analytical reports
- — Scheduled/unscheduled work completion
- — Skill summary
- — Maintenance history
- — Online help function

•FIXED —Fixed Asset Accounting System for individual users or accountants.
- — Tax and financial schedules
- — Multiple methods
- — Salvage value
- — Division, department, location codes
- — Various reports
- — Online help function

•EXPPROG —Utility to allow listing of compressed or uncompressed BASIC programs directly from DOS. When using the BASIC compiler, eliminates the need to save both a compressed and uncompressed version of the program by incorporating EXPPROG in your compile batch.

Systems are full screen oriented, menu driven, documented, and written for the serious user of the IBM Personal Computer.

PENGUIN COMPUTER CONSULTANTS
P.O. Box 11208
St. Thomas, U.S. Virgin Islands 00801
(809) 774-8277

Key Points. Many of us have developed a belief in the reliability of numbers. We pay bills, read reports, and draw conclusions based on the mountains of figures we are force-fed each day. In many cases these infallible-looking numbers are anything but infallible. They represent trends, approximations, or just plain educated guesswork. When we say that 2:1 is a good working capital ratio for Widget Manufacturing, the ratio 2:1 is meant as a rough guideline and should be taken as such.

When it comes to interpreting financial ratios, it should be understood that these numbers are representative of the general condition of corporate operations. This is especially true when you consider that a corporation balance sheet is a reflection of just one day out of the company's operating year. As a result, ratios are best used when they're examined over several years, not just one. The spreadsheet model that we'll develop in next month's column will allow us to make more meaningful use of ratios by examining trends over several years.

When comparing one company's financial ratios to another's, you should compare companies that are within the same industry group. A ratio considered acceptable for one industry could be a sign of impending doom in another. You will see some examples of this when you look at the next ratio.

The Quick-Asset Ratio. The working capital ratio can be misleading because the value of inventories, often the largest of all the current assets, can be difficult to ascertain accurately. The quick-asset ratio, also fondly referred to as the "acid test," analyzes the ability of a company to service its short-term debt without figuring in the value of its inventories.

You can determine Widget's quick-asset ratio by subtracting the inventory from the current assets and dividing the result by the current liabilities:

Quick-Asset Ratio = (Current Assets − Inventory)/Current Liabilities
= (Item 5 − Item 3)/Item 15
= (110,000 − 37,000)/53,000
= 73,000/53,000
= 1.4

This gives a ratio of approximately 1.4:1. The quick-asset ratio is a more conservative test of a company's ability to meet its current obligations. As a result, you would not expect to find a ratio around 2:1, as you would with the working capital ratio.

Generally speaking, a quick-asset ratio of 1:1 or better is indicative of a good liquid financial position. However, companies with a quick-asset ratio of less than 1:1 may be just as liquid if they have a high inventory turnover rate.

For example, meatpackers can turn their inventory over once every seven days. A quick-asset ratio of 0.6:1 would be expected in this business because we know the inventory can be readily turned into cash. A manufacturer producing a relatively small number of high-cost products would generate a larger quick-asset ratio, because it is much more difficult for such a manufacturer to turn inventory to cash.

This illustrates nicely the point discussed earlier about the problems of comparing different industries to each other. To make valid conclusions based on the ratios you calculate, you need to compare them to the appropriate industry average. Dun and Bradstreet and Robert Morris and Associates publish complete lists of financial ratios by industry type. By comparing ratios from the companies that interest you with the industry averages, you can know whether a ratio is acceptable or not.

Widget Manufacturing's quick-asset ratio of 1.4:1 is within generally acceptable limits. Based on both liquidity tests, Widget seems to be in good shape; you might do well to invest in Widget.

Next month we'll continue by discussing the other three major groups of financial ratios. We will then design and build a spreadsheet that uses all these ratios to perform detailed corporate analysis. ▲

EASY to USE "VISUAL SHELL" for DOS

the 1dir

DIRECTORY COMMAND SYSTEM for the IBM PC & XT

1dir enables the user, especially the new user, to begin taking advantage of the PC's power right away.

1dir replaces the DOS prompt with an interactive command system that eliminates the need to type commands and/or filenames to the command line. (See Photo.)

Load files and run programs by positioning **1dir**'s FILE and COMMAND CURSORS and pressing the <ENTER> key.

FUNCTIONAL FEATURES

- UNIQUE "1 Line" BATCH COMMAND capability
- EASY SCANNING of any DIRECTORY
- "ALPHA SEARCH" for FAST file LOCATION
- SORT / DISPLAY files by NAME or EXTension
- REDISPLAYS following command execution
- COMPATIBLE with DOS 1.10 and 2.00
- DISPLAYS DOS 2.00 TREE FILE STRUCTURE
- REQUIRES 64K min. (96K recommended) + 1 drive
- RUNS on compatibles - e.g., COMPAQ, CORONA, Columbia . . .
- Also includes a TUTORIAL on the development and use of consistent and "meaningful" File Specifications

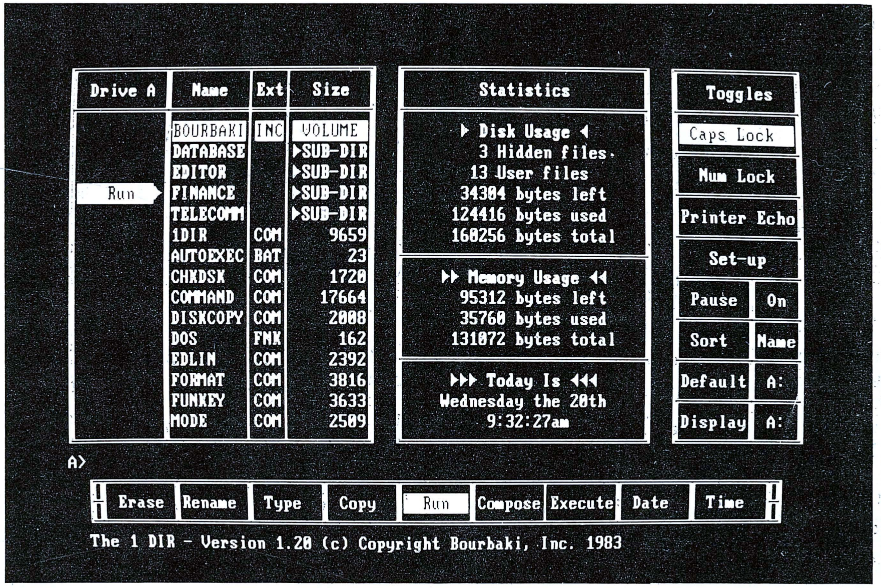
The ULTIMATE FILE MANAGEMENT TOOL
PERFECT for HARD DISK systems

Suggested Retail
$95.00
+ $3.50 Shipping

by Bourbaki Inc.™

P.O. Box 2867, Boise, ID 83701, (208) 342-5849

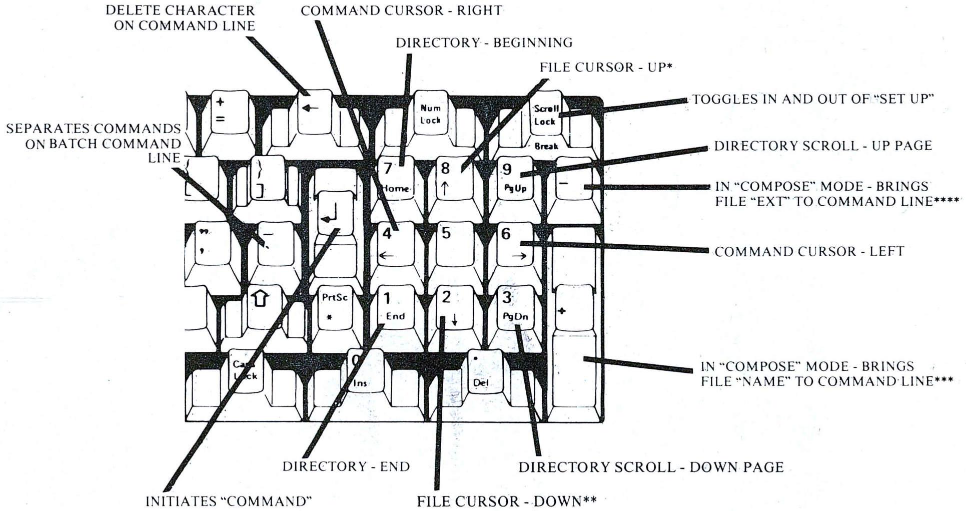
THE 1dir SCREEN



```
Drive A | Name     Ext  Size     |      Statistics       | Toggles
        | BOURBAKI INC  VOLUME   |   ▶ Disk Usage ◀      | Caps Lock
        | DATABASE      ▶SUB-DIR |    3 Hidden files.    | Num Lock
        | EDITOR        ▶SUB-DIR |   13 User files       | Printer Echo
  Run   | FINANCE       ▶SUB-DIR |  34304 bytes left    | Set-up
        | TELECOMM      ▶SUB-DIR | 124416 bytes used    | Pause   On
        | 1DIR     COM     9659  | 160256 bytes total   | Sort    Name
        | AUTOEXEC BAT       23  |                      | Default A:
        | CHKDSK   COM     1720  |  ▶▶ Memory Usage ◀◀   | Display A:
        | COMMAND  COM    17664  |  95312 bytes left    |
        | DISKCOPY COM     2008  |  35760 bytes used    |
        | DOS      FNK      162  | 131072 bytes total   |
        | EDLIN    COM     2392  |                      |
        | FORMAT   COM     3816  |  ▶▶▶ Today Is ◀◀◀     |
        | FUNKEY   COM     3633  | Wednesday the 20th   |
        | MODE     COM     2509  |      9:32:27am       |
A>
 Erase  Rename  Type  Copy  Run  Compose  Execute  Date  Time
The 1 DIR - Version 1.20 (c) Copyright Bourbaki, Inc. 1983
```

(ACTUAL PHOTO)

THE 1dir KEYBOARD


DELETE CHARACTER ON COMMAND LINE
COMMAND CURSOR - RIGHT
DIRECTORY - BEGINNING
FILE CURSOR - UP*
TOGGLES IN AND OUT OF "SET UP"
SEPARATES COMMANDS ON BATCH COMMAND LINE
DIRECTORY SCROLL - UP PAGE
IN "COMPOSE" MODE - BRINGS FILE "EXT" TO COMMAND LINE****
COMMAND CURSOR - LEFT
IN "COMPOSE" MODE - BRINGS FILE "NAME" TO COMMAND LINE***
DIRECTORY - END
DIRECTORY SCROLL - DOWN PAGE
INITIATES "COMMAND"
FILE CURSOR - DOWN**
Num Lock
Scroll Lock
Break
7 Home
8 ↑
9 PgUp
4 ←
5
6 →
1 End
2 ↓
3 PgDn
PrtSc *
Ins
Del
Caps Lock

*IN "SET UP" - CURSOR UP
**IN "SET UP" - CURSOR DOWN
***IN "SET UP" - TOGGLES "PAUSE" ON OR "SORT"TO FILE "NAME"
****IN "SET UP" - TOGGLES "PAUSE" OFF OR "SORT"TO FILE "EXT"

NOTES:
1) TO EXIT TO DOS - ENTER "CONTROL C" (^C)
2) ESCAPE KEY (ESC) IS USED TO DELETE THE COMMAND LINE

IS WORDSTAR® AS GOOD AS POWERTEXT®?

QUESTIONS TO ASK YOUR SOFTWARE SUPPLIER BEFORE HE SELLS YOU A WORD PROCESSING SYSTEM FOR YOUR IBM PC.

Ask a computer products dealer for word processing software, and chances are he'll try to sell you Wordstar.

It's a pretty good system. Lots of people use it. And besides, he's got it in his inventory, and you can take it home with you right now.

But before you settle for Wordstar, remember that—whatever system you choose—you'll be using it for a long time. So your decision should be based on *system performance*—not what the dealer happens to have on hand.

That's why you should look into PowerText.

Quite simply, PowerText will do far more for you than Wordstar.

We realize that's a very tough claim. But the Wordstar users who've switched to PowerText will tell you it's true. And if you'll read on, we'll give you some key questions to ask your dealer:

Ask if Wordstar automatically styles your copy for any kind of document you write. Can you tell Wordstar, "This is a letter," and then get a perfect letter, with the date, name and address, salutation, and closing exactly where you want them to be—automatically?

Does Wordstar produce memos, reports, presentations, and scripts in precisely the formats you want without your ever having to worry about where the words go on the paper?

Well, Wordstar *doesn't* do those things for you. But PowerText *does*.

That means with PowerText you can concentrate on what you're writing, not on printed style. You always get a beautiful, perfectly formatted document—automatically.

Just think of how much time and effort these remarkable capabilities will save you. It's almost like dictating to your computer.

PowerText gives you automatic margins. Indents. Spacing. Title page. Envelope or label.

Automatic justification. Centering. Variable pitch. Pagination. Table of contents.

And truly *intelligent* page breaks. (You'll never end up with "Yours truly," all by itself on the last page of your letter.)

And an enormously useful feature that automatically indents and numbers for you when you write numbered paragraphs—a great time-saver when you're doing outlines, reports, or questionnaires.

Plus columnar capabilities so sophisticated and flexible they can handle just about any problem you can think up.

Ask if Wordstar gives you all these features. (It doesn't.)

Of course, both PowerText and Wordstar give you complete editing capabilities. All good word processing systems do.

But PowerText gives you *built-in* form letter capability. With Wordstar, you'll need to buy the Mailmerge® system to produce form letters.

And PowerText gives you automatic headers and footers. *And* boxed copy. *And* print macros. *And* automatic footnote numbers. *And* boilerplate inclusion. *And* vertical and horizontal border lines. *And* 132-character lines. *And* superscripts and subscripts.

With PowerText there's no limit to document length. And PowerText accommodates a full 25 percent more data per disk than Wordstar (or standard IBM software).

PowerText is a straightforward, easy-to-learn, easy-to-use system. You'll master it quickly with our superb new 10-lesson tutorial. You get a complete reference manual, too.

PowerText is a run-time, bootable system. It requires at least 64K of memory, two disk drives, and a printer. It supports both serial and parallel printer interfaces, extended memory, and RAM disk.

And, oh yes, be sure to ask your dealer about Wordstar's warranty. (It doesn't have one.)

PowerText does, and it's very simple: The system is warranted for a full five years. Should it ever fail to perform as specified, Beaman Porter, Inc. will fix it at no charge.

If you decide PowerText is the right system for you, you may find your dealer doesn't have it in stock. But he can get it for you, and quickly. Just have him call us at (914) 967-3504.

Or if you wish, you can order directly from Beaman Porter right now, using the coupon below.

If you have any questions about PowerText, by all means call us. We're always available to give you expert help and advice. With Beaman Porter, service and support are always as near as your phone.

PowerText®

COMPLETE POWERTEXT SYSTEM
FOR IBM PC: $399.
TUTORIAL/MANUAL ALONE: $25.

BEAMAN PORTER, INC.
High Performance Computer Products
Pleasant Ridge Road, Harrison, NY 10528 (914) 967-3504

BEAMAN PORTER, INC.
Pleasant Ridge Road, Harrison, NY 10528

☐ Send ______ complete PowerText system(s) for IBM PC: @ $399 (prepaid).

☐ Send ______ PowerText tutorial/manual(s) only, @ $25 (prepaid).

(NY residents add appropriate sales tax.)

☐ My check or money order for $__________ enclosed.

Or bill $__________ to my:

☐ Mastercard ☐ Visa

(Mastercard: list 4 digits above your name: __________).

Card No. __________ Exp. Date __________

Signature __________ Date __________

Name __________

Street __________

City __________

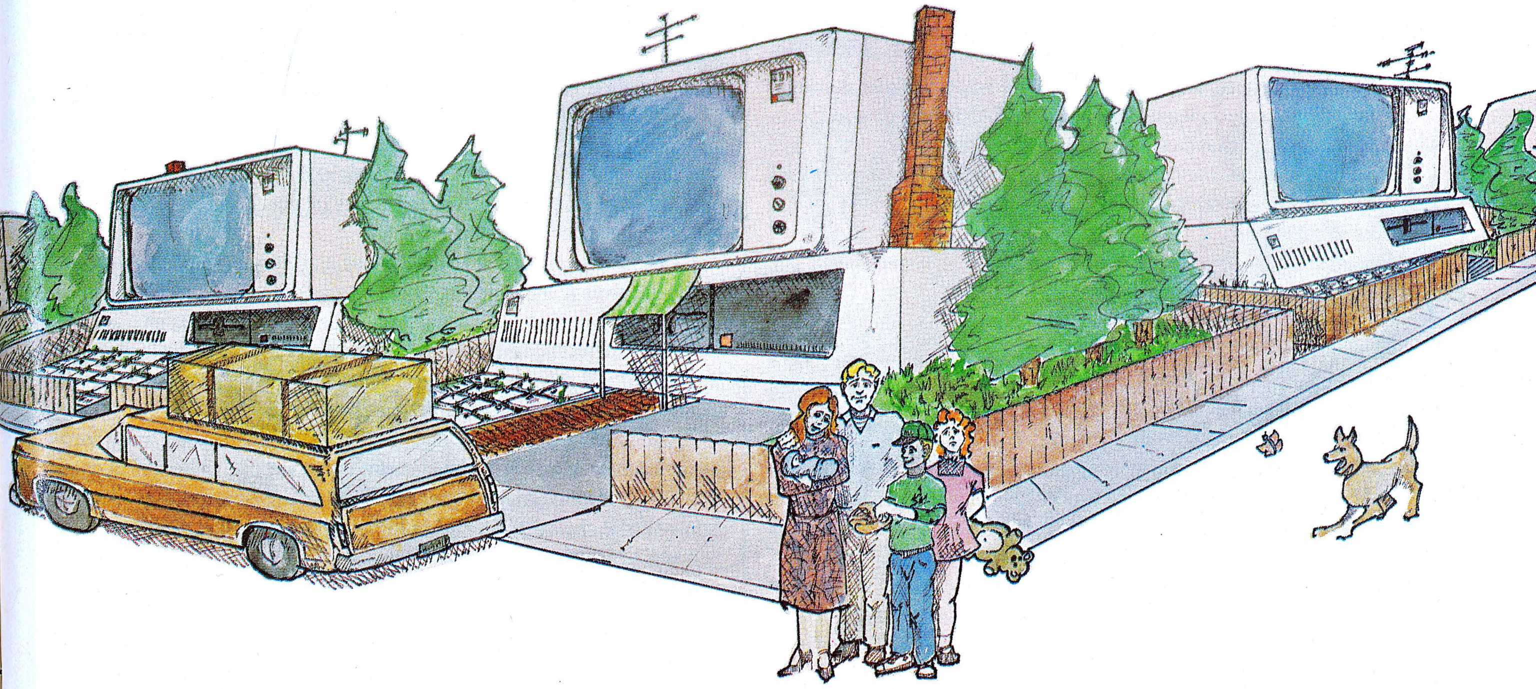
State __________ Zip __________

WORDSTAR and MAILMERGE are trademarks of MicroPro International Corp.

One Man's Journey from pc to XT

MOVING ~~DAY~~ ~~WEEK~~ MONTH

by John Dickinson



Illustrations by Malcolm Rodgers

This saga started out innocently enough. We were driving back from a pleasant day trip to Long Island's Montauk Point, when I said to my wife, "I just want to stop into ComputerLand for a minute."

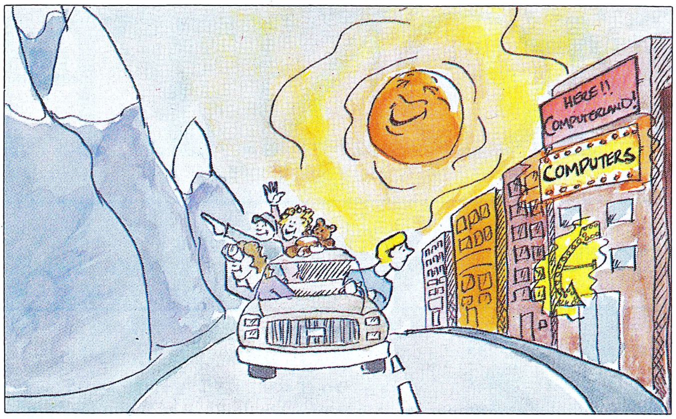
She got a distant look in her eyes as she replied, "Sure, hon.' "

I wanted to look into getting more RAM for my pc. I was starting to develop a database system for my business, and my work so far had indicated a need for a RAM disk large enough to improve the system's performance. Improving the performance alone required more memory than I had. Using the larger disk format of DOS 2.0 (360K versus the 320K of DOS 1.1) would help the application, but 2.0 uses more memory than 1.1, and fitting it on the machine with the application and a RAM disk would present a space problem.

Other applications would benefit from the additional memory and improved operating system as well. The 320K I had between the pc's system board and a QuadBoard was just not enough.

I was greeted by my eternally effervescent ComputerLand store manager. "Hi, John! Nice day for a drive, or looking for something special?"

"Both, actually." I explained my problem. He gave me a skeptical look and said, "Well, you can buy a plain 256K expansion board for a few hundred dollars, but I think you'll be wasting your money."



What? How can you waste money—on RAM for a pc—at ComputerLand? "How's that?" I ventured cautiously.

"Well, the extra memory will help you out for now, but you'll be back looking for something more real soon."

"Like what?"

"Oh, more memory, for one thing—or a Winchester disk."

I listened silently, waiting for his next words.

"Why don't you just bite the bullet and buy an XT?"

"Gimme a break!" I said. "I just got the pc five months ago—why should I buy an XT so soon? It's a nice machine, but I just don't think I need it."

"Yes, you do. Not right this minute, but you will soon. You'll want a hard disk at least, and your alternative to the XT will have to be the IBM expansion cabinet or a non-IBM hard disk. Either one will cost you as much as an XT." We continued talking, and I had to admit that he made a few good points.

For one, the large (256K) memory capacity of the XT's system board, along with the QuadBoard I already had, would give me as much memory (512K) as I could readily use. With the XT's ten-megabyte high-speed Winchester, I might not even need the RAM disk space I had been looking for.

For another, I was not enamored of the alternatives to getting an XT. A friend had just bought an IBM expansion cabinet, and installing it had been a difficult affair.

In addition, the idea of a non-IBM Winchester disk was not attractive to me. While I had long since been weaned of my early Blue-Is-the-Only-Color attitude (witness my QuadBoard and my Amdek monitor), I was convinced that if I ever got a Winchester disk it had to be IBM's so that I could boot the system without inserting a floppy disk. If you're going to spend that much money for a disk, you ought to be able to boot the system from it.

If I Could Sell My pc. . . . We talked about prices. It turned out that if I could sell my pc at a reasonable price, the XT was about the best deal I could find. At worst it was a little more expensive than the alternatives. "I'll have to think about it," I said as I left the store.

"How much was it this time?" asked my wife when I got back to the car.

"Nothing, absolutely nothing," I replied, but I thought about the XT a lot as we drove home.

Quite a bit of time passed—at least eighteen hours—before I drove back to ComputerLand. "Well, I've thought about it a lot," I said, "and I'd like to order an XT."

The manager smiled.

"How long will it take?" I asked.

He stopped smiling. "Oh—about six to eight weeks," he said, somewhat sheepishly.

"No problem." For once I wasn't in a hurry. I didn't have the cash on hand, and getting it would require selling the pc. Since ComputerLand doesn't accept trade-ins, this could take a while.

We settled one more detail. IBM hadn't yet seen fit to produce half-height floppy disk drives to give the XT two internal floppy drives (and the pc four), but I thought they were essential for the XT. Having half-heights would give me the extra drive the machine needed and a downward-compatible two-disk DOS 1.1 system to fall back on in case of DOS 2.0 problems. I also didn't quite trust DOS 2.0's technique of physically formatting nine sectors when making an eight-sector (DOS 1.1) disk, and I needed eight-sector disks for distributing my software products. ComputerLand had the Shugart half-heights on display, so I ordered a pair for my XT.

Astonishingly, for the next couple of weeks I didn't even think about the XT. I was back at my New York office when ComputerLand called to me, "You can pick up your XT tomorrow if you want."

"Excuse me?" I coughed.

"It's here. You can even have it tonight if you're really in a hurry."

"But I haven't even started to sell the pc yet. You told me delivery would take six to eight weeks!"

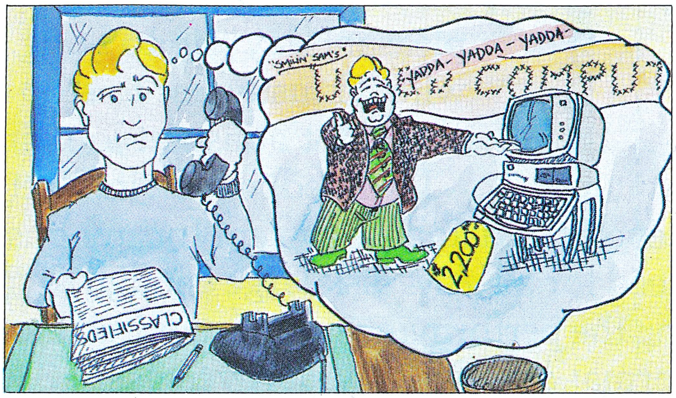
"I can't help it if IBM just dumped a zillion of the things on us. Look, do you want it now or not?" he asked.

"I hope you find a pleasant home for it. I really haven't got the money, and won't until the pc is sold," I said. "I can place an ad today and it'll start tomorrow, but no guarantees as to when I can sell the pc and pick up the new machine."

I called the paper. Keeping the ad out of the "Video and Computer Games" section of the classifieds turned out to be a real communication problem, but the nice lady at the other end of the line finally got it straight. The ad was running in the next morning's paper and on cable TV—a snazzy new service.

Selling used cars had always been painful. This was worse.

IBM's Dirty Deed. One problem was that IBM had increased the system-board memory capacity of the pc (from 64K to 256K) and dropped its price at the time they announced the XT. This was something of a dirty deed for original-model (now called "old-technology") pc owners



(like me) who wanted to sell their machines.

"Oh, you've got the old model," said some callers. "I don't want to buy any junk like that." One fellow was sympathetic. "I just had to sell a TI-99/4A—lost my shirt on it, too," he said.

I was asking $2,200 for the pc (including the two 320K disk drives, but not including the QuadBoard, display and printer, or the adapter for them). This seemed a very reasonable price (it was 20 percent less than the price of a new pc with the same equipment), but the discounters had finally gotten into the IBM-pc business in New York.

"I can get a new one at Weird Zero's Electronics for $2,350 with an IBM monitor," said some. "Whyn'tcha drop your price?"

One gruff-sounding chap said he wanted to buy "a toy to play with, you know, one of them IBM pcs." I hung up on him.

A few callers were serious. One man came out from Queens and got a free two-hour pc tutorial. I was convinced he would buy. He said, "I'll let you know," as he left. I was wrong.

The ad stopped running, and I started panicking. By now I could almost taste the XT, but my pc was still where it had been, and so was my wallet.

Then one night I arrived home to find three messages on the telephone-answering machine, all from the same man. The first message was blank. The second one explained that the blank message was from him, gave his name, and said that he was very interested in the pc. The third message included his phone number.

I said to my wife, "This guy needs a computer just to get himself organized!"

He came by the next evening and was, indeed, serious. He'd been to Weird Zero's and wasn't happy with the outcome of the trip. He tinkered around with my pc, was satisfied that it was all there and working, and offered to stop at my office the next day with a deposit for it.

I called ComputerLand in the morning. "We've done it!" I said.

"Good," was the reply. "What have we done?"

"It's sold—at least if this fellow shows up with the check—the pc is sold."

"Well that's nice—I suppose that means you want your XT today?"

"No, tomorrow night will do fine. I can't leave early today," I replied.

"You're always so good to us, John. There's one small problem, though," he said. "Getting the Shugart half-heights turned out to be difficult." They had been on back-order since the display models had been delivered, and no one knew when shipments might arrive.

Planning the Move. I did a lot of thinking about moving to the XT and tried to plan for it. Since what was originally meant to be a hobby had rapidly turned into a business, this was no small issue. There were really two parts to the move. The hardware was one part. Changing from the DOS 1.1 operating system to DOS 2.0 was the other. Both gave me lots to think about.

While the XT is supposed to be fully upward-compatible with the pc, it is different enough to bring out the skeptic in me. I bear the scars of many "upward-compatible" hardware moves in the mainframe and time-sharing worlds. I was convinced that there could be as many significant problems in this move as any other that I had been through. Like the hardware, DOS 2.0 was touted by IBM as being fully upward-compatible with DOS 1.1. But my software scars (they're smaller, but more numerous) began to itch whenever I thought about the change.

I speculated that the change in operating systems would be the most significant difference in the move, but I had no choice about doing it. Unless an XT user decides to ignore ten megabytes of high-speed Winchester disk storage (a doubtful choice, to say the least), the machine requires DOS 2.0.

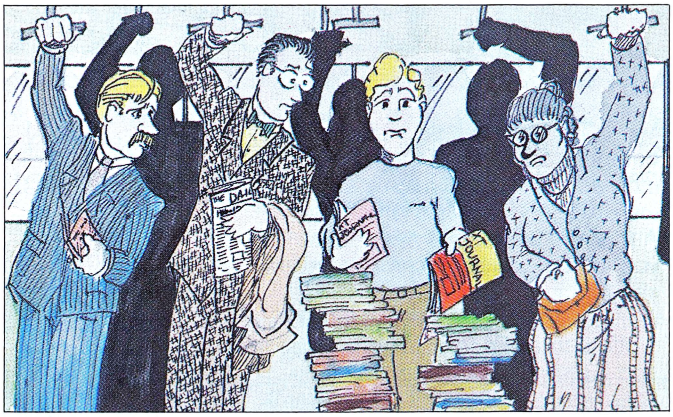
The system looks terrific on paper, with plenty of new and enticing advanced features, but I had tried 2.0 on the pc and hadn't been convinced of its usefulness. It required too much memory compared to DOS 1.1, and the disk-resident operating system commands required more space than was reasonable (even with the nine-sector format). In addition, the hierarchical disk directory scheme, while theoretically useful and well conceived, was a cumbersome and space-consuming nuisance on floppy disks.

My attempts to use DOS 2.0 regularly on the pc ended when I found out that I couldn't fit a version of my favorite DOS/Basic Interpreter/Basic Compiler combination disk on one of the DOS 2.0 360K disks. The day that happened I labeled my DOS 2.0 library box "TEST" and put it back on the shelf.

The only program I had used regularly on the pc with DOS 2.0 was IUS's *EasyWriter II.* I had sufficient memory for DOS 2.0, a 160K RAM disk, and the 96K version of *EasyWriter II.* Only a small subset of DOS disk-resident commands is usually required for use of the program, and the extra disk real estate for storing my documents had been most welcome.

My experience with DOS 2.0 was, therefore, minimal. I had used it in only one environment and had taken advantage only of its disk storage enhancements. I had not used any of its advanced features and probably couldn't even name many of them. I needed a fast education!

In the week before I picked up the XT I read as much of the DOS 2.0 manual as I could absorb; I digested all of Alan Boyd's "System Notebook" columns in *Softalk;* and I scanned every recent issue of the pc-oriented magazines for any DOS 2.0 hints I could find. I reread Peter Norton's *Inside the IBM-PC,* looking for further DOS 2.0 clues. The August issue of *Softalk* came in the mail that week with reader Morton Kaplon's letter entitled "DOS 2.0: One Man's Story"; Kaplon's letter proved itself a lifesaver.



My only remaining concern was the DOS 2.0 linker. Like most of DOS, it had been rewritten for the new system and was supposedly faster and more efficient. It was certainly the only disk-resident command that didn't become larger than its DOS 1.1 counterpart. But I wondered if it would produce the same results as the DOS 1.1 linker.

To find out, I compiled one of my larger production programs using the IBM Basic compiler under both DOS 1.1 and DOS 2.0. The object modules were identical, which should not have been a surprise—after all, a compiler is just another application program and IBM had promised compatibility at that level.

After I had used the linker program from each system, however, the *diskcomp* command indicated that the executable (.exe) files were different! Norton's *Romcomp* program (designed to compare different versions of the IBM ROM chips) provided a quick way to

Repeat it once more... "No manual tax preparation in '84"

Instead, save yourself time and money and satisfy your clients with your personal computer and... *MICRO-TAX**

Micro-Tax* can turn your personal computer into a profit center—you'll increase your client volume and take the drudgery out of tax preparation. And since the returns never leave your office, you have complete client security.

MICRO-TAX* IS COMPREHENSIVE. It offers three Federal tax packages and 23 fully integrated state packages, so you can select the programs that best meet your needs. Level II has a tax depreciation module, and it automatically computes underpayment penalties, self-employment taxes, minimum taxes, and income averaging. For those who prepare Federal partnership, corporate, and Subchapter S returns, Micro-Tax* has a Federal Level III package. Each tax season Micro-Tax* offers you an update package.

MICRO-TAX* IS VERSATILE. The program is compatible with your IBM PC* or XT*, DEC Rainbow*, Radio Shack*, or any other personal computer with CP/M*, PC DOS* or MS DOS*—from Apple* to Zenith*.

MICRO-TAX* IS FLEXIBLE. It's up to you; you can input the client tax information at the time of interview and produce the forms immediately, or enter data during the day and batch print returns at night. Micro-Tax* prints your returns on IRS forms, IRS approved substitute forms, or with transparent overlays.

MICRO-TAX* IS FRIENDLY. You can organize data entry in a sequence very similar to that of manual tax preparation, or you can compute forms out of sequence. It's up to you. *So go ahead, repeat it once more... "No manual tax preparation in '84." No need—once you've got Micro-Tax*. Call Micro-Tax* direct for complete details, or call your local dealer.*

Prove it to yourself: order a demonstration package—a complete 1982 Federal, Corporate/Partnership or State system for only $58.00 each.

FULL FEDERAL MICRO-TAX* PERSONAL COMPUTER SYSTEMS	**1983 FEDERAL FORMS AND SCHEDULES INCLUDED**																															**PRINTS**			
	1040, 1040A 1040ES	1065, 1120, 1120S	A, B, C, E, G, SE, W	D, F	K, K-1	R, RP	1116	2106	2119	2210	2220	2440	2441	2555	3468	3903	3903F	4137	4255	4562	4626	4684	4797	4835	4952	4972	5695	6251	6252	90-22.1	ACRS	BATCH	Substitute Forms	IRS Forms	Blank Paper	Continuous Preprinted Forms
Level I, Individual $195	•		•	•				•					•														•						•	•	•	
Level II, Professional Individual $1,000	•		•	•		•	•	•	•	•		•	•		•	•		•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Level III, Partnership/ Corporate $1,000		•		•	•						•				•				•	•	•	•	•	•					•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Level IV, Overseas $2,000	•		•	•			•	•		•				•		•	•						•	•				•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•

- All forms and schedules subject to final IRS changes for 1983 tax year.
- 25 Integrated state returns available • Orders taken for yearly update packages

MICRO-TAX* MICROCOMPUTER TAXSYSTEMS, INC.
6203 Variel Avenue, Suite A Woodland Hills, CA 91367
Dept 1I Phone (213) 704-7800

---

*C/PM—trademark of Digital Research, Inc.; DEC Rainbow—trademark of Digital Equipment Corp.; MICRO-TAX—trademark of Microcomputer Taxsystems, Inc.; MS DOS—trademark of Microsoft Corp.; PC DOS, IBM PC, and IBM XT—trademarks of IBM; Apple—trademark of Apple Computers; Zenith—trademark of Heath Company and Zenith Radio Corp.; Radio Shack—trademark of Tandy Corp.

compare the .exe files. There appeared to be a one-byte difference in one of the first (signature) records of the files that got carried along through the rest of the header information. But there were no discernible operating differences in the programs. My experiment included running each version of the program under both operating systems. Everything seemed to be fine.

My experiments could not be considered complete or foolproof, but time was getting short. Besides, with the Shugart half-heights installed on the XT (if they ever arrived) I would be able to go back to DOS 1.1 if insurmountable problems arose.

I still had to face the complexity of DOS 2.0's hierarchical directory scheme.

By chance I had a lunch date that week with a friend who works in one of IBM's New York customer service groups. It turned out that he had recently been keeping several XTs and their Winchester disks synchronized at various IBM offices throughout the city.

Dealing with Directories. "It's simple," he said. "Just set up your directories and write batch commands to move yourself around and set up your paths." (A *path* is a route you instruct DOS 2.0 to take when looking for a command not found in your current directory—see "System Notebook" in the May and June issues.)

Sheer genius! I began scribbling away in my notebook on the train home that night. I decided to keep most disk-resident operating system commands in a directory called DOSRES. Other universally needed commands and programs would be kept in DOSRES as well. For example, my initial planning included keeping IBM's *Personal Editor* in DOSRES. Kaplon's warning about hiding the *format* command (to prevent accidental erasure of the Winchester disk) gave me the idea to keep some of the DOS commands, including *format,* stored in a directory called NONRES. DOSRES would always be on a path for the current directory. NONRES, on the other hand, would never be on a path.

I planned to assign other directories on the Winchester by function. Basic would be housed in a directory called Basic. Resident files would include the Basic and BasicA .com files, as well as the Basic compiler .exe and .lib files. Also included would be batch commands I regularly used to start the interpreters and the compiler, in addition to the Basic program I used to define function keys and set up the printer. I normally used *Personal Editor* for working on Basic programs, so the appropriate profile (Pe.pro) and help (Pe.hlp) files for that program would also be resident in the Basic directory. The *path* command only directs DOS to commands (.exe, .com, and bat files), not to data. The Pe.pro and Pe.hlp files are data files and are not seen by DOS when following a path. Application development areas needing Basic would each have their own directory, and the Basic directory would be on a path for them to use.

EasyWriter II, Pascal, the *Macro Assembler,* and other application and language areas would each have their own directories (named EWII, Pas, Asm, and so on). My software production directories would include both test and production subdirectories, and each of those would have source and execution subdirectories. The appropriate compilers would be available on a path.

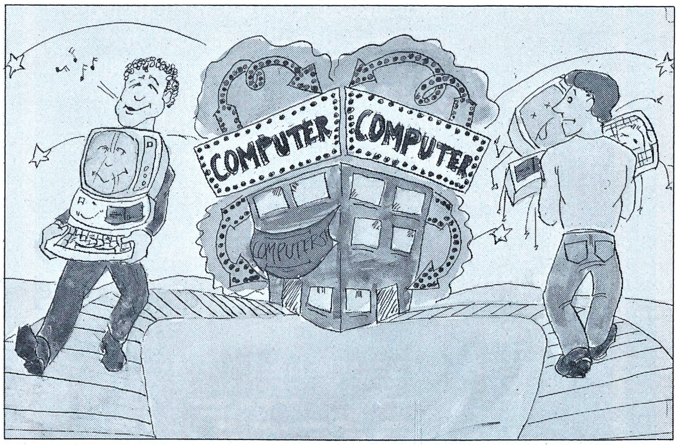
Each directory (except NONRES) would have an associated batch command of the same name. The command would change the current directory to the target directory (for example, Basic.bat would change the directory to be the Basic directory—see listing 5), and would establish appropriate paths for that particular function. A path to DOSRES was a requirement for all directories, and other paths would be established as needed. The batch commands for directories with subdirectories would be more complex and would require the advanced features of the DOS 2.0 batch facility. I was looking forward to trying them out.

The Great Day Arrives. By the time the great day arrived, I was as ready as I could be. I would have felt better had I planned out every last detail, but at least I was comfortable enough not to be nervous about moving to the XT and DOS 2.0.

I arrived at ComputerLand at about six o'clock that evening, dinner time for people with good sense. "Say 'Thank you,' " I was greeted.

I looked around quizzically and then noticed the hole in the XT display model where the Shugart half-heights had been. I smiled. "We decided to give them up for you. What's the sense of displaying them if you can't get them?" The Shugarts were being guaranteed as new, so their prior service as demos didn't matter.

ComputerLand's resident "tech" was working on my XT when I got there. The half-heights were installed and he was starting to work on the system board and expansion cards. (IBM delivers the machine with 128K installed, and I was having it upgraded to its full 256K capacity.) I wandered back into the tech area, expecting to pick up my new machine and go home to try it out, but the normally cheerful tech looked grim as he peered at the display hooked up to the XT. He was silent.



"Problem?" I asked.

"Won't boot from the Winchester," he replied sullenly. "The diagnostics are fine. It just won't boot."

My heart sank as I watched my old pc leave with its new owner. I cheered up when the tech said, "I'll get another one out." The tech didn't get any cheerier, however. Setting up and testing an XT is a lot of work, and he had to do it all over again. This time he installed DOS 2.0 on the Winchester and booted the XT before installing everything else. It worked fine, so he took it apart and put all my pieces in.

After reassembling the machine and running the diagnostics, he had me try it out. At first I thought the messages on the screen were error diagnostics being displayed during the power-on self-test, and I got nervous. "What're those?" I asked the second time I switched on the XT and saw them. "It's just telling you how much RAM is in the machine," he assured me. No one had told me that the XT displays a countdown of memory as it checks itself out.

ComputerLand installed a copy of the *Shipdisk* utility on my Winchester. IBM distributes it on the technicians' service disk (advanced diagnostics) for use when delivering Winchester disks. Running it causes the heads to move to cylinder 304 (all the way in, where you'll probably never store data) and stop. With the heads in that position, damage to your data is unlikely even if a head crash should inadvertently occur. I was advised to run the program whenever the machine would be left off for a while and whenever there was a possibility that someone might give it a hard bump. The same program is available on the Version 2.02 diagnostic disk provided

COHERENT™

The most powerful UNIX™-compatible operating system available for the IBM PC™, IBM XT™ and compatibles.

Now you can have the multi-user, multitasking programming capability of a mainframe on a microcomputer. The UNIX-compatible environment of COHERENT™ lets you take C code developed using UNIX V7 system utilities and compile and run it on the IBM PC, IBM XT and Corona.

COHERENT'S highly-optimized kernel lets you access over 145 different commands including a C-compiler, a text-formatter and LEX and YACC. Extensive hard disk and memory card support is available now. By the time this ad appears more devices and more IBM PC compatibles will be supported.

The cost — far less than the cost of similar UNIX-based operating systems and when you buy COHERENT from NCI you receive all the documentation and technical support you need to operate it.

Call or write

NCI

Network Consulting Inc.
Discovery Park,
3700 Gilmore Way, Suite 110,
Burnaby, B.C. Canada V5G 4M1
(604) 430-3466

COHERENT is a trade mark of Mark Williams Co. UNIX is a trade mark of Bell Laboratories. IBM PC and IBM XT are trade marks of International Business Machines Corporation.

with the XT, but having it available separately is a nice convenience. "Be sure you plan to bring the machine down," I was warned. "It goes into a deep sleep after you run *Shipdisk*, and you'll have to shut it off to reboot."

It was very late (the store was officially closed) by the time we settled up the paperwork. I happily drove home with the XT nestled comfortably in the back seat, placed it where the pc had lived until the night before, hooked it up, and switched it on. Everything seemed fine. The XT starts up faster than the pc even before you've initialized DOS 2.0 from the Winchester disk, and I liked that. I ran the diagnostics and, again, everything was okay.

I decided to bring up DOS 1.1 before turning in for the night. Mounting my usual working boot disk in the A drive, I pressed control-alt-delete to start things off. One thing was immediately apparent—there was no noise from the floppy disk drive. I looked to see if the drive's light was on; it was. The Shugarts are nearly silent in operation, a welcome change from the buzz-saw sounds of the IBM drives.

But the Drive Wasn't There. The second thing I noticed wasn't quite so pleasant. I watched as the screen showed DOS 1.1 come up and execute my usual Auto.exec.bat file without a hitch. Then I ran *chkdsk* to see if the Quadram RAM disk (drive C) was there. The "Invalid Drive Specification" error message came on the screen. A quick check (using *chkdsk* again, this time on the A drive) showed that the memory I had assigned to the RAM disk was unavailable (as it should be), but the drive itself was not there. I rebooted the system, just to be sure, but got the same results.

I installed Quadram's *QD* (that stands for *QuadRAM Drive*) program on the Winchester to bring it up under DOS 2.0. I got the same results—no memory, no RAM disk. I didn't need to write myself a note to remember to call Quadram in the morning. I had used the *QD* program with DOS 2.0 on the pc, so something related to the XT hardware had to be amiss, and I wanted to know what it was and how to fix it.

The man I spoke with at Quadram assured me that the problem was DOS 2.0, not with the XT. He said I should notice that twice as much memory was being used but that the RAM disk was not present. I assured him that I was having a different problem and that I was sure it wasn't because of DOS 2.0. He suggested I get the latest copy of the *QD* program from my dealer and told me I should be using *QDXT* for DOS 2.0. *QD*, he explained, was only for DOS 1.1 and would work with that system on the XT.

The software delivered with my QuadBoard had not included *QDXT*, and I asked the man at Quadram when they had started shipping the newer programs. "Recently," he replied. I was getting confused. My board was less than three months old, and I wondered how they defined "recently" at Quadram.

I picked up a copy of the new Quadram software and proceeded to try it out. The bug that had been described to me by Quadram popped right up when I used the newer *QD* program on both DOS 1.1 and DOS 2.0 on the XT. A capacity of more than 320K was not available, and there was no 160K RAM disk to account for it.

I tried the *QDXT* version of Quadram's program. This time I had a RAM disk under DOS 2.0. There were two remaining problems, however. I had the same bug when using the program under DOS 1.1 as I did with the newer version of *QD*, so I couldn't use the *QDXT* RAM disk there. In addition, the RAM disk that was available under DOS 2.0 was designated as drive C, and the Winchester (which is normally drive C) had been pushed down to drive D. Quadram's documentation indicated no way to change this. I thought of using the DOS 2.0 *assign* command. However, if you use *assign* (which is disk-resident) to reassign the drive with your disk-resident system commands on it, there is no way to get it back. So much for that cure!

It was the weekend by now, so I couldn't call Quadram for help (a call later in the week brought news that there was no way to change the drive designation of the RAM disk and that none of the programs worked with DOS 1.1 on an XT). I picked up the August *Softalk* and reread Kaplon's letter. Installing the IBM RAM disk device driver program (published in the DOS 2.0 manual) didn't sound too bad, and might even be fun. By this time I had defined some of my Winchester's directories, including Asm (for the IBM *Macro Assembler*). It was time to try them out.

Kaplon had advised users implementing the program to "type it in exactly as it is printed in the manual." I got my magnifying glass out (the program is in very small print) and did just that. He had assured us that when the program was assembled, linked, and converted by Exe2bin to a binary file, it would be 672 bytes long. Sometime after midnight I discovered that my version of the driver was 720 bytes long. I let it go until morning.

Even though the RAM disk driver program was too long, it seemed to work fine, and the program assigned the RAM disk to drive D, where I thought it belonged. But I was worried about the 720 bytes it used. Then I noticed that the program offsets printed in the manual's listing were different from those in my listing. Only then did I realize that in my zeal to copy everything exactly as printed, I had typed in several macro expansions (the lines with the "+" sign to the left). It was easy to fix, and the program came out the right length. I proceeded to install the double-sided version as well.

With both a single- and a double-sided RAM disk available, I wanted a nice way to configure the XT to use either one. DOS 2.0 looks for a Config.sys file to tell it about such things as device drivers, and I didn't want to be bothered copying the different versions of the Config.sys file that were required. I also wanted to be able to bring up the system without the RAM disk, which would require a third version of Config.sys.

"Config.bat" (see listing 1) became my first opportunity to exercise some of the new DOS 2.0 batch features. By running this program and rebooting the system, I could select and install the RAM disk configuration appropriate for whatever I would be doing. The RAM disk size is specified by passing 0, 1, or 2 (for no drive, single-sided, or double-sided) as a parameter to Config.bat. The program selects the appropriate "xxxxxxxx.sys" file (using the new *if*, *goto*, and *label* facilities) and copies it from the NONRES directory to Config.sys in the root directory of the Winchester (DOS looks for it in the root directory of the disk you are booting from).

Behind the Times. Getting all this working was so much fun that I almost didn't notice the clock problem. The QuadBoard clock/calendar was a day behind and hours short of the correct setting! A call to ComputerLand revealed that they didn't carry the required battery and that it wasn't listed as a replacement part. A look at the Quadram manual reminded me that the battery is recharged whenever the machine is switched on. For the rest of the weekend I switched the XT on and off a lot. By Sunday night the battery appeared to have caught up. Apparently it had gotten discharged from all the handling it received during the move.

As the week went by, however, it became apparent that the clock was losing three to five minutes a day. So I called Quadram again. It turned out that the QuadBoard clock is at the same address as IBM's Winchester disk (210 hex), and every time I accessed the disk the clock setting was being affected. "Recent" shipments had included a patch (a wire soldered across the back of the board that changed the clock address to 310 hex) to fix the problem. It was available as a field fix that could be installed by dealers. When I called ComputerLand, they were, again, unaware of the problem (they looked and found no QuadBoards in stock with a wire across the back), but they agreed to call Quadram and fix the board as specified. (In fairness, I should mention here that 210 hex is not listed by IBM as a reserved memory location in its *Technical Reference* manual for the pc.)

I had moved a copy of *EasyWriter II* on to the Winchester prior to defining my directories. It had started up without difficulty, and its speed was impressive. *EasyWriter II* is a heavily overlaid program, and having the program segments on the more quickly accessed disk yielded dramatically improved performance. Moving a document file folder from a floppy disk to the Winchester made it even faster.

However, after I had defined the EWII directory and moved *EasyWriter II* into it, the program decided that it was not on a system disk—and refused to run. When I booted the XT and ran *EasyWriter II* from the system disk (in DOS 2.0) that I had previously used for the program, everything worked fine, so a backup was available. The DOS 2.0 *EW* update had not yet arrived, so I called the IUS telephone support staff to see what could be done. They responded by sending the new disks via air freight. The new word processor arrived the next day and worked fine.

The Basic compiler and the *Macro Assembler* were working fine in their respective directories. The only problem I had so far had been using the Basic compiler in other directories that had the Basic directory on a path. When you compile a Basic program, you have to have the Bascom.lib file in the current directory. When running a compiled Basic program, Bascom.lib expects the Basrun.exe file (which provides the runtime environment for the program) to be present.

Basrun is an .exe file and would ordinarily be thought of as a command that could be available on a path. In this instance, however, the file is considered to be data, and DOS won't find it unless it's present in the current directory (Basic compiler rules allow it to be on the A disk drive as another alternative). You must keep a copy in each directory where compiled Basic programs will be run. Advanced users will note that this is not true for programs compiled with the O option. For these programs, however, the Basrun.lib file must be in the current directory, or on the A drive, when the linker is run.

The time had come to try IBM Pascal out on my XT. I am a novice user of the compiler, so its priority had been low and, for the same reason, I expected problems. I found them! When called upon to compile a small sample program, PAS1 ran out of memory, and the manual merely said that "Compiler Out of Memory" was an error message. I reconfigured the machine with no RAM disk (and no print spooler, which I had successfully installed by this time), and ran the compiler again with my test program. With over 490K available to it, the PAS1 step worked but PAS2 ran out of memory. The manual was no more helpful this time.

ComputerLand put my call for help on IBM's Customer Support Service (CSS), and we had an answer the next day. This was a known error that had nothing to do with either the XT or DOS 2.0—it occurs on all pcs with large memories. CSS supplied a three-part Debug program for the problem, which I applied. PAS1 was still not happy with the memory size unless I removed the RAM disk (I haven't yet determined exactly how much it needs). PAS2 worked fine. One problem remained. PAS1 requires the Paskey file to be present on the A drive. Use of the *assign* command to direct calls to the A drive to the C drive (*assign A=C*) remedied that problem (that's now part of my Pas.bat program). Paskey has to be present in directories that access the Pascal compiler on a path (this is just like the situation with the Basic compiler).

Was It All Worth It? I was able to continue working on my software business and my writing. The problems that remained were relatively minor in the grand scheme of things. Nothing that happened was bad enough to put me out of business, and that says a lot for the upward compatibility of the XT and DOS 2.0.

The new hardware has operated flawlessly. It has inherited reliability from its smaller pc cousin. The Shugart drives are terrific. There are two of them (I'm sure IBM will market half-heights one of these days), they are quiet, and they also seem able to successfully format disks on which the IBM drives fail. (They'd probably format a bagel if I could slide one into the drive.)

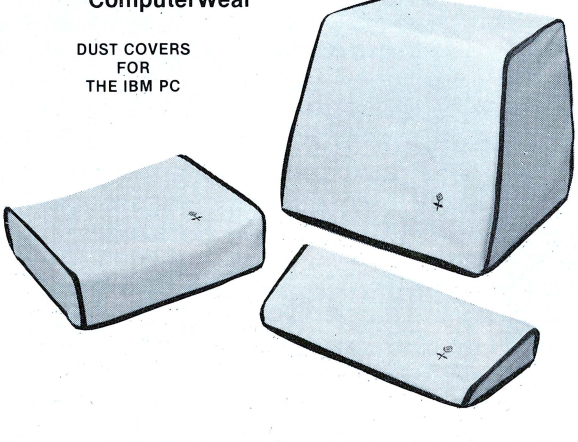
DOS 2.0, clumsy on the pc because of its size, is elegant in its operation of the XT. Perhaps the combination of the Winchester's size and speed and the easy environment provided by the DOS 2.0 hierarchical directory system is all that's required to achieve this elegance. But as I learn more about DOS 2.0, I find more things that I like about the system. The only use DOS 1.1 now gets on my XT is for formatting distribution disks and testing programs for downward compatibility.

The software and hardware vendors, as well as the ComputerLand I dealt with, were all very willing to help when problems arose. If there is a criticism to be made, it's that many hardware and software dealers do not make change and upgrade information readily available to users. You often have to call in with a problem before you find out about changes. At least the dealers ought to be made aware of incompatibilities before users are adversely affected.

Well, it's been a month since the XT came home with me from ComputerLand, and it's time to get back to work on that database application! ▲

Contemporary
ComputerWear

DUST COVERS
FOR
THE IBM PC



Attire your IBM PC in style! **ComputerWear** is dust protection with class. Design features include select, woven fabric and embroidered emblem. Order now. Satisfaction guaranteed.

☐ **YES,** PROTECT MY PC IN STYLE! SEND ME: ☐ CHECK
____ Keyboard(s) $16 ____ Monitor(s) $18 ☐ VISA
____ Drive(s) $18 ____ Printer(s) $18 ☐ MC
____ 1pc Mon/Drive$36 Add $2.00 Shipping Total: $______
(CA. Res. add tax)
Print Name: ____________
Address: ____________
City/State: ____________ Zip______
Credit Card #: ____________ Exp.______
Signature:____________
Contemporary ComputerWear Att: ST
1320 36th Ave./San Francisco, CA 94122 • 415/564-0506
IBM PC is a trademark of International Business Machines Inc.

```
ECHO OFF
IF X%1 = = X ~GOTO ERROR
IF X%1 = = X0 GOTO NORAM
IF X%1 = = X1 GOTO ONESIDE
IF X%1 = = X2 GOTO TWOSIDE
REM
REM No Parameter or Bad Parameter Passed - Error
REM
:ERROR
ECHO ***Error — Must Specify '0', '1', or '2' Sided RAM Disk
GOTO EXIT
REM
REM Set CONFIG.SYS for No RAM Disk
REM
:NORAM
COPY C:\NONRES\NORAM.SYS C:\CONFIG.SYS
ECHO ***Winchester-1 Boot Routine Set for NO RAM Disk
GOTO EXIT
REM
REM Set CONFIG.SYS for One-Sided (180K) RAM Disk
REM
:ONESIDE
COPY C:\NONRES\ONESIDE.SYS C:\CONFIG.SYS
ECHO ***Winchester-1 Boot Routine Set for One-Sided RAM Disk
GOTO EXIT
REM
REM Set CONFIG.SYS for Two-Sided (360K) RAM-Disk
REM
:TWOSIDE
COPY C:\NONRES\TWOSIDE.SYS C:\CONFIG.SYS
ECHO ***Winchester-1 Boot Routine Set for Two-Sided RAM Disk
:EXIT
ECHO ON
```

Listing 1. Config.bat
(Program to change RAM disk configuration)

```
BUFFERS=10
BREAK=ON
```

Listing 2. NORAM.SYS

```
BUFFERS=10
BREAK=ON
DEVICE=C:\NONRES\RAMDISK\IBMDISK1.DRV
```

Listing 3. ONESIDE.SYS

```
BUFFERS=10
BREAK=ON
DEVICE=C:\NONRES\RAMDISK\IBMDISK2.DRV
```

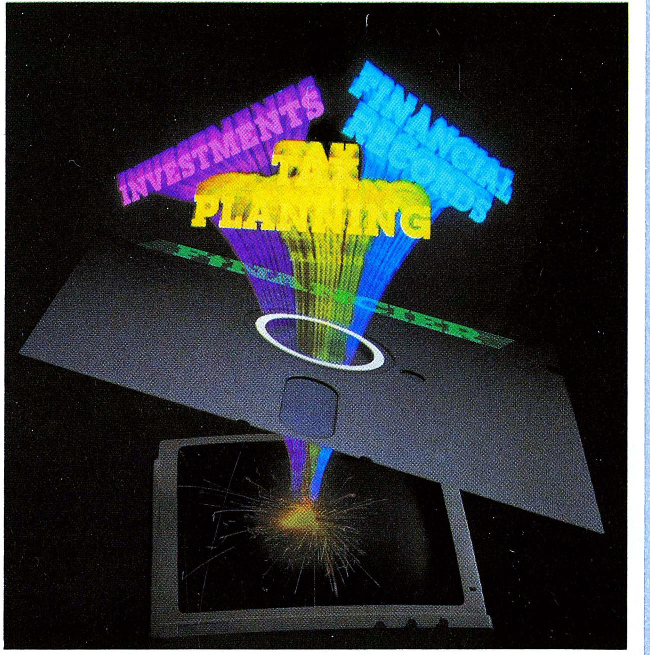
Listing 4. TWOSIDE.SYS

```
ECHO OFF
CLS
PATH C:\;C:\DOSRES
CD C:\BASIC
ECHO
ECHO BASIC Library Area Entered
ECHO Compiler and Interpreter Available
ECHO ON
```

Listing 5. BASIC.BAT

(Typical "change directory" program)

No other financial software even comes close.



Now Financier II
The financial software that has met with resounding approval from professional software reviewers just got even better. Now, the Financier Personal Series has been upgraded to Financier II. Combined with Financier's Tax Series and Investor's Series, it creates a totally integrated financial management system. Financier II is so easy to use that it is ideal for personal finance yet powerful enough, and flexible enough, to function as a small business system.

"It is clear that the Financier Personal Series is the most sophisticated and flexible of the financial programs under review here."*

Burton Alperson, Ph.D.
Reviewer, SOFTALK
June, 1983

Financier II features enhanced graphics capabilities, and expansion of Financier's unique auto-checking capability which prints checks directly from a user-maintained database, while updating bank, budget and tax records. Additionally, it provides a full range of professional-caliber financial statements including net worth, and cash flow reports. You can even opt for double-entry accounting methods, if desired.

Introducing Financier II

Now you can have a completely integrated financial software system.

"Out of all these programs, the Financier Personal Series provides the best balance of extensive capabilities and ease of use. The manual is outstanding as an introduction to both the practice of bookkeeping, and the use of a personal computer to perform this task."**

Steven Yoder and
Sherry Knight, CPA
PC Magazine, February, 1983

Financier II is remarkably easy to use.
You don't have to be a computer whiz-kid to use Financier II. That's because it's menu-driven. When you need to enter data, just fill in the blanks on the preformatted screen. If you can use an automatic teller machine, you're well on your way to mastering this unique financial software.

Another thing that puts Financier II so far in front of any other financial software package is that it offers powerful tax and inventory functions. In fact, Financier II allows you to maintain literally thousands of these accounts, if you desire. And, each account is separately manageable.

"Thus far, no other software company has matched Financier's interlocking combination of a powerful tax-planning package (Tax Series) and a year-round record-keeping program (Personal Series)."

Augustin Hedberg
Money, June, 1983

Financier Tax and Investor's Packages.
Financier's Tax and Investor's Series provide the perfect adjunct to Financier II.

Financier's Tax Series lets you create multiple tax cases, and store them for later adjustment. You can even perform "what-if" spreadsheet calculations, generate graphics and print charts.

Financier's Investor Series is a comprehensive portfolio management system that lets you maintain a data base on each security account, each security position, and each security transaction.

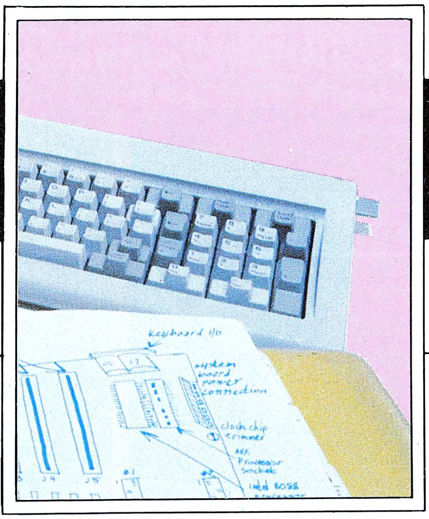
Financier Offers Something for Everyone.
Individuals, businessmen, tax preparation specialists, investors or anyone who wants real financial control cannot afford to miss out on Financier's powerful software packages.

Get the most from your personal computer with the financial software that does the most. Financier II, and Financier's Tax and Investor's Series.

FINANCIER
WE'LL KEEP YOU ONE STEP AHEAD ®

Financier, Inc., 2000 West Park Drive, Box 670, Westboro, MA 01581 (617) 366-0950

*Apparant Home Finance™, Perfin™, PC/PFP™, Home Accountant Plus™, Financier Personal Series™
**Bonus Accounting System™, Financier Personal Series™, FMS II™, Home Accountant Plus™, Money Maestro™
Financier software is available for IBM® PC, IBM® XT, Digital Rainbow™ and Wang® PC



SYSTEM Notebook

by Alan Boyd

DOS 2.0: *Move, Ver,* and *Vol*

Having made our way through most of the new features added to DOS by version 2.0, it's time now to go back and look at the ways in which some of the older, tried-and-true commands have changed.

The changes made to the older DOS commands fall into four categories. In the first category are those commands that, superficially at least, appear not to have changed at all. A quick comparison of the file size of the commands under version 2.0 versus their size under version 1.1 reveals that these commands have become larger. The reason for their growth is improvement in either speed or efficiency. Included in this first category of commands are *sys, diskcopy, diskcomp, date,* and *time.* Since the differences are all transparent to the user, there is no need to discuss them here.

The second category of changes encompasses those commands that make use of filenames or file specifications. Out of DOS 2.0's inclusion of hierarchical directories arises the concept of pathnames, which is obviously going to affect those commands that previously used only a filename. Such commands as *rename, copy, erase,* and *type* have been extended to manage the complexity of full pathnames as well as simple filenames.

Since the only difference in the operation of this second set of commands is the substitution of a full pathname for a simple filename, this second category of commands performs essentially the same as it did under DOS 1.1. Once you understand the concepts behind hierarchical directories, the operation of the commands in this category comes naturally.

As an example, the *copy* command can work between two different directories in much the same way as it has always worked between two different drives. The old version of *copy* was simply:

```
COPY filespec1 filespec2
```

whereas the new version can now include pathnames:

```
COPY [path]filespec1 [path]filespec2
```

To illustrate, let's take a look at this command in its most complex form: copying a group of files from a directory on one drive to a different directory on another drive. If we were to copy all of the .com files assigned the pathname \USR1\FILES\SYSTEM from a directory in drive A to a directory in drive B with the pathname \BACKUP\USR1\FILES\SYSTEM, the full command syntax would be:

```
A>COPY A:\USR1\FILES\SYSTEM\*.COM
B:\BACKUP\USR1\FILES\SYSTEM
```

Now while that might look complex, it follows all the rules of DOS 2.0 we have learned so far.

There are several rules changes and additions to this category of commands, all direct consequences of the new tree-structured filing system. One example that immediately comes to mind is the prohibition against erasing a file that is really a directory: In this case, you must first erase all of the files in the directory and then remove the directory (with *rmdir*).

If you're not using hierarchical directories, you can use these commands exactly as if you were running DOS 1.1.

The third category of changes includes those commands that have had major enhancements. There's no simple way to describe the changes to this set of commands, other than to say that they do more than they did before. We have already seen that the *format* command has been upgraded to handle new types of disk formats. *Format* can now work with either the older eight-sector-per-track format or the new, denser nine-sector-per-track format, as well as with the IBM hard disk. The changes that *format* has undergone under DOS 2.0 are true upgrades to the command itself and take the form of new switches that can be tacked onto the end of the command, switches that were not available under DOS 1.1.

The *chkdsk* command has likewise undergone some major surgery; it now has additional functions.

Yet another command that falls into this category is the amazingly resilient *mode* command. *Mode* is certainly one of the more interesting of the DOS commands. It seems to have been developed as a medium for change. The changes to *mode* between DOS 1.0 and 1.1 implemented a host of new options; the upgrades under 2.0 are an almost staggering leap.

A quick look at the purpose of the *mode* command reveals the reasons behind its accelerated growth. *Mode* was designed to allow users to configure their systems so as to work with many different peripherals.

In its original form, *mode* was a very simple command with two options. The first allowed for printer setup; the second allowed a color/graphics monitor to be configured for forty or eighty properly aligned columns.

Under DOS 1.1, *mode* underwent a transformation that added two new options. The first allowed the asynchronous communications adapter to be properly configured for a host of communications gear, while the second allowed the system to address a serial printer.

Although version 2.0 adds no new options to *mode,* it does make several significant changes. As the pc market matured, IBM took note of the fact that many people were opting for nonstandard peripherals. Although Big Blue's official position is that it does not support any non-IBM-supplied hardware, the company does make it fairly easy to address a variety of nonstandard devices via the *mode* command. As time goes on and more and more people add more and more "strange" new peripherals, you can expect to see the *mode* command upgraded even further. Let's take a closer look at the DOS 2.0 upgrades.

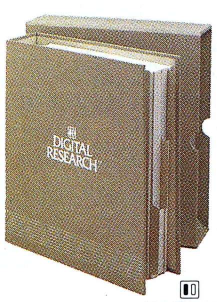
Mode has four major options. The first configures the standard line printer for both character size and spacing. Under DOS 1.1, the generic form of the command was

© 1983 Ketcham, Inc.

Meet Dr. Logo™

The world's best computer teacher.

Anyone in your family can learn to program a personal computer with Dr. Logo. This remarkable new learning language from Digital Research uses pictures and movement to teach programming…and that makes programming so easy, clear and entertaining, it's child's play to learn. What's more, everything you need is built in. Simply load the language and you're ready to run. See Dr. Logo now at a participating IBM® PC dealer. Call 800-227-1617, ext. 400 (in California, 800-772-3545, ext. 400) for the location nearest you.



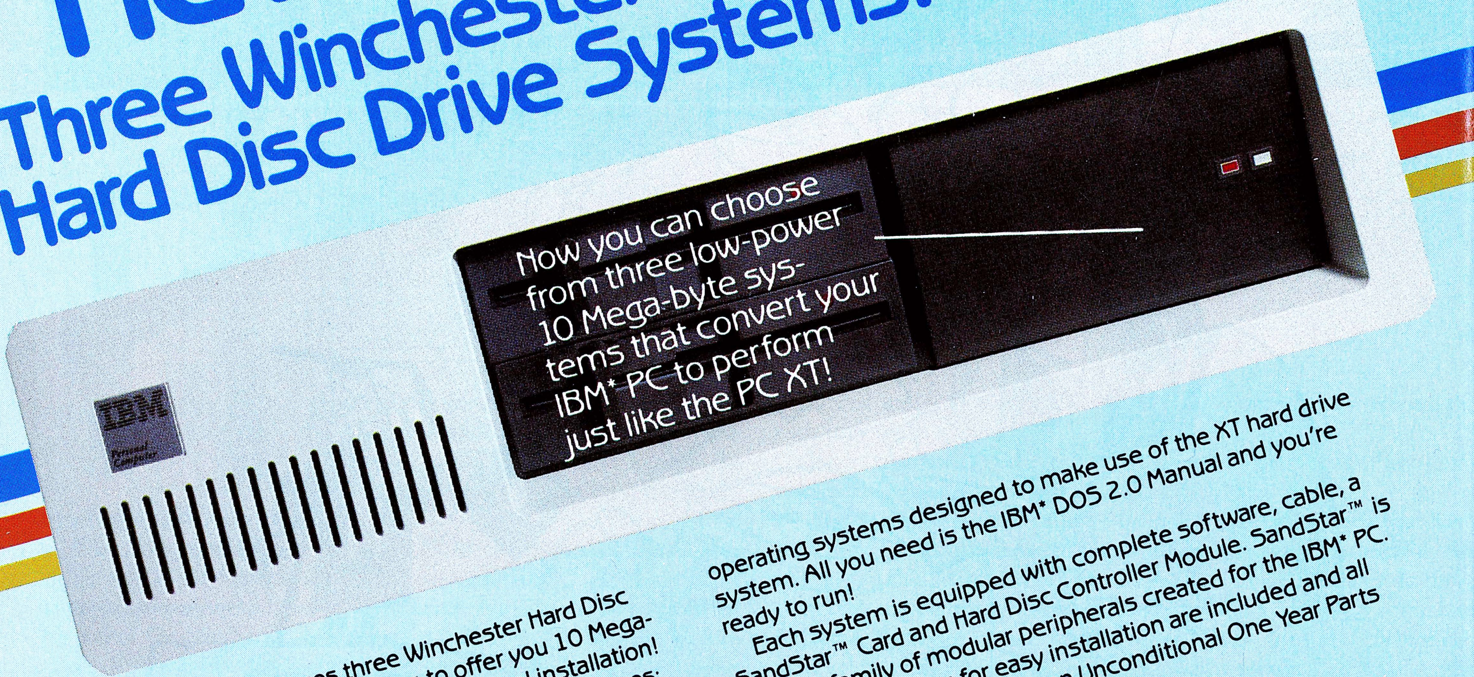
Now see Dr. Logo at most IBM PC dealers.

DIGITAL RESEARCH

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
The logo, tagline, and the Dr. Logo character are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Digital Research Inc. The Dennis characters are trademarks of Hank Ketcham Enterprises, Inc. © Digital Research 1983.

New!

Three Winchester Internal Hard Disc Drive Systems!



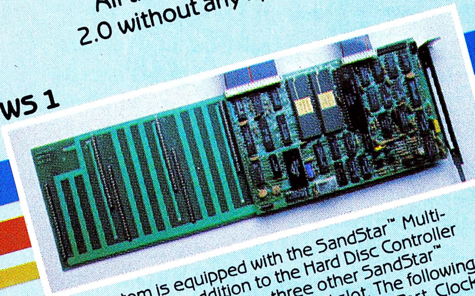
Now you can choose from three low-power 10 Mega-byte systems that convert your IBM* PC to perform just like the PC XT!

Maynard Electronics introduces three Winchester Hard Disc Drive Systems — the only drive systems to offer you 10 Megabytes of formatted capacity with complete internal installation! These systems offer the user countless benefits and features: capability of booting off the hard disc; additional functions while requiring only **one** card slot in your PC; and, use of available power, thereby preventing overheating problems which have affected other drives. Handling heavyweight data was never easier.

All three systems are quality engineered and work with DOS 2.0 without any special software drivers and also run with other operating systems designed to make use of the XT hard drive system. All you need is the IBM* DOS 2.0 Manual and you're ready to run!

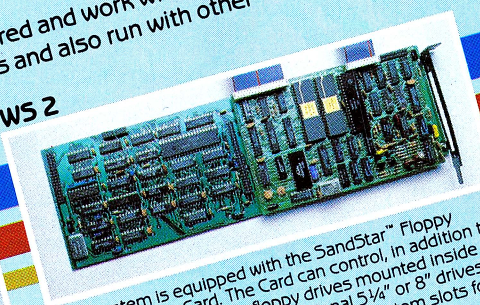
Each system is equipped with complete software, cable, a SandStar™ Card and Hard Disc Controller Module. SandStar™ is the first family of modular peripherals created for the IBM* PC. Simple instructions for easy installation are included and all components are backed by an Unconditional One Year Parts and Labor Guarantee.

WS 1



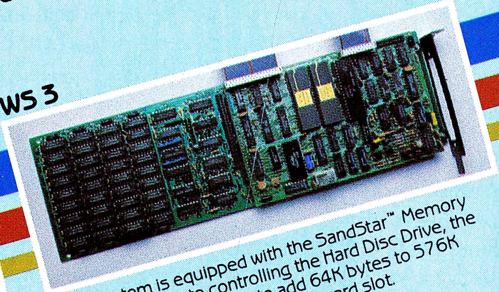
This System is equipped with the SandStar™ Multi-function card. In addition to the Hard Disc Controller Module, you can add up to three other SandStar™ Modules while using only **one** card slot. The following modules are available: Serial Port, Parallel Port, Clock Calendar, Game Adaptor, SASI Host Adaptor and Prototyping Module.

WS 2



This System is equipped with the SandStar™ Floppy Drive Controller Card. The Card can control, in addition to the Hard Disc Drive, two floppy drives mounted inside your PC and optionally two additional 5¼" or 8" drives mounted externally. This leaves three system slots for other expansion boards.

WS 3



This System is equipped with the SandStar™ Memory Card. In addition to controlling the Hard Disc Drive, the Memory Card allows you to add 64K bytes to 576K bytes of memory using only one card slot.

To expand your PC to perform like the PC XT, one of our Winchester Hard Disc Drive Systems is right for you. And if you have already made the wise decision to install any of Maynard's SandStar™ Cards, the SandStar™ Hard Disc Controller Module may be purchased separately.

TO ORDER, CONTACT YOUR LOCAL DEALER OR DISTRIBUTOR.

MAYNARD ELECTRONICS

MAYNARD
400 East Semoran Blvd. • Suite 207
Casselberry, Florida 32707
305/331-6402

We make modern times better.

---

*IBM is a trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

```
MODE LPT# N,M
```

where # is the printer number (1, 2, or 3), N is the number of characters per line (80 or 132), and M is the number of lines per inch (6 or 8).

DOS version 2.0 adds another parameter to this list. The new option takes the generic form:

```
MODE LPT#:N,M,P
```

The new parameter, P, is not a variable, like the other parameters, but a switch: It is either there or it isn't. Thus you could have the command:

```
MODE LPT1:80,6
```

or

```
MODE LPT1:80,6,P
```

The P parameter is used to override the timeout condition that sometimes causes an error message. The timeout condition occurs when a peripheral device fails to respond to the pc within a predetermined amount of time; in such cases, DOS generates a timeout error message and control is returned to the operating system. Systems that do not have this timeout mechanism frequently hang when data is sent to a device that is not attached or turned on. In such a situation, the computer just sits and merrily waits for the delinquent device to answer. Often the only remedy is to shut down the entire system and restart it, thereby sending all the data that was in memory to the proverbial bit bucket.

For just that reason, DOS makes liberal use of the timeout mechanism. Nonetheless, there may be situations when a user will need to override the timeout system. As a real-life example, consider the case where a user has two printers, one dot-matrix and one letter-quality, connected to the same parallel printer port. Many offices use such a configuration. The dot-matrix printer is used for rough drafts, the letter-quality for final printout.

Many times a user of such a configuration will discover after sending a file to the printer that the printer isn't connected. Rather than have DOS generate a timeout error, the user can turn off the timeout system via the new *mode* option. With the timeout system shut off, DOS will try again and again to send data to the unavailable device. To get out of this retry loop, you can simply type control-break.

The second *mode* command option configures the system for a particular type of display device. The command under DOS 1.1 allows the user to set either a forty- or an eighty-column display mode, to move the position of the characters on-screen to the left or right, and to run a test pattern that facilitates the positioning of the display. The generic form of the DOS 1.1 *mode* command is

```
MODE N,M,T
```

where N is the number of characters per line (40 or 80), M is the direction to shift the display (either R or L), and T is an optional request for a test pattern.

Mode under 2.0 does not include new parameters, but it does enlarge the number of valid options for the N parameter. Whereas before N could specify only forty- or eighty-column operation, new options allow the system to be properly configured for a wide range of display devices. The options for the N parameter now include all of the following:

40	**Same as before, for use in regular 40-column operation.**
80	**Same as before, for use in regular 80-column operation.**
BW40	**For use in a monitor that can only display 40 columns in black and white; turns off the color for a sharper display. This mode is best for small black-and-white televisions that are attached through an RF modulator.**
BW80	**For use in a monitor that can display 80 columns in black and white; turns off the color for a sharper display. This mode is best for black and white, green-screen, or other composite monochrome monitors attached directly to the graphics adapter.**
CO40	**For use in a color monitor or television than can display only 40 columns but also has color capability. This mode is suitable for low-resolution color composite monitors or color televisions attached to the graphics adapter through an RF modulator.**
CO80	**For use in a high-resolution monitor that can display 80 columns in color. In general this will be limited to RGB monitors.**
MONO	**Switches the output to the monochrome adapter, if there is one.**

The new options allow the pc to work with a large number of displays or display devices—all the way from a small black-and-white television set to an expensive RGB monitor. They also allow for the situation in which both the monochrome and graphics card are used simultaneously. It turns out that there are a few applications in which the user can see graphics displayed on a color monitor while entering data using the monochrome display—hence the new *mono* command to switch between displays.

The monochrome display is selected by the command

```
A>MODE MONO
```

which causes DOS to send all screen information to the monochrome display until any of the variations, such as

```
A>MODE CO80
```

are selected.

The reason for having so many options available for display selection has to do with the wide range of display resolutions that the pc can work with. The resolution of a display is indicated by its bandwidth; the greater the bandwidth, the greater the level of detail. Bandwidth, and hence resolution, is more or less directly proportional to cost.

As a general rule, monitors have higher resolution than television sets. TVs can be connected to the pc via a device known as an RF (for *radio frequency*) modulator. An RF modulator converts the signal coming from the pc (which is in a form known as baseband video) into a signal that looks to the TV as if it came over the airwaves. That means the computer signal can be connected to the television antenna, conveniently entering the set the same way a broadcast signal would.

The best way to compare the capabilities of high- and low-bandwidth devices is to attach an RF modulator to the color/graphics adapter and run that signal to a television, while at the same time connecting the composite (direct) video output to a black-and-white monitor and the RGB output to a high-resolution color monitor. The results will be eye-opening: The TV will look fuzzy compared to the black-and-white or RGB monitors. If a color TV is used, rather than a black-and-white set, the differences will be even more pronounced.

If you expect to be doing a lot of work on your pc, it is best to purchase as high a bandwidth display as your budget will allow, since it has been proven that prolonged staring at a low-bandwidth monitor can cause eyestrain, stress, and headaches.

In passing, it's interesting to note the strange situation that occurs when you try to plot two white dots next to each other on a composite monitor. On a nice crisp RGB monitor, two white dots next to each other will always produce exactly that—two adjacent white dots. Try the same on a composite monitor, though, and you'll see a single dot of another color altogether, usually blue or green. This interesting aberration, commonly known as artifacting, is frequently used by clever programmers to write programs that produce stunning colors on a low-cost, low-bandwidth monitor. This is why Microsoft's *Flight Simulator* produces vivid colors on low-cost monitors but only shows black and white on expensive RGBs.

Since the other two uses of the *mode* command—configuring the asynchronous serial port and redirecting the printer output to a serial printer—have not changed, that pretty much completes our discussion of the *mode* command. The only other point that should be made about the *mode* command is that it is specific to the operating system used on the IBM pc. Other MS-DOS systems do not generally contain a *mode* command, and Microsoft does not generally supply it with the operating system; it is left to the manufacturer to write the utility. This helps explain why certain aspects of the *mode* command—the ,P and ,T parameters working as switches without ever being defined as such, for example—do not follow the general rules for DOS commands.

The fourth and by far largest category of changes in DOS 2.0 includes all of the new commands that were not available under earlier versions. Many of the new commands were introduced to work with new features; the hierarchical directory capability, for example, brought with it a whole slew of commands whose purpose is to create, modify, and remove directories. So too have the new I/O-redirection capabilities spawned new commands. We have already reviewed many of the new commands in looking at new features.

The commands that fall into the fourth category include *ver, chdir, mkdir, rmdir, break, verify, path, vol, ctty, set, assign, backup, restore, tree, recover, print,* and *prompt,* as well as the *sort, find,* and *more* filters. There are also several new and exciting batch commands—which we will save for a later time.

When we studied hierarchical directories we looked at the *mkdir, chdir, rmdir, path,* and *tree* commands, and we used the *find, more,* and *sort* filters when we discussed I/O redirection. The remaining commands in this category can be broken down into two classes: internal commands and external commands.

WANTED!
SOFTWARE AUTHORS

Brøderbund Software is looking for new authors—both in-house and freelancers—to join its international team of programming wizards. If you have an original, machine language entertainment product for the home micro market, let us show you the advantages of working with our team of design, production and distribution specialists.

Call or write for a free Author's Kit or send us a machine readable copy of your work for prompt review under strictest confidence. You have nothing to lose and perhaps a great deal to gain.

Brøderbund Software™
17 Paul Drive, San Rafael, CA 94903, Tel:(415) 479-1170

Internal commands, as you probably remember, are those that are built into the resident portion of DOS and are therefore always available; external commands are stored in disk files and loaded as needed. Excluding the commands we have already covered, the new internal commands include *ver, break, verify, vol, ctty,* and *set,* while the external commands include *assign, backup, restore, recover, print,* and *prompt.* Let's proceed by taking a look at the internal commands.

The inclusion of the *ver* command is a reaction to the confusion that is sure to be generated when three different versions of the same operating system are in simultaneous use. *Ver* is a simple utility that tells the user which version of the operating system is being used.

In point of fact, since *ver* is an internal command, it can only work with version 2.0 and succeeding versions. If you attempt to use the *ver* command with DOS 1, you will be given an error message, meaning that the only information that *ver* supplies is whether you are in version 2.0 or not.

If you are working with 2.0 and enter the *ver* command, you will be rewarded with the copyright notice:

```
IBM Personal Computer DOS version  2.00
```

Notice the extra space between the word *version* and the *2.00;* it's a good indication of the planning for beaucoup future versions of DOS (up to ninety-seven more, if you want to push the point). So look alive: Just about the time you've mastered DOS 2.0, you may be challenged by yet a newer version.

The way the numbering scheme for DOS works is quite simple. The first digit, in this case a 2, represents the version number. Significant changes in the capabilities of DOS must occur before a new version number will be assigned. The two digits after the decimal point represent the release number; minor changes will be indicated by a change in the release number.

You saw this system in action during the earliest days of the pc. The story of how quickly the pc project went from drawing board to dealer shelves is by now well known. Thus it's no surprise that when DOS was released, version 1.00 was soon superseded by 1.05; 1.05 lasted only a few weeks before 1.1 was released.

The hallmark of a new release is that the changes are quite insignificant (from the user's point of view). Between 1.0 and the rarely seen 1.05 there were no apparent changes; the new release simply cleaned up some minor inefficiencies. DOS 1.1 supported double-sided disk drives, and 2.0 supported hard disk drives.

We saw the *vol* command some time ago when we were discussing the new version of the *format* command. *Vol* is a simple internal command used to display the volume label given to a disk during formatting. The /V switch in the *format* command will cause a prompt to be displayed that requests the user to enter a label for the disk; this label is then written onto the disk and is displayed whenever a *dir* or *chkdsk* command is issued. The volume label can also be accessed by application programs to verify that the correct disk is in use.

When invoked, the *vol* command will print out the volume name for the specified drive. If in formatting a disk you assign a volume name of Backup, then invoking the *vol* command will result in

```
A>VOL
Volume in drive A is BACKUP.
```

If you want to check the volume name on a drive you are not currently logged on to, enter

```
A>VOL B:
```

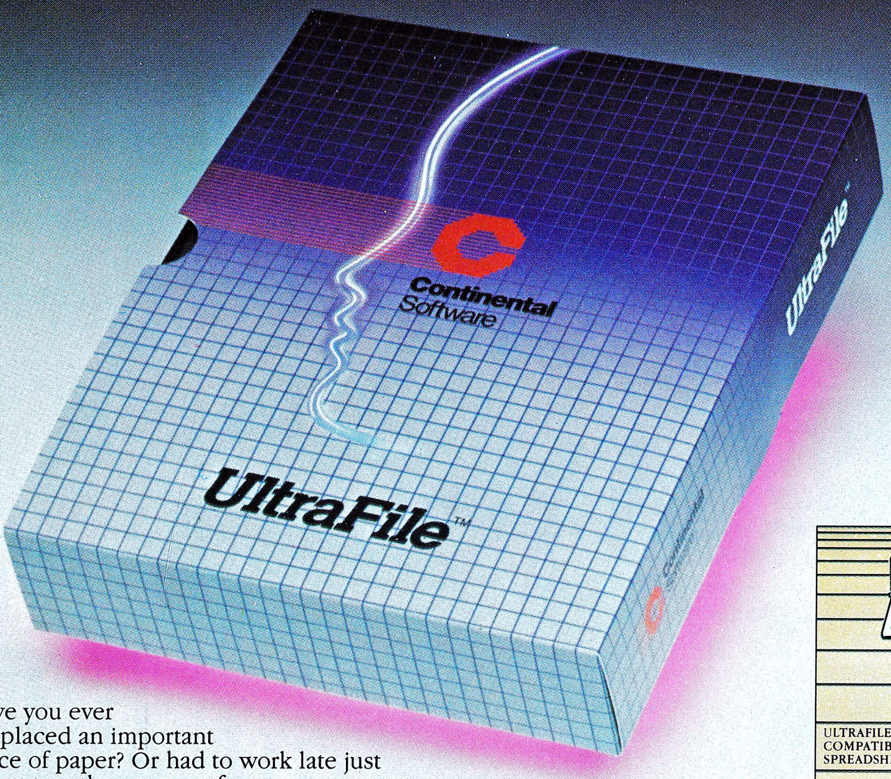
which may result in the message

```
Volume in drive B has no label
```

if the disk was formatted without the /V switch.

Next month we'll continue by looking at several of the new commands that DOS 2.0 brought with it. ▲

Introducing UltraFile:™ the most flexible management tool you'll ever need.



Have you ever misplaced an important piece of paper? Or had to work late just to put together a report for tomorrow morning's meeting? Or felt that you can't get at all the facts and figures that surround you?

It can be very frustrating. But it doesn't have to be.

Whether you need to process large amounts of information in business or just want to catalog your home library, UltraFile can do it for you. Because it's as powerful as it is easy to use.

UltraFile is the best reason there is for owning a computer.

SAVE COUNTLESS HOURS.
UltraFile can manage and organize your information in hundreds of different ways, no matter what your need. Here's one example:

You as sales manager know sales can be increased dramatically by concentrating on cities that have a population of at least 500,000 or an average income of at least $9,500. But which cities fit into those categories?

UltraFile can tell you. Instantly. UltraFile can pull the data out of a file of information and do calculations and even make projections.

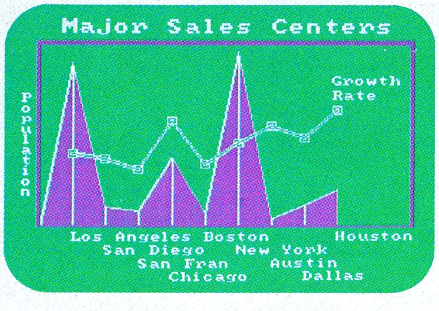
Then, if you'd like to see the information on your screen or want a printout, just tell UltraFile in plain English and it will do it for you.

What's more, with UltraFile you can make revisions at any point without having to start all over.

TYING IT ALL TOGETHER.
UltraFile has a very easy-to-use, yet sophisticated and accurate "graphing" system. And it's fun, too.

Suppose you'd like to review information in graphic form to make a visual comparison. Just "point" to the kind of graph you want to see, whether it's 3-dimensional bar, circle or area graph (to name a few), and UltraFile does the rest.

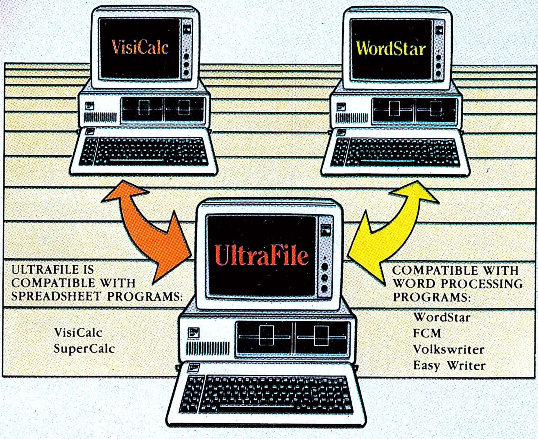
One of the best parts about UltraFile's graphing capabilities is the ability to actually do calculations right on the screen. In seconds. Just pinpoint a spot anywhere on the graph, press a button and you automatically get a numerical readout. It's that easy.



3 FOR THE PRICE OF 1.
File, Report, Graph in one easy program.
UltraFile: $195 complete.

ULTRAFILE ADDS NEW DIMENSIONS TO YOUR OTHER SOFTWARE PROGRAMS.
We taught UltraFile to talk to the most popular word processing and spreadsheet programs: VisiCalc, WordStar, SuperCalc, FCM, Volkswriter and Easy Writer. And that means you get the best of both worlds.

You can pull information from your "file" and put it into a letter or use it to do more complex calculations on a spreadsheet. And vice versa.


VisiCalc
WordStar
UltraFile
ULTRAFILE IS COMPATIBLE WITH SPREADSHEET PROGRAMS:
VisiCalc
SuperCalc
COMPATIBLE WITH WORD PROCESSING PROGRAMS:
WordStar
FCM
Volkswriter
Easy Writer

The point is, UltraFile can easily and efficiently solve *your* information problems.

In fact, UltraFile gives you dozens of good reasons for owning a computer.

So stop by your Continental Software dealer. Or call us today to find out more about UltraFile and how it will help you get a grip on information.

UltraFile is available for the IBM PC and IBM PC XT.

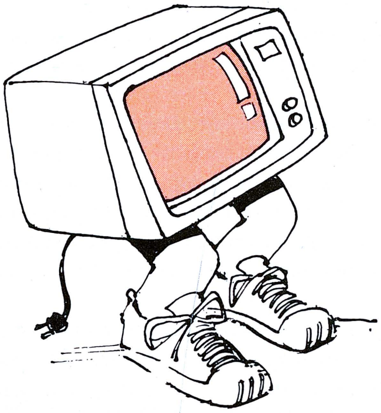
UltraFile and FCM are registered trademarks of Continental Software. IBM PC/PC XT are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp. VisiCalc is a registered trademark of VisiCorp Personal Software. WordStar is a registered trademark of MicroPro International, Inc. SuperCalc is a registered trademark of Sorcim Corp. Easy Writer is a registered trademark of Information Unlimited Software, Inc. Volkswriter is a trademark of Lifetree Software, Inc.

ULTRAFILE: Get a grip on information.

Continental
Software
A division of Arrays, Inc.

11223 South Hindry Avenue
Los Angeles, California 90045
213/417-8031, 213/417-3003

THE BASIC ASSEMBLY LINE



TAMING THE DISPLAY SCREEN

BY HOWARD GLOSSER

This series will give the Basic language programmer easy access to assembly language subroutines that are powerful, fast, and useful. This can be beneficial in several ways. First, you can do things that Basic would take an extremely long time to accomplish (see "From Screen to Dump in Almost 60 Flat," *Softalk*, July 1983). Second, you can do certain things that Basic was not designed for (see "Disk Handler," *Softalk*, October 1983). Both of the programs mentioned overcame Basic's limitations through the use of assembly language subroutines called from a Basic program.

In each installment of this series, a problem will be addressed or a limitation of Basic will be considered. An assembler subroutine will then be presented to solve the difficulty, and a Basic program will be used to poke this assembler routine into memory and then *bsave* it to disk. The subroutine can then be called from any Basic program. A sample Basic program will be presented. We'll discuss a few specific applications, and from there the routine is yours to use and modify. To make this instructive as well as useful, we'll also take a brief look at the assembler code and how it operates.

A Basic Screen Save. In a program, it's often desirable to be able to save temporarily a particular screen display while presenting a different one (such as a help screen or instructions) and then to restore the prior screen display. Although this can be done in Basic, it's time-consuming. The sample Basic program in figure 1 demonstrates just how long it really does take. If you key it in and run it, you'll find it takes Basic about fifteen seconds to save the screen. What actually occurs is that the *def seg* in line 100 points to the monochrome screen buffer. In the *for/next* loop in lines 140—160, the buffer is peeked a character at a time, and the value retrieved is then stored a byte at a time in the array Strscrn%(4000).

Now that you know how long it takes in Basic, let's shorten that time with this month's subroutine, Screen Handler.

Building Screen Handler. The subroutine Screen Handler is designed to save or restore the monochrome display, and at lightning speed! By passing it two values (save or restore and the location of the storage area), you can make the appropriate screen action occur. The demonstration program shows how the subroutine can be used to create an on-screen help facility within a program.

The building of the subroutine is handled a bit differently from the way that's usually done. In this version, the subroutine will actually be stored in a string variable. This eliminates the need for reserving space inside the Basic work area with a *clear* command or having to be concerned about what version of DOS you are using. Once the subroutine is loaded, there's no chance it will get overlaid either.

To begin the subroutine (figure 2), line 120 uses a *def seg* with no value following. This points the current segment to Basic's data segment (where the string variable is stored). The string is defined in line 130 and given the name Subrt$, along with a length of sixty-six characters, which the String$ statement initially sets to all spaces. This is because the string length must be defined and the space reserved for the subroutine before the assembly code can be poked into it. Line 140 uses the *varptr* command to retrieve the location of the string descriptor of Subrt$, which is stored in Sublc%. This string descriptor is a three-character field containing the length of the string in byte 1, and the low and high offset of the string into Basic's data segment in bytes 2 and 3. These last two are used to find the actual location of the string in memory by using the computation in line 150.

```
10 ' This is an example to demonstrate how long
20 '    it takes to use the PEEK statement to
30 '    store a screen display.
40 '
50 CLS:KEY OFF:COLOR 7
60 LOCATE 1,1:PRINT "Start of the screen"
70 LOCATE 8,24:PRINT "An example of using Basic to store the screen"
80 LOCATE 14,6:PRINT "Be patient. . .this will take about 15 seconds!"
90 LOCATE 25,62:PRINT "End of the screen";
100 DEF SEG=&HB000
110 DIM STRSCRN%(4000)
120 LOCATE 25,1:COLOR 31,0:PRINT "Screen is in process of being stored!";
130 COLOR 7,0
140 FOR LOOP%=1 TO 4000
150    STRSCRN%(LOOP%)=PEEK(LOOP%)
160 NEXT
170 CLS:BEEP
180 LOCATE 13,12:PRINT "Screen has finally been stored in STRSCRN%(4000)"
```

Figure 1.

NOW 1-2-3™
IS COMPATIBLE
WITH
THE HERCULES
GRAPHICS CARD™

Call or write us for information about the Hercules Graphics Card.

Hercules Computer Technology
2550 Ninth Street Suite 210
Berkeley, CA 94710

Telephone: (415) 540-6000

Hercules Graphics Card is a trademark of Hercules Computer Technology. 1-2-3 is a trademark of Lotus Development Corporation.

Once the string's location has been found and stored in the variable Scrn, the *for/next* loop in lines 190–230 pokes the assembly language code located in the *data* statements into string Subrt$. The program checks for errors in the *data* statements; if none are found, the subroutine is stored on disk under the name Scrnhndl by the *bsave* in line 300. Otherwise, the error message in line 260 is displayed and the program stops. Once the subroutine is stored on disk, the work's done. It's then ready to be called from a program, which we'll do in our example.

Content of the Screen Handler Demo. The program to demonstrate Screen Handler (figure 3) creates a simple, usable menu that allows selection of the screen attribute as well as the cursor type on a monochrome display. The program was designed to run under any version of Basic and thus does not use the Advanced Basic key-trap statements. Let's first look at the content of the example, and then we'll discuss how it's used.

At the start of the program the soft-key display (the key definitions that appear at the bottom of the screen) is turned off, and the function keys (F1–F9) are set to a null value. Next, a standard cursor and screen attribute are set. Since this program makes heavy use of the *color* and *locate* statements, it might be helpful to refer to the Basic manual for information on exactly what these commands can do as an aid to using this example.

The variable Loadsw in line 120 keeps track of whether the subroutine has already been loaded. This program can be run many times, and it would be pointless to keep loading the subroutine again and again. In line 160 the *def seg* appears, pointing us to Basic's data segment. Subrt$ is again defined as a string, and line 180 gets the location of the string descriptor. Note, however, that the computation to locate the actual string area is not present at this point in the program. Instead, it is found toward the bottom, on line 1730, as a subroutine that is referenced by a *gosub*. This is because the actual location of string Subrt$ can change while the Basic program is running. This could occur when a fre(" ") command is used to force a housecleaning or if Basic decides to do garbage collection. If this relocation occurred and the program did not recognize that fact, the program would go out to execute the Screen Handler subroutine (where it thought it was) with unpredictable results. So, before any activity such as the *bload* or the subroutine calls is done, the program always does a *gosub* to the routine on line 1730 to find the current location of Subrt$.

Line 240 defines an array variable, Strscrb%, which is 4K in size. This is where the screen image is stored. The variables Store% and Restr% are set respectively to 1 or 2 in line 250, to simplify the call as much as possible. Since this example is supposed to generate an on-screen help facility, the key-press routine beginning on line 1780 recognizes when the F1 key is pressed. In the example program, when F1 is pressed, the screen is immediately saved and a help screen is displayed for the area in question.

Beginning in line 270, the menu for the screen attributes and cursor selection is built. The variable Help% is used to keep track of which part of the program is currently running. It's given the value of 1 in line 390 where we're dealing with the screen attribute, and the value of 2 is assigned in line 540 where we're handling cursor type. When the help screen facility is entered, the current value in Help% determines what help message to print. The actual help screen section begins on line 1000. This is the area of the program where the calls to Screen Handler occur, so let's look at this section in a little more detail.

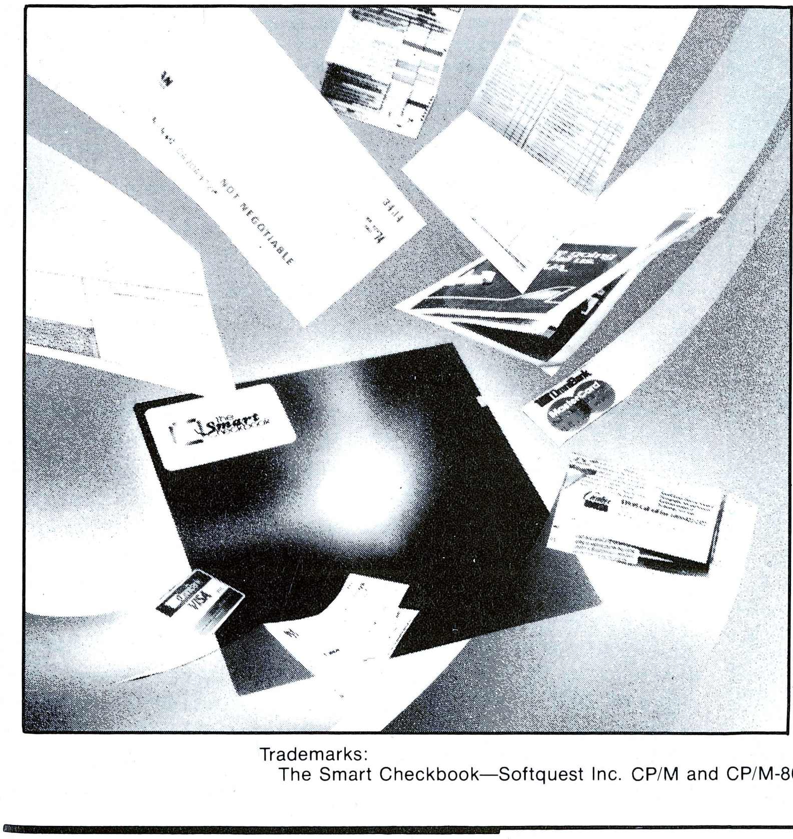
When this section of the code is entered, the cursor is turned off and its position saved. Line 1090 sets the variable Scrnopt% to Store%, and then the *gosub* retrieves the location of Subrt$ (which contains the Screen Handler subroutine). The actual call then occurs in line 1100. When the help message has been displayed, the user can press any key to return to line 1210. The Scrnopt% variable is set to restore the screen, the *gosub* retrieves Subrt$'s location, and line 1250 calls Screen Handler. After this, the cursor is restored to its prior location and the help section is exited, returning control to line 1840.

Don't Blink or You'll Miss It. The actual operation of the example is very simple. When the program is run, a menu appears allowing selection of the screen attribute. Pressing F1 at this point displays a help screen with further information concerning screen attributes and actual examples of what they look like. To leave the help screen, press any key. This returns control to the menu. At this point, select 1, 2, or 3. Immediately a menu appears, allowing selection of cursor type. Pressing F1 again takes you to a help screen that describes and illustrates what's available. After you return to the menu and select a valid response, the message on lines 800 and 810 is displayed in the selected attribute, and the cursor appears on the next line—in the cursor type you selected. This is positive verification that the selections you made have taken effect. Press *r* to run the demo again or any other key to stop. Try running it a few times to get a feel for what it's doing.

Well, that's the example. Simple, to be sure, but it clearly demonstrates the power and speed of the Screen Handler subroutine. Another suggested use for this subroutine might be a pause key in the middle of a game, where the clock would be stopped and the current screen saved while a pause message or instructions are displayed. Or how about, with some additional work, a programmed split screen, where two entirely different functions could go on at the same time? The possibilities are endless, so experiment with, use, and modify Screen Handler to fit your needs. Now let's move on and take a look at the assembly code.

```
10 '  ***** BUILD SCREEN HANDLER *****
20 '
30 '    STORE/RESTORE SCREEN IMAGE
40 '      ON MONOCHROME DISPLAY
50 '
60 '    WRITTEN BY HOWARD GLOSSER
70 '
80 CLS
90 '
100 ' ** THIS SETS UP STRING LOCATION FOR SUBROUTINE
110 '
120 DEF SEG
130 SUBRT$=STRING$(66,32)
140 SUBLC%=VARPTR(SUBRT$)
150 SCRN=PEEK(SUBLC% + 1) + (256*PEEK(SUBLC% + 2))
160 '
170 ' ** THIS BUILDS THE SUBROUTINE
180 '
190 FOR MEM = SCRN TO SCRN + 65
200    READ DT%
210    POKE MEM,DT%
220    CHECKSUM%=CHECKSUM% + DT%
230 NEXT
240 READ DT%
250 IF CHECKSUM% = DT% THEN 300
260 PRINT "ERROR in DATA STATEMENTS - Check lines 360 - 440":END
270 '
280 ' ** THIS SAVES THE SUBROUTINE
290 '
300 BSAVE "SCRNHNDL",SCRN,&H42
310 PRINT "SCREEN HANDLER SUBROUTINE CREATED"
320 END
```

Making money is one thing.
Managing it is something else.



The Smart Checkbook does the job. Manages your money the way you want it managed—easily.

Imagine: push a button and get family budget reports, net worth statements, tax records. Custom reports, too. Know where your monies go, accurate to the penny and well organized.

"Instant Reconciliation." The Smart Checkbook doesn't just tell you if you're out of balance—it finds mistakes and corrects them on the spot. It even catches bank errors!

AND print checks, of course! With payee's name and address!

Advanced features? Split transactions and assign the amounts to the categories you choose. Track sales taxes and much more. And there's a practice account to get you started.

Yes: unlimited accounts, combined accounts, organized accounts. A 160k disk, holds up to 2,000 transactions. Bigger disks—even more.

The Smart Checkbook is available for the IBM-PC, PC-compatibles and most CP/M, CP/M-86 and MS-DOS computers.

Order today. $149 complete. VISA and MasterCard accepted. Call 703-281-1621

Softquest Inc.
P.O. Box 3456
McLean, VA 22103

SQ the Smart Checkbook

Trademarks:
The Smart Checkbook—Softquest Inc. CP/M and CP/M-86—Digital Research, Inc. PC-DOS—IBM MS-DOS—Microsoft Corp.

```
330 '
340 ' ** DATA STATEMENTS TO BUILD SUBROUTINE
350 '
360 DATA &H55,&H8B,&HEC,&H8B,&H76,&H08,&H8B,&H14
370 DATA &H83,&HFA,&H01,&H74,&H08,&H83,&HFA,&H02
380 DATA &H74,&H19,&HEB,&H2A,&H90,&H1E,&H8B,&H7E
390 DATA &H06,&HB8,&H00,&HB0,&H8E,&HD8,&HBE,&H00
400 DATA &H00,&HB9,&HD0,&H07,&HFC,&HF3,&HA5,&H1F
410 DATA &HEB,&H14,&H90,&H8B,&H76,&H06,&H06,&HB8
420 DATA &H00,&HB0,&H8E,&HC0,&HBF,&H00,&H00,&HB9
430 DATA &HD0,&H07,&HFC,&HF3,&HA5,&H07,&H5D,&HCA
440 DATA &H04,&H00,&H1D82
```

Figure 2.

```
10 ' ***** THIS PROGRAM DEMONSTRATES SCREEN HANDLER *****
20 '
30 ' This demonstration of SCREEN HANDLER consists of a screen that allows
40 ' selection of the screen attribute and the type of cursor to use.
50 ' By pressing F1, help is immediately available for the area in question.
60 '
70 '    ** TURN OFF LINE 25 / CLEAR FUNCTION KEYS
80 '       SET STANDARD CURSOR / SCREEN ATTRIBUTES
90 '
100 KEY OFF:FOR X = 1 TO 10:KEY X,"":NEXT
110 COLOR 7,0:LOCATE ,,0,11,12:CLS
120 IF LOADSW THEN 270
130 '
140 ' **** STORE SCREEN HANDLER SUBROUTINE IN STRING
150 '
160 DEF SEG:LOADSW=-1
170 SUBRT$=STRING$(66,32)
180 SUBLC%=VARPTR(SUBRT$)
190 GOSUB 1740          ' get subroutine location
200 BLOAD "SCRNHNDL",SCRN
210 '
220 '    ** DEFINE CONSTANTS NECESSARY IN PROGRAM
230 '
240 DIM STRSCRN%(2000)
250 STORE%=1:RESTR%=2
```

25% DISCOUNT With this ad

Europr Inc.™

P.O. Box 390605
Mt. View, CA 94039
(408) 248-9700

Educational Programs for the IBM® PC

PC BASIC TRAINER

EDUBAS I	Designed for beginners who want to learn how to program with the IBM PC Basic Language	$ 95
EDUBAS II	Unlocks advanced functions of BASIC, such as: Files (sequential and random), graphics, strings...	$105
EDUBAS III	Presents the additional features available in the new PC BASIC 2.0	$ 50
EDUBAS PKG	Contains EDUBAS I, EDUBAS II and EDUBAS III	$190
TMGAME	Sharpen your math skills the FUN way. +, -, X, -. 3 levels of difficulty.	$ 30

- Our educational programs use the W.I.L.L.™ (Watch, Interact, Listen, and Learn) Method that has proven to be the best way to learn about computers while using a computer.
- Requires IBM PC or compatible, MS-DOS, 1 Disk drive, Color graphic adaptor, and an 80 column black and white or color monitor.

TO ORDER, CALL COLLECT (408) 248-9700

Please send me your FREE catalog:

Name ______________________

Address ______________________

City ____________ State ________ Zip ________

master charge

VISA

*IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation

```
260 SP$=SPACE$(17)
270 '
280 '    ** DISPLAY MENU SCREEN
290 '
300 LOCATE 1,22
310 PRINT STRING$(5,205) " DEMONSTRATE SCREEN HANDLER " STRING$(5,205)
320 LOCATE 2,24:PRINT  "SELECT SCREEN ATTRIBUTE/CURSOR TYPE"
330 LOCATE 4,1:PRINT STRING$(80,205);
340 COLOR 15,0:LOCATE 25,1
350 PRINT "Press F1 for On Screen HELP Facility";
360 '
370 '    ** SET HELP% COUNTER TO KEEP TRACK OF WHERE PROGRAM IS
380 '
390 HELP%=1
400 '
410 COLOR 7,0:LOCATE 7,1
420 PRINT SP$ "SCREEN ATTRIBUTE   :"
430 PRINT SP$ "     1. Regular"
440 PRINT SP$ "     2. Bright"
450 PRINT SP$ "     3. Reverse Video"
460 '
470 '    ** GET RESPONSE AND CHECK VALIDITY
480 '
490 LOCATE 7,39,1:GOSUB 1790:SCRAT%=VAL(KY$)
500 IF SCRAT% ⟩ 3 OR SCRAT% ⟨ 1 THEN SOUND 50,7:GOTO 490:ELSE PRINT SCRAT%
510 '
520 '    ** SET HELP% COUNTER TO KEEP TRACK OF WHERE PROGRAM IS
530 '
540 HELP%=2
550 '
560 LOCATE 12,1,0
570 PRINT SP$ "CURSOR TYPE         :"
580 PRINT SP$ "     1. Regular"
590 PRINT SP$ "     2. Block"
600 PRINT SP$ "     3. Split"
610 '
620 '    ** GET RESPONSE AND CHECK VALIDITY
630 '
640 LOCATE 12,39,1:GOSUB 1790:CSRTYP%=VAL(KY$)
650 IF CSRTYP% ⟩ 3 OR CSRTYP% ⟨ 1 THEN SOUND 50,7:GOTO 640:ELSE PRINT CSRTYP%
660 '
670 '    ** CLEAR LINE 25
680 '
690 LOCATE 25,1:PRINT SPC(40);
700 '
710 '    ** GOSUB TO SET SCREEN ATTRIBUTE
720 '
730 ON SCRAT% GOSUB 890,900,910
740 '
750 '    ** GOSUB TO SET CURSOR TYPE
760 '
770 ON CSRTYP% GOSUB 960,970,980
780 '
790 SOUND 500,1:SOUND 400,1:LOCATE 22,1:HELP%=0
800 PRINT "SCREEN HANDLER DEMO COMPLETED - ";
810 PRINT "Press (R) to run again or any other key to end";
820 LOCATE 23,1:GOSUB 1790
830 IF KY$="R" OR KY$="r" THEN 110
840 COLOR 7,0:LOCATE ,,1,11,12
850 END
860 '
870 '    ** SET SCREEN ATTRIBUTES
880 '
890 COLOR 7,0:GOTO 920   'Regular
900 COLOR 15,0:GOTO 920  'Bright
910 COLOR 0,7            'Reverse Video
920 RETURN
930 '
940 '    ** SET CURSOR TYPE
950 '
960 LOCATE ,,,12,13:GOTO 990 'Regular
970 LOCATE ,,,1,13:GOTO 990  'Block
980 LOCATE ,,,12,1           'Split
990 RETURN
1000 '
1010 '    **** HELP SCREEN SECTION
1020 '    This routine is entered when F1 key is pressed
1030 '
1040 LOCATE,,0
1050 CSR%=CSRLIN:PST%=POS(0)
1060 '
1070 '    ** THIS STORES THE CONTENTS OF THE SCREEN IN STRSCRN%(0)
1080 '
1090 SCRNOPT%=STORE% : GOSUB 1740
1100 CALL SCRN (SCRNOPT%,STRSCRN%(0))
1110 '
1120 '    ** THIS IS THE HELP SCREEN FACILITY
1130 '
1140 CLS:COLOR 0,7:LOCATE 3,27
1150 PRINT " ON-SCREEN HELP FACILITY "
1160 COLOR 7,0:LOCATE 6,1
1170 '
```

```
1180 '    ** THE VALUE IN HELP% DETERMINES WHAT HELP MESSAGE TO PRINT
1190 '
1200 ON HELP% GOSUB 1340,1510
1210 '
1220 '    ** THIS RESTORES THE SCREEN FROM STRSCRN%(0)
1230 '
1240 SCRNOPT%=RESTR% : GOSUB 1740
1250 CALL SCRN (SCRNOPT%,STRSCRN%(0))
1260 LOCATE CSR%,PST%
1270 LOCATE ,,1
1280 RETURN
1290 '
1300 '    **** THESE ARE THE HELP MESSAGES FOR THE DEMONSTRATION
1310 '
1320 '    ** SCREEN ATTRIBUTE HELP
1330 '
1340 SAVHELP%=HELP%:HELP%=0:PRINT "The selection for the ";
1350 COLOR 15,0:PRINT "SCREEN ATTRIBUTE";:COLOR 7,0
1360 PRINT " will result in all data "
1370 PRINT "displayed on the screen being in that attribute. Below are"
1380 PRINT "examples of the 3 screen attributes available."
1390 PRINT "Make your choice on the main menu from these."
1400 PRINT
1410 COLOR 7,0:PRINT SP$;:PRINT "1. ";:COLOR 7,0:PRINT "Regular":PRINT
1420 COLOR 7,0:PRINT SP$;:PRINT "2. ";:COLOR 15,0:PRINT "Bright":PRINT
1430 COLOR 7,0:PRINT SP$;:PRINT "3. ";:COLOR 0,7:PRINT "Reverse/Video":PRINT
1440 BEEP:LOCATE 25,15:COLOR 15,0
1450 PRINT "Press any key to continue. . . .";
1460 GOSUB 1790:COLOR 7,0:HELP%=SAVHELP%
1470 RETURN
1480 '
1490 '    ** CURSOR TYPE HELP
1500 '
1510 SAVHELP%=HELP%:HELP%=0:PRINT "Three different ";
1520 COLOR 15,0:PRINT "CURSOR TYPES ";:COLOR 7,0
1530 PRINT "are included on the main menu."
1540 PRINT "This variety can be used in a number of ways for various reasons;
1550 PRINT "The REGULAR cursor is the default (the flashing line), and is the
1560 PRINT "type of cursor used when Basic is first started, the BLOCK cursor
1570 PRINT "is most effective on a busy screen where the regular cursor is
1580 PRINT "sometimes difficult to spot. The SPLIT cursor proves to be
1590 PRINT "useful on a file maintenance screen where it will wrap around
1600 PRINT "the character being edited. Below are examples of each of the
1610 PRINT "cursor types selectable in the program.
1620 PRINT "Make your selection on the main menu from these."
1630 PRINT:PRINT
1640 PRINT SP$ "1. Regular Line ";:COLOR 23,0:PRINT "−":COLOR 7,0:PRINT
1650 PRINT SP$ "2. Block ";:COLOR 23,0:PRINT CHR$(219):COLOR 7,0:PRINT
1660 PRINT SP$ "3. Split"
1670 BEEP:LOCATE 25,18:COLOR 15,0
1680 PRINT "Press any key to continue. . . .";
1690 LOCATE 22,27,1,12,1
1700 GOSUB 1790
1710 LOCATE ,,0,11,12:COLOR 7,0:HELP%=SAVHELP%
1720 RETURN
1730 '
1740 '    ** RETRIEVE LOCATION OF SUBROUTINE
1750 '
1760 SCRN=PEEK(SUBLC% + 1) + PEEK(SUBLC% + 2) * 256
1770 RETURN
1780 '
1790 '    ** WAIT FOR KEY PRESS ROUTINE
1800 '
1810 KY$=INKEY$:IF KY$="" THEN 1810
1820 IF LEN(KY$) <> 2 THEN 1850
1830 KY$=RIGHT$(KY$,1)
1840 IF ASC(KY$) = 59 AND HELP% <> 0 THEN GOSUB 1000:GOTO 1810
1850 RETURN
```

Figure 3.

Store/Restore Assembly Style. The assembly language subroutine in figure 4 is made up primarily of three parts. Part 1 (lines 15 through 24) is used to retrieve information from the stack, which was passed from Basic, to tell the subroutine whether to store or restore the screen image. The only valid options are 1 and 2; if either of these is found, a jump is taken to the appropriate section of code. Otherwise, the subroutine returns to Basic, with no action taking place.

Part 2 of the program consists of lines 25 through 35 and is entered if a screen store operation is to be done. The DS register is first saved (so later a successful return to Basic can be made). In line 27, information is retrieved from the stack telling the subroutine where to store the screen image. Lines 28 and 29 are used to load the DS register with the address of the monochrome screen buffer. Register SI is set up as an indexing register in line 30. The value of 2000 is loaded into the CX register as the

THE INEVITABLE BEGINNER'S MANUAL
Getting To Know Your PC

BY CRAIG STINSON

From the moment you first touch the keyboard, this book will be an invaluable source of information. It covers how the pc works, how it's designed, and what you can do with it. The author also relates more abstract, though mostly nontechnical, notions about computing in general. A well written tutorial that every pc owner should have at hand. Gives real meaning to the word Personal.

This book is a revised and updated compilation of the Beginners' Corner columns which appeared in *Softalk for the IBM PC.*

Retail $9.95
Holiday Special $8.95

Send order with payment to:

Softalk Holiday IBM
Box 60-BD/C
North Hollywood, CA 91603

ISBN 0-88701-004-0 128 pages

Please enclose $1.50 postage and handling for each book ordered. California residents add 6 1/2 percent sales tax. PAYMENT MUST ACCOMPANY ORDER. This special offer expires November 30, 1983. Books to be shipped first week of December 1983.

IBM Personal Computer is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

What's on the best-seller list in IBM Personal Computer software?

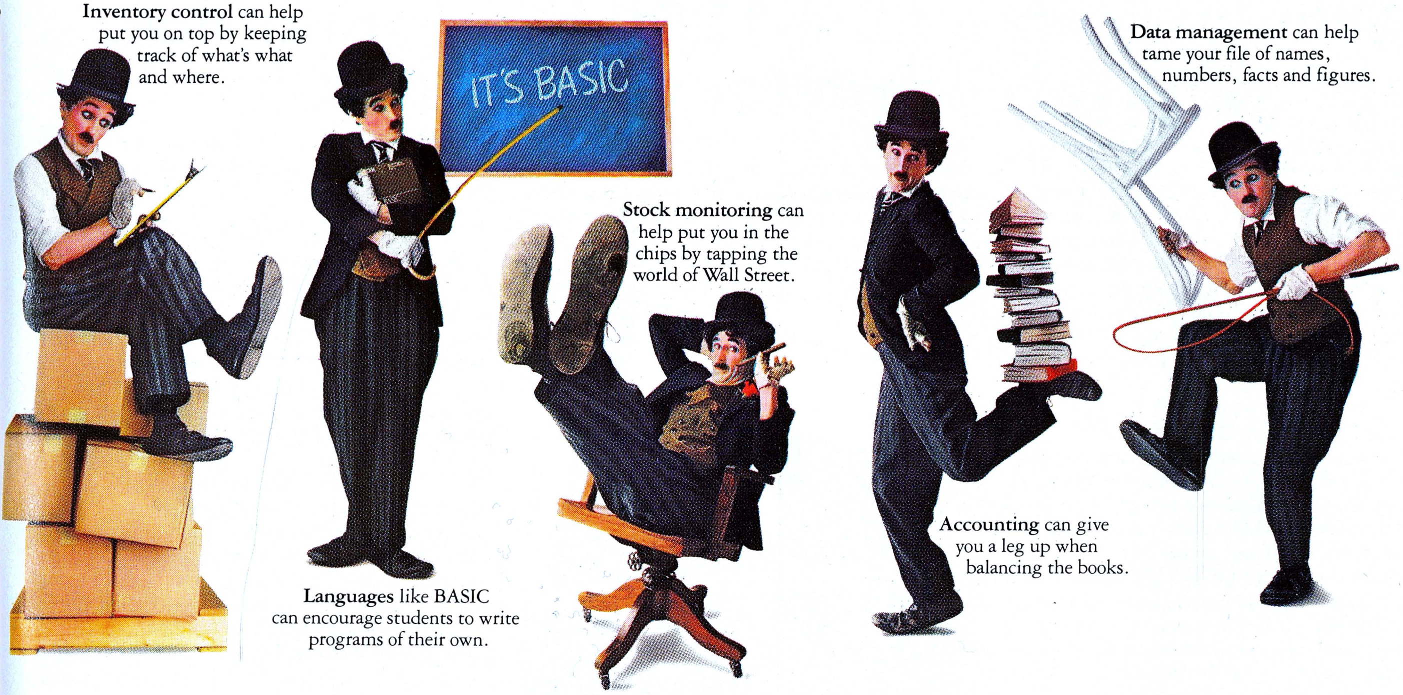
Games can make anyone a winner while treating you to hours of fun and fantasy.

Payroll can boost your productivity and make employee deductions less taxing.

Word processing can give any writer visible support for creating and editing.

Electronic spreadsheets help build financial models that can shape your future.

6
NET PAY
IRA
FEDERAL
STATE
FICA
LOCAL



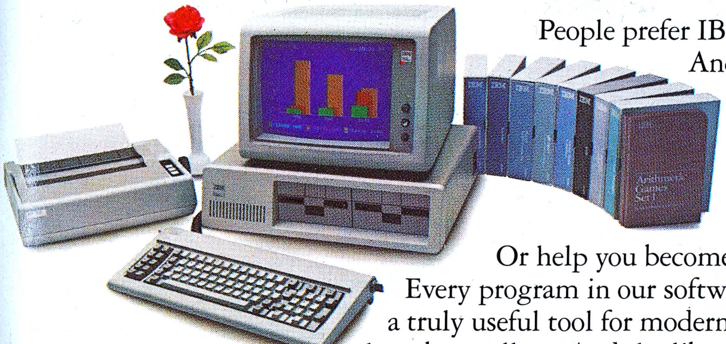
Inventory control can help put you on top by keeping track of what's what and where.

Languages like BASIC can encourage students to write programs of their own.

Stock monitoring can help put you in the chips by tapping the world of Wall Street.

Accounting can give you a leg up when balancing the books.

Data management can help tame your file of names, numbers, facts and figures.



People prefer IBM Personal Computer software for a variety of reasons.
And one of the best reasons is its variety.

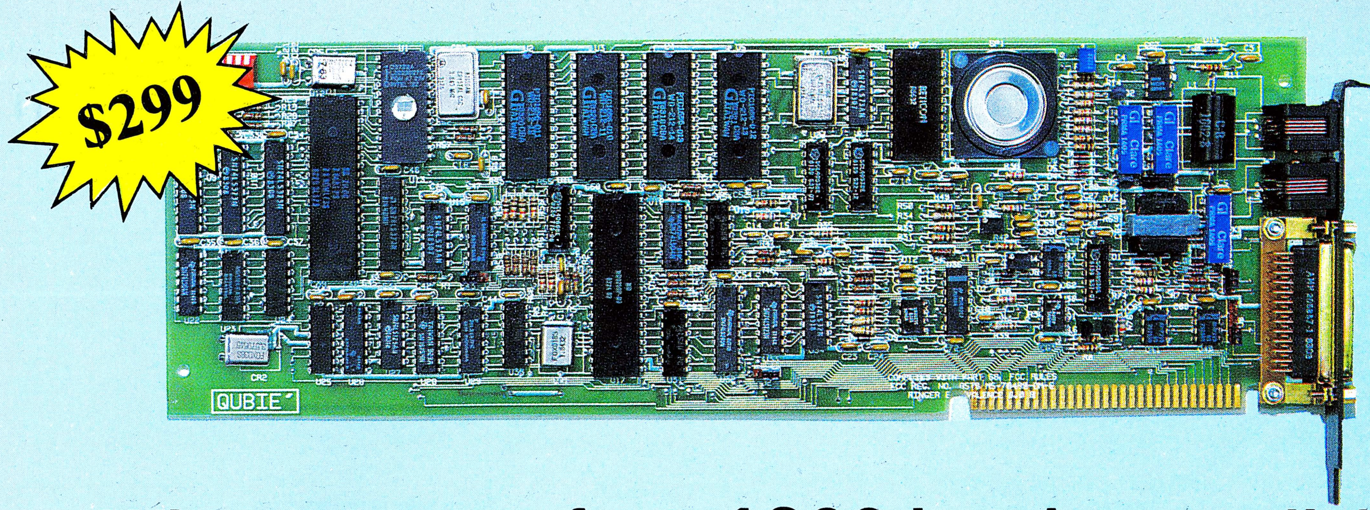
Because, for just about anything you want the IBM Personal Computer to help you do, there's software to help you do it. Software to help improve productivity, efficiency and planning. To help teachers teach and students learn.

Or help you become an even more astute gamesplayer.

Every program in our software library makes the IBM Personal Computer a truly useful tool for modern times. That's why a lot of buyers like you have made them best sellers. And the library is still growing.

So the best may well be yet to come. IBM®

For more information on where to buy IBM Personal Computer software and hardware, call 800-447-4700. In Alaska or Hawaii, 800-447-0890.



Why pay more for a 1200 baud, auto-dial, 212A Modem for your IBM PC?

Flip the pages. You see PC modem cards with fewer features advertised for as much as $599. Up until now that's how much it cost to make a modem capable of transmitting at 120 characters per second (1200 baud). It doesn't take a computer to figure out the savings in phone line charges when you communicate four times faster than the 30 character per second modems (300 baud). Now you can have the solution to your communication needs at an unheard of price.

NOW COME THE SMART GUYS

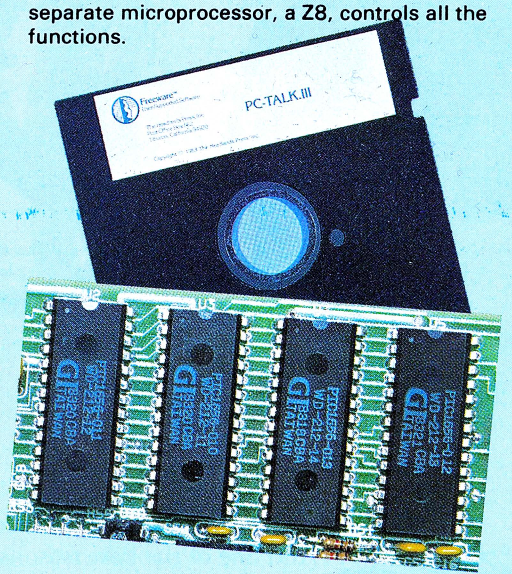
You can imagine how precise the components had to be to convert tones over a phone line into characters. Precision equates to cost. With the advent of the mass market in personal computers the economics of scale drove the costs of manufacture down but did not effect the precision required. The technology used is called "analog filtering". It is the process of sending (modulating) and receiving (demodulating) tones with perfect pitch. A lot of adjusting, noise suppression, and a little magic is required. Real expensive. Some use lots of chips and filters (known as discrete components). The latest rage is LSI (Large Scale Integration) technology. Which is the same old analog stuff condensed onto fewer chips.

A NEW IDEA

We took a different approach. With the Qubie' PC modem card you can say goodbye to the fellow who delivers your ice because refrigeration has been invented. Through the use of four microprocessors (see picture) the tones are chopped up **digitally** and measured millions of times per second, eliminating the need for analog circuitry. Two microprocessors do the modulating, two the demodulating. The chips are programmed to emulate the 103 (30 characters per second) or 212 (210 characters per second) standards and determine the correct speed automatically. It's a proven technology that provides outstanding performance. Best of all, it's inexpensive and reliable.

NO CORNERS CUT

We included every feature you would want in a modem card. It plugs into your IBM PC or XT and occupies any one slot since it is just 6/10 of an inch thick. This card comes with its own asynchronous port. If you would like to use the async port for another peripheral when your modem is not in use, we will add a connector for just $20. It's FCC registered for direct connection to your modular phone jack with the cable which is included. There is a separate jack for your telephone or you can listen through the board's speaker. It operates in full or half duplex mode on Rotary dial lines (pulse dialing) or on tone lines (DTMF), or a combination of both. It will work in originate or auto-answer modes. A separate microprocessor, a Z8, controls all the functions.



LET'S TALK SOFTWARE

Our modem is 100% compatible with the Hayes software commands so you can use any of the popular communications packages like Cross-Talk, Transend, or PC Modem. We go one better than the competition. We **include** one of these popular programs with your modem, PC-TALK III. **PC WORLD** magazine referred to it as "the benchmark that other PC communications packages are measured against." It stores phone numbers, log-on information, handles setting the modems characteristics, saves to disk files, transmits from disk files, even binary files. And to make sure data is sent and received accurately, there is the XMODEM protocol which detects errors caused by poor line quality and retransmits the data.

WHY BUY FROM US

Because besides having the most advanced product on the market, we stand behind it and you. If at any time during the one year warranty period your modem should require service, we will fix or replace it within 48 hours. Notice also there are no hidden charges in our price. Nothing extra for credit cards or COD charges. We even pay UPS to deliver to you. If you still are not convinced, and are ready to buy another brand of modem, ask them if their product can take our acid test.

THE ACID TEST

Qubie' gives you a 30 day satisfaction guarantee on your modem. If you are not completely satisfied we will refund the entire amount of your purchase including the postage to return it. If you can, get any of our competitors to give you the same guarantee. Buy any modem you like and return the one you don't like. We know which one you will keep.

WHY PAY MORE?

We don't have a clue. It's all here. A high quality, full featured, communications package at a price that used to be reserved for 300 baud modems. But if you decide to spend an extra $200 or $300, we would sure like to hear why. We have spent lots of time thinking about it, and frankly, we just can't come up with a reason.

TO ORDER BY MAIL SEND

—Your name and shipping address
—Daytime phone number
—California residents add 6% sales tax
—Company check or credit card number
With expiration date. (Personal checks take 15 days to clear)
—Specify single or double sided disk drive

VISA master charge

TO ORDER BY PHONE

Call **(805) 987-9741**

PRICE:

$299 includes 300/1200 Baud Direct-Connect modem card, PC-TALK III Software, cable to connect to modular phone jack, installation instructions and manual. 1 year limited warranty.

External async port connector $20
Cable for Serial port to printer $25

SHIPMENT

We pay UPS surface charges. UPS 2 day air service add $5 extra. Credit card or bank check orders shipped next day.

QUBIE'
DISTRIBUTING
4809 Calle Alto
Camarillo, CA 93010
(805) 987-9741

length of the screen buffer. The buffer is actually 4K in length; however, the move instruction we will use is a word (two bytes) move, and thus two bytes are moved each time instead of just one. The CLD is used in line 32 to assure that the move will go forward from the start of the buffer to the end. The actual work is done in line 33, where the MOVSW instruction is used, moving two bytes at a time from where DS:SI points to the location where ES:DI points (Strscrn % (0)). Note that this instruction is preceded by the REP prefix. This means that the instruction will be repeated as long as CX is not equal to 0—in this case 2,000 times. At the completion of the MOVSW, the DS register is restored, and a jump is made to line 46 for the return to Basic.

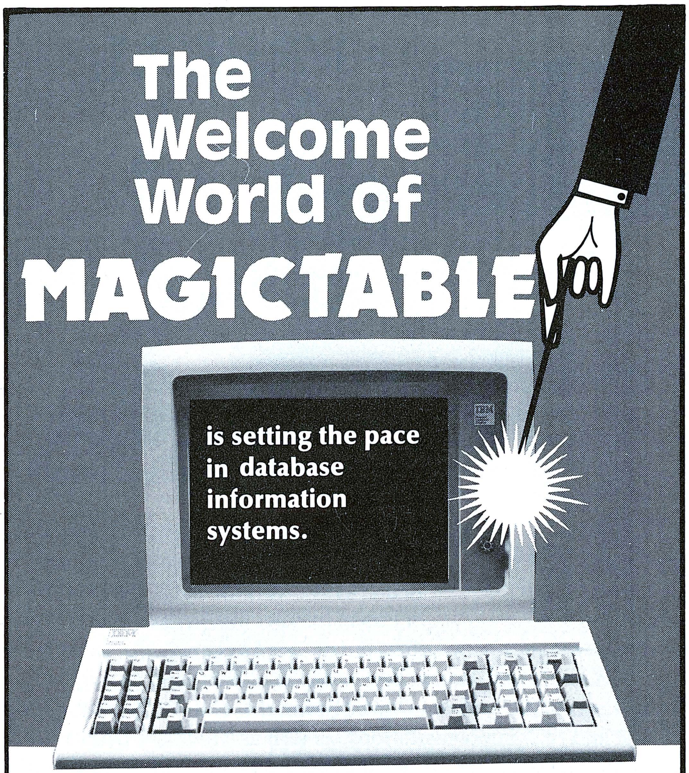
Finally, part 3 (lines 36 through 45) is a restore operation for the screen. The location of the screen storage area is retrieved from the stack and the ES register is saved. This time the ES register is loaded with the screen address. This is because in a move-type instruction the TO location is always the ES:DI register combination. In line 41, register DI is set up for indexing, and line 42 sets CX to 2000 again. The MOVSW instruction with the REP prefix again does the work, and after ES is restored the subroutine again returns to Basic.

If you refer to the first program in this article, and compare the time the Basic screen save took with the time that Screen Handler takes, it's clear how assembly language subroutines can enhance a Basic program.

In the next Basic/Assembly Line we'll take a look at a subroutine that checks input for a valid file name. ▲

```
1                ; SCREEN HANDLER
2                ;
3                ; THIS ROUTINE WILL HANDLE SAVING/RESTORING THE
4                ;    MONOCHROME SCREEN AND IS CALLED FROM BASIC
5                ;
6                ; IF OPTION = 1 THEN STORE THE SCREEN
7                ;
8                ; IF OPTION = 2 THEN RESTORE THE SCREEN
9                ;
10               ; WRITTEN BY HOWARD GLOSSER
11               ;
12 0000          CSEG      SEGMENT
13                         ASSUME CS:CSEG
14               ;
15 0000          SCRN      PROC   FAR
16 0000 55                 PUSH BP            ;SAVE BP FOR FAR RETURN
17 0001 8B EC              MOV BP,SP          ;MOVE STACK POINTER TO BP
18 0003 8B 76 08           MOV SI,[BP]+8      ;POINT SI AT PARM 1
19 0006 8B 14              MOV DX,[SI]        ;GET SCRNOPT% IN DX
20 0008 83 FA 01           CMP DX,1           ;IS IT OPTION 1?
21 000B 74 08              JE  STORE          ;YES - GO STORE SCREEN
22 000D 83 FA 02           CMP DX,2           ;IS IT OPTION 2?
23 0010 74 19              JE  RESTORE        ;YES - GO RESTORE SCREEN
24 0012 EB 2A 90           JMP RETURN         ;INVALID OPTION - JUST RETURN
25 0015          STORE:
26 0015 1E                 PUSH DS            ;SAVE DS FOR RETURN TO BASIC
27 0016 8B 7E 06           MOV DI,[BP]+6      ;POINT DI AT PARM 2 ADDRESS
28 0019 B8 B000            MOV AX,0B000H      ;MOVE SCREEN ADDRESS TO AX
29 001C 8E D8              MOV DS,AX          ;POINT DS AT SCREEN BUFFER
30 001E BE 0000            MOV SI,0           ;POINT TO START OF BUFFER
31 0021 B9 07D0            MOV CX,2000        ;SET CX FOR SCREEN LENGTH
32 0024 FC                 CLD                ;CLEAR DIRECTION FLAG - MOVE FWD
33 0025 F3/ A5             REP MOVSW          ;STORE THE SCREEN
34 0027 1F                 POP DS             ;RESTORE DS REGISTER
35 0028 EB 14 90           JMP RETURN         ;GO RETURN TO BASIC
36 002B          RESTORE:
37 002B 8B 76 06           MOV SI,[BP]+6      ;POINT SI AT PARM 2 ADDRESS
38 002E 06                 PUSH ES            ;SAVE ES FOR RETURN TO BASIC
39 002F B8 B000            MOV AX,0B000H      ;MOVE SCREEN ADDRESS TO AX
40 0032 8E C0              MOV ES,AX          ;POINT ES AT SCREEN BUFFER
41 0034 BF 0000            MOV DI,0           ;POINT TO START OF BUFFER
42 0037 B9 07D0            MOV CX,2000        ;SET CX FOR SCREEN LENGTH
43 003A FC                 CLD                ;CLEAR DIRECTION FLAG - MOVE FWD
44 003B F3/ A5             REP MOVSW          ;RESTORE THE SCREEN
45 003D 07                 POP ES             ;RESTORE ES REGISTER
46 003E          RETURN:
47 003E 5D                 POP BP             ;RESTORE BP OFF STACK FOR RETURN
48 003F CA 0004            RET 4              ;FAR RETURN WITH 2 PARMS IN STACK
49 0042          SCRN      ENDP
50 0042          CSEG      ENDS
51                         END
```

Figure 4.


The Welcome World of
MAGICTABLE
is setting the pace in database information systems.

SCREEN DIRECTED, EFFICIENT AND AFFORDABLE

Designed for use with IBM PC. Monochrome or color compatible

...a powerful, information management tool which urges the user to create, manipulate, explore...

FEATURES:

- Information entered and stored in tabular form
- Numerical computation and summary functions
- Simple and complex retrieval
- Interactive updating
- Menu driven, easy to use
- Flexible display and field reordering
- Frame adjustment; table data reorganization
- Form controlled printing; merge editing
- Record sorting
- Unlimited applications

UNIT PRICE **$159.00**

VISA OR MASTER CHARGE ACCEPTED

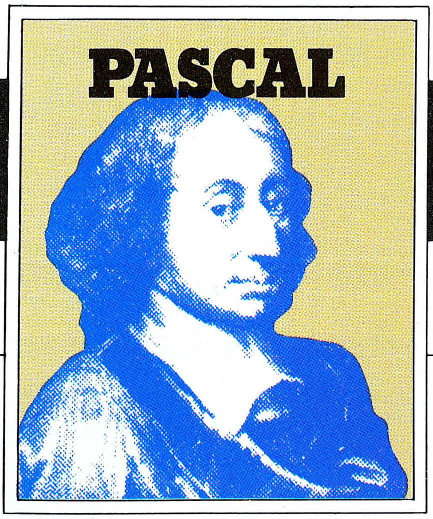
IBM PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation

Ask your dealer or write:

MAGICTABLE

presta digital inc.

MARKETING DATA MANAGEMENT
10 Bridge Street • P.O. Box 7192
Lowell, MA 01852
(617) 458-4070



FROM BEGIN TO END

by Bruce Webster and Deirdre Wendt

For the last two months, we've been talking about files and, quite frankly, it's been difficult. Why? Because each implementation of Pascal handles files in its own way. We've made some mention of specifics, but not really enough. So, starting this month, we're going to do our best to explain how to use files under IBM Pascal, Pascal/MT+ (from Digital Research), and UCSD Pascal (both the IBM and NCI implementations, as well as Modula-2 from Volition Systems). For each version, we'll discuss disk file I/O, special textfile functions, random access I/O, device I/O, and error handling. We had hoped to cover this all in one column, but there turned out to be just too much to talk about. This month we'll cover IBM Pascal, followed by UCSD Pascal next month, and Pascal/MT+ the month after that.

Disk Files. IBM Pascal runs under MS/DOS and thus reads and writes regular DOS files. This means, of course, that filenames must conform to DOS standards: an optional drive specifier ("⟨letter⟩:"), the filename itself (one to eight characters), and an optional extension ("." followed by one to three characters). It also means that other programs running under DOS can read your files and vice versa. Several programs out on the market are written in IBM Pascal, including the *Volkswriter* word processing program.

To associate a file variable with an actual file on the disk (or with a file to be created on the disk), we use the command

```
assign(⟨file⟩,⟨filename⟩);
```

where ⟨file⟩ is some type of file variable, and ⟨filename⟩ is a string of some sort (literal, constant, variable) containing the filename. Having used *assign,* we then use the standard procedures *rewrite* and *reset* to open a file for writing and reading respectively. Once we're done with a file, we can close it and save it with the command

```
close(⟨file⟩);
```

If we want to delete the file from the disk, we instead use

```
discard(⟨file⟩);
```

Let's say we've entered data into a textfile using an editor of some sort. Each line has three real-number values on it separated by spaces. These values represent the (x,y,z) coordinates of a star relative to our solar system. We wish to read these values in and write them back out into a *binary* or *data* file for future reference. After we're done, we want to delete the textfile to free up disk space. The text data file is named Stars.txt, and the binary file will be named Stars.bin. Our program might look like this:

```
PROGRAM convert;
CONST
   infilename = 'STARS.TXT';
   outfilename = 'STARS.DAT';
TYPE
   stars       = ARRAY [1..3] OF real;
   { [1] = x, [2] = y, [3] = z }
```

File I/O under IBM Pascal

```
VAR
   infile          : text;
   outfile         : FILE OF stars;
   x,y,z           : real;

BEGIN
   assign(infile,infilename);         { assign to disk files }
   assign(outfile,outfilename);
   reset(infile);                     { open to read }
   rewrite(outfile);                  { open to write }
   WHILE NOT eof(infile) DO BEGIN
      readln(x,y,z);                  { read in values }
      outfile^[1] := x;               { copy to file variable }
      outfile^[2] := y;
      outfile^[3] := z;
      put(outfile)                    { write out to disk }
   END;
   discard(infile);                   { remove text file }
   close(outfile);                    {close and save data file }
END. { of PROGRAM convert }
```

This program opens the file Stars.txt for text input, assigning it to *infile,* and creates the output file Stars.dat, assigning it to *outfile.* It reads data in from *infile* and writes it out (in binary form) to *outfile.* Once it reaches the end of the input file, it deletes Stars.txt, then closes and saves Stars.dat.

Special Textfile Routines. In addition to the standard textfile I/O functions (*read, readln, write, writeln*), IBM Pascal supports a number of extensions. First, formatted numbers can be right-justified (instead of left) by using a negative field width. For example, the statements

```
index := 4323;
writeln('indx =',indx:6,'!');
writeln('indx =',indx:-6,'!');
```

would produce

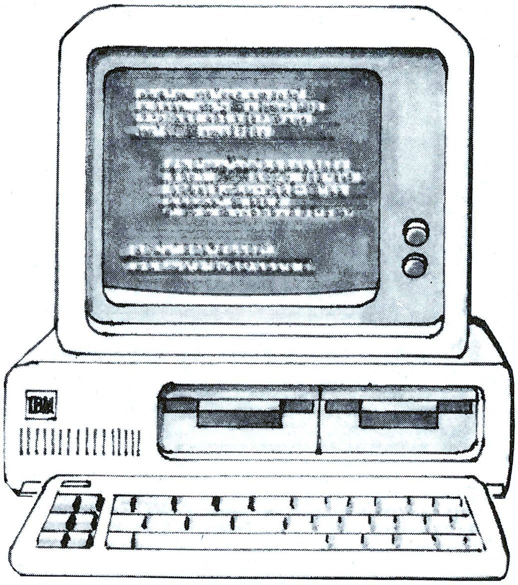
```
indx =   4323!
indx =4324  !
```

Next, Boolean values can be written and read, appearing in text form as TRUE and FALSE. Enumerated data types (EDTs) can also be written and read, but they appear as their ordinal value. For example

```
PROGRAM io_test;
TYPE
   pascals              = (IBM,UCSD,NCI,MTPLUS);
VAR
   version              : pascals;
BEGIN
   FOR version := IBM to MTPLUS DO
   writeln('version = ',version)
```

THE WALL STREET CONNECTION

NF Systems gives you a user friendly stock portfolio management program that serves your personal investment needs, accurately and efficiently. Finally, you've got a financial friend on Wall Street that allows you to keep multiple portfolios for you and your family. Use computer power to track your investments. **New** features include tracking of a money market fund as well as interest and dividends on stocks and bonds. All reports can be displayed on the screen and/or printed on your printer. $70.00


N.F. Systems Software
for the
IBM PC

FEATURES

- **Enter Security Purchases/Sales**
- **Value Portfolio**
- **List Portfolio**
- **List Portfolio Transactions**
- **Create Year-End Tax Information**

THE GOOD HOME MANAGEMENT DECISION.

Keeping family business matters under control is difficult ... Write this check ... Pay that bill ... Insurance premiums due ... All the paperwork adds up to a headache. You ned all the help you can get to stay on top of it all. The **HOME MANAGEMENT** software package from NF Systems puts an end to guesswork, paper shuffling and haphazard accounting. Buy it today and put the power of the P.C. to work managing your family business.

Home Management I

1. **HOUSEHOLD INVENTORY** 26 categories of possessions. Totals by category including costs and current value. Display/Print. Insurance companies love it!
2. **VITAL RECORDS** keep lists of social security numbers, bank accounts, wills, credit cards, insurance, etc. A must for everyone!
3. **PERSONAL STATEMENT** keep available to print as needed. Covers all topics. Works for any bank.
4. **VCR TAPE INDEX** also could be used to keep track of regular cassettes, or books. Unlimited tape numbers.

$45.00

Home Management II

1. **NAME/ADDRESS/PHONE** allows you to print labels as you go; can create files for different lists.
2. **MAILING LABELS** print 1, 2, or 3 up
3. **RESUME PREPARATION** keep it handy–keep it current. Keep resumes for several family members

$45.00

Available for all models of the IBM PC.

MASTERCARD/VISA
Add $2.50 Postage & Handling

CATALOG AVAILABLE

NF Systems, Ltd.

P.O. BOX 76363, ATLANTA, GA 30358

404-252-3302 – VOICE
404-252-4146 – DATA

```
     END.
```

would produce

```
     version = 0
     version = 1
     version = 2
     version = 3
```

since ord(IBM) = 0, ord(UCSD) = 1, and so on. Finally, there are two special input routines. The procedure *readset* reads characters into a string until the string is full or the end of the line is reached. For example, the statement

```
     readset (word,['A'..'Z','a'..'z']);
```

would read the next word in from the keyboard, stopping as soon as it hit a character that wasn't a letter (such as a space or an end-of-line character). The other special routine is *readfn*, which reads in filenames and automatically *assigns* them to file variables in the parameter list. For example, we might want to modify our convert program to read in the input and output file names. We could drop the CONST section and replace the two *assign* statements with

```
     write('enter file names:  ');
     readfn(input,infile,outfile);
```

We could then perform the sequence

```
     A>convert
     enter file names: stars.txt stars.dat
```

and the program would read from and write to the appropriate files.

IBM Pascal will go even one step farther. If we change the program header to be

```
     PROGRAM convert(infile,outfile);
```

we won't need any prompt or assign statements at all. Instead, we need only type

```
     A>convert stars.txt stars.dat
```

and the program will automatically read in the filenames and assign them to the appropriate file variables. Should we forget to include the filenames, then the program will automatically prompt us for them, for example,

```
     A>convert
     INFLE:stars.txt
     OUTFILE:stars.dat
```

All in all, a very convenient feature.

Random Access I/O. Often, we want to read and write data in a file in a nonsequential or *random* manner. For example, having created the file Stars.dat, we might want to be able to retrieve the coordinates of a given star without (1) reading the entire list of stars into memory, or (2) resetting the file and reading through all of the preceding stars to get to the one we want. The ability to directly read (or write) any record in a file regardless of its location is called *random access.*

IBM Pascal allows us to access a file randomly by setting the file mode to DIRECT before opening it. For example, say we wanted to open a "star data" file so that we could read the coordinates for any given star. The program might look like this:

```
     PROGRAM look_at_stars(datafile);
     TYPE
        stars = ARRAY[1..3] OF real;
     VAR
        datafile         : FILE OF stars;
        x,y,z            : real;
        starindex        : integer;
     BEGIN
        datafile.mode := DIRECT;    { set for random access }
        reset (datafile);
        REPEAT
           write('Enter star # (0 to exit):   ');
           readln(starindex);
           IF starindex > 0 THEN BEGIN
              seek(datafile,starindex);   { move to the star }
              get(datafile);                 { and read it in }
              write('Coordinates of star #',starindex:3,':   ');
              write('(',datafile^[1]:12:4,',',datafile^[2]:12:4,
                    ',',datafile^[3]:12:4,')')
           END
        UNTIL starindex <= 0;
        close(datafile)
     END.
```

The *seek* statement moves us to a specific record in a file. The first record is record number one; that is, *seek*(<file>,1) would point at the first record in <file>.

Device I/O. Most applications require I/O involving the computer hardware itself. Reading from the keyboard and writing out to the screen are the two most obvious examples. Standard (and IBM) Pascal predefines the textfiles input and output for just those functions. All *read* and *write* statements without a file variable use these two files. But there are other times when we might want to read from or write to a specific device. How do we do this?

Simple. We use a set of special filenames that refer to hardware devices rather than to disk files. For example, suppose we wanted to run *convert* and enter the data manually instead of having it read from a disk file. We don't have to rewrite the program; we just specify USER as the input file:

```
     A>convert
     INFILE:user
     OUTFILE:stars.dat
```

We then enter the data, line by line. When we're done, we type ctrl-Z<enter>, which tells the program that it's reached the "end of file". By the same token, a program that writes a textfile to disk could be redirected to write the output to the screen.

Here's a list of the special filenames that IBM Pascal recognizes:

USER,CON	**console I/O: read from the keyboard and write to the screen. I/O with CON is buffered by DOS; I/O with USER is not buffered**
LINE,AUX,COM1	**a serial <RS232> port**
PRN,LPT1	**the line printer**
NUL	**a "null" device—that is, anything written to this device simply disappears. Any attempt to read from this device results in an immediate <end-of-file>**

Suppose we've written a program, *decnvrt*, to dump out the data file created by *convert* in text format—three real values per line. We could re-create our original textfile with the command

```
     A>decnvrt stars.dat stars.txt
```

If we wanted to dump the value to the screen, we could use

```
     A>decnvrt stars.dat user
```

while if we wanted a printed copy the command

```
     A>decnvrt stars.dat prn
```

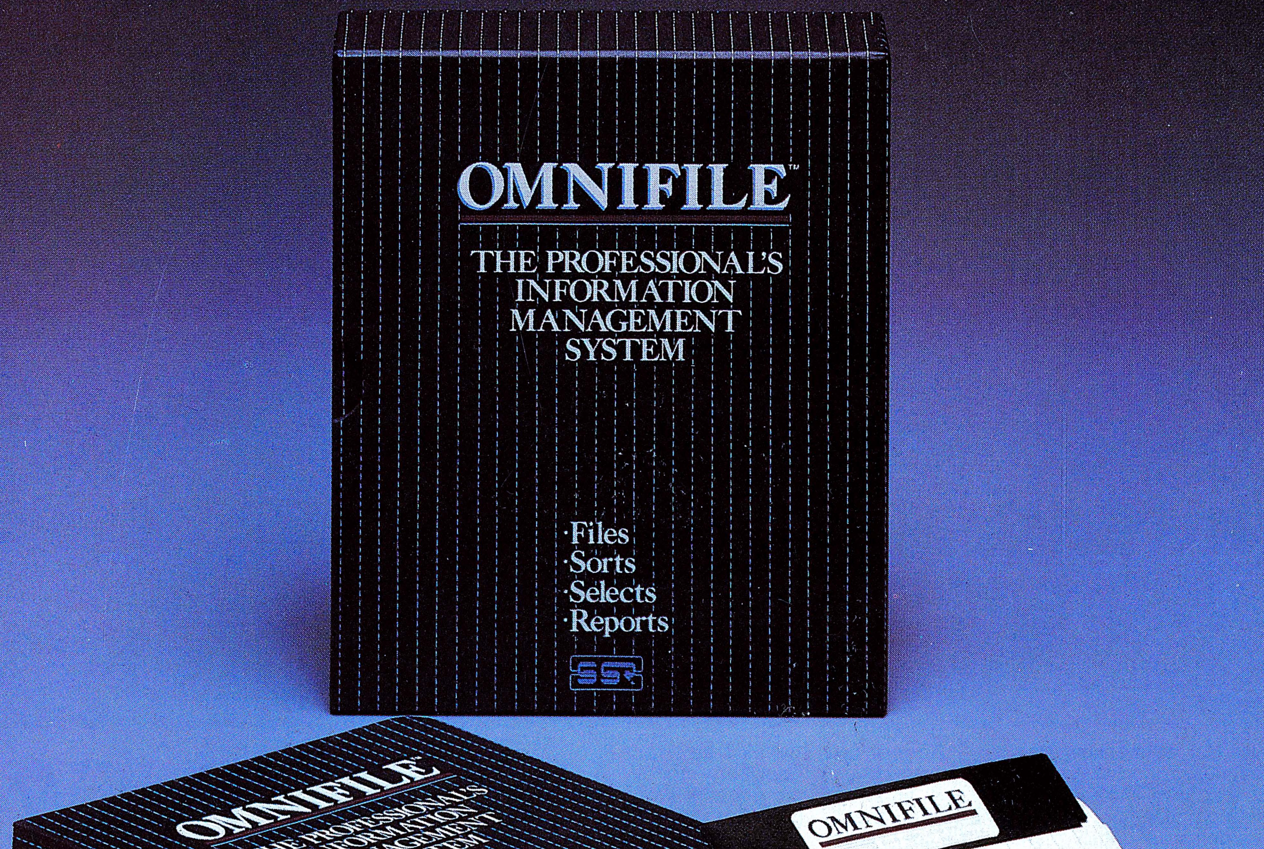
would suffice.

Error Handling. There are few things more irritating than having a program blow up because you entered the wrong filename or because it ran out of space on the disk. Worse yet, the program may go merrily on its way and give no indication of any problem. IBM Pascal allows us to avoid the first problem and gives us the data we need to prevent the second. Remember the *mode* subfield we used to specify a file as being DIRECT? Well, each file variable has two more subfields— *trap* and *errs*—which we can use to handle file I/O errors.

The subfield *trap* is of type *boolean.* It is set to *false* at the start of program execution and after any *reset, rewrite, close,* or *discard* command. If *trap = false,* then any I/O error involving that file causes the program to halt. However, if we set it to *true,* errors will not cause the program to stop. Instead, the subfield *errs* will be given a value in the

Professionalism...

speaks for itself.



Information is the Professional's stock-in-trade. Whether you are the manager of a growing business, trying to get the most out of your sales force, a physician needing immediate information on a patient's past medical history, or an expert in any of hundreds of fields in-between, your livelihood depends on your ability to effectively manage large amounts of information.

nctions.

anges, T.I.M. IV
in English com-
ace compatibility
, MultiPlan™,
perCalc™ II sys-
so many Fortune
continue to select

IV's new features
uter dealer. You'll
rised at just how
really can be...

your dealer about
, the full color

Innovative Software's products are at Computerlands®, Computer Marts, Entre Computer Centers℠, Xerox Stores, Sears Business Centers and other quality dealers. For information call **1-800-255-0470.**

INNOVATIVE™ Software

developers of practical businessware for the executive.

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210 USA
913/383-1089 • Telex: 209542
800-255-0470

range 0..15, indicating the nature of the error. Here are the meaningful error codes:

ERROR CODE	MEANING
0	no error
3	invalid operation—for example, trying to open the printer for reading
7	filename error—illegal filename
8	device full—no room on disk, etc.
10	file not found—no such file by this name
13	file not open—you forgot to reset or rewrite, dummy!
14	data format—actual data doesn't match your data definitions
15	line too long

Let's modify our program *convert* to handle I/O errors:

```
PROGRAM convert;
TYPE
   stars          = ARRAY[1..3] OF real;
VAR
   infile         : text;
   outfile        : FILE OF stars;
   x,y,z          : real;
   eval           : integer;

PROCEDURE ioerr(eval : integer);
BEGIN
   CASE eval OF
    0       : { nothing };
    3       : writeln('operation error');
    7       : writeln('illegal file name');
    8       : writeln('no room on disk');
   10       : writeln('file not found');
   13       :writeln('file not open');
   14       : writeln('data format error');
   15       : writeln('line too long');
   OTHERWISE writeln('reserved I/O error: #',eval)
   END;
   IF eval > 0 THEN BEGIN
     REPEAT
        write('A)bort,R)etry: ');
        readln(ch)
     UNTIL ch IN ['A','a','R','r'];
     IF ch IN ['A','a']
       THEN abort('Exiting CONVERT',eval,0)
   END
END; { of PROC ioerr }

{    main body of PROGRAM convert       }
BEGIN
   infile.trap := true;
   outfile.trap := true;

   REPEAT
      write('Enter input file:  ');
      readfn(input,infile);
      ioerr(infile.errs)
   UNTIL infile.errs = 0;

   REPEAT
      write('Enter output file: ');
      readfn(input,outfile);
      ioerr(outfile.errs)
   UNTIL outfile.errs = 0;
      reset(infile);
      infile.trap := true; { need to do this again }
      rewrite(outfile);
      outfile.trap := true; { ditto }
      WHILE NOT eof(infile) DO BEGIN
           readln(infile,x,y,z);
           ioerr(infile.errs);
           outfile^[1] := x;
           outfile^[2] := y;
           outfile^[3] := z;
           put(outfile);
           ioerr(outfile.errs)
      END;
      discard(infile);
      close(outfile)
   END. { of PROGRAM convert }
```

Now our program will do just what we want it to do. If there's an I/O error on one of the files, we'll get the appropriate message and a chance to decide whether to stop execution or continue. The same principle can be applied to all file I/O, including that done via *input* and *output*.

Conclusion. Well, that just about wraps it up for IBM Pascal and file I/O. Next month, we'll tackle the same subjects for UCSD Pascal, including the tuned-up version from Network Consulting (Burnaby, B.C., Canada) and Modula-2 from Volition Systems (Del Mar, CA). The month after that, we'll look at file I/O for Pascal/MT+ from Digital Research (Pacific Grove, CA).

Once we've finished with file I/O, we'll see how these different versions deal with strings and string handling. As always, we welcome comments from you as to what you'd like to see here. Write to us care of *Softalk/IBM*. See you next month. ▲

```
TYPE
   stars = ARRAY[1..3] OF real;
VAR
   datafile        : FILE OF stars;
   x,y,z           : real;
   starindex       : integer;
BEGIN
   datafile.mode  := DIRECT;    { set for random access }
   reset (datafile);
   REPEAT
      write('Enter star # (0 to exit):    ');
      readln(starindex);
      IF starindex > 0 THEN BEGIN
```

The Easy Way To Plan Great Dinners

Let us send you our exciting meal planning system. Try it for 2 weeks free with no cost or obligation.

Because our ad manager has a small weakness for pizza, we call it The Pizza Program. Actually, it's a complete meal planning system. It generates delicious dinner menus and shopping lists according to your tastes, your diet, and your budget.

It is a great time saver for anyone who cooks. You can quickly print out a new menu or shopping list for a day, a week, or any period up to 42 days at a time. It can even remind you when it's time to go out to your favorite restaurant. Plus, it can arrange your shopping list in sequence according to the isles at your local store.

Accept our 2 week free trial. There's no need to send any money now. Just send the coupon. We'll bill you later. If you're not satisfied for any reason, just return it and write cancel on the invoice. What could be more fair?

Gourmet Software

S = Select records from a file
U = Utility commands
X = eXit to operating system

With T.I.M.® IV, Your Micro is Bigger Than You Thought.

Make no mistake about it, T.I.M. IV is not just another update. It's a brand new version of the popular data base for executives. In fact, T.I.M. IV will make your microcomputer more powerful and versatile than you ever thought possible.

For openers, T.I.M. IV has relational capabilities. That means saving time because now a single entry allows the computer to work with other files simultaneously. And T.I.M. IV also has a special menu by-pass routine. It's perfect for the sophisticated user who wants to get down to business quickly.

In addition, the designers of T.I.M. IV have made it easier than ever to handle tasks like generating mailing and customer lists, tracking inventory and accumulating invoice records. T.I.M. IV can even take on basic accounting functions.

But with the changes, T.I.M. IV still retains its plain English commands and interface compatibility with VisiCalc®, MultiPlan™, 1-2-3™ and SuperCalc™ II systems. No wonder so many Fortune 1000 companies continue to select T.I.M.

See all of T.I.M. IV's new features at your local computer dealer. You'll be pleasantly surprised at just how big your computer really can be . . .

Be sure to ask your dealer about FAST GRAPHS, the full color business graphics package and FAST FACTS, the filing system for both home and business executives.

Innovative Software's products are at Computerlands®, Computer Marts, Entre Computer Centers℠, Xerox Stores, Sears Business Centers and other quality dealers. For information call **1-800-255-0470.**

INNOVATIVE™
Software

developers of practical businessware for the executive.

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210 USA
913/383-1089 • Telex: 209542
800-255-0470

HOW BASIC PARSES PROGRAMS

by John Cole

The verb *to parse* means "to break (a sentence) down into its component parts of speech with an explanation of the form function, and syntactical relationship of each part" (*The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language,* 1981). In the context of computer language, parsing a program statement means breaking it down into its component keywords, operators and operands and arranging them according to the language's rules of precedence.

In this article we'll take a first look at how the Basic interpreter on your IBM pc goes about doing this essential work.

Let's start with a little review of the three classes of computer languages. Assemblers generally translate one source statement into one machine-language instruction. Compilers translate each source statement into one or more (usually more) instructions, which they then store for later execution. Interpreters do one of two things. They either look at the source code directly and execute it as they see it, or they translate it into an intermediate form, which isn't machine language, and then execute that. The pc Basic interpreters apparently use this latter method.

The intermediate form is the tokenized program described in the article "How Basic Stores Programs," by Gary Little (*Softalk,* August 1983). Each keyword and operator (things such as plus and minus signs) is transformed into a single-byte "token," which is easier for the interpreter to recognize and store than is the original item.

One fact that makes tokens easy for the interpreter to recognize is that, except for tokenized numbers, they all have their high bit set. Tokenized numbers are all below hex 20. Furthermore, hex 20 is a blank and is the lowest-numbered printable character. There are no printable characters with the high bit set. Thus, a number that has its high bit set or that's below the range of printable characters must be a token.

Certain printable characters are themselves tokens—or, in other words, are not tokenized. Variable names and parentheses, among other things, are tokens as they stand.

Some statements are so simple to parse that they are barely worth mentioning. Single keywords that can stand alone on a line, such as *end* or *return,* are the simplest. These are just reduced to tokenized form, and no further analysis is needed.

Statements such as *goto* and *gosub* are a bit more complicated to parse. The interpreter first looks for the line number that must follow these keywords. If the target statement number is not present on the line, or if the line number that is on the line is not actually in the program, the interpreter has to give an error message. Still, this is not particularly difficult.

Statements such as *input, read,* and *print* are rel-

Illustration by Kevin McKeon

atively easy to parse as well, although more difficult to execute. They are relatively easy, that is, unless they're followed by expressions more complex than constants or variables.

This brings us to the parsing of expressions as they're used in *let* and *if* statements (although Basic on the pc allows expressions nearly everywhere). Parsing an arithmetic expression is similar to parsing an English sentence, except that the rules are much more straightforward and always allow a correct interpretation of a syntactically correct sentence—which isn't the case with English. (Consider a sentence like "Time flies." How do you tell which is the verb and which the noun?)

Every Basic expression can be considered to be arithmetic, meaning that it yields a numeric result. This is true even for such relational expressions as 10<5, which, because it's contrary to fact, has the value 0. More about relational operators later.

The computer cannot just look at a statement as you can and pick out the things it wants to analyze first. It scans left to right, and if it wants to go back and look at something, it must first store that something somewhere. Where it stores it is called a *stack*.

A stack is a structure in which the last item on is the first item off. Consider a stack of plates in a cafeteria. Even if there are some already there, new plates from the dishwasher always land on top of the stack, and customers in line always take from the top. In computer terminology, to remove an item from the stack is to *pop* and to add an item is to *push*.

In parsing expressions, the Basic interpreter uses two stacks, one for operands, the other for operators.

Let us consider a simple expression:

```
LET X=Y+Z
```

This statement would be legal even without the *let* keyword, because pc Basic (like most other Basics) is smart enough to recognize that X is not one of its keywords and so would try to analyze the statement as though it started with *let*.

Having decided the statement is a variable assignment, the parser looks for a variable and an equals sign. Obviously you can't assign a new value to a constant, and the equals sign indicates the assignment. Any blanks between the variable, the equals sign, and the assignment expression are ignored for the purpose of parsing.

The rest of the parser's job in interpreting the assignment statement has to do with evaluating the expression that follows the equals sign; our description of that process applies to expressions wherever they may occur.

In the case of the statement *let x=y+z*, the expression to be evaluated is Y+Z. The parser starts by taking the value of the first operand it encounters, Y, and putting it on the operand stack. Then it gets the operator, the plus sign, and puts that on the other stack, the operator stack. Next, it looks for another operand, finds Z, and puts that on the first stack, above the first operand, Y. Then it arrives at the end of the statement.

Now the parser pops the operator stack, getting the plus sign. It applies the plus sign operator to the first two operands it finds on the operand stack. The result of this operation (the addition of X and Y) goes back on the operand stack as a "temporary." This is just a way of saying that the parser stores a result that is not the value of a variable. If the operator stack is now empty (as it is in this case, because we had only one operator—the plus sign), the parser is done evaluating the expression. Quite a bit of work for such a simple statement.

The computer cannot just look at a statement as you can. . . .

Try a more complex example:

```
LET X=A+B*C
```

The parser can't simply execute this statement in left-to-right order, because Basic's rules of precedence require that multiplication be performed before addition (see page 3-29 of the IBM Basic manual for a table of the precedence of operators in IBM's Basic). So, as in the simpler case we just examined, the parser starts by looking for the variable and the equals sign. Then it places the first operand of the expression, A, on the stack. Next it pushes the operator, the plus sign, onto the operator stack. Then it pushes the B onto the operand stack.

At this point, the parser arrives at the multiplication operator. Because this operator has higher precedence than the operator already on the stack (the plus sign), the parser merely pushes the new operator onto the operator stack. Then it pushes the C onto the operand stack.

When the parser reaches the end of the statement, the stacks look like this:

Operands	Operators
C	*
B	+
A	

At this point the multiplication sign is popped from the operator stack and applied to two operands atop the operand stack. The result of this operation, the product of C and B, is pushed onto the operand stack. Now the stacks look like this:

Operands	Operators
[C*B]	+
A	

The bracketed item in the operand stack represents a temporary value—the result of the computation shown within the brackets.

Once again the operator at the top of the operator stack is applied to the top two operands on the operand stack; the sum of A and (C*B) is then pushed onto the operand stack. Since the operator stack is empty at that point, the expression is fully evaluated; the result is on top of the operand stack.

Suppose what you really wanted to do was add A and B, then multiply the sum by C? You would express that request by using parentheses, as follows:

```
(A+B)*C
```

Let's see how the parser handles this.

In scanning this expression, the parser starts by putting the left parenthesis on the operator stack. Then A goes onto the operand stack and the plus sign goes on top of the left parenthesis. Nothing has a lower precedence than a left parenthesis, so any operator will be stacked on top of one. Here's how the stacks look now:

Operands	Operators
	+
A	(

Now the B goes onto the operand stack, and then the right parenthesis is added to the operator stack.

Operands	Operators
	)
B	+
A	(

The arrival of the right parenthesis causes everything on the operator stack to be popped and executed—down to the matching left parenthesis. After popping, the operator stack is empty and the operand stack has, as a temporary result, the value of A+B.

Now the parser stacks the multiplication sign on an empty operator stack and puts the C on top of the temporary result. The stacks look like this:

Operands	Operators
C	
[A+B]	*

As before, the operator atop the operator stack is applied to the top two values on the operand stack—and we're done.

The two operations we've looked at so far, addition and multiplication, are commutative, which means that it doesn't matter what order they're done in (A plus B gives the same result as B plus A). For a little more complexity, let's look now at subtraction and division, which are noncommutative; we'll also throw in a second set of parentheses.

Consider this expression:

(A−B)/(C+D)

The parser starts by stacking the left parenthesis as an operator and the A as an operand. The minus sign, having higher precedence, is then stacked above the parenthesis. Now the B goes onto the operand stack, and the parser, having come to the right parenthesis, is required to pop everything from the operator stack down to the matching left parenthesis. Before it does so, the stacks look like this:

Operands	Operators
	)
B	−
A	(

To carry out the subtraction, the parser knows that it must put the top operand, B, into one "accumulator" and the bottom operand, A, into another—and then perform the operation in reverse order; that is, it knows it has to take the value of B away from that of A, and not vice versa (an accumulator is just a place within the machine where values to be used in a computation, or intermediate results of a computation, are held).

After the subtraction is done, the result is stacked as a temporary on the operand stack. The division sign is placed with the operators, and the left parenthesis is stacked atop it—because left parens are always stacked. At this point, our stacks look like this:

Operands	Operators
	(
[A−B]	/

Now the C goes on top of the temporary in the operand stack, and the plus sign is stacked on top of the left parenthesis. D is put on the top of the operand stack, making the stacks look like this:

Operands	Operators
D	+
C	(
[A−B]	/

Function calls present yet another facet of expression analysis.

The appearance of the right parenthesis now causes the operator stack to be popped down to the left parenthesis, and the result is another temporary on the operand stack:

Operands	Operators
[C+D]	/
[A−B]	

Arriving at the end of the statement causes the parser to carry out the division, and, just as when it was subtracting a moment ago, the parser knows that division is noncommutative and therefore reverses the order of two temporaries on the operand stack.

Function calls present yet another facet of expression analysis. They are treated as high-precedence operators, which means that they are executed before almost anything else. Most functions have only one operand, but some have more. The square-root function, sqr, for example, has only one operand; screen, on the other hand, has three. The operands of the function are always evaluated first and the values put on the operand stack, since they are enclosed in parentheses. When the function call comes around to being executed, it takes as many operands as it is allowed from the operand stack, and a result is returned.

For example:

SHEER COMFORT......

The Personal Money Management System is not just soft-ware. It's downright comfortable.

The PMMS is a tailored fit for your personal and small business budgeting, tax reports, and basic accounting. It's so easy to use, especially data entry, that you'll feel at home right away. Even a beginner can learn it quickly, almost without the clear, detailed manual, because of ample on-screen help.

Its **performance** isn't soft, though. It responds rapidly and makes full use of your IBM* compatible PC's power. You can have up to 51 user-defined categories, an unlimited number of databases, and about as many reports and comparisons as you can dream up. Those reports can be either numerical or displayed as bar graphs, and with plenty of detail. PMMS will fit any PC hardware configuration with at least 64K and an 80-column screen.

It stands to reason the price would be comfortable, too - just $95 plus $2.50 shipping and handling. Mastercard and Visa accepted.

To order

Send payment with order to:
Analytical Applications
230 Edgewood Drive
Carrollton, Georgia 30117
(404) 834-8364

*IBM is a registered trademark of IBM, Inc.

ANALYTICAL APPLICATIONS, INC.

**Ahhhhhh. . . .
Solid Comfort.**

```
SQR(A+B)*C
```

The sqr goes on the operator stack as a unary operator—an operator that has only one operand. The left parenthesis goes on next, and then A+B is evaluated according to the procedures outlined in the preceding paragraphs. At this point we have:

Operands	Operators
[A+B]	SQR

Now, when the parser comes to the multiplication sign, it realizes that the operator stack already has an operator of higher precedence—the square-root function; this higher-priority operator must be executed first. The square-root operator is carried out on its unary operand, and the result, the square root of A+B, is placed on the operand stack. Now, with the operator stack empty, the parser pushes the multiplication sign, and the rest follows as in our first example.

So far we have been dealing only with arithmetic operators. In *if* statements there is a need for relational and logical operators as well.

Relational operators evaluate the truth or falseness of an expression and return a logical value of −1 for true and 0 for false. Logical operators, such as *and* and *or*, are used to evaluate the relationship between two or more relations; they too return values of true or false. For example, in the statement

```
IF A+B<C AND C>10 GOTO 100
```

the greater-than and less-than signs are relational operators, while the *and* is a logical operator. Page 3-26 of the Basic manual offers a table of logical operators.

Relational operators evaluate the truth or falseness of an expression. . . .

The arithmetic operators all have higher precedence than any of the relationals, and logical operators have the lowest precedence. This arrangement minimizes the use of parentheses. Take another look at that *if* statement:

```
IF A+B<C AND C>10 GOTO 100
```

Intuition tells us that what we want to do is perform the arithmetic first, then make the comparisons. Then and only then can we decide if both conditions are met and take the appropriate action.

What about errors? It is the parser's job to detect most of the errors in Basic statements. Some are very easy to find. A mistake like putting two operators in a row, as in A+−B, is found as soon as the minus sign is scanned. Others must wait until most of the statement analysis is finished. For example, the following statement is missing a right parenthesis:

```
A*(B+C
```

The parser notices the fault only when it comes to the end of the line and finds that there's a parenthesis on top of the operator stack.

Finally, what are the practical implications of all this information? Can you use any of it to make your programs run more efficiently?

Indeed. Knowing now how much work goes into the parsing of Basic expressions, you can move expressions out of loops if they don't need to be there. For example, if you need *sqr(A+B)* in a loop, and if A and B are not recomputed within the loop, you can assign the value of *sqr(A+B)* to a variable before the beginning of the loop. That will lighten the interpreter's load and make your program run marginally faster. ▲

SPF/PC™

ACTUALLY, there is no comparison. SPF/PC is the best full-screen editor available for the IBM Personal Computer.

It looks and works like IBM's large system SPF editor.

- SPF/PC can use up to 786K of memory as workspace.
- Word processing commands.
- 4-way scrolling.
- Split screen support.
- On-line help facility.
- Can edit up to 240 character records.
- Monochrome or color supported.
- Instantaneous screen display.
- Block Move/Copy/Repeat/Delete/Overlay/Shift/Exclude
- Automatic line numbering supported.
- 40 user-definable Program Function Keys.
- Direct interface to DOS commands for PCDOS 2.0 users.
- Browse sub-system.
- Move/Copy sub-system copies any file format.
- Utilities include: Rename/Delete/Print/Directory list.

AND MUCH MORE . . .

UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD sub-system available to SPF/PC users for $50.00.

$149.95 SPF/PC requires 128K, PCDOS, and 1 disk drive.

THE ODD-COUPLE™

Allows the APPLE and IBM/PC to communicate with each other.

- Connect APPLE to PC, APPLE to APPLE, and PC to PC.
- Transfer any file in either direction.
- CHAT mode allows direct communications through the keyboard.
- An Equipment Profile allows description of your operating environment.
- Communicate Direct or through a Modem at speeds up to 9600 baud (bps).
- Written entirely in machine language for speed and efficiency.

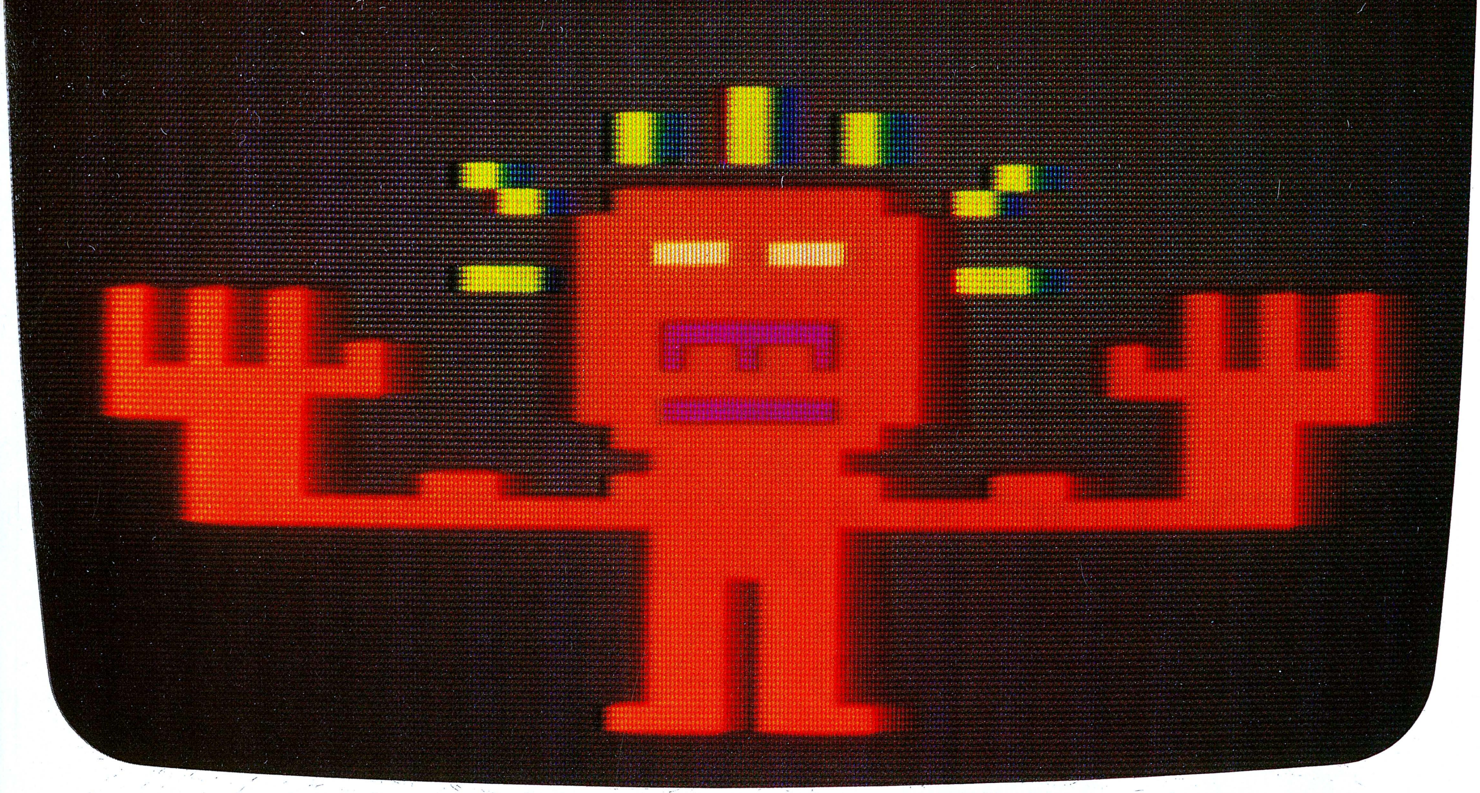
REQUIREMENTS:

APPLE — 48K, 1 disk drive, Serial Interface
IBM — 64K, 1 disk drive, Serial Interface

$79.95

For orders and dealer information write or call Rogue River Software, 2822 Tahitian Ave., Medford, OR 97504, (503) 779-3002. Mastercard/Visa, Check, or P.O. accepted. Add $5.00 for shipping. Canada $10.00. Foreign $15.00.

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc. APPLE is a registered trademark of Apple Computer Inc.



WOULD YOU SHELL OUT $1000 TO MATCH WITS WITH THIS?

Meet your match. Meet Infocom games: perhaps the best reason in software for owning a personal computer.

In fact, people have been known to purchase computers and disk drives solely for the purpose of playing our games. And they haven't been disappointed. Because Infocom's prose stimulates your imagination to a degree nothing else in software approaches. Instead of putting funny little creatures on your screen, we put you inside our stories. And we confront you with startlingly realistic environments alive with situations, personalities, and logical puzzles the like of which you won't find elsewhere. The secret? We've found the way to plug our prose right into your imagination, and catapult you into a whole new dimension.

If you think such an extraordinary experience is worth having, you're not alone. Everything we've ever written—ZORK® I, II, and III, DEADLINE,™ STARCROSS,™ SUSPENDED,™ The WITNESS,™ PLANETFALL,™ ENCHANTER,™ and INFIDEL™—has become an instant best-seller. For the simple reason that Infocom offers you something as rare and valuable as anything in software—real entertainment.

At last, you can fritter away your evenings playing a computer game without feeling like you're frittering away your computer investment.

Step up to Infocom. All words. No pictures. The secret reaches of your mind are beckoning. A whole new dimension is in there waiting for you.

(For more information on Infocom games contact: Infocom, Inc., P.O. Box 855, Garden City, NY 11530.)

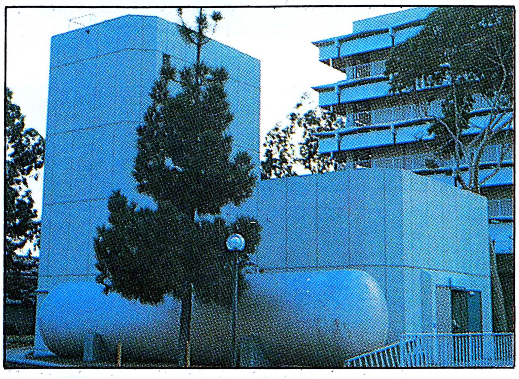
INFOCOM™

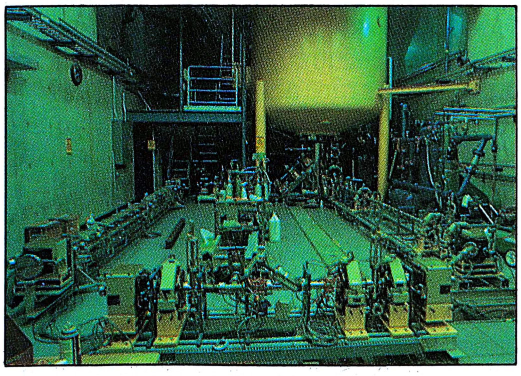
The next dimension.

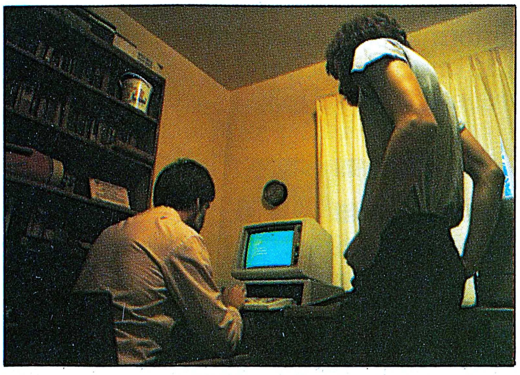
For your: Apple II, Atari, Commodore 64, CP/M 8,* DEC Rainbow, DEC RT-11, IBM, MS-DOS 2.0, NEC APC, NEC PC-8000, Osborne, TI Professional, TI 99/4A, TRS-80 Model I, TRS-80 Model III.

DEADLINE
ZORK III
INFIDEL
ENCHANTER
PLANETFALL
WITNESS

PC POWER GIVES LASERS A BOOST







Top left: The free-electron laser being built at UCSB takes up the entire building shown in the foreground. Middle: Inside the building, the U-shaped mechanism takes shape. Bottom: Logging on to the Cray at Los Alamos from Colson's home, Colson and programmer Joe Blau work on a problem.

by Michael Ferris

Many people have a deep conviction that the universe is orderly and the principles on which it's ordered can be known by man. Some even maintain that the universe is written in code and that it's the job of the scientist to crack that code.

Philosopher Francis Bacon, an early proponent of this thinking, believed there were two revelations, the first given by scripture and tradition, the second by the universe.

According to physicist Heinz R. Pagels, when the history of this century is written, the significance of political events will pale in comparison to that of technological events.

"Instead," writes Pagels in *The Cosmic Code,* "the main event will be the first human contact with the invisible quantum world and the subsequent biological and computer revolutions."

No single set of ideas has ever had greater impact than the quantum theories relating to the immutable laws of the universe, he states. The decoding of the atom and our grasp of its laws sparked a revolution in physics, beginning with Einstein's first papers on relativity and the photoelectric effect published in 1905.

It is our mastery of these concepts that has given rise to industries based around such technological advancements as the transistor, the microchip, cryogenic technology, and the laser.

Laser technology and computer technology both grew out of solid-state physics and developed along parallel lines. In the future, lasers may even be used to etch very small computer chips.

Right now, the IBM Personal Computer is helping develop a new kind of laser. More versatile than conventional lasers, the free-electron laser promises to be as important as the thousands of lasers now in use.

For the past nine years, research professor and consulting physicist Bill Colson has been exploring the theory underlying the free-electron laser. Recently, an IBM Personal Computer, equipped with the Qunix operating system, has been assisting him at home.

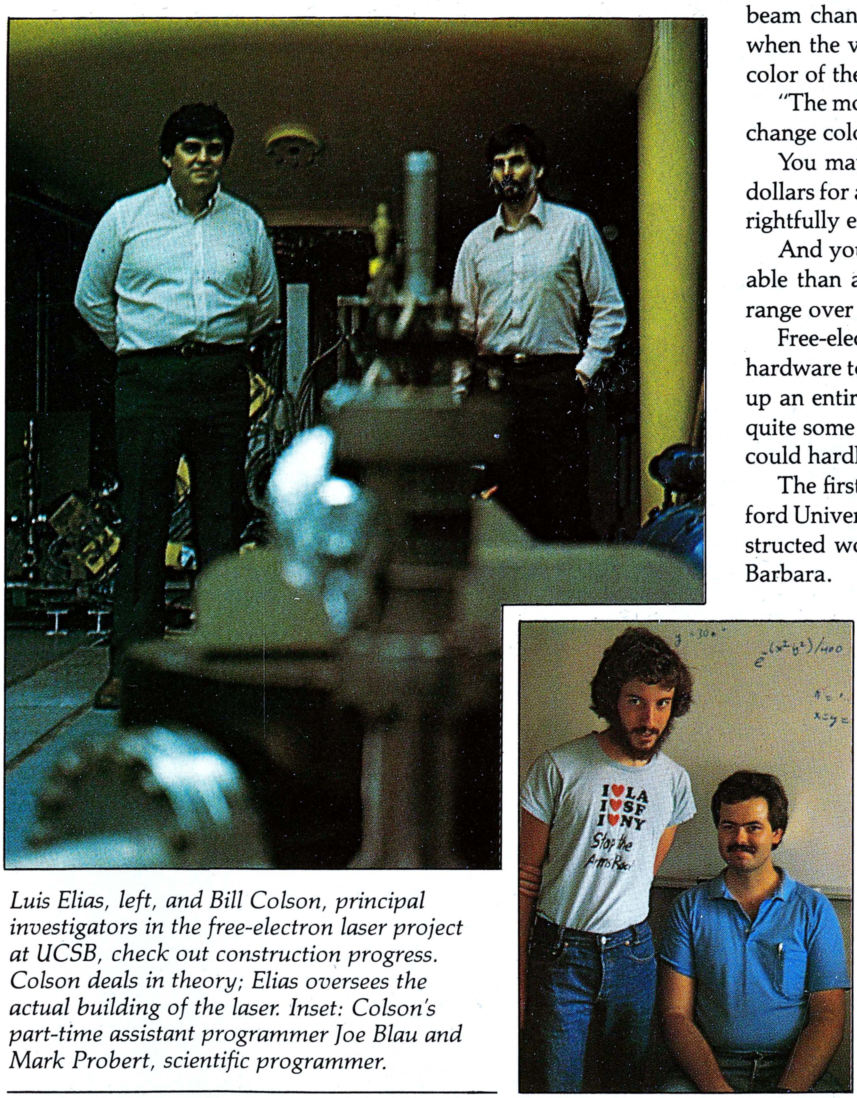
Actually, Colson's pc keeps busy in a number of ways. It does number crunching, acts as a terminal from which to communicate with

Colson gets one band of color from a prism, illustrating the limitation of most conventional lasers.

other computers, and aids Colson in his consulting work for Berkeley Scholars, an independent research group.

Since it has proved itself "a smart little central computer," Colson has ordered a pc of his own for his office at the University of California at Santa Barbara. Until it arrives, his home pc is helping him advance the theory of free-electron lasers.

Like computers, lasers are generally seen as miracle workers. Only those people who are on more intimate terms with them realize that there are almost as many kinds of lasers as there are applications for them.



Luis Elias, left, and Bill Colson, principal investigators in the free-electron laser project at UCSB, check out construction progress. Colson deals in theory; Elias oversees the actual building of the laser. Inset: Colson's part-time assistant programmer Joe Blau and Mark Probert, scientific programmer.

A Primer on Lasers. Very simply, here's how a conventional laser works. The atoms in a solid or gas material are pumped into an excited state by sometimes just a spark. The photons released from these atoms are bounced around millions of times between mirrors until, just by chance, some of them begin stepping coherently in the same direction.

This encourages the other photons to emit in step until columns of them, marching in cadence like good soldiers, make their way down the business end of a laser. This results in a powerful, coherent beam of light.

Conventional lasers can be created from a variety of materials, including synthetic rubies and helium-neon gas mixtures. It's possible to build a table-top laser for medical use that cuts like a scalpel of light, as well as a satellite model for communications that transmits messages across space and a hand-held laser that gently cleans valuable artwork. One of the most significant laser applications is in the field of atomic spectroscopy, the study of material and how radiation affects it.

Most lasers are monochromatic specialists, giving coherent light only at one wavelength. Different applications require different colors of light. Some lasers are slightly tuneable, meaning that they can change color, but only within about 1 percent of their wavelength.

Free-electron lasers make use of a highly relativistic beam of electrons moving at 99.99 percent of the speed of light. This beam passes through a periodic magnetic field surrounded by mirrors. The electrons "wiggle" as they pass through this field, radiating as they would in an excited atom. Out of this wiggling comes the coherence.

Initially, each electron is going so fast its energy corresponds to fifty million volts per electron. Changing the energy, or speed, of the beam changes the way the electrons wiggle. In a free-electron laser, when the voltage is changed, for example, to forty million volts, the color of the beam is changed.

"The most important feature of free-electron lasers is their ability to change color to a much larger extent," explains Colson.

You may be willing to pay anywhere from fifty to fifty thousand dollars for a dedicated laser, but for the $2 to $10 million it costs, you'd rightfully expect more from a free-electron laser.

And you'd get more. Free-electron lasers are incredibly more tuneable than any conventional laser. The free-electron laser's beam can range over 1,000 percent of its initial wavelength.

Free-electron lasers are still experimental units in their infancy. The hardware to support such a laser is a mammoth construction that takes up an entire building. You won't be able to purchase such a laser for quite some time, even if you could get it in your garage. Besides, you could hardly afford one.

The first free-electron laser experiment was begun in 1974 at Stanford University in Palo Alto. Since then, more than ten have been constructed worldwide. One is scheduled to start up soon at UC Santa Barbara.

The free-electron laser research at UCSB, sponsored by grants, is the work of about a dozen people. The F.E.L. group is associated with the Quantum Institute and the physics department, but it's not part of them.

Colson and Luis Elias, both adjunct professors of physics, are designated Principal Investigators and run the show. Both are involved primarily with research and teach occasionally. Two assistant research physicists, an electrical engineer, students, and various technicians including full- and part-time programmers round out the group.

Part of Colson's job as P.I. is to designate areas of research. "I have a freedom under the grants to find out what's important to work on," he says. "I suggest and generally they go along."

As leader of the theory group, he exercises a high level of scientific discretion. "My job is to blend what hasn't been done with what's important," he says. Concentrating on an area that not too many people are working in contributes to its importance.

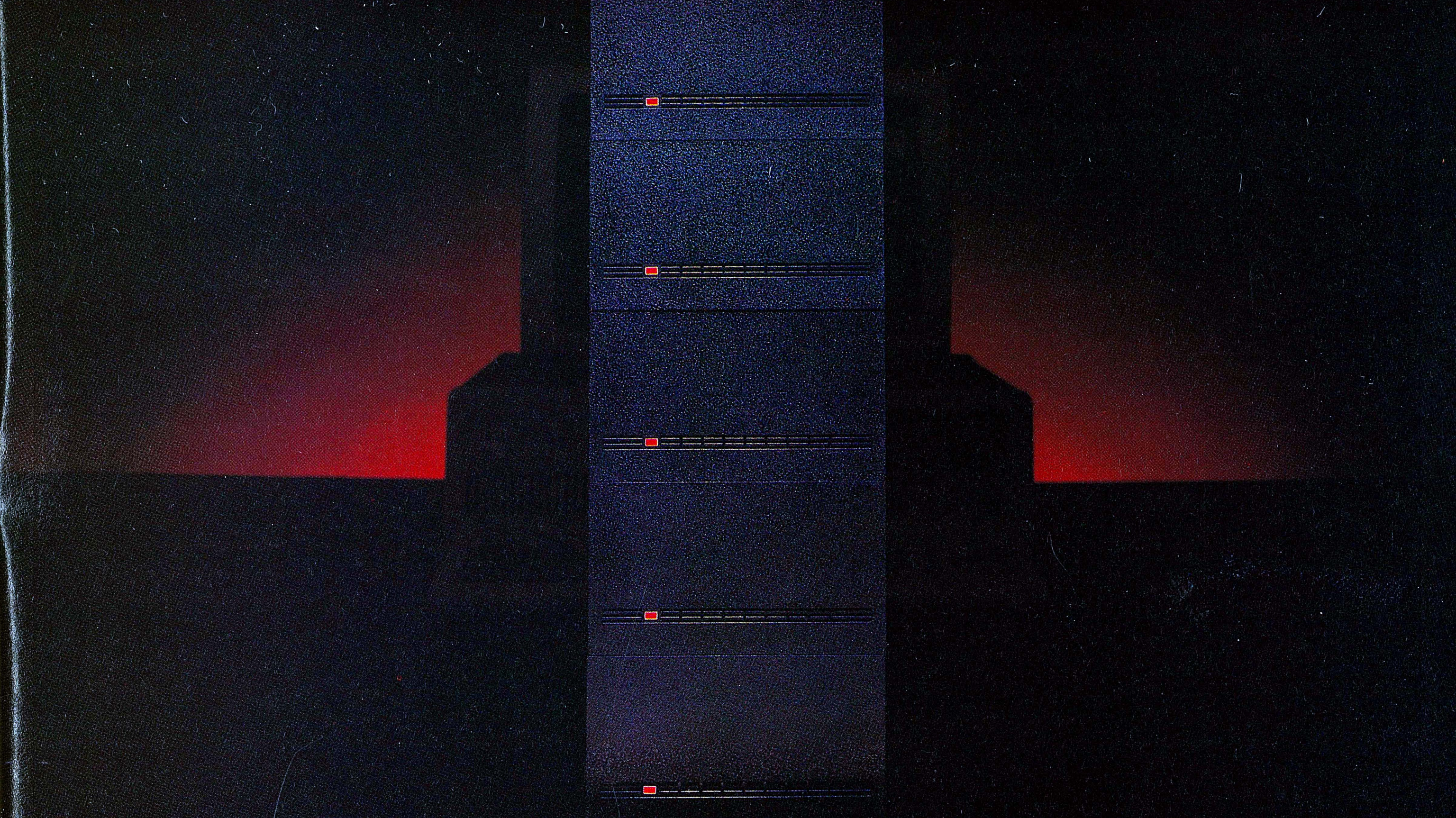
For the Sake of Science. Colson's free-electron laser work is funded by both the Air Force Office of Scientific Research and the Office of Naval Research, but it's pure science research, not military research.

The findings are published as public domain papers in various books and scientific periodicals such as the *Journal of Quantum Electronics* and *Physical Review Letters.* Each year, five or six of his papers are published, and Colson gives several talks to various scientific peer groups.

None of his findings is "classified" and some of what he studies and reports on is even translated into Russian and published in the U.S.S.R.

"The Air Force and Navy both feel part of a good defense is to have a lot of smart people working over here," explains Colson. "They both fund a significant amount of the pure science research going on in this country."

While engineers grapple with the concrete realities of free-electron

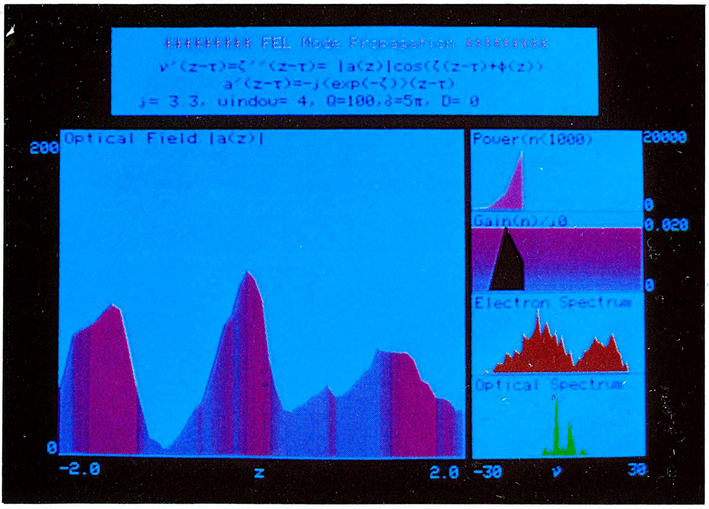


25 Mb the hard way.

RanaSystems

25 Mb the Rana way.

© 1983 Rana Systems



In Colson's two-minute movies of simulated lasers, factors of a laser's theoretical performance are separately graphed.

laser research, physicists and theory specialists like Colson work in the abstract. Colson models theoretical lasers on various computers, from the "fastest computer in the world" to the pc.

Calculus is the workhorse of the research. Colson's task is to write mathematical programs that simulate actual free-electron lasers.

Often, after finishing a paper defining one theoretical aspect of a laser concept, he finds that some element has changed and the programs must change also. He's constantly redoing his calculations to maintain coherence.

Out of more than two hundred programs, twenty are the most important. If any of those core programs were suddenly erased, "it would take a few weeks to build back up," he says. That's why he saves pieces of programming from as far back as five years.

"I'll start out writing a new program for evaluating a new effect," he explains, "and end up borrowing parts of a previous body of work. Most of my work is rewriting."

Some of Colson's mathematical guesswork is shown graphically on plotted paper, some is shown on computer monitors. Movies are shot from the computer screen, one frame at a time like animated cartoons, showing simulated free-electron laser concepts in action. This allows other scientists all over the world to see how a certain adjustment or type of experiment will affect a real free-electron laser.

Until now, the movies have been made by setting up a film camera in front of a Chromatics computer running off a Vax mini. A special "black box" was built that allows a beep from a program to activate the camera, exposing one frame and then moving on to the next.

Turning diagnostic computer plots into one- and two-minute movies is just another exotic development in an already exotic field.

Enter the pc. Now, instead of having the Vax doing all the work, Colson is gradually bringing the pc into the picture as program manager, to run the preparation programs he has written for the Chromatics movies.

Equipped with extra graphics expansion cards and a special monitor, the pc could be souped up to replace the Chromatics. Resolution of 1000 by 780 and a palette of sixteen colors could be achieved. Two such pcs could be purchased for the price of one Chromatics standalone computer.

Working at the office in his home, ten minutes off campus, Colson is able to connect his pc to the Vax minis to exchange programs in either C or Fortran, via modem. He can also contact the Cray mainframe at Los Alamos National Laboratory in New Mexico, another center of free-electron laser research. The Cray is the fastest computer in the world, according to Colson, a thousand times faster than the pc.

Even though it's the fastest computer in the world, it's a shame to waste the Cray's time. At Los Alamos, IBM Personal Computers are used for certain tasks, says Colson, thereby saving the Cray for hard calculating. That's exactly what Colson himself does: He compiles data on the pc, runs it on the Cray in a batch job, and gets back numbers.

"Hopefully, the Los Alamos people will be able to develop standardized software for the pc," says Colson. "It would make our work that much easier."

Logging on to the Cray from his pc at home, Colson must abide by its particular security protocol. "You have thirty seconds to log on or it will disconnect," he explains. "Without the manual on your lap, you could easily screw up.

"If it hangs up on you five times in a row, you're blacklisted and have to call important people to get back on."

In addition, time on the Cray is expensive. "You could almost buy a pc with what it costs every hour," he jokes.

On a typical day at the university, Colson might talk to the Unix, Qunix, and VMS operating systems, speaking either Fortran, C, or Basic. Each system has a different editor and each language has its own set of commands.

"The same idea can be explored in Fortran or C," explains Colson, "and each language has attributes that make it unique." One may be more suitable than the other for working on a particular theoretical calculation.

At the same time, the various graphics devices call separate software drivers. For example, C must be used to address the Chromatics terminal and Fortran must be used to drive a particular plotter.

UCSB has two time-sharing Vax minis on campus that speak C, Basic, and Fortran, running under the Unix operating system. In his office, Colson currently accesses them through the Chromatics terminal. Soon it will be a pc.

Philately Just Gave the Personal Computer Its Stamp of Approval!

Small wonder. SoftStyle's Philatelic Management System for the Personal Computer has added a whole new dimension to stamp collecting.

Now you can efficiently manage your collection... and have more time to enjoy collecting. Every level of philatelist will find this superior software can grow with his collection needs. We've provided everything you need to start today, with flexibility for growth. You don't have to design and code a complex data base. There are over 40 programs in this powerful, yet *easy-to-use* package, that has been developed by software professionals and philatelists.

Please send me:
☐ **Free** product brochure.
☐ **Demonstration Package**, with informative manual and easy-to-run demo diskette, only $15, which can be credited to a Complete Package purchase.
☐ **Complete Package** with program diskettes, comprehensive instruction manual, installation guide, and Demonstration Package. Reg. price—$295.
Special Introductory Price until Jan. 1, 1984—$219.
When Ordering: include your name, address, signature, and phone along with your check/money order, or MC/Visa. Send to: **SoftStyle, Inc.**
Foreign orders add $10. Hawaii orders add 4% sales tax.
Available for (check yours): ☐ IBM PC ☐ Apple][
☐ Apple][+ ☐ Aple //e ☐ Apple ///
More versions to come. Needs 64K / 2 diskette drives / printer optional.

Philatelic Management System™
for the Personal Computer

SoftStyle™

SOFTSTYLE, INC.
7192 Kalanianaole Hwy., Suite 200
Dept. L10, Honolulu, HI 96825
Phone: (808) 396-6368

RanaSystems

Introducing the First 2.5 Mb Minifloppy Drive.

Isn't it just like Rana Systems to introduce a floppy disk drive for the IBM® with the mass storage benefits of a hard disk, plus the floppy's strength of removable media. The first minifloppy that stores an incredible 2.5 megabytes on a single diskette. Imagine, storing a word processor, a spelling checker, mailing list, and dictionary on one floppy. With megabytes to spare.

Rana's new drive needs only 10 floppies to give you all the capacity of five 5-megabyte hard disks. And that's not the limit. In fact, there is no limit. Like any floppy with its removable media, you can use diskette after diskette to increase your storage. Our expanded capacity disk drive not only acts like a hard disk, it also serves as an ideal back-up for one.

And that's just the beginning, because Rana's drive introduces totally new "closed loop servo" minifloppy technology, making the drive insensitive to temperature or humidity. Rana's controller card can be used with standard internal drives also, so you don't have to use an additional slot. Our drive comes with its own power supply, software enhancements for PC-DOS 2.0 and 1.1, and CP/M-86®, and a box of diskettes. Everything you'll need to make your IBM operate to its maximum potential.

The new 2.5 megabyte minifloppy drive, available first for the IBM® PC and XT and soon for the Apple®. It's Rana's latest proof that to stay a step ahead, you've got to lead the way.

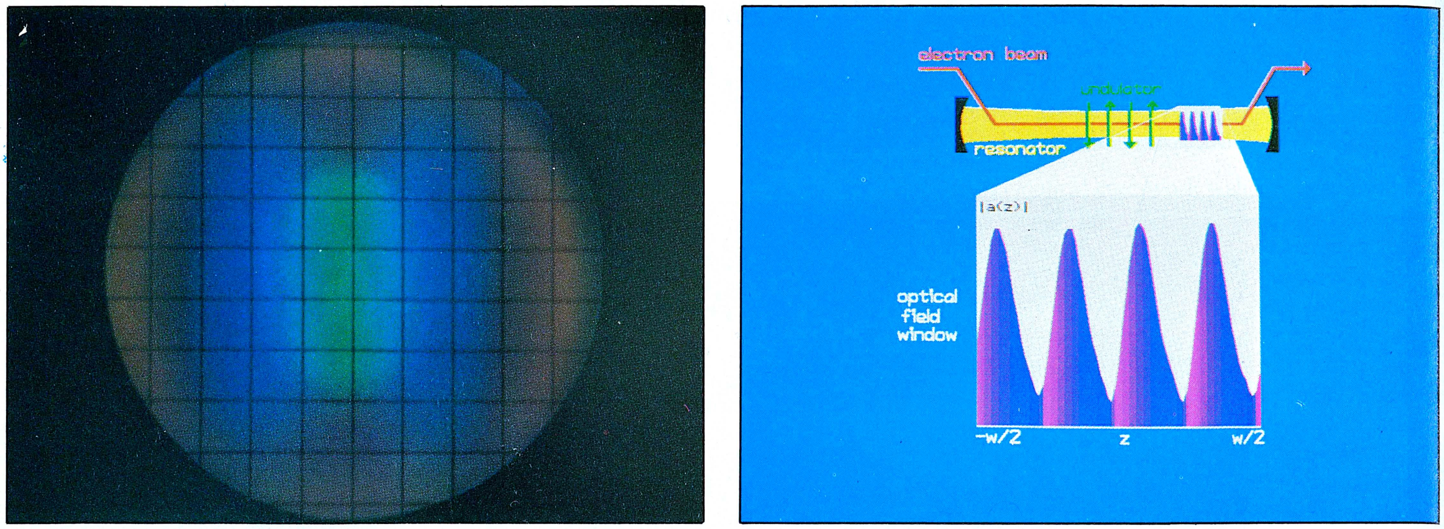
Always a step ahead.

RanaSystems

21300 Superior Street, Chatsworth, CA 91311 213-709-5484. For dealer information call toll free: 1-800-421-2207. In California only call; 1-800-262-1221. Source Number: TCT-654 Available at all participating Computerland stores and other fine computer dealers. See us at Comdex Booth #326-427.

® IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc. ® CP/M-86 is a registered trademark of Digital Research. ® Apple is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

© 1983 Rana Systems



Left: The beam of an Italian free-electron laser experiment shows the range of available intensities. Colson regularly trades information and software with the Italian scientists. Right: This cutaway section shows the electrons of a free-electron laser in coherence.

The new pc will be the heart of a multiuser, multitasking configuration. Two dumb terminals, a printer, and a graphics workstation, all located in nearby offices, will connect to Colson's office pc. Modem lines will connect this pc to the two Vaxes, the pc at home, and the outside computer world.

"For our type of research, the 8087 math chip makes the pc one-fifth as powerful as a Vax," Colson explains. "This means it is the equivalent of the Vax with five people using it at the same time. Typically, we have to put up with twenty people on the Vax."

A problem that might take four hours to run on a Vax may take a day to solve on the pc, but with multitasking the pc won't be tied up calculating; it will be available for word processing and other work.

So Many Computers, So Little Time. College research scientists may operate in a rarefied atmosphere of exotic ideas and concepts, but they have the same computer problems as the rest of us. And everything from mainframes to micros is called into action in this environment.

"One of the hazards of working with too many computers," warns Colson, "is they all have different rules." A mix of computers is a mixed blessing. Multitasking operating systems like Unix and Qunix and a portable language like C are helping to standardize Colson's growing computer jungle.

The Unix operating system, created by Bell Labs, can serve several users at the same time. "It's simple, flexible, and powerful," says Colson. So what if the system documentation is six inches thick.

The built-in editor on the Unix system is called Vi. It has extensive single-keystroke commands and doesn't use function keys.

Qunix for the pc, by Quantum Systems Software, is a micro version of Unix, one of several currently in use, like Xenix and Venix. The Qunix text editor is called Ed, and it's a kissing cousin to Vi. Ed was originally implemented to use function keys, but its command structure is flexible. A package of commands that make it work like Vi will soon be available, closing the gap between the two operating systems.

A link between Unix and its offspring is their common ability to run the same language, C, with no program changes. C's biggest advantage is its style. Like Pascal, it's a structured language. "It's a low-level language, almost like assembly, but not as bad," Colson says.

"With C," he elaborates, "logic is easier to understand from the screen. For example, program lines don't mean a thing; you indicate a statement ending with a semicolon, and loops are separated by curly brackets."

C, the Qunix operating system, and the pc are three new elements that work together to facilitate Colson's dealings with the world of computerized physics. Getting the fine details worked out between them isn't always easy, but it's more than worth it in the end. These powerful new tools allow Colson to concentrate on the work that's really important to him.

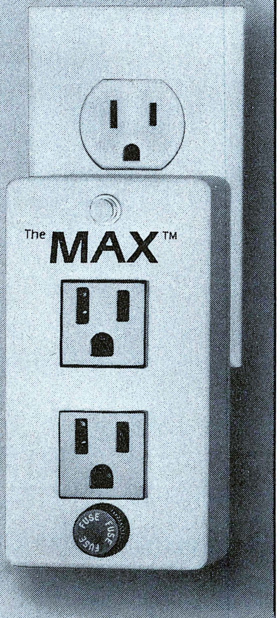
For Colson, the challenge of free-electron laser research is "playing with principles you know other researchers haven't played with before."

For what it's worth, he says it's fun, too, but who would believe that when it comes from the high tower of a university physics building? ▲

Go for the "MAX"™

Panamax
Surge Suppressors
provide the fastest
response time and
highest energy
dissipation available
to assure you the
maximum protection
against over voltage
"Spikes and glitches"
Priced from $59.00

PANAMAX
Toll Free 1-800-472-5555
In California call 415-472-5547
150 Mitchell Boulevard, San Rafael, CA 94903



If flying your IBM® PC got any more realistic, you'd need a license.

You took off from Boston-Logan with nothing above you but blue sky. Now you're 5,000 feet over Long Island Sound, and New York-La Guardia, your destination airport, reports high winds. Connecticut-Bridgeport is the logical alternate, but clouds with a low ceiling are going to make life difficult. You're in for an instrument approach…

The plane inside your PC. Run the Microsoft® Flight Simulator on your IBM Personal Computer, and put yourself in the pilot's seat of a Cessna 182. You control everything from flaps and ailerons right down to the magneto switch. You can even navigate using radio signals and fly totally by instruments if you run into bad weather. Best of all, Flight Simulator features a full-color, out-the-window flight display. With detailed graphics that closely simulate a pilot's actual perspective.

The world beneath your fingers. Once you're in flight, don't worry about running out of airspace. You can take off and land at over 20 airports from Los Angeles to New York. Each, with its own particular set of challenges.

The learning curve. In its "easy" mode, the Flight Simulator gives new pilots an aircraft which readily forgives errors in flight, engine control, and navigation. As you gain skill, move into "reality" mode. Then get ready for simulations of everything from running out of fuel to carburetor icing.

The Ace in your soul. When you think you've earned your wings, turn the clock back for a round of "British Ace." Fly into a World War I air battle complete with scouting flights, bombing runs and hair-raising dogfights. Destroy your targets, shoot down the enemy fighters, and you just might survive to be decorated.

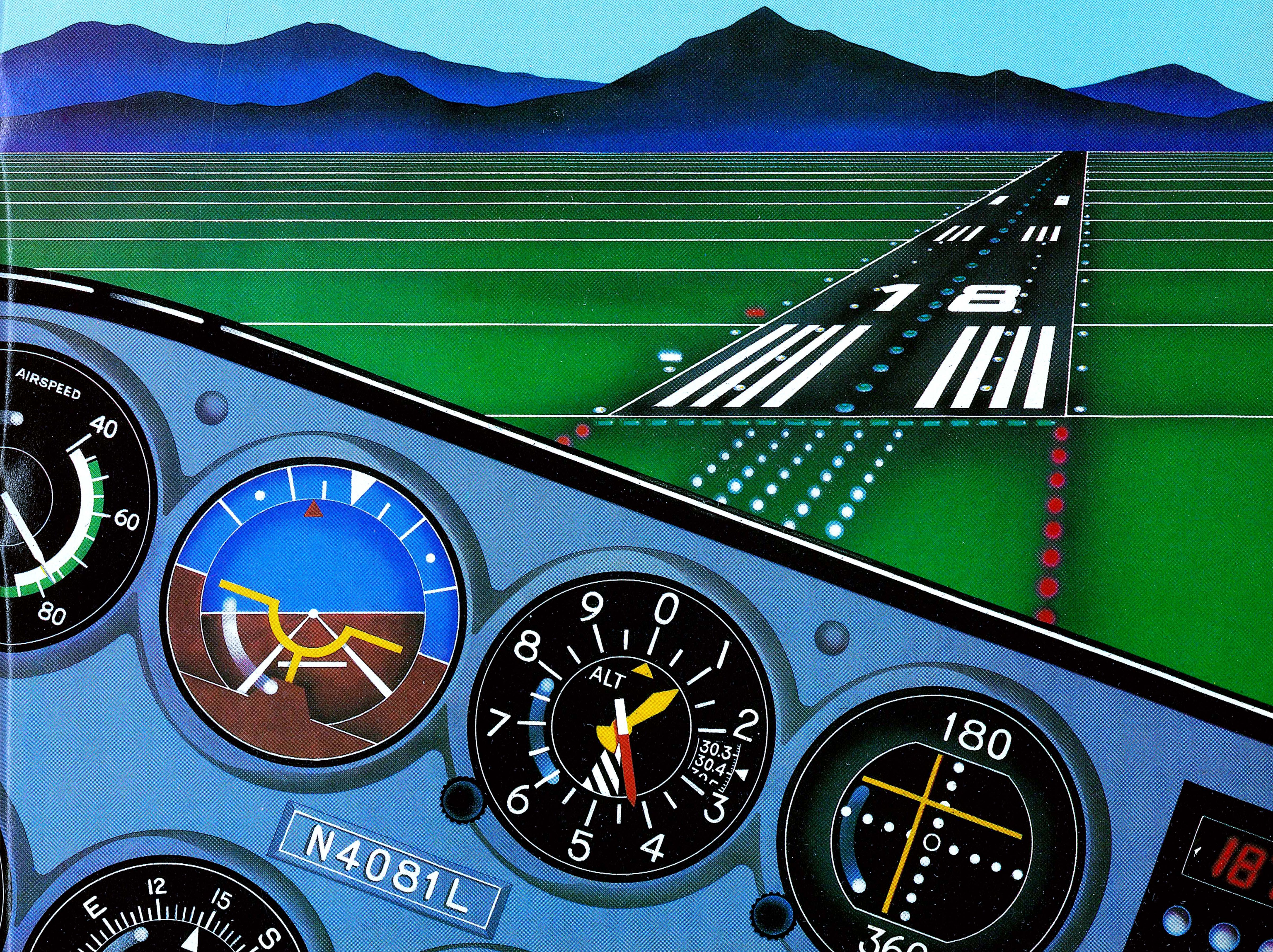
Throttle on. Take a test flight at your computer store or software dealer. Once you've been aloft, you'll want to buckle up behind your own IBM PC with the Microsoft Flight Simulator. It's the closest you can get to flying. Without leaving your nest.

BETTER TOOLS FOR MICROCOMPUTERS

MICROSOFT™

MICROSOFT CORPORATION
10700 NORTHUP WAY
BELLEVUE, WASHINGTON 98004

Microsoft is a registered trademark and the Microsoft logo is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation
IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation

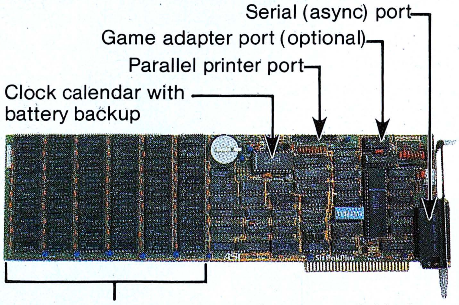


Number One Add-On Products for IBM PC

Getting the most out of your personal computer.

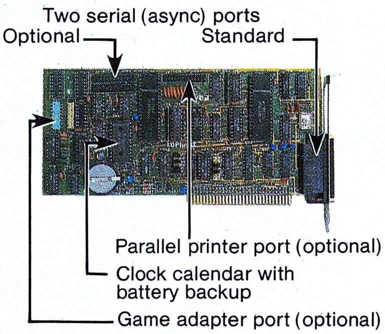
AST Research Number One Add-On Products let you realize the full potential of your IBM PC or PC-XT without wasting valuable slot space. You can take advantage of more of the capabilities IBM designed into the PC while leaving space for future enhancements as they are introduced, by combining your memory and input/ouput requirements on a single card!

SixPakPlus™:

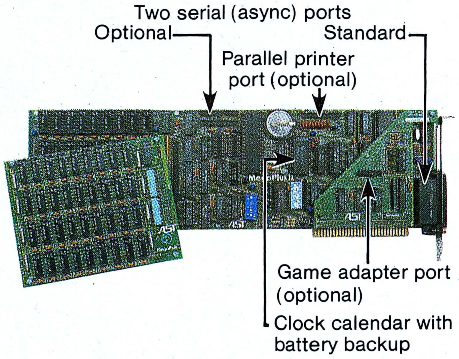

Serial (async) port
Game adapter port (optional)
Parallel printer port
Clock calendar with battery backup

64K-384K of parity checked memory. Added to a PC or XT with a fully populated 256K system board, the SixPakPlus can bring the system memory to 640K, the maximum addressable user memory.

I/O Plus II™:

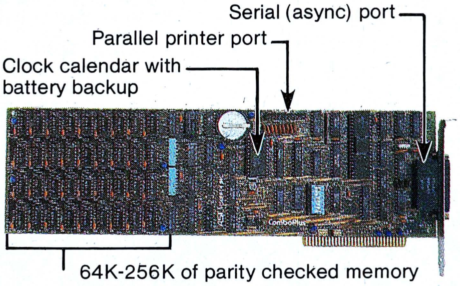

Two serial (async) ports
Optional
Standard
Parallel printer port (optional)
Clock calendar with battery backup
Game adapter port (optional)

MegaPlus II™:

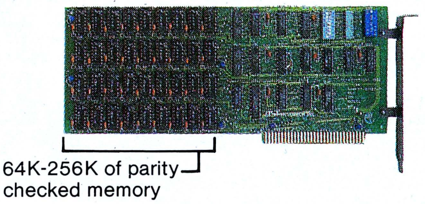

Two serial (async) ports
Optional
Standard
Parallel printer port (optional)
Game adapter port (optional)
Clock calendar with battery backup

64K-512K of parity checked memory. The basic card expands to 256K, and with the MegaPak extension expands to an additional 128K or 256K of parity checked memory.

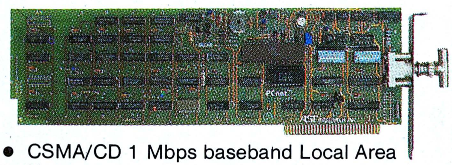
ComboPlus™:


Serial (async) port
Parallel printer port
Clock calendar with battery backup
64K-256K of parity checked memory

MP Expansion Memory:

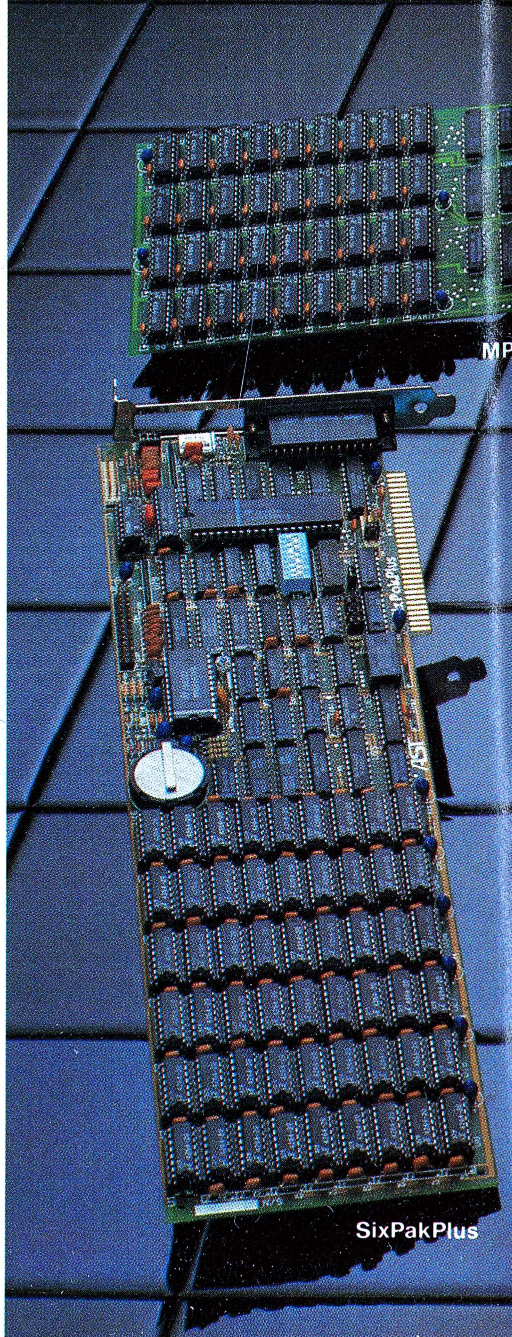

64K-256K of parity checked memory

AST-PCnet™:



- CSMA/CD 1 Mbps baseband Local Area Network
- Uses standard 75-ohm CATV coaxial cable capable of running up to 7,000 feet
- Interconnects multiple PC's (57,000 addressable limit)
- All PC-compatible disk drives and printers are shareable
- Networked access to mainframes via shared AST-3780
- Users can execute commands remotely on shared PC
- File lock-out
- DOS 1.1 and DOS 2.0 compatible

Ask for AST Research Number One Add-On Products, available at Computerland, Entré, Businessland and other computer stores worldwide. For the dealer nearest you, or for complete product information contact AST Research, Inc., (714) 540-1333/863-1333 TELEX 295370ASTR UR


MP
SixPakPlus

User Memory from 64K-512K — When added to your existing system memory, brings your PC up to its maximum of 640K. You can run larger spreadsheets or create larger in-memory databases. You can also use the additional memory along with the supplied AST SuperPak™ software which includes SuperDrive™ and SuperSpool™.

Serial Ports — Using a modem your PC can communicate with other computers over telephone lines. By connecting a serial printer, you can obtain high quality print output. Other serial devices such as a plotter or mouse may also be connected to a serial port.

Parallel Ports — Used for connecting a parallel printer to your PC for high-speed, draft quality printouts.

Clock Calendar — With the on-board battery, the clock-calendar feature automatically maintains the correct date and time, even when the PC is turned off.

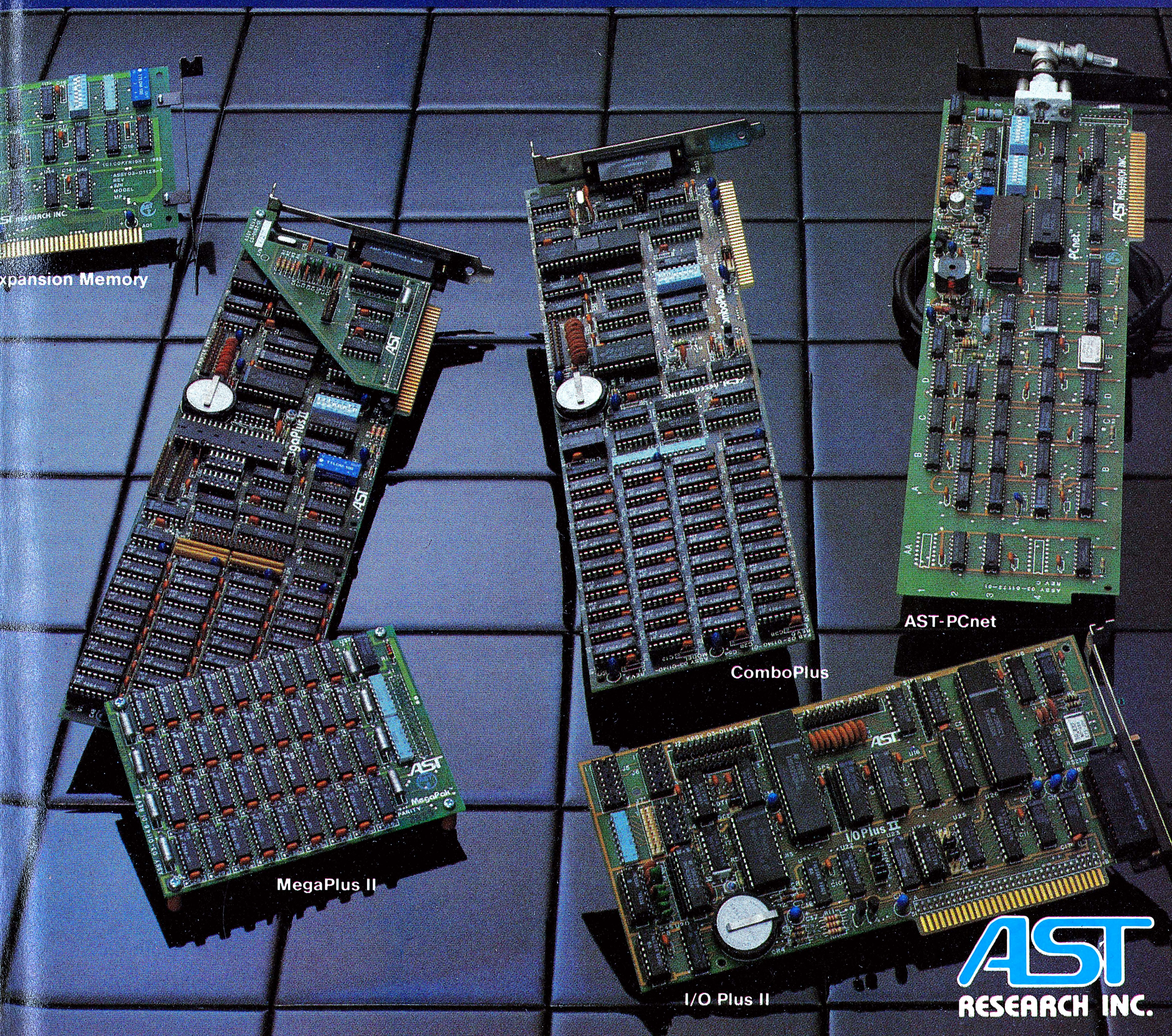
Game Adapter — Allows you to connect an IBM-type joystick to your PC so you can play the multitude of arcade quality games. Or you can use the joystick input for other applications by writing your own programs.

Other Communications Products — AST Research also extends the capabilities of your IBM PC with mainframe communication products including 3270 SNA and 5251 terminal emulation, 3780 RJE support, and AST-PCnet™ — the Local Area Network designed for the IBM PC.

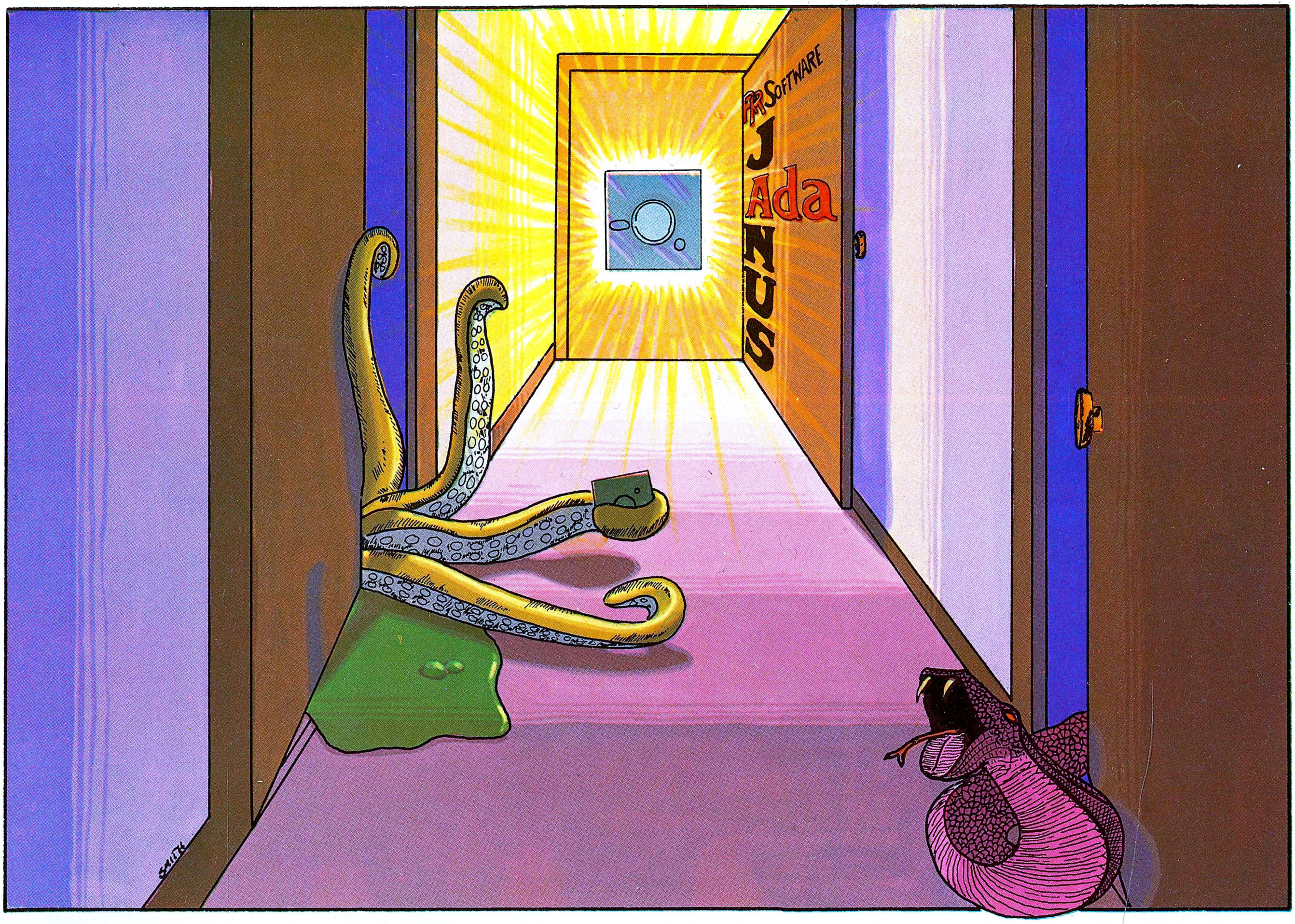
AST *Quality*

All AST Research enhancement products come with the **AST "Plus"** — our unsurpassed reputation for quality, reliability, after-the-sale support, and overall design excellence — which give our products the best price/performance ratio in the industry!

PCnet is a registered trademark of Orchid Technology, Inc.



THE EASY CHOICE



Best Separate Compilation – Best Error Handling – Best Implementation on a Small Computer

Comments From 1983 LA AdaTEC Compiler Faire

". . . JANUS/Ada encompasses at least 5 times as much of Ada as Supersoft, including many of the more exotic features of the language." Creative Computing

". . . The compiler performed exceptionally well . . . the linker performs flawlessly . . . the error handling is excellent . . . RR's support is the best I've ever encountered."
InfoWorld

"The compiler breaks new ground in the microcomputer field with its excellent runtime error-checking code and its excellent compiler error messages." Microsystems

"They're (RRS) honest to a fault, so they call their language JANUS; but its more nearly Ada than any other microcomputer implementation I know of . . . I watched some of the demonstrations and it works."
Jerry Pournelle, Byte

Encouragement of this kind deserves a just reward; we now intend to complete our compiler and submit it for validation.

Our Ada line is available on the following operating systems: CP/M, CP/M-86, MS-DOS, PC-DOS and CCP/M-86

Available from the following distributors:

Westico, Inc.
25 Van Zant, St.
Norwalk, CT 06855
(203) 853-9880

Marfam Corporation
5340 Thornwood Dr. Suite 102
San Jose, CA 95123
(408) 226-0170

Suntex Data
10175 Harwin Suite 100
Houston, TX 77036
(713) 271-9191

Internationally

S-100 Systems
3687-4 Shobumachi
Obayashi
Saitama, Japan 346-01
04808 (5)0416:
04808(5)6565

Micronix
11 Blackmore St.
Windsor 4030
QLD. Australia
(07)57 9152

Nord-Micro Informatique
155, rue du Fauburg St.
Denis
75010 Paris
(1)205-39-47

CP/M, CP/M-86, CCP/M-86 are trademarks of Digital Research, Inc.
*ADA is a trademark of the U.S. Department of Defense
MS-DOS is a trademark of Microsoft

©Copyright 1983 RR Software

RR SOFTWARE, INC.

specialist in state of the art programming

P.O. Box 1512 Madison, Wisconsin 53701

(608) 244-6436

BSCBAS

Structured Programming in BASIC

by Mark Gardner

Basic continues to be popular, in spite of its age and in spite of the increasing popularity of more modern languages. It seems safe to say that, whatever the merits of other languages, Basic will be useful (and in use) for some time to come. It may not be ideal for all applications, but it fits well for many and it often relieves the programmer of a good deal of tedium.

But it does have problems, of course, particularly in the areas of structure, commentability, and integrity. This article presents a program that will alleviate some of those Basic shortcomings.

Structure, in this context, means not only what professional programmers signify by that word, but also the commonsense connotations—the ability to put a program down on paper with understandable subdivisions and separations; to use and move subroutines routinely; to insert and delete sections without pain; and to group common functions into single program modules. Programming seriously in Basic can be quite a chore, since the lack of structure and the requirement that lines be numbered present problems for the programmer that have very little to do with getting instructions right.

Comments must support the structure and inform the programmer. Even the simplest Basic program can be virtually incomprehensible without sufficient comments. But programs run slower when an interpreter has to process many *rem* statements, and heavily commented programs take up a lot of memory space.

Finally, the ease with which a Basic program can be patched and saved is in itself a liability, because it can lead to the making of undocumented changes—changes that can inconvenience or even infuriate other program users.

Of course, with a great deal of care and patience, you can cope successfully with Basic's shortcomings. But should you?

The program presented in this article, itself written in Basic, processes structured, heavily commented, unnumbered Basic source files into .bas files ready to run. The program, entitled BSCBas, has been used successfully on a number of ambitious projects and has brought about significant savings of time and enhancements of control and documentation.

WHAT BSCBas DOES

BSCBas will work with standard ASCII source files, produced by a text editor (*WordStar* in nondocument mode, Edlin, *Personal Editor*, whatever). A standard extension of .bsc is applied to the source file names. The source files contain valid Basic program statements without line numbers. Comments are preceded by semicolons and do not need the *rem* keyword. For a very simple example of a BSCBas source file, see figure 1.

When BSCBas is used to convert this file to .bas format, lines are numbered and comments are either preserved or not—at the discretion of the user. The two possible output forms for figure 1 are shown in figure 2.

Of course, the mere ability to remove comments and number lines is not very exciting. What's really helpful about BSCBas is its ability to deal with named entry points for subroutines and control jumps and to handle other needed references to line numbers. See figure 3 for a more complex source file and the (uncommented) executable Basic program produced from it.

Notice the significant reduction in size achieved by removing the comment lines from this source file. Also notice how uncomfortable you would be trying to understand the intent of this rather simple program, with its fluke catch-all routine, if you didn't have comments in a source file.

BSCBas determines the appropriate replacements for the reference names. The reference numbers are of the line following the name definition; this speeds up execution if comments are left in, and it also allows restore instructions to refer correctly to data lines.

```
; EXAMPLE1.BSC   2-18-83   MRG
; Program to demonstrate the simplest level of BSCBAS use
DIM X(20),Y(20)
; Initialize the arrays
FOR I=0 TO 20
X(I)=I
Y(I)=I+2
NEXT I
; Calculate and print output
FOR I=0 TO 20
PRINT I,X(I)*Y(0),X(I)-Y(I)
NEXT I
END
```

Figure 1. An example of a simple source file

```
10 REM ; EXAMPLE1.BSC   2-18-83   MRG
20 REM ; Program to demonstrate the simplest level of
    BSCBAS use
30 DIM X(20),Y(20)
40 REM ; Initialize the arrays
50 FOR I=0 TO 20
60 X(I)=I
70 Y(I)=I+2
80 NEXT I
90 REM ; Calculate and print output
100 FOR I=0 TO 20
110 PRINT I,X(I)*Y(I),X(I)-Y(I)
120 NEXT I
130 END
```

```
10 DIM X(20),Y(20)
20 FOR I=0 TO 20
30 X(I)=I
40 Y(I)=I+2
50 NEXT I
60 FOR I=0 TO 20
70 PRINT I,X(I)*Y(I),X(I)-Y(I)
80 NEXT I
90 END
```

Figure 2.

```
; EXAMPLE2.BSC   2-18-83   MRG
; Program to demonstrate some name handling abilities of BSCBAS
 DIM STRINGINDEX(50)
 DIM STRINGELEMENT(20)
FRSTDT:      DATA TO USE FIRST
DATA 1,2,3,4,5,6,7
SECDDT:      DATA TO USE SECOND
DATA A,B,C,D,E
GO TO MAINPG

;*ASMPRN — subroutine to assemble and print an ascii
   string from
;   selected array elements
ASMPRN:      Assemble and print array elements
; Initialize the print string
  PRINTSTRING$=“”
; For each chosen element, insert tab and ascii equivalent into
;   print string
 FOR I=0 TO 4
     PRINTSTRING$=PRINTSTRING$+CHR$(9)
        +STR$(STRINGELEMENT(I))
  NEXT I
; Print the final string
  PRINT PRINTSTRING$

;*CTCHAL— subroutine to contain other examples of BSCBAS
;   references.
CTCHAL:      CATCH ALL SUBROUTINE FOR
REMAINING EXAMPLES
ON ERROR GO TO CTCHAL
IF ERL < > CTCHAL THEN GO TO MAINPG
ON Y GO TO CTCHAL,ASMPRN,MAINPG
IF Z THEN GOTO MAINPG
IF X THEN GO TO ASMPRN
RESUME ASMPRN
RESTORE FRSTDT
RESTORE SECDDT
RETURN

;*MAINPG — main program, does little in this example
MAINPG:      Main Program
; Initialize the string element
FOR I=0 TO 20
     STRINGELEMENT(I)=I
NEXT I
; Pick some indexes
MORELM:      more elements, entry point to solicit users' element
;      numbers
FOR I=0 TO 4
RETRYX:      Retry getting the input, entry point if entry is too big
     INPUT “Please type number from 0 to 20 ”; J
     IF J>20 OR J<0 THEN GO TO RETRYX
     STRINGINDEX(I)=J
NEXT I
; Now print the selected string elements
GOSUB ASMPRN
; And go and ask for more from the user
GO TO MORELM
; That's all for this example
END
```

```
10 DIM STRINGINDEX(5)
20 DIM STRINGELEMENT(20)
30 DATA 1,2,3,4,5,6,7
40 DATA A,B,C,D,E
50 GOTO 200
60      PRINTSTRING$=“”
70      FOR I=0 TO 4
80         PRINTSTRING$=PRINTSTRING$+CHR$(9)
              +STR$(STRINGELEMENT(I))
90      NEXT I
100      PRINT PRINTSTRING$
110 ON ERROR GOTO 110
120 IF ERL < > 110 THEN GOTO 200
130 ON Y GOTO 110, 60, 200
140 IF Z THEN GOTO 200
150 IF X THEN GOTO   60
160 RESUME      60
170 RESTORE      30
180 RESTORE      40
190 RETURN
200 FOR I=0 TO 20
210      STRINGELEMENT(I)=I
220 NEXT I
230 FOR I=0 TO 4
240      INPUT “Please type number from 0 to 20 ”; J
250      IF J>20 OR J<0 THEN GOTO 240
260      STRINGINDEX(I)=J
270 NEXT I
280 GOSUB      60
290 GOTO      230
300 END
```

Figure 3.

USING BSCBas

The BSCBas program itself is easy to use, either under interpreted IBM Basic or in compiled form. The program asks the user what file to process (you enter that information without the .bsc extension) and whether comments and names should be stripped. Names in the source file may be one to six characters in length; the first character must be alphabetic. In name definition lines, the name must start in the first column and end with a colon. Characters following the colon on the line are ignored, so you have an opportunity to explain what the names mean.

Names can be used in almost any way that a line number would be used—after *goto*, *go to*, *gosub*, *resume*, and *restore* keywords. Not supported are *list*, *run*, and the other direct-mode commands such as *renum*. *Then* is also not supported; you have to use it as *then goto* or *then go to*. This is because BSCBas can't tell whether a name or a statement follows the then keyword. References to names are permitted with *erl* (error line), provided that both the *erl* and the name are bracketed by spaces, as in

```
IF ERL <= READIN THEN GO TO WHTSIT
```

Strings of names are allowed, which means you can use the computed *goto*. The constraint here is that the names must be separated by commas, but with no intervening spaces. For example:

```
ON X(I) GOSUB PROCS,PRNT,LEVPRG
```

Names must be on the end of a line and may not appear in "interior" statements or as the reference following a *then goto* in an *if* statement with an *else* on the same line. Notice the failure of the program to find replacement numbers for Name4 in the source file shown in figure 4. Immediately following the incorrect name reference in the source program is the normal way to get around the problem.

HOW BSCBas DOES ITS WORK

Figure 5 shows a .bsc format version of BSCBas, which you should follow while reading the following descriptions.

After asking the user for the file to process (given with no extension), the program opens the input file and creates a work (.wrk) file to use in the first pass. The file is read through once, so that lines may be numbered. At the same time, name definitions are stored, together with a line number for the reference replacements to be made in the second pass. The stored number is for the line following the name definition, so that references to *erl* and *restore* can be correct.

Names are detected by the presence of a colon in columns 2 through 7, which causes control flow to pass to the section named Namdef. The storage array for names is Names(100,7), and the names (up to 100) are stored in slots 1 through 6 of the array's second dimension, with each character of the name converted to a number by means of the *asc* and *mid$* functions. The element just after the last character is set to 255 as a flag for the end of the name. The corresponding line numbers are stored similarly in the Numbers array.

If a line has a name or if it starts with a semicolon, the line is a comment line and is passed into the program section starting with Remlin. If the strip flag is set, the line is merely ignored. If it isn't, the current line number, plus the *rem* keyword, are added to the front of the line, and the line is written to the work file. Other lines (lines that are neither name lines nor comment lines) are passed to the code at Pnline, where the current line number is attached to the front, and the line is written to the work file.

Termination of this line-by-line process is not elegant but it is effective: An end-of-file error when the input file is read carries execution to Endfil. BSCBas checks the error type to verify that it has, in fact, reached the end of the source file, and then it closes the files and begins the second pass.

FILLING IN THE NAMES

For the second pass, the work file is opened as input and a .bas file is opened for output. This time through, each line (except for any comment lines, which still contain semicolons) is checked to see if there is a name at the end of the line. The character group last on the line is a possible name, and the character group just before is a possible command. If the possible command is *goto*, *gosub*, *resume*, *restore*, or *to* preceded by *go*, then the possible name is processed by the code following the entry Chknam.

The possible name is checked to see if it is a multiple name. If it is, the names are sorted into the Tryname$ array. If not, the single possible name becomes the first element in the Tryname$ array. The number of names is set to 1, at least, or to the number of names within the multiple name.

```
NAME1:
NAME2:
NAME3:
ON X GO TO NAME1,NAME2,NAME3

GOSUB NAME4:    GO TO NAME2
GOSUB NAME4
GO TO NAME2

NAME4:
IF X=Y THEN GO TO NAME4 ELSE GO TO NAME3

IF X=Y THEN GO TO NAME4
GO TO NAME3

IF X=Y THEN GO TO NAME4 ELSE X=2*Y

IF X<>Y THEN X=2*Y ELSE GO TO NAME4

END
```

```
10 REM NAME1:
20 REM NAME2:
30 REM NAME3:
40 ON X GOTO 20, 30, 40
50 REM
60 GOSUB NAME4: GOTO 30
70 GOSUB 110
80 GOTO 30
90 REM
100 REM NAME4:
110 IF X=Y THEN GOTO NAME4 ELSE GOTO 40
120 REM
130 IF X=Y THEN GOTO 110
140 GOTO 40
150 REM
160 IF X=Y THEN GOTO NAME4 ELSE X=2*Y
170 REM
180 IF X<>Y THEN X=2*Y ELSE GOTO 110
190 REM
200 END
```

Figure 4.

Each Tryname$ is compared, character by character, with the stored names, and a possible match is indicated if the end flag (255) is reached in the stored name. At Gtmtch (got match), the length is verified to be correct. If it is correct, the number of the stored name is built up, digit by digit, and put into the line (Short$) destined for the output file. When all names are matched and replaced, the line is passed to the code at Setfil.

The completed line is checked to see if it has (or had) an *erl* in it. If it hasn't previously been through, but it does have a reference to *erl*, the line is truncated and the right-hand end is saved. Now the name to which *erl* is to be compared is at the end of the line, and it is passed back into the name-checking code as if it had just been read from the input file. By the time the line is returned to Setfil, the name has been replaced with a number by the normal process and the right-hand end has been put back on the line; the line is then passed on to Outlin. Lines without *erl*, of course, are passed directly from near Setfil to Outlin, where the completely converted line is put into the .bas file.

Eventually, all the lines in the .wrk file get processed and the end-of-file error takes the program flow to Ndfil2, where the .bas file is closed and the program stops. During both passes, the program prints periods to the terminal so you'll know it isn't dead.

NOW IT'S YOURS, TOO

Figure 6 shows the program converted without comments—probably the easiest way for you to use it. Feel free to use it and copy it. My company requests, however, that out of courtesy you preserve the credits given in the first comment line. Good luck.

```
REM BSCBAS.BSC V2.01 3-83, Mark Gardner, WED ENTERPRISES, Glendale, CA 91201
PRINT ".BSC to .BAS converter, BSCBAS v2.01"

; BSCBAS.BSC  Source file for BSCBAS.BAS, BSCBAS.COM
; Programmer Mark R. Gardner 1982, 1983

; Copyright @1982 WED Enterprises, 1401 Flower Street, Glendale, CA 91201

; This program is to read a file in which "structured" basic has been
; written to a DIAGRAM specification.  This code searches and finds
; name definitions, numbers the lines, deletes comments (optional),
; and makes line number references match the names.  The rules are:
;
;       —names must be one to six characters long,
;         terminated by a colon (text following is ignored).
;
;       —name references must be standard BASIC, i.e., the name is on
;         the end of a line, preceded by one of these words:
;         GOTO, GO TO, GOSUB, RESUME, RESTORE.  The use of ERL
;         is allowed, it must be bracketed by a space at each end,
;         for example IF ERL <> INLINE THEN GO TO ERHAND.
;
;       —strings of names separated by commas are allowed,
;         no spaces!  This allow use of ON x GO TO name1,name2,name3,. . .)
;
; The DIAGRAM (or other comments) in the basic source file have a leading
; semicolon, but no number or REM statement. REM may be used for comments
; that the programmer wants to remain in the file even when stripped.
;
; The lines of code have no numbers.  Use of subroutines is encouraged.
; The standard extension for a file written for this is .BSC.
; See the author for comments, suggestions, or further instructions.

;> Note — version 2.01 has the following changes from version 2.00
;>    -The length of the possible names is compared against the length of
;>    stored names, see at NXTNAM.  (The old check was deleted from GTMTCH.)
;>    -A file is now produced (filename.BSN) which contains a list of the
;>    names and the line numbers assigned to them.  The number of names
;>    allowed is increased to 200, and the NUMBERS dimension increased to
;>    ,7 to allow for longer programs.  MRG 3-2-83

; Initialization section
INITLZ:
DIM NAMES(200,8)
DIM NUMBERS(200,7)
DIM WORDBOUND(2)
DIM TRYNAMES$(10)
```

```
GO TO BSCBAS
; SUBROUTINE NXTWRD
; Subroutine finds words in lines, working backwards.  Word boundaries
;    are returned to calling program.  Words are defined as being preceded
;    by a space, the search to the space beginning at the Ith position
;    in the line, set by the calling program.

NXTWRD:  FIND THE NEXT WORD (BACKWARDS) IN LINE
; If char is space, do
IF MID$(FILLIN$,I,1)<>" " THEN GO TO SETBND
;    decrease counter
I=I-1
;    move to next char (backwards)
GO TO NXTWRD
; Else
;    search for leading space
SETBND:  SET BOUNDARY 1
WORDBOUND(2)=I
LUKMOR:  LOOK MORE TOWARDS BEGINNING OF LINE
I=I-1
IF I=0 THEN ERROR 255
IF MID$(FILLIN$,I,1)<>" " THEN GO TO LUKMOR
WORDBOUND(1)=I+1
; End If char is space
RETURN

BSCBAS:  .BSC TO .BAS CONVERSION PROGRAM
;Get the filename and ask user for strip/nostrip options
INPUT "Name of file to run "; BSCNAMES$
OPEN "I",1,BSCNAMES$+".BSC"
OPEN "O",2,BSCNAMES$+".WRK"
OPEN "O",3,BSCNAMES$+".BSN"

INPUT "Strip comments and names (Y/N) "; ANSWERS$
STRIPFLAG=0
IF ANSWERS$="Y" THEN STRIPFLAG=1

; Put the header in the name file
PRINT#3, "NAME/LINE# ASSIGNMENTS FOR "+BSCNAMES$+".BAS      ";
IF STRIPFLAG THEN PRINT#3, "COMMENTS STRIPPED" ELSE PRINT#3,""

; Read through the file once, numbering lines and assigning line
; numbers to names as they are located.
NAMECTR=0
LINECTR=10
; Set up for end of file error to terminate pass one
ON ERROR GO TO ENDFIL

NXTLIN:  GET THE NEXT LINE FROM THE INPUT FILE
LINE INPUT#1, FILLIN$
; Give an "I'm alive" output
PRINT ".";

; If line is comment or blank line, then delete if strip flag set
IF LEN(FILLIN$)=0 THEN GO TO REMLIN
IF ASC(FILLIN$)=ASC(";") THEN GO TO REMLIN

; See if there is a name on the line
SRCHLIM=7
IF LEN(FILLIN$)<7 THEN SRCHLIM=LEN(FILLIN$)
FOR I=2 TO SRCHLIM
  LINCHR$=MID$(FILLIN$,I,1)
; If there is, store name and save line number
  IF LINCHR$=":" THEN GO TO NAMDEF
NEXT I
; Else, print the numbered line
GO TO PNLINE

NAMDEF:  HAVE FOUND A NAME DEFINITION LINE
; Store the length of the name
NAMES(NAMECTR,0)=I-1
; Store the name and its number in condensed form (not string)
FOR M=1 TO I-1
  NAMES(NAMECTR,M)=ASC(MID$(FILLIN$,M,1))
NEXT M
NAMES(NAMECTR,I)=255
; Note that if not stripping, the pointer is to line following name. .
;    This solves the possible problem with the RESTORE command
LINNMB$=STR$(LINECTR+10*(1-STRIPFLAG))
NUMLEN=LEN(LINNMB$)
FOR M=1 TO NUMLEN
  NUMBERS(NAMECTR,M-1)=ASC(MID$(LINNMB$,M,1))
NEXT M
NUMBERS(NAMECTR,NUMLEN)=255
; Print an assignment line to the names file
THENAMES$=LEFT$(FILLIN$,I-1)
PRINT#3, RIGHT$("      "+THENAMES$,6)+"      "+RIGHT$("      "+LINNMB$,6)
NAMECTR=NAMECTR+1
```

```
;Fall through to strip logic (name definition lines become comments)
REMLIN:  MAKE A REMARK LINE
; If the strip flag is set, don't include comment lines in the output
IF STRIPFLAG=1 THEN GO TO NXTLIN
; If not set, add the line number and REM, and put the line in the work file
PRINT#2, STR$(LINECTR)+" REM "+FILLIN$
; Increase the line number, go read the next input line
GO TO NUMLIN

; Add the line number and put the code line into work file
PNLINE:  PUT THE NUMBERED LINE
PRINT#2, STR$(LINECTR)+" "+FILLIN$
; Increase the line number, go read the next input line

NUMLIN:  CALCULATE THE LINE NUMBER
LINECTR=LINECTR+10
GO TO NXTLIN

; When the end of the input file is reached
ENDFIL:  END FILE ERROR ROUTES TO THIS ENTRY
;   Verify that the error is indeed EOF
IF ERR<>62 THEN ON ERROR GO TO 0
;   Notify user of progress
PRINT
PRINT "FIRST PASS COMPLETE, NAMES STORED"
;   Close files and continue to second pass
RESUME CLOSEM

CLOSEM:  CLOSE THE FILES
CLOSE

; Now, must go through the line numbered file, and find references to
;    names and replace them with the appropriate line numbers
; Reset error vector, in case trouble opening files
ON ERROR GO TO 0
OPEN "I",1,BSCNAME$+".WRK"
OPEN "O",2,BSCNAME$+".BAS"

; Set up for end of file error to terminate pass two
ON ERROR GO TO NDFIL2

; Take line from the input file for processing
; Line must be checked for RESUME, or GO TO, or GO TO, or GOSUB,
;    or RESTORE
NXLIN2:  NEXT LINE FROM WORK FILE
LINE INPUT#1, FILLIN$
; Set up for the process to handle ERL references
ERLFLAG=0

; See if is a comment line
FOR I=3 TO 7
IF MID$(FILLIN$,I,5)=" ; " THEN GO TO OUTLIN
NEXT I

PRCLIN:    PROCESS THE LINE
; Line is not a comment, find last word
I=LEN(FILLIN$)
GOSUB NXTWRD
; Get the word out of the line, is possible name
POSSNAME$=MID$(FILLIN$,WORDBOUND(1),WORDBOUND(2)-WORDBOUND(1)+1)
; Save the remainder of the line to add numbers to
SHORT$=LEFT$(FILLIN$,WORDBOUND(1)-1)
; Verify that possible name has alphabetic first character
; If not, put the line in the output file unmodified
IF ASC(POSSNAME$)<ASC("A") THEN GO TO OUTLIN
IF ASC(POSSNAME$)>ASC("Z") THEN GO TO OUTLIN

; If processing an ERL reference
IF ERLFLAG<>2 GO TO FNDNLT
;    Proceed directly to check name (no need to verify command)
GO TO CHKNAM
; End if (processing ERL ref)
; Find the next to last word
FNDNLT:  FIND THE NEXT TO LAST WORD
I=WORDBOUND(1)-1
GOSUB NXTWRD
; Get the word out of the line, is possible command
POSSCOMD$=MID$(FILLIN$,WORDBOUND(1),WORDBOUND(2)-WORDBOUND(1)+1)
; Determine if is one of commands preceding names. . .
IF POSSCOMD$="GOTO" THEN GO TO CHKNAM
IF POSSCOMD$="GOSUB" THEN GO TO CHKNAM
IF POSSCOMD$="RESUME" THEN GO TO CHKNAM
IF POSSCOMD$="RESTORE" THEN GO TO CHKNAM
; If the possible command is TO, see if preceding word is GO
IF POSSCOMD$<>"TO" THEN GO TO OUTLIN
I=WORDBOUND(1)-1
GOSUB NXTWRD
POSSCOMD$=MID$(FILLIN$,WORDBOUND(1),WORDBOUND(2)-WORDBOUND(1)+1)
```

```
; If it is GO, then proceed to check name, otherwise put line in output file
IF POSSCOMD$<>"GO" THEN GO TO OUTLIN

CHKNAM:  CHECK NAME
; Check POSSNAME$ for commas (makes it a multiple name. . .)
NUMOFNAMES=1
COMMAPTR=1
FOR I=1 TO LEN(POSSNAME$)
  IF MID$(POSSNAME$,I,1)="," THEN GO TO INCNNM
  GO TO MOVLET

; If a comma is found, store the name-to-try, and increase name counter
INCNNM:  INCREASE THE NUMBER OF NAMES
  TRYNAME$(NUMOFNAMES)=MID$(POSSNAME$,COMMAPTR,I-COMMAPTR)
  NUMOFNAMES=NUMOFNAMES+1
  COMMAPTR=I+1
MOVLET:  MOVE TO NEXT LETTER
NEXT I
; Save the last (or only) name in the string
TRYNAME$(NUMOFNAMES)=MID$(POSSNAME$,COMMAPTR,LEN(POSSNAME$))

; Now, analyze all the names-to-try, see if defined
TRYNAMEPTR=1

PIKNAM:  PICK ANOTHER NAME
POSSNAME$=TRYNAME$(TRYNAMEPTR)
I=0

NXTNAM:  MOVE TO NEXT NAME, FIRST LETTER
; See if length of names matches
IF NAMES(I,0)<>LEN(TRYNAME$(TRYNAMEPTR)) THEN GO TO TRYNAM

J=1
IF NAMECTR=0 THEN GO TO NOMTCH

TRYNTR:  TRY ANOTHER LETTER
; If names value is 255, then we have a match, check first letters
IF NAMES(I,J)=255 THEN GO TO GTMTCH
; If names value not 255, see if is next character of name
; If it is, continue to next letter, if not, go try another name
IF ASC(MID$(POSSNAME$,J,1))<>NAMES(I,J) THEN GO TO TRYNAM
J=J+1
IF J<8 THEN GO TO TRYNTR

TRYNAM:  TRY ANOTHER NAME
; Move on to next name in stored set
I=I+1
; If no more, then must assume no match
IF I<=NAMECTR THEN GO TO NXTNAM

NOMTCH:  NO MATCH FOR NAME
; Give the user a no match message
PRINT
PRINT POSSNAME$ " HAS NO MATCH"
; Put the line plus a warning into the output file
IF LEN(FILLIN$)>=60 GO TO LONLIN
FILLIN$=FILLIN$+SPACE$(60-LEN(FILLIN$))+" NO DEF: "+POSSNAME$
GO TO ENDNMS
LONLIN:  LINE IS TOO LONG FOR ORDINARY WARNING
FILLIN$=FILLIN$+" NO DEF: "+POSSNAME$
ENDNMS:  END OF NO MATCH MESSAGE GENERATOR
GO TO OUTLIN

GTMTCH:  GOT A MATCH TO A STORED NAME
; If here, have matched a name in source line with stored name
; Convert the stored line number for name, add to building line
FOR J=0 TO 6
  IF NUMBERS(I,J)=255 THEN GO TO INCTRY
  SHORT$=SHORT$+CHR$(NUMBERS(I,J))
NEXT J
; If there is not a flag in the stored number array, give error message
PRINT "INVALID NUMBER ENTRY"
STOP
; If there are any more names on this line, add a comma and proceed to next
INCTRY:  INCREASE THE TRY-NAME POINTER
TRYNAMEPTR=TRYNAMEPTR+1
IF TRYNAMEPTR>NUMOFNAMES THEN GO TO SETFIL
SHORT$=SHORT$+","
GO TO PIKNAM

; If there are no more names, put the fully converted line to output file
SETFIL:  SET THE FILE LINE TO EQUAL THE ASSEMBLED SHORT LINE
FILLIN$=SHORT$

; If the line has not been checked for ERL
IF ERLFLAG<>0 THEN GO TO ERLDON
;    Set the ERL flag to 1 (means check made)
ERLFLAG=1
```

```
;     If the line contains an ERL reference
ERLPTR=INSTR(FILLIN$," ERL ")
IF ERLPTR=0 GO TO ERLDON
;       Set ERL flag to 2
ERLFLAG=2
;       Find the end of the word to right of ERL
ERLPTR=ERLPTR+4
;         (Find the beginning of the word)
SEARCHFLAG=1
NOWORD=0
WHILE SEARCHFLAG
ERLPTR=ERLPTR+1
IF ERLPTR>LEN(FILLIN$) THEN SEARCHFLAG=0: NOWORD=1: GO TO SRCHND
TEST$=MID$(FILLIN$,ERLPTR,1)
IF (TEST$>="A" AND TEST$<="Z") THEN SEARCHFLAG=0
SRCHND:  SEARCH END (FOR FIRST LETTER OF NAME)
WEND
;         (Find the next space)
IF NOWORD GO TO OUTLIN
WHILE MID$(FILLIN$,ERLPTR,1)<>" "
  ERLPTR=ERLPTR+1
WEND
;       Save rightmost part of line, leaving that word last
ERLSAV$=RIGHT$(FILLIN$,LEN(FILLIN$)-ERLPTR+1)
FILLIN$=LEFT$(FILLIN$,ERLPTR-1)
;       Go and process with standard line process
GO TO PRCLIN
;     End if (the line contains an ERL reference)
; Else (the line has been checked)
ERLDON:  THE ERL CHECK HAS BEEN DONE
;     If ERL flag is 2
IF ERLFLAG<>2 THEN GO TO OUTLIN
;       Append the previously saved right part of line
FILLIN$=FILLIN$+ERLSAV$
;     Else
;       Proceed directly to the line output
;     End if (ERL flag is 2)
; End if (the line has not been checked for ERL)

OUTLIN:  OUTPUT THE LINE TO THE .BAS FILE
PRINT#2,FILLIN$
PRINT ".";
; And go get the next line from the input file
GO TO NXLIN2
; If the conversion process is finished
NDFIL2:  SECOND END OF FILE ENTRY POINT
;     Close the files
CLOSE
IF ERR<>62 THEN ON ERROR GO TO 0
;     Delete the work file
KILL BSCNAME$+".WRK"
RESUME LOADRQ
LOADRQ:  INVITATION TO LOAD (no longer used)
STOP

END
```

Figure 5.

```
10 REM BSCBAS.BSC V2.01 3-83, Mark Gardner, WED ENTERPRISES, Glendale, CA 91201
20 PRINT ".BSC to .BAS converter, BSCBAS v2.01"
30 DIM NAMES(200,8)
40 DIM NUMBERS(200,7)
50 DIM WORDBOUND(2)
60 DIM TRYNAME$(10)
70 GO TO 170
80 IF MID$(FILLIN$,I,1)<>" " THEN GO TO 110
90 I=I-1
100 GO TO 80
110 WORDBOUND(2)=I
120 I=I-1
130 IF I=0 THEN ERROR 255
140 IF MID$(FILLIN$,I,1)<>" " THEN GO TO 120
150 WORDBOUND(1)=I+1
160 RETURN
170 INPUT "Name of file to run "; BSCNAME$
180 OPEN "I",1,BSCNAME$+".BSC"
190 OPEN "O",2,BSCNAME$+".WRK"
200 OPEN "O",3,BSCNAME$+".BSN"
210 INPUT "Strip comments and names (Y/N) "; ANSWER$
220 STRIPFLAG=0
230 IF ANSWER$="Y" THEN STRIPFLAG=1
240 PRINT#3, "NAME/LINE# ASSIGNMENTS FOR "+BSCNAME$+".BAS        ";
250 IF STRIPFLAG THEN PRINT#3, "COMMENTS STRIPPED" ELSE PRINT#3,""
260 NAMECTR=0
270 LINECTR=10
280 ON ERROR GO TO 600
290 LINE INPUT#1, FILLIN$
300 PRINT ".";
310 IF LEN(FILLIN$)=0 THEN GO TO 540
320 IF ASC(FILLIN$)=ASC(";") THEN GO TO 540
330 SRCHLIM=7
340 IF LEN(FILLIN$)<7 THEN SRCHLIM=LEN(FILLIN$)
350 FOR I=2 TO SRCHLIM
360    LINCHR$=MID$(FILLIN$,I,1)
370    IF LINCHR$=":" THEN GO TO 400
380 NEXT I
390 GO TO 570
400 NAMES(NAMECTR,0)=I-1
410 FOR M=1 TO I-1
420    NAMES(NAMECTR,M)=ASC(MID$(FILLIN$,M,1))
430 NEXT M
440 NAMES(NAMECTR,I)=255
450 LINNMB$=STR$(LINECTR+10*(1-STRIPFLAG))
460 NUMLEN=LEN(LINNMB$)
470 FOR M=1 TO NUMLEN
480    NUMBERS(NAMECTR,M-1)=ASC(MID$(LINNMB$,M,1))
490 NEXT M
500 NUMBERS(NAMECTR,NUMLEN)=255
510 THENAME$=LEFT$(FILLIN$,I-1)
520 PRINT#3, RIGHT$("      "+THENAME$,6)+"      "+RIGHT$("      "+LINNMB$,6)
530 NAMECTR=NAMECTR+1
540 IF STRIPFLAG=1 THEN GO TO 290
550 PRINT#2, STR$(LINECTR)+" REM "+FILLIN$
560 GO TO 580
570 PRINT#2, STR$(LINECTR)+" "+FILLIN$
580 LINECTR=LINECTR+10
590 GO TO 290
600 IF ERR<>62 THEN ON ERROR GO TO 0
610 PRINT
620 PRINT "FIRST PASS COMPLETE, NAMES STORED"
630 RESUME 640
640 CLOSE
650 ON ERROR GO TO 0
660 OPEN "I",1,BSCNAME$+".WRK"
670 OPEN "O",2,BSCNAME$+".BAS"
680 ON ERROR GO TO 1600
690 LINE INPUT#1, FILLIN$
700 ERLFLAG=0
710 FOR I=3 TO 7
720 IF MID$(FILLIN$,I,3)=" ; " THEN GO TO 1570
730 NEXT I
740 I=LEN(FILLIN$)
750 GOSUB 80
760 POSSNAME$=MID$(FILLIN$,WORDBOUND(1),WORDBOUND(2)-WORDBOUND(1)+1)
```

FREE WORD PROCESSOR

SearchLit

YOUR KEY TO KEEPING UP WITH THAT RAPIDLY EXPANDING LITERATURE IN YOUR PROFESSION

SearchLit is a ready-to-use program for your IBM-PC which stores and searches information related to your own personal literature collection. Each reference, including abstract or your comment, is stored under a set of key words. Retrieval is based on the key words in title, abstract or special key word file. Mention this ad in your purchase order and we will send you a free copy of MediScript I, a multifunction word processor ideal for letters and short to medium length essays. Needs 92K, DOS 1.1.

SearchLit $149.50

In Calif. add 6% sales tax. (Shipping and Handling included in purchase price.) 30 days satisfaction guaranteed or your money back (minus $4.00 Shipping and Handling).

MediSoft

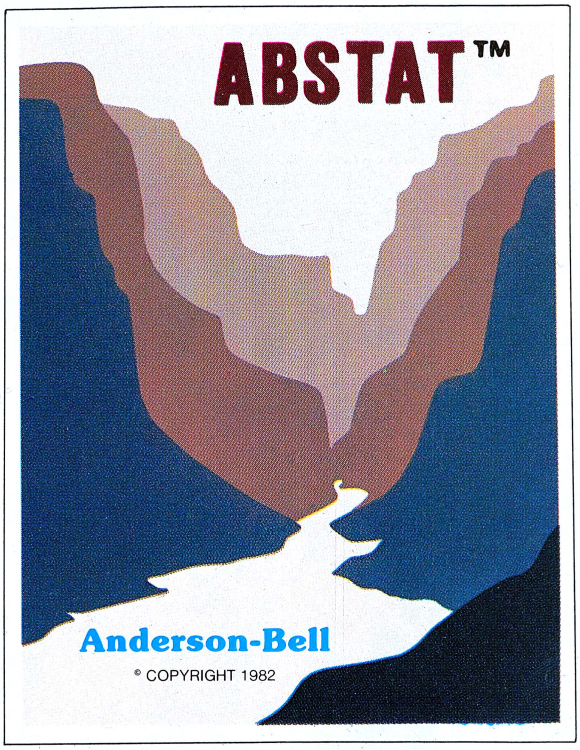
Medical Professions Building
1595 Soquel Drive, Suite 350
Santa Cruz, CA 95065

```
770 SHORT$=LEFT$(FILLIN$,WORDBOUND(1)-1)
780 IF ASC(POSSNAME$)ASC("A") THEN GO TO 1570
790 IF ASC(POSSNAME$)>ASC("Z") THEN GO TO 1570
800 IF ERLFLAG<>2 GO TO 820
810 GO TO 940
820 I=WORDBOUND(1)-1
830 GOSUB 80
840 POSSCOMD$=MID$(FILLIN$,WORDBOUND(1),WORDBOUND(2)-WORDBOUND(1)+1)
850 IF POSSCOMD$="GOTO" THEN GO TO 940
860 IF POSSCOMD$="GOSUB" THEN GO TO 940
870 IF POSSCOMD$="RESUME" THEN GO TO 940
880 IF POSSCOMD$="RESTORE" THEN GO TO 940
890 IF POSSCOMD$<>"TO" THEN GO TO 1570
900 I=WORDBOUND(1)-1
910 GOSUB 80
920 POSSCOMD$=MID$(FILLIN$,WORDBOUND(1),WORDBOUND(2)-WORDBOUND(1)+1)
930 IF POSSCOMD$<>"GO" THEN GO TO 1570
940 NUMOFNAMES=1
950 COMMAPTR=1
960 FOR I=1 TO LEN(POSSNAME$)
970    IF MID$(POSSNAME$,I,1)="," THEN GO TO 990
980    GO TO 1020
990    TRYNAME$(NUMOFNAMES)=MID$(POSSNAME$,COMMAPTR,I-COMMAPTR)
1000    NUMOFNAMES=NUMOFNAMES+1
1010    COMMAPTR=I+1
1020 NEXT I
1030 TRYNAME$(NUMOFNAMES)=MID$(POSSNAME$,COMMAPTR,LEN(POSSNAME$))
1040 TRYNAMEPTR=1
1050 POSSNAME$=TRYNAME$(TRYNAMEPTR)
1060 I=0
1070 IF NAMES(I,0)<>LEN(TRYNAME$(TRYNAMEPTR)) THEN GO TO 1140
1080 J=1
1090 IF NAMECTR=0 THEN GO TO 1160
1100 IF NAMES(I,J)=255 THEN GO TO 1230
1110 IF ASC(MID$(POSSNAME$,J,1))<>NAMES(I,J) THEN GO TO 1140
1120 J=J+1
1130 IF J8 THEN GO TO 1100
1140 I=I+1
1150 IF I=NAMECTR THEN GO TO 1070
1160 PRINT
1170 PRINT POSSNAME$ " HAS NO MATCH"
1180 IF LEN(FILLIN$)>=60 GO TO 1210
1190 FILLIN$=FILLIN$+SPACE$(60-LEN(FILLIN$))+" NO DEF: "+POSSNAME$
1200 GO TO 1220
1210 FILLIN$=FILLIN$+" NO DEF: "+POSSNAME$
1220 GO TO 1570
1230 FOR J=0 TO 6
1240    IF NUMBERS(I,J)=255 THEN GO TO 1290
1250    SHORT$=SHORT$+CHR$(NUMBERS(I,J))
1260 NEXT J
1270 PRINT "INVALID NUMBER ENTRY"
1280 STOP
1290 TRYNAMEPTR=TRYNAMEPTR+1
1300 IF TRYNAMEPTR>NUMOFNAMES THEN GO TO 1330
1310 SHORT$=SHORT$+","
1320 GO TO 1050
1330 FILLIN$=SHORT$
1340 IF ERLFLAG<>0 THEN GO TO 1550
1350 ERLFLAG=1
1360 ERLPTR=INSTR(FILLIN$," ERL ")
1370 IF ERLPTR=0 GO TO 1550
1380 ERLFLAG=2
1390 ERLPTR=ERLPTR+4
1400 SEARCHFLAG=1
1410 NOWORD=0
1420 WHILE SEARCHFLAG
1430 ERLPTR=ERLPTR+1
1440 IF ERLPTRffLEN(FILLIN$) THEN SEARCHFLAG=0: NOWORD=1: GO TO 1470
1450 TEST$=MID$(FILLIN$,ERLPTR,1)
1460 IF (TEST$)>="A" AND TEST$<="Z") THEN SEARCHFLAG=0
1470 WEND
1480 IF NOWORD GO TO 1570
1490 WHILE MID$(FILLIN$,ERLPTR,1)<>" "
1500    ERLPTR=ERLPTR+1
1510 WEND
1520 ERLSAV$=RIGHT$(FILLIN$,LEN(FILLIN$)-ERLPTR+1)
1530 FILLIN$=LEFT$(FILLIN$,ERLPTR-1)
1540 GO TO 740
1550 IF ERLFLAG<>2 THEN GO TO 1570
1560 FILLIN$=FILLIN$+ERLSAV$
1570 PRINT#2,FILLIN$
1580 PRINT ".";
1590 GO TO 690
1600 CLOSE
1610 IF ERR<>62 THEN ON ERROR GO TO 0
1620 KILL BSCNAME$+".WRK"
1630 RESUME 1640
1640 STOP
1650 END
```

▲

Figure 6.

Statistical analysis on the IBM-PC is not only easier and faster with ABSTAT but you can even use it with your dBase II files.



If you are using dBase II for accounting, inventory control, marketing or scientific applications, ABSTAT provides you with the ability to perform statistical data analysis with ease!

If you are not using dBase II, that's OK, because ABSTAT is a stand-alone package that can share data with other software through ASCII files.

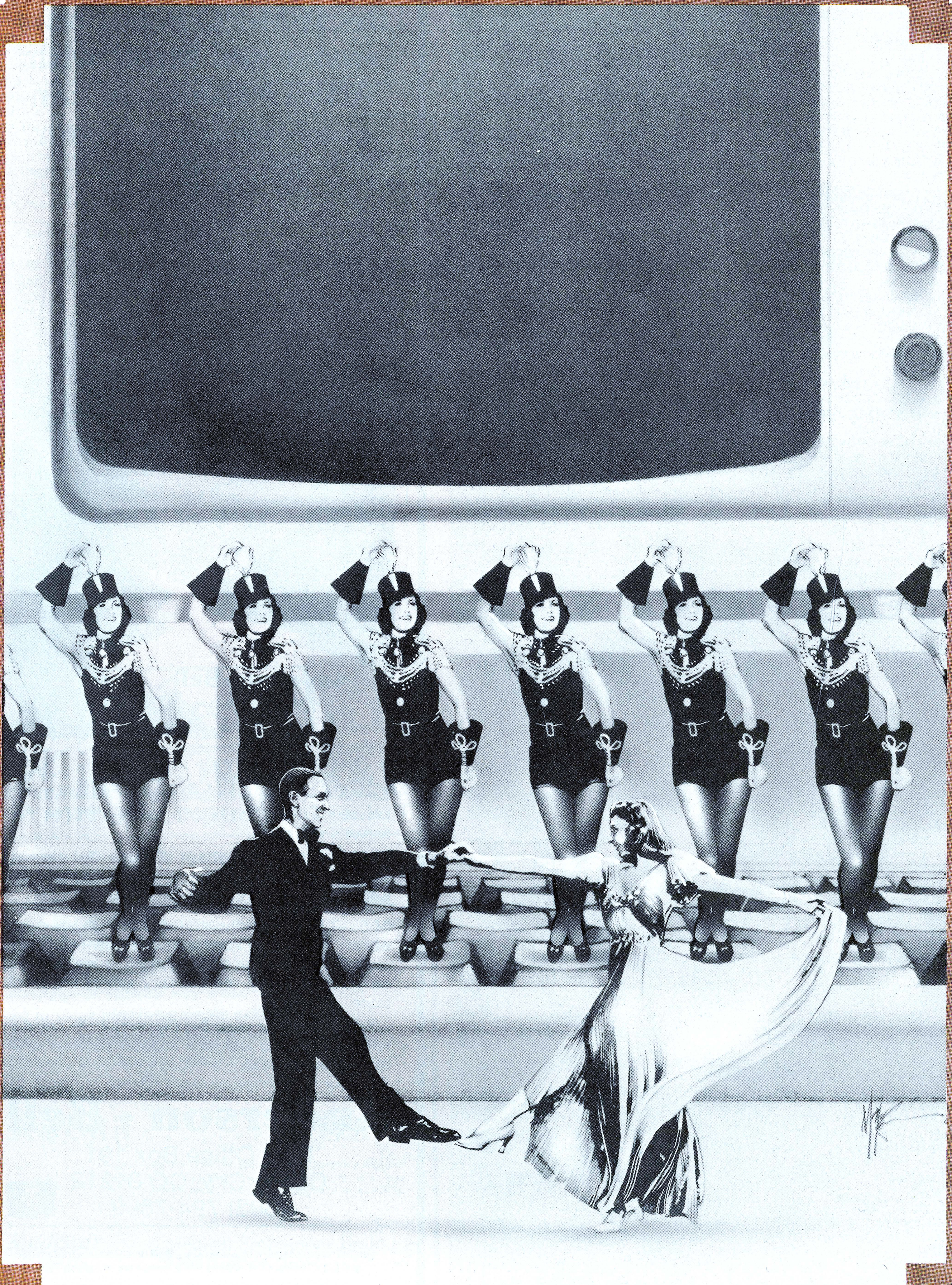
ABSTAT facilities include full data manipulation and editing, on line help and comprehensive statistical procedures, including analysis of variance, cross tabulation, multiple regression, Z scores and much more.

ABSOLUTELY the most flexible, simple yet comprehensive statistics and data analysis package available for the IBM-PC.

Anderson - Bell

Post Office Box 191
Canon City, CO 81212
(303) 794-7509

ABSTAT is a trademark of **Anderson - Bell** ● CP/M is a trademark of Digital Research ● dBase II is a trademark of Ashton Tate



SOCHA'S TOOLBOX • BY JOHN SOCHA

Enhance YOUR KEYBOARD BUFFER

This is an informal series of articles on a variety of subjects. The emphasis will be on short, useful machine-language programs you can enter with the help of Basic programs. Where do I get my ideas? From necessity, from friends, and from you, dear reader. If you have any requests for programs or articles, please write to John Socha, c/o Softalk/IBM, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603.

Inside your IBM pc is an area in memory where characters are stored as you type them. But this memory area, or buffer as it's known, is limited to fifteen characters. At one time fifteen characters sounded like more than enough, but that was back when people were using computers with very small buffers—like one character.

But now that we've been spoiled by a longer buffer, wouldn't it be nice to have an even larger one? We've got lots of memory to play with, so why not make the buffer 159 characters long? And wouldn't it also be nice to have some way to clear this buffer from the keyboard?

The program presented in this article will increase your buffer size to 159 characters, so while DOS is carrying out a command, you can type a long sequence of other commands and then walk away while DOS is still churning out the first one.

You don't need any knowledge of machine language to read this article and extend the keyboard buffer. All you need is some patience and Basic; or, you can send your name and address, along with a check for $8, to Softalk Buffer, Box 60, North Hollywood, CA 91603. We'll send you the program on disk.

Buffer, What's That? DOS doesn't actually work directly with the keyboard buffer. Instead it uses a set of routines—similar in idea to Basic subroutines—in the ROM (Read Only Memory) BIOS (Basic Input/Output System).

These ROM BIOS routines are used to talk to various physical devices, such as the keyboard.

The word ROM means these routines are stored in a computer chip where they can't be changed, only read. We'll have to be somewhat clever if we want to change the size of the keyboard buffer, since its size is set in silicon inside the ROM chip.

If the ROM BIOS stores characters in memory, we should be able to find them, right? Right. Here is a Basic program that looks at the keyboard buffer and displays its current contents.

```
10 DEF SEG=0
20 FOR I=0 TO 15
30 PRINT CHR$(PEEK(&H41E +
   I+I));
40 NEXT I
50 END
```

The keyboard buffer stores two bytes for each character: the character's scan code and its ASCII value. Why does it store both pieces of information? Because whenever you hit one of the pc's special keys (such as F1), which are not part of the ASCII character set, the ROM BIOS sets the character byte to 0 and the other byte to the scan code—or the extended code, as it's called in the Basic manual. This is how other programs know you've pushed one of these special keys.

Let's try a specific example with this Basic program. Type the underscored text, and where it says ⟨F2⟩, push the F2 key:

```
this is a long line
Syntax error
Ok
⟨F2⟩RUN
line
 is a long
Ok
```

That's it, we've found the keyboard buffer in memory. Not all the characters from "this is a long line" are here, since the buffer can store only the last fifteen characters, and the F2 key is one of these characters. Typing "this is a long line" placed these characters into the buffer, one after the other, and Basic read them as we typed them. "this is a long line" is not a Basic command, so Basic complains—but no harm done; we just wanted to place some characters into the buffer.

Stretching the Buffer. Before we look at the magic behind Kbd_fix.com—the program to stretch the keyboard buffer—let's build Kbd_fix.com and put it through some tests.

Listing 1 shows a Basic program that automatically writes Kbd_fix.com to your disk using the data in its data statements.

If you make an error entering the *data* statements, the program will tell you which line is wrong. Check the other statements carefully, though; there are no checks on them.

You need run this program only once to build Kbd_fix.com, but you may wish to save it on your disk just in case Kbd_fix.com doesn't work correctly; you might have an error in your program. If this should happen, carefully check lines 10 through 350.

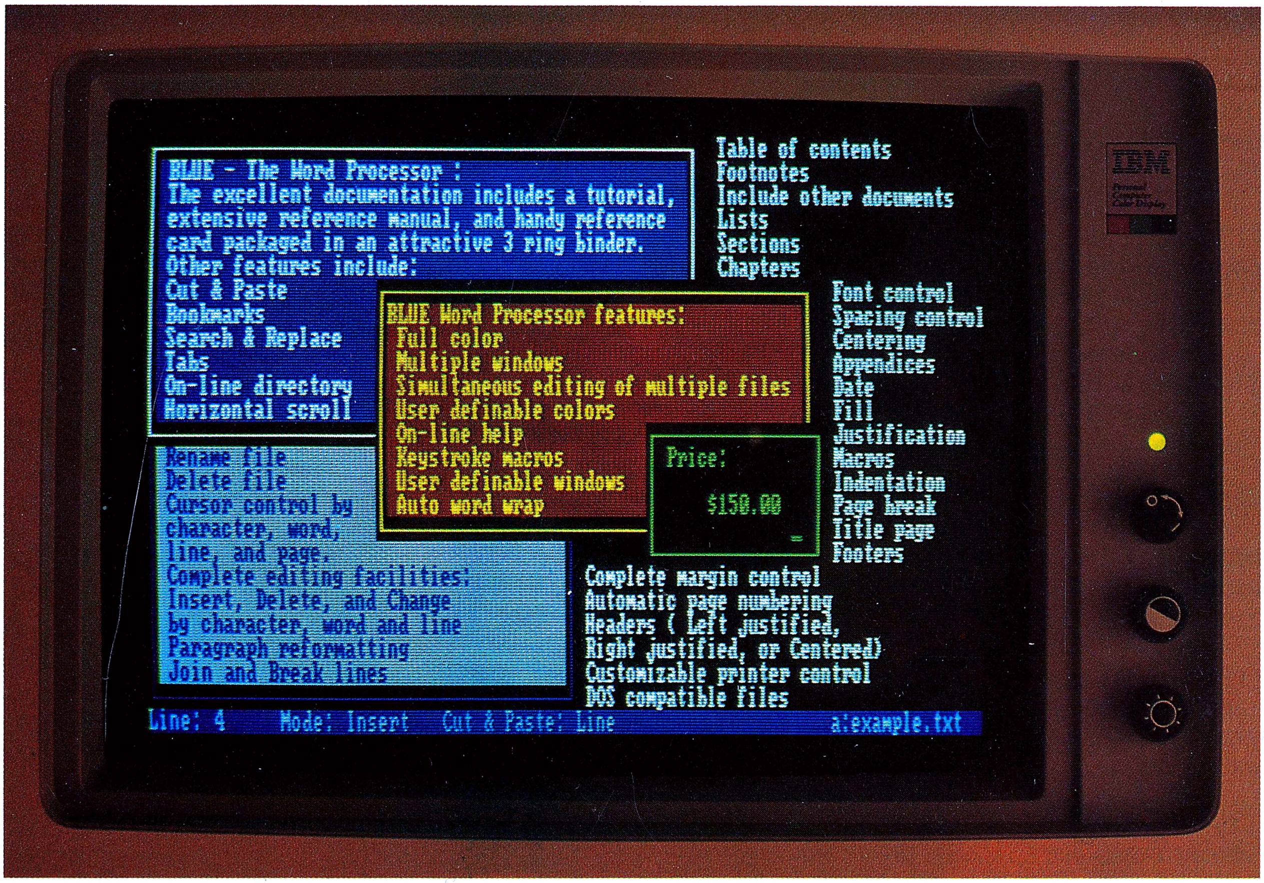
Kbd_fix.com is a machine-language program that attaches itself to DOS each time you invoke it; but only run it once each time you

```
10 DIM CHECK(48)
20 FOR I=1 TO 48 : CHECK(I)=0 : NEXT I
30 PRINT "Checking";
40 FOR I=1 TO 48
50   FOR J=1 TO 8
60     READ BYTE
70     CHECK(I) = CHECK(I) XOR BYTE
80   NEXT J
90   PRINT ".";
100 NEXT I
110 PRINT
120 LINECHECK=0
130 FOR I=1 TO 48
140   READ CHECK
150   LINECHECK = LINECHECK XOR CHECK
160   IF CHECK(I) <> CHECK THEN PRINT "Data in Line";1000+10*(I-1);"may be bad."
170 NEXT I
180 IF LINECHECK <> 228 THEN PRINT "Data bad in lines 2010-2060."
190 OPEN "kbd_fix.com" AS #1 LEN=1
200 PRINT "Writing. . ."
210 FIELD #1,1 AS BYTE$
220 RESTORE
230 FOR I=1 TO 16       'Read the first part of Kbd_fix.com
240   READ BYTE : LSET BYTE$ = CHR$(BYTE) : PUT #1
250 NEXT I
260 LSET BYTE$ = CHR$(0)
270 FOR I=1 TO 312      '160 character keyboard buffer
280   PUT #1
290 NEXT I
300 FOR I=1 TO 368      'Read the last part of Kbd_fix.com
310   READ BYTE : LSET BYTE$ = CHR$(BYTE) : PUT #1
320 NEXT I
330 CLOSE
340 PRINT "KBD_FIX.COM created"
350 END
1000 DATA     233,  91,   2,    0,    0,    0,    0,    0
1010 DATA     0,    0,    0,    15,   1,    15,   1,    0
1020 '312 bytes of 0s
1030 DATA     0,    0,    0,    0,    0,    0,    0,    80
1040 DATA     83,   81,   156,  250,  187,  30,   0,    228
1050 DATA     97,   80,   36,   252,  230,  97,   185,  60
1060 DATA     0,    226,  254,  12,   2,    230,  97,   185
1070 DATA     60,   0,    226,  254,  75,   117,  235,  88
1080 DATA     230,  97,   157,  89,   91,   88,   195,  187
1090 DATA     64,   0,    142,  219,  250,  139,  30,   26
1100 DATA     0,    59,   30,   28,   0,    117,  29,   187
1110 DATA     30,   0,    137,  30,   26,   0,    131,  195
1120 DATA     2,    137,  30,   28,   0,    140,  203,  142
1130 DATA     219,  187,  15,   1,    137,  30,   11,   1
1140 DATA     137,  30,   13,   1,    251,  195,  30,   86
1150 DATA     83,   80,   232,  202,  255,  156,  46,   255
1160 DATA     30,   3,    1,    187,  64,   0,    142,  219
1170 DATA     46,   139,  54,   13,   1,    139,  30,   26
1180 DATA     0,    131,  195,  2,    131,  251,  62,   114
1190 DATA     3,    187,  30,   0,    59,   30,   28,   0
1200 DATA     116,  38,   139,  7,    46,   137,  4,    131
1210 DATA     198,  2,    129,  254,  79,   2,    114,  3
1220 DATA     190,  15,   1,    46,   59,   54,   11,   1
1230 DATA     117,  5,    232,  98,   255,  235,  5,    46
1240 DATA     137,  54,   13,   1,    137,  30,   26,   0
1250 DATA     160,  23,   0,    36,   12,   60,   12,   117
1260 DATA     8,    46,   161,  13,   1,    46,   163,  11
1270 DATA     1,    88,   91,   94,   31,   207,  251,  30
1280 DATA     83,   232,  99,   255,  140,  203,  142,  219
1290 DATA     10,   228,  116,  11,   254,  204,  116,  41
1300 DATA     254,  204,  116,  54,   91,   31,   207,  251
1310 DATA     144,  250,  139,  30,   11,   1,    59,   30
1320 DATA     13,   1,    116,  243,  139,  7,    131,  195
1330 DATA     2,    129,  251,  79,   2,    117,  3,    187
1340 DATA     15,   1,    137,  30,   11,   1,    91,   31
1350 DATA     207,  250,  139,  30,   11,   1,    59,   30
1360 DATA     13,   1,    139,  7,    251,  91,   31,   202
1370 DATA     2,    0,    255,  46,   7,    1,    30,   184
1380 DATA     0,    0,    142,  216,  250,  161,  36,   0
1390 DATA     46,   163,  3,    1,    161,  38,   0,    46
1400 DATA     163,  5,    1,    199,  6,    36,   0,    166
1410 DATA     2,    140,  14,   38,   0,    251,  161,  88
1420 DATA     0,    46,   163,  7,    1,    161,  90,   0
1430 DATA     46,   163,  9,    1,    199,  6,    88,   0
1440 DATA     14,   3,    140,  14,   90,   0,    184,  64
1450 DATA     0,    142,  216,  250,  187,  30,   0,    137
1460 DATA     30,   26,   0,    199,  7,    0,    0,    131
1470 DATA     195,  2,    137,  30,   28,   0,    251,  186
1480 DATA     94,   3,    205,  39,   0,    0,    0,    0
2000 '
2010 DATA     176,  0,    80,   37,   235,  44,   173,  56
2020 DATA     96,   234,  211,  64,   243,  235,  147,  178
2030 DATA     16,   118,  159,  254,  135,  153,  197,  62
2040 DATA     218,  13,   105,  53,   254,  0,    208,  71
2050 DATA     248,  215,  143,  245,  115,  41,   38,   228
2060 DATA     164,  112,  28,   45,   128,  71,   11,   183
```

Listing 1.

BLUE

COMES IN MANY COLORS



```
BLUE - The Word Processor :
The excellent documentation includes a tutorial,
extensive reference manual, and handy reference
card packaged in an attractive 3 ring binder.
Other features include:
Cut & Paste
Bookmarks
Search & Replace
Tabs
On-line directory
Horizontal scroll

Table of contents
Footnotes
Include other documents
Lists
Sections
Chapters

BLUE Word Processor features:
 Full color
 Multiple windows
 Simultaneous editing of multiple files
 User definable colors
 On-line help
 Keystroke macros
 User definable windows
 Auto word wrap

Font control
Spacing control
Centering
Appendices
Date
Fill
Justification
Macros
Indentation
Page break
Title page
Footers

Price:

     $150.00
           _

Rename file
Delete file
Cursor control by
character, word,
line, and page.
Complete editing facilities:
Insert, Delete, and Change
by character, word and line
Paragraph reformatting
Join and Break lines

Complete margin control
Automatic page numbering
Headers ( Left justified,
Right justified, or Centered)
Customizable printer control
DOS compatible files

Line: 4    Mode: Insert   Cut & Paste: Line          a:example.txt
```

BLUE — THE WORD PROCESSOR
THE CHOICE ISN'T BLACK AND WHITE ANYMORE.

PRICE: $150.00

DEMO DISK: $10.00

DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED

WORKS GREAT IN MONOCHROME TOO!

IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER OR XT.
64K AND ONE DISK DRIVE.
DOS 1.1 OR DOS 2.0
MONOCHROME OR COLOR
GRAPHICS ADAPTER

SYMMETRIC SOFTWARE

3812 EAST LA PALMA AVENUE
ANAHEIM, CALIFORNIA 92807
(714) 630-8733

start DOS. To attach Kbd_fix.com to DOS and stretch the keyboard buffer, just type *kbd_fix* after the DOS prompt. But don't do it just yet.

You'll want to place the line *kbd_fix* in your Autoexec.bat file to run Kbd_fix.com once each time you restart DOS. If you're also using Scrollk (see "The Scroll Lock Mystery Solved," *Softalk*, May 1983), run Kbd_fix before Scrollk. And if you're using *ProKey*, run Kbd_fix and Scrollk before you load *ProKey*. For example, if you're using all three programs, your Autoexec.bat file might look like this:

```
KBD_FIX
SCROLLK
PROKEY/I
```

Don't See No Difference. So what happens when we type *kbd_fix* to attach it to DOS? Not much, except that we lose some memory:

```
A>CHKDSK
  362496 bytes total disk space
   22528 bytes in 2 hidden files
  322560 bytes in 27 user files
    5120 bytes in bad sectors
   12288 bytes available on disk
  393216 bytes total memory
  170192 bytes free

A>KBD_FIX

A>CHKDSK
  362496 bytes total disk space
   22528 bytes in 2 hidden files
  322560 bytes in 27 user files
    5120 bytes in bad sectors
   12288 bytes available on disk
  393216 bytes total memory
  169424 bytes free

A>
```

We've lost about 700 bytes of free memory. To see how Kbd_fix has changed DOS we need to take a closer look—with the help of another machine language program.

Looking under the Magic Hat. The following Basic program builds the machine-language program Testkbd.com, which we'll use to see our stretched keyboard buffer.

```
10 OPEN "testkbd.com" AS #1
   LEN=1
20 FIELD #1,1 AS BYTE$
30 FOR I=1 TO 14
40  READ BYTE : LSET BYTE$ = CHR$(BYTE) : PUT #1
50 NEXT I
60 END
100 '
110 DATA 184,   64,   0,    142,  216,  246,  6,    23
120 DATA 0,     1,    116,  249,  205,  32
```

When you're back in DOS, type *Testkbd*. This program waits patiently until you hit the right-hand shift key before it returns control to DOS. Push the right-hand shift key and you'll see the DOS prompt appear.

Now run Testkbd again and start typing characters. When you've typed several lines' worth, hit the right shift key again. If you count them, you'll find you've typed 159 characters before your pc starts to beep; all 159 characters are in the buffer. If you hit the right shift key now, you'll see the first 137 characters appear before DOS starts to object. DOS can only read 137 characters in one line.

But what if we want to erase the buffer? Again run Testkbd and type a long string of characters. But before you hit the right-hand shift key, push control-alt—that is, push the control and alt keys at the same time. This clears the keyboard buffer. Now when you push the right shift key you'll find the buffer empty.

The Trick. Each time you push or release a key, your keyboard sends a signal to your pc. This signal, called an interrupt, causes the 8088 to run a short procedure in the ROM BIOS, which reads the scan code from the keyboard and converts this to a character. The ROM BIOS interrupt procedure stuffs this character into its fifteen-character buffer.

Kbd_fix intercepts all interrupt calls to this ROM BIOS interrupt procedure, as well as to another BIOS procedure DOS uses to read characters. Kbd_fix checks the BIOS's fifteen-character buffer after each interrupt to see if there is a character waiting to be read. If there is, it reads this character and places it into its own 159-character buffer. Kbd_io replaces the other ROM BIOS procedure, so when DOS, or any other program, calls the BIOS asking for a character, Kbd_fix hands over one character from its 159-character buffer.

Kbd_fix also watches for the control-alt pair of keys by staking out memory location 417H—which reflects the state of the four shift keys: left shift, right shift, alt shift, and control shift. For more information on these flags, see "The Scroll Lock Mystery Solved" in the May 1983 issue.

That, in a nutshell, is the secret behind Kbd_fix.com.

The Picky Details. There is one last important detail added to Kbd_fix.com. Many programs clear the ROM BIOS's fifteen-character buffer and expect by doing so to remove all characters. Since we are now storing characters in Kbd_fix's internal 159-character buffer, we must be careful to check for a cleared buffer. Kbd_fix does that, and if it sees that the ROM BIOS's fifteen-character buffer has been cleared, it clears its own buffer. Kbd_fix should work with almost all programs.

You can find the gory details of Kbd_fix in the assembly language listing (listing 2). Kbd_fix keeps a dummy character in the buffer so it can check if another program has tried to clear the buffer. The other details are explained to varying degrees in the listing.

Finally, in listing 3 you'll find the simple program Testkbd; so you can see how it works.

```
VECTORS                 SEGMENT         AT 0H
            ORG         9H*4
KEYBOARD_INT_VECTOR                     LABEL           DWORD
            ORG         16H*4
KEYBOARD_IO_VECTOR                      LABEL           DWORD
VECTORS                 ENDS

ROM_BIOS_DATA           SEGMENT         AT 40H
            ORG         17H
KBD_FLAG                DB              ?
            ORG         1AH
ROM_BUFFER_HEAD         DW              ?
ROM_BUFFER_TAIL         DW              ?
KB_BUFFER               DW              16 DUP          (?)
KB_BUFFER_END           LABEL           WORD
ROM_BIOS_DATA           ENDS

CODE_SEG                SEGMENT
            ASSUME      CS:CODE_SEG
            ORG         100H
BEGIN:      JMP         INIT_VECTORS                                    ;Initialize vectors and attach to DOS

ROM_KEYBOARD_INT                        DD                              ;Address for ROM routine
ROM_KEYBOARD_IO                         DD
BUFFER_HEAD                             DW              OFFSET KEYBOARD_BUFFER
BUFFER_TAIL                             DW              OFFSET KEYBOARD_BUFFER
KEYBOARD_BUFFER                         DW              160 DUP (0)     ;159 character input buffer
KEYBOARD_BUFFER_END                     LABEL           WORD

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------;
; This procedure sends a short beep when the buffer fills.              ;
;-----------------------------------------------------------------------;

K B _ CONTROL           EQU             61H             ;Control bits for keyboard (and speaker)
ERROR_BEEP              PROC            NEAR
            PUSH        AX
            PUSH        BX
            PUSH        CX
            PUSHF                                       ;Save the old interrupt enable flag
            CLI                                         ;Turn off beep during interrupt
            MOV         BX,30                           ;Number of cycles for 1/8 second tone
            IN          AL,KB_CONTROL                   ;Get control information from speaker port
            PUSH        AX                              ;Save the control information
START_OF_ONE_CYCLE:
            AND         AL,0FCH                         ;Turn off the speaker
            OUT         KB_CONTROL,AL
            MOV         CX,60                           ;Delay for one half cycle
```

```
OFF_LOOP:
          LOOP        OFF_LOOP
          OR          AL,2                    ;Turn on the speaker
          OUT         KB_CONTROL,AL
          MOV         CX,60                   ;Delay for second half cycle
ON_LOOP:
          LOOP        ON_LOOP
          DEC         BX                      ;200 cycles yet?
          JNZ         START_OF_ONE_CYCLE
          POP         AX                      ;Recover old keyboard information
          OUT         KB_CONTROL,AL
          POPF                                ;Restore interrupt flag
          POP         CX
          POP         BX
          POP         AX
          RET
ERROR_BEEP            ENDP
;-------------------------------------------------------------;
; This procedure checks the ROM keyboard buffer to see if some program  ;
; tried to clear this buffer. We know it's been cleared when the ROM    ;
; tail and header overlap. Normally, the new procedures below keep the  ;
; dummy character, word 0, in the buffer.                               ;
;                                                                       ;
; Uses: BX, DS                                                          ;
; Writes:     BUFFER_HEAD, BUFFER_TAIL, ROM_BUFFER_HEAD,               ;
;             ROM_BUFFER_TAIL                                           ;
; Reads:      KEYBOARD_BUFFER, KB_BUFFER                                ;
;-------------------------------------------------------------;
CHECK_CLEAR_BUFFER                    PROC    NEAR
          ASSUME      DS:ROM_BIOS_DATA
          MOV         BX,ROM_BIOS_DATA        ;Establish pointer to BIOS data
          MOV         DS,BX
          CLI                                 ;Turn off interrupts during this check
          MOV         BX,ROM_BUFFER_HEAD      ;Check to see if buffer cleared
          CMP         BX,ROM_BUFFER_TAIL      ;Is the buffer empty?
          JNE         BUFFER_OK               ;No, then everything is alright
                                              ;Yes, then clear the internal buffer
          MOV         BX,OFFSET KB_BUFFER     ;Reset the buffer with word 0 in buffer
          MOV         ROM_BUFFER_HEAD,BX
          ADD         BX,2
          MOV         ROM_BUFFER_TAIL,BX
          ASSUME      DS:CODE_SEG
          MOV         BX,CS
          MOV         DS,BX
          MOV         BX,OFFSET KEYBOARD_BUFFER           ;Reset internal buffer
          MOV         BUFFER_HEAD,BX
          MOV         BUFFER_TAIL,BX
```

```
BUFFER_OK:
          ASSUME      DS:CODE_SEG
          STI                                             ;Interrupts back on
          RET
CHECK_CLEAR_BUFFER                    ENDP

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------;
; This procedure intercepts the keyboard interrupt and moves any new    ;
; characters to the internal, 80 character, buffer.                     ;
;-----------------------------------------------------------------------;

INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD_INT  PROC     NEAR
          ASSUME      DS:NOTHING
          PUSH        DS
          PUSH        SI
          PUSH        BX
          PUSH        AX
          CALL        CHECK_CLEAR_BUFFER          ;Check for buffer cleared
          PUSHF
          CALL        ROM_KEYBOARD_INT            ;Read scan code with BIOS routines
;------   Transfer any characters to internal buffer

          ASSUME      DS:ROM_BIOS_DATA
          MOV         BX,ROM_BIOS_DATA
          MOV         DS,BX
          MOV         SI,BUFFER_TAIL
          MOV         BX,ROM_BUFFER_HEAD          ;Check if real character in buffer
          ADD         BX,2                        ;Skip over dummy character
          CMP         BX,OFFSET KB_BUFFER_END
          JB          DONT_WRAP                   ;No need to wrap the pointer
          MOV         BX,OFFSET KB_BUFFER         ;Wrap the pointer
DONT_WRAP:
          CMP         BX,ROM_BUFFER_TAIL          ;Is there a real character?
          JE          NO_NEW_CHARACTERS           ;No, then return to caller
          MOV         AX,[BX]                     ;Yes, move character to internal buffer
          MOV         CS:[SI],AX
          ADD         SI,2                        ;Move to next position
          CMP         SI,OFFSET KEYBOARD_BUFFER_END
          JB          NOT_AT_END
          MOV         SI,OFFSET KEYBOARD_BUFFER
NOT_AT_END:
          CMP         SI,BUFFER_HEAD              ;Buffer overrun?
          JNE         WRITE_TO_BUFFER             ;Yes, beep and throw out character
          CALL        ERROR_BEEP
          JMP         SHORT NOT_AT_KB_END
WRITE_TO_BUFFER:
          MOV         BUFFER_TAIL,SI
```

Computer Case Company

WE MAKE A GREAT CASE FOR YOUR IBM.

CALL TOLL FREE: (800) 848-7548

IB501

One size does not fit all. Our cases are designed for specific hardware configurations. When you put your computer in our case, it fits hand-in-glove. Once your equipment is safely inside the attache-style carrying case, it never has to be taken out again. To operate, simply remove the lid and connect the power. To store your computer, disconnect the power, enclose your disks, working papers, and manuals in the compartments provided, and attach the lid. It's as easy as that.

● AP106	Amdek Color I, II or III Monitor	119
● P401	Paper Tiger Printer (400/445/460)	99
● P402	Centronics 730/737 & Radio Shack Printer	89
● P403	Epson MX70 or MX80, Microline 82A Printer or Color Computer	89
● P404	Epson MX100 Printer	99
● P405	IDS 560 or Prism 132 Printer	109
● P406	C. Itoh Starwriter/Printmaster F-10 Printer	119
● P407	Okidata Microline 83A or 84 Printer	99
● P408	C. Itoh Prowriter 2 Printer	99
● P409	C. Itoh Prowriter (Apple Dot Matrix) or NEC PC8023 Printer	89
● IB501	IBM Personal Computer with Keyboard	129
● IB502	IBM Monochrome Monitor	99
● CC50	Case Cart	79
● CC80	Matching Attache Case (5″)	85
● CC90	Matching Attache Case (3″)	75
● CC91	Matching Accessories Case (5¼″ Diskettes, Paper, etc.)	95
● CC92	5.25″ Diskette Case (Holds 75 Diskettes)	49

MasterCard VISA

Computer Case Company, 5650 Indian Mound Court, Columbus, Ohio 43213 (614) 868-9464

```
NOT_AT_KB_END:
            MOV         ROM_BUFFER_HEAD,BX

NO_NEW_CHARACTERS:
;-----      See if CTRL + ALT pushed, and clear buffer if so

            MOV         AL,KBD_FLAG                 ;Get status of shift keys into AL
            AND         AL,0CH                      ;Isolate Alt and Ctrl shift flags
            CMP         AL,0CH                      ;Are both the Ctrl and Alt keys down?
            JNE         DONT_CLEAR_BUFFER           ;No, then don't clear the buffer
            MOV         AX,BUFFER_TAIL              ;Yes, then clear the buffer
            MOV         BUFFER_HEAD,AX

DONT_CLEAR_BUFFER:
            POP         AX
            POP         BX
            POP         SI
            POP         DS
            IRET
INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD_INT  ENDP

;-------------------------------------------------------------------------------;
;This procedure replaces the ROM BIOS routines for reading a character          ;
;-------------------------------------------------------------------------------;
            ASSUME      DS:CODE_SEG
INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD_IO   PROC        FAR
            STI                                     ; Interrupts back on
            PUSH        DS                          ; Save current DS
            PUSH        BX                          ; Save BX temporarily
            CALL        CHECK_CLEAR_BUFFER          ;Check for buffer cleared
            MOV         BX,CS                       ;Establish pointer to data area
            MOV         DS,BX
            OR          AH,AH                       ;AH=0?
            JZ          READ_CHARACTER              ;Yes, read a character
            DEC         AH                          ; AH=1?
            JZ          READ_STATUS                 ;Yes, return the status
            DEC         AH                          ; AH=2?
            JZ          READ_SHIFT_STATUS           ;Yes, return the shift status
            POP         BX                          ;Ignore other function numbers
            POP         DS
            IRET

;-----      Read the key

READ_CHARACTER:                                     ;ASCII read
            STI                                     ; Interrupts back on during loop
            NOP                                     ; Allow an interrupt to occur
            CLI                                     ; Interrupts back off
            MOV         BX,BUFFER_HEAD              ; Get pointer to head of buffer
            CMP         BX,BUFFER_TAIL              ; Test end of buffer
            JE          READ_CHARACTER              ; Loop until something in buffer
            MOV         AX,[BX]                     ; Get scan code and ASCII code
            ADD         BX,2                        ; Move to next word in buffer
            CMP         BX,OFFSET KEYBOARD_BUFFER_END ; At end of buffer?
            JNE         SAVE_POINTER                ; No, continue
            MOV         BX,OFFSET KEYBOARD_BUFFER     ; Yes, reset to buffer start
SAVE_POINTER:
            MOV         BUFFER_HEAD,BX              ; Store value in variable
            POP         BX
            POP         DS
            IRET                                    ; Return to caller
;-----      ASCII status

READ_STATUS:
            CLI                                     ; Interrupts off
            MOV         BX,BUFFER_HEAD              ; Get head pointer
            CMP         BX,BUFFER_TAIL              ; If equal (ZF = 1) then nothing there
            MOV         AX,[BX]
            STI                                     ; Interrupts back on
            POP         BX                          ; Recover registers
            POP         DS
            RET         2                           ; Throw away flags

READ_SHIFT_STATUS:
            JMP         ROM_KEYBOARD_IO             ;Let ROM routines do this.
INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD_IO   ENDP

;-------------------------------------------------------------------------------;
;This procedure initializes the interrupt vectors.                              ;
;-------------------------------------------------------------------------------;
INIT_VECTORS            PROC        NEAR
            ASSUME      DS:VECTORS
            PUSH        DS                          ;Save old Data Segment
            MOV         AX,VECTORS                  ;Set up the data segment for vectors
            MOV         DS,AX
            CLI                                     ;Don't allow interrupts
            MOV         AX,KEYBOARD_INT_VECTOR      ;Save addresses of BIOS routines
            MOV         ROM_KEYBOARD_INT,AX
            MOV         AX,KEYBOARD_INT_VECTOR[2]
            MOV         ROM_KEYBOARD_INT[2],AX
                                                    ;Set up new KEYBOARD_INT vector
            MOV         KEYBOARD_INT_VECTOR, OFFSET INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD_INT
            MOV         KEYBOARD_INT_VECTOR[2],CS
            STI                                     ;Allow interrupts again
                                                    ;Set up KEYBOARD_IO vector
            MOV         AX,KEYBOARD_IO_VECTOR
            MOV         ROM_KEYBOARD_IO,AX
            MOV         AX,KEYBOARD_IO_VECTOR[2]
            MOV         ROM_KEYBOARD_IO[2],AX
            MOV         KEYBOARD_IO_VECTOR, OFFSET INTERCEPT_KEYBOARD_IO
            MOV         KEYBOARD_IO_VECTOR[2],CS
                                                    ;Now set  up the keyboard buffer, etc.

            ASSUME      DS:ROM_BIOS_DATA
            MOV         AX,ROM_BIOS_DATA
            MOV         DS,AX
            CLI                                     ;Don't allow interrupts now
            MOV         BX,OFFSET KB_BUFFER
            MOV         ROM_BUFFER_HEAD,BX
            MOV         WORD PTR [BX],0
            ADD         BX,2
            MOV         ROM_BUFFER_TAIL,BX
            STI                                     ;Allow interrupts again

            MOV         DX,OFFSET INIT_VECTORS      ;End of resident portion
            INT         27H                         ;Terminate but stay resident
INIT_VECTORS            ENDP

CODE_SEG                ENDS

            END         BEGIN
```

Listing 2.

```
DATA_SEG                SEGMENT AT 40H
            ORG         17H
KB_FLAG                 DB          ?               ;Status flags for shift keys, etc.
DATA_SEG                ENDS

            ASSUME      CS:CODE_SEG, DS:DATA_SEG
CODE_SEG                SEGMENT
BEGIN       PROC        NEAR
            MOV         AX,DATA_SEG
            MOV         DS,AX
AGAIN:      TEST        KB_FLAG,1                   ;Right shift key pressed?
            JZ          AGAIN                       ;No, keep looking
            INT         20H
BEGIN       ENDP
CODE_SEG                ENDS
            END         BEGIN
```

Listing 3. ▲

PC/FORTH™

Complete FORTH program development systems for the IBM® Personal Computer. Packages include interpreter/compiler with virtual memory management, line editor, custom screen editor, assembler, decompiler, utilities, file and record access modules, and many demonstration programs. 150 page user manual. $100.00

Software floating point, Intel 8087 support, color graphics extensions, and target compiler available at additional cost.

Specify PC-DOS or CP/M-86®. One disk drive and 48 kbytes RAM required. Software supplied on 5¼ inch single sided soft sectored double density diskettes.

Laboratory Microsystems
4147 Beethoven Street
Los Angeles, CA 90066
(213) 306-7412

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research, Inc.

MICRO FINANCE

by Ken Landis and Douglas J. Weber

Real Estate Analysis Package (REAP)

Two months ago, we examined the cash flow and tax effects of using a mortgage to buy a house as a principal residence. We also considered the potential benefits and drawbacks of such a scheme. This month, we'll learn how to use a software package to analyze an investment property deal. The software is the *Real Estate Analysis Package (REAP)*, from Execuware, a division of Aeronca, Inc. (7415 Pineville-Matthews Road, Suite 300, Box 100, Charlotte, NC 28226; 704-541-1199 . *REAP* is priced at $149.95.

This month's hypothetical problem comes directly from the *REAP* documentation. It is typical of "real world" investment property decisions, and it provides a good framework in which to learn.

A group of investors—we'll call them SMF Associates—is considering the purchase of an office complex. To fund this $1,100,000 purchase, the investors have arranged for two self-amortizing conventional loans totaling $900,000 and equity contributions of $200,000. The principal amount of the first loan is $750,000. This loan carries a 15 percent interest rate for a term of forty years. The principal amount of the second loan is $150,000, the interest rate is 18 percent, and the term is ten years.

SMF Associates wants to analyze the property's potential as an investment. Profitability will be determined not only by the financing the partners have arranged, but also by the operating characteristics of the property itself. Let's walk through the steps involved in analyzing this investment decision using *REAP*.

IF SMF buys the property, the group may find that capital improvements to make the property more commercially attractive are necessary. And any capital improvements will have to be added to the property's purchase price in order to arrive at the property's initial basis.

For purposes of our example, we'll assume that the SMF property does not require any capital improvements. Therefore, its adjusted cost basis is the same as its purchase price, which means that SMF does not have to consider the immediate impact of any additional financing.

Now that we know what the property costs, we need to know the exact terms of the loan agreements. *REAP* can analyze up to three different loans on a given piece of property.

The first loan can be either a self-amortizing conventional loan or a non-self-amortizing loan. Self-amortizing loan payments consist of both principal and interest (home mortgage loans are typically self-amortizing loans). Non-self-amortizing loans consist solely of interest payments. The principal is paid off separately, usually in one or more balloon payments.

In *REAP*, the second and third loans may be either interest-only loans or switched loans. Switched loans start out as interest-only (non-self-amortizing) and switch to interest and principal payments at a later date. If a balloon payment is due when the note switches, *REAP* calculates the amount due automatically.

REAP can also handle assumable loans. An assumable loan is originally made to the seller but upon the sale of the property becomes the responsibility of the buyer. A buyer will normally assume this type of loan when the loan the seller holds is more attractive (in terms of interest rate, repayment period, covenants, and so on) than a loan the buyer could obtain.

Loan 1 for the SMF Associates property deal is a self-amortizing loan, and loan 2 is a switched loan. This second loan switches at the sixtieth payment, at which point a balloon payment is due.

REAP can allocate interest expense based on the "rule of 78s" method. The "rule of 78s" allocates interest expense according to the sum-of-the-years digits method. The effect of this method of interest allocation is an acceleration of interest deductions in the earlier years of the loan, which provides the investor with a greater immediate tax benefit. Remember your basic finance: A dollar today is worth more than a dollar tomorrow.

In the SMF example, we will be using the rule of 78s for loan 2 but not for loan 1. (Note: As a result of recent tax legislation, the benefits of this method of interest acceleration are substantially different from what they once were. For a complete explanation of the changes, ask your tax adviser about Revenue Ruling 83-84 and Revenue Procedure 83-40.)

At this point, we have entered all the loan information *REAP* requires to perform its analysis. The next series of questions *REAP* asks us concern the operating characteristics of the property; we must estimate the property's gross scheduled income.

Gross scheduled income is the maximum amount of income that a property is capable of producing. Historical information can be used in the estimate, or the investors can estimate the future potential of the property on the basis of current or expected market conditions, the uses for the property, and the competitive environment.

The gross scheduled income potential for a property is not static; it can easily change from year to year. *REAP* allows the investor to enter the beginning expected gross income and up to four additional scheduled incomes, along with what year they become effective. Each year's expected gross income automatically increases by the investor-supplied growth rate, unless this variable income feature is used. For each year in which a new gross income figure is entered, the growth factor is superseded by this amount.

In the SMF example, the gross scheduled income is estimated to be:

Year	Amount
1	$300,000
3	325,000
5	350,000
10	400,000

REAP uses these scheduled gross incomes for each respective year listed. For each of the years 2, 4, and 6 through 9, the gross scheduled income will be an amount equal to the pre-

---

Mr. Landis's coauthor this month, Douglas J. Weber, is a tax manager in the Saint Louis office of Peat Marwick.

The Stock Portfolio System gets you out of the office and onto the golf course.

STOCK PORTFOLIO SYSTEM
SMITH MICRO SOFTWARE

The Stock Portfolio System means more leisure time, less worry time.

Use the STOCK PORTFOLIO SYSTEM and your IBM PC or Apple II or III to track stocks, bonds, CD's, options, cash accounts and your other investments.

Also, tap into the Dow Jones News Retrieval service (optional).

The STOCK PORTFOLIO SYSTEM generates complete recordkeeping reports. Such as Current Portfolio Status, Profit and Loss Statements, Individual Security Status, Dividend Income, Interest Income/Expense reports. And more.

Use it to store quotes for historical recall. Or calculate your return on investment before and after tax.

The STOCK PORTFOLIO SYSTEM provides advance notice of stocks going long term, dividends coming due, options expiring.

Computer or investment expertise is not necessary. A complete monitoring system at your fingertips.

See your dealer. Or send a check for $185 + $2 shipping (California residents add $11.10).

SMITH MICRO SOFTWARE
PO Box 604,
Sunset Beach, Ca. 90742
(213) 592-1032

IBM PC is a Trademark of International Business Machines
Apple Trademark of Apple Computers Inc.
Dow Jones News Retrieval is a registered Trademark of Dow Jones & Co., Inc.

vious year's gross scheduled income plus the investor-supplied growth rate. In our example, SMF assumes a 9 percent growth rate; therefore, we should expect to see a gross income of $354,250 for year 4, representing year 3's gross income of $325,000 plus the additional 9 percent growth potential of $29,250.

The difference between the gross scheduled income and the actual income produced by a property is represented by the vacancy factor. This percentage demonstrates that many properties are *not* fully leased or rented 100 percent of the time. The vacancy factor is expressed as a percentage of the yearly gross scheduled income. For example, if, on the average, one-tenth of the SMF property was not producing income, the vacancy factor would be 10 percent.

REAP allows you to change the vacancy factor assumption up to four times, much the same way gross scheduled income may be changed, giving the analysis the benefit of up to five different vacancy factors. The vacancy factor assumption is not adjusted by the investor-supplied growth rate.

The vacancy factor assumption for the SMF deal is 8 percent for the first year through the fourth, 6 percent for years 5 through 9, and 10 percent for year 10 on.

Operating expenses are the costs involved in operating and owning a property. These include such items as taxes, maintenance, insurance, and so on. *REAP* will increase the operating expenses each year in keeping with the investor-supplied growth rate, or the investor can insert up to four new amounts at any point within the investment's time analysis boundary.

The operating expenses for the SMF deal are set up at $87,500 for the first year and $200,000 for the fifth year. In each of the other years, the previous year's amount will automatically increase by the growth rate factor (9 percent).

Now let's consider depreciation, a word that brings joy to the hearts of countless real estate investors. In some cases, depreciation benefits are the sole reason an investor buys real estate. Most of the tax benefits are created by the deductions resulting from depreciation, interest, and miscellaneous other expenses that the investor incurs to carry the property.

Accelerated Cost Recovery System (ACRS), a new method of computing depreciation, is probably the most valuable tax advantage. ACRS provides that for most real property (new or used) placed in service after 1980, deductions that approximate the use of the 175 percent declining balance method of depreciation may be taken over a fifteen-year period. A real estate investor is entitled to use the Accelerated Cost Recovery System or to elect an alternative straight-line method over a period of fifteen, thirty-five, or forty-five years. Investors should look at their particular tax situations and then discuss with their tax advisers the benefits or disadvantages of selecting either the accelerated or the straight-line method.

ACRS applies to both real property and personal property. *REAP* is designed to handle depreciation on both. This software uses ACRS in computing the appropriate recovery deductions (depreciation) for each of these classes of property. The ACRS depreciation methods programmed into the software are ACRS real property, ACRS (1981—1984), ACRS (1985), ACRS (1986 and beyond), and ACRS straight-line.

The SMF real property amount to be depreciated is $800,000 over fifteen years. Although real property includes all buildings and land, it's important to realize that land is not a depreciable asset. The investors had to deduct the market value of the land from the total value of the real property; otherwise they would probably find themselves tongue-tied when they tried to explain their deductions to an Internal Revenue Service agent. (We all know how understanding they can be.)

In this case, the land was valued at $100,000. The personal property amount is $200,000 and is being depreciated over five years. Personal property is primarily property that is not considered real property (for example, equipment, furniture and fixtures, appliances, and so on). Since the ACRS deductions represent cost recovery of various assets, the total of all deductions taken cannot exceed the original purchase price of those assets.

REAP now prompts us to enter the assumed growth rate. *REAP* uses the growth rate to adjust revenue and cost increases that are attributable to inflation. As an investor, you should supply a number that you feel is realistic. Do not rely only on one estimate of future inflation. One very good strategy is to collect the opinions of several economists and research firms and then calculate a weighted average. (Note: This information can be obtained from various trade and professional publications as well as from the news media.) The weights should be based on each predictor's past accuracy.

For the SMF example, we're assuming an inflation, or growth, rate of 9 percent.

REAP now prompts us to supply the investor's tax bracket and up to ten different capital improvement reserves for the property. Reserves are funds that have been set aside to pay for planned or unplanned improvements. These reserves can either cover the entire cost of the improvement or only part of it. We are structuring the SMF property deal with no re-

FREE JOYSTICK

Introducing

CA$HMAN

The latest maze craze game for the IBM PC from S.W.A.T., Ltd. CashMan is a game of skill, strategy, and reflex, for one or two players. Imagine your excitement as you race through the corridors of competition, stuffing your pockets with money. But WATCH OUT for your four cut-throat competitors, who will snatch your money, and your life, if they can. Or pick up a body guard and watch your enemies turn blue and flee, while you grab them for bonuses.

For a limited time only, Soft Wares and Technology, Ltd. is giving away a FREE joystick with every purchase of CashMan. Now you will be able to plug this high quality, practically indestructible, digital joystick directly into your IBM (or compatible) game controller, and be ready to play CashMan the easy way, just like at the arcade.

Don't Play For Pills!
Maneuver For Money!
Get CashMan Today!

Features
- One or Two Players, Multiple Skill Levels!
- Arcade Style Sounds, On/Off During Play!
- Game Freeze Capability, Automatic Play Mode!
- Big Bonuses, Each Screen More Challenging!
- Displays High Score, and Name of Scorer!

CashMan just $39.95 including a free joystick!

System Requirements
IBM PC, XT, Or Compatible Computer
PC-DOS Or MS-DOS, 64K Memory, 1 Disk
Monochrome Or Color Graphics Display
Keyboard Or CashMan Joystick Control

VISA & MC orders, call toll-free 1-800-538-8157, Ext. 967
In Calif. 1-800-672-3470, Ext. 967
Or avoid shipping and handling charges by sending your check or money order to the address below:

MasterCard VISA

Please send me ____ copies of CashMan @ $39.95, each. I understand that I will receive a FREE digital joystick with each copy of CashMan ordered.

Name________________________
Street________________________
City____________ State _____ Zip _______

Mail To:

Soft Wares And Technology, Ltd.
P.O. Box 7377, Dept. ST11
Nashua, NH 03060

PALANTIR™ WORD PROCESSING

WE DON'T HAVE TO BEEF UP OUR GUARANTEE WITH A LOT OF BULL

Other software companies give you disclaimers. Palantir gives you a real guarantee: Palantir backs its software with 90 days of free phone support via a toll-free number. When you call, we won't tell you to ask your dealer or read your manual; we'll answer your question, free of charge. If we can't solve your problem, we'll replace your Palantir Software with any competitive software of comparable value.

We couldn't make an offer like this if we weren't confident about Palantir word processing. It's easy to learn, easy to use, easy to live with.

Palantir word-processing software is designed for microcomputers. Yet it gives you all the features of a dedicated word processor. You won't find a better system on the market today.

To find out more about Palantir software, mark the reader-service card in this issue or call, toll-free: 1-800-368-3797. In Texas, call 713-520-8221.

We'll respond with detailed information on Palantir software and a free "No Bull" button. A closer look will convince you that we're not just one of the herd. And that's no *bull*.

Palantir Software 3400 Montrose Blvd. Suite 718 Houston, Texas 77006

™ Palantir is a trademark of Palantir, Inc.

serve fund and assuming that the investors in the SMF Associates deal are in the 50 percent bracket.

Next, *REAP* asks for the number of months remaining in the present year after the property is purchased and placed in use. Next, the program asks for the total number of years for which it should calculate projections (twenty is the maximum here). In our example, the property will be in service for six months of the year after it has been purchased. The future period we wish to project is ten years.

Finally, *REAP* asks if the property being analyzed is residential or nonresidential. If the property is residential, *REAP* automatically accounts for the special treatment allowed under present tax law for computing capital gain upon disposition. Disposition includes not only sales but also other forms of transactions, such as (but not limited to) trades or conversions. Gain on the resale of residential property is afforded special treatment under present tax law, depending on the method of depreciation selected. If an investor chooses to depreciate the real property (buildings and related improvements) on a fifteen-year straight-line basis, any gain attributable to these assets is capital gain. However, an investor who chooses the ACRS rapid depreciation option discussed earlier must calculate the excess depreciation taken up to the point of resale and treat this much of the gain as ordinary gain. The result—the excess depreciation can result in a portion of the gain being taxed at an effective maximum rate of 50 percent instead of 20 percent.

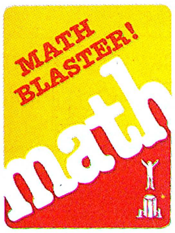
Gain on the resale of nonresidential property can still receive preferential treatment, but the rules are somewhat different. If the investor chooses fifteen-year straight-line depreciation for real property, any gain on resale is capital gain. However, election of ACRS results in ordinary gain on resale to the extent of all depreciation taken. When dealing with nonresidential property, the investor must decide whether the benefit to be derived from accelerating the recovery of deductions is expected to outweigh the portion of the gain that will be taxed as ordinary income rather than as capital gain.

These rules apply only to real property. Personal property depreciation, regardless of the option chosen, results in ordinary gain upon resale. Because of the technical nature and complexity of these rules, it's vital that you consult your tax adviser.

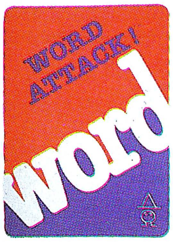
We have now gathered all the information we need and have entered it into the program. At this point, *REAP* is ready to do its analysis and produce a report on the investment. The analysis is begun by means of a few simple keystrokes. When the analysis is complete, the report is printed on either an 80- or a 132-column printer.

INTRODUCING!

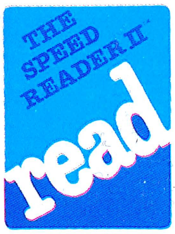
Educational Software That Works



2 disks $49.95



2 disks $49.95



2 disks $69.95

We believe that children have an innate curiosity . . . a natural desire to learn, to discover, to understand. Our software was designed with this in mind. Even traditionally tedious subjects like math, reading, and vocabulary building are easily mastered. Why? Because our software makes children want to learn. And when they want to learn, the results are FANTASTIC!

We know our software WORKS because we developed and tested it in the classroom. Let our software WORK for your children too!

For the Apple and IBM PC.*

Ask your dealer.

davidson&associates

6069 Groveoak Place #12
Rancho Palos Verdes, CA 90274

MasterCard and Visa cardholders may call collect to order:
(213) 373-9473

*Apple and IBM are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. and International Business Machines, Corp.

The *REAP* report for the SMF property, located at 2323 Keener Lane, Charlotte, North Carolina, is shown in the chart on page 133.

The first section, labeled "beginning of year values," displays amounts we entered into *REAP* for purchase price, loan balances, and the adjusted cost basis of the property. The only computed amount in this section is the cash invested, which is the difference between the purchase price and the total loan balance.

The "property income analysis" takes the gross scheduled income for the year and subtracts from it the dollar cost of the vacancy factor. The result is the gross operating income of the property. When the operating expenses for the property are deducted, the pretax net operating income or loss is computed. The capitalization rate is computed by dividing the current year's net operating income by the assumed market value, which is called the purchase price, on line 1 of the report.

With this design, you must be aware that the program is computing the capitalization rate assuming the new purchase price, or market value, which has increased in accordance with the growth rate. Thus this calculation is representative only of a year-by-year analysis.

Taxable income is the income or loss subject to income taxes. A property does not have to have any taxable income to be a moneymaker for the owners. How is this possible? Well, in real estate transactions, the key to a profitable investment lies heavily in the future appreciation of the property, as opposed to current cash flow or net income. Current tax benefits may also be derived from the numerous deductions allowed with real estate investments.

Taxable income is calculated by taking the net operating income of the property and reducing it by calculated interest paid on the outstanding loans and by depreciation (a noncash deduction) on the property. (Note: Even though we invested only $200,000 in cash, we are depreciating the entire depreciable basis [$1,000,000] of the property [excluding land] and receiving a current deduction against the net operating income of $78,000 for only six months of operation.)

Cash flow shows the investors the cash inflows and outflows of the investment. If a property has positive cash flow, the investors more likely than not do not need to inject cash to sustain the property's operation. If it has continuous negative cash flow, the investors will eventually have to make up the deficit to stop the property from going under.

The major components of the "cash flow" section are *gross spendable, income tax benefits,* and *reserves.* Gross spendable represents the excess or deficit cash received from operations over and above the expenditures relating to principal and interest payments—that is, cash outflows. Income tax benefits are gained if the property creates negative taxable income. A taxable loss provides a tax benefit equal to the loss multiplied by the investor's marginal income tax rate. It is very likely that you can receive a tax benefit at the same time you have positive cash flow. The reserve represents any monies that were earmarked for potential future capital improvements. These reserves are added to the reserve account balance each year until expended.

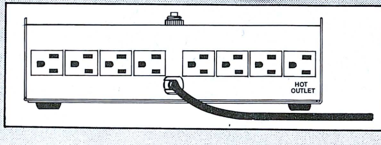
The net cash flow shows the amount of money from the current period available for distribution to investors. Cash flow is different from income in that it represents dollars as they physically move, rather than dollars that are "accounted" for, which include both cash and noncash transactions. The present year's cash flow is added to all previous cash flow; the result of this addition is the cumulative cash flow for the property. Cumulative cash flow shows the total amount of money that has passed through (or, in the case of negative cash flow, has been taken out of) the till. In essence, it is the true layman's "income" on the property.

REAP produces certain ratios that are designed to be "key indicators" of a property's

Surge protection plus master control for all your equipment

MASTER CONTROL
ALPHA DELTA

At $79.95, new Alpha Delta MACC is very low cost "insurance" on your total investment



Modern solid-state circuitry is even more vulnerable to that old bugaboo, lightning. Strikes **miles** away can cause damage. So can transient currents from such common things as electric motors and fluorescent lights.

But Alpha Delta Master AC Control Console's **3-stage, 2000 amp surge discharge,** automatic restorable circuitry clips off the power surges and spikes to provide clean AC power. (Several typical competitive devices use only a single stage 100 amp protector.) Its resettable circuit breaker adds further protection.

MACC gives you control convenience, too. It provides 8 plug-in "U" ground outlets for your components—including one "hot" for a continuously powered application such as your clock. Seven "on/off" rocker switches let you control individual components. **And you can turn your entire system on or off with a single master rocker switch.**

All switches light up when "on" to confirm system condition.

MACC is tested to IEEE pulse standards and rated at 15A, 125VAC, 60 Hz, 1875 watts continuous-duty total for console. See label for surge protection limitations.

ALPHA DELTA
Model MACC Master AC
Control Console $79.95 (U.S.)

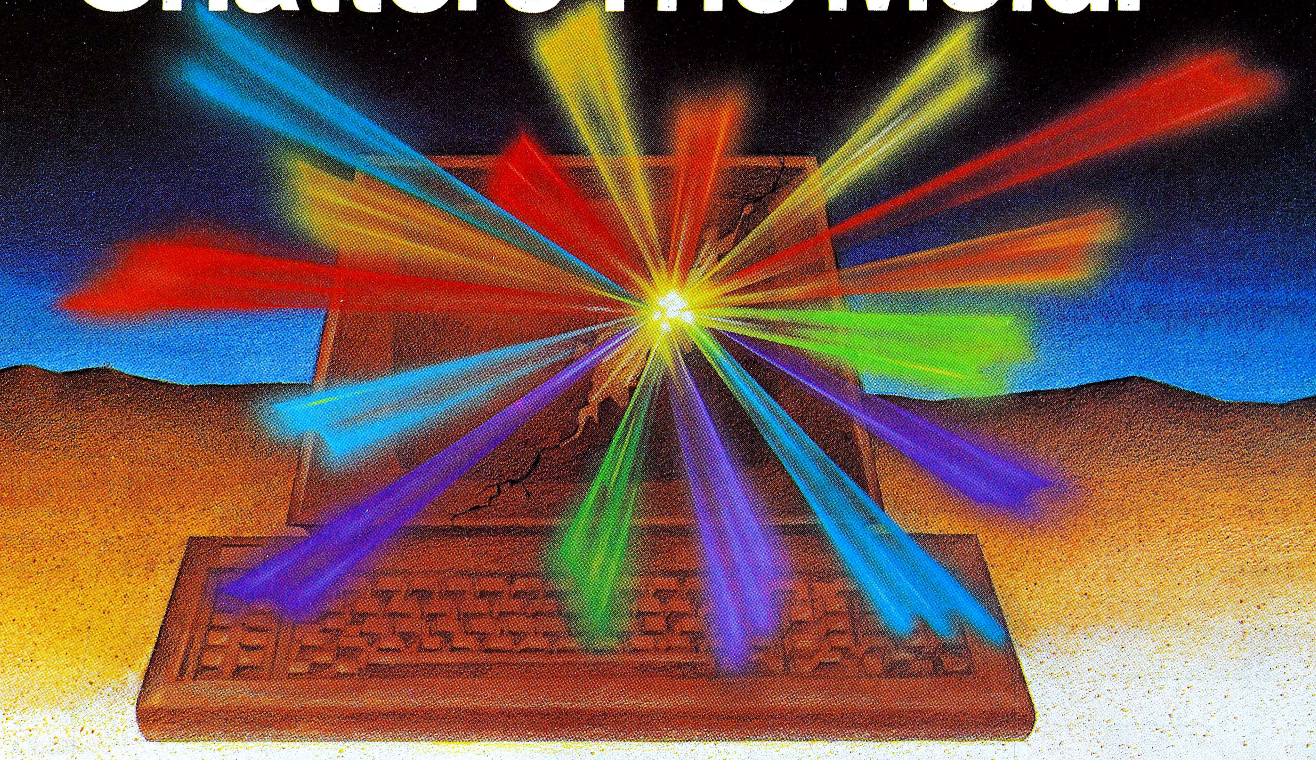
UL Listed

At your Alpha Delta dealer. Or in U.S., order direct, adding $4 for postage/handling to check or money order. (Approx. shipping wt.: 4½ lbs. each. Approx. size: 11" × 2¾" × 2¾") MasterCard and VISA accepted. Ohio residents add Sales Tax. Sorry, no C.O.D.'s

MasterCard VISA

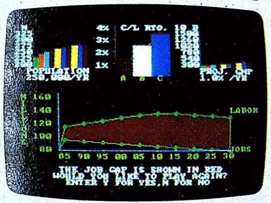
ALPHA DELTA COMMUNICATIONS, INC.
P.O. Box 571, Centerville, Ohio 45459 • (513) 435-4772

COLORPLUS™
Shatters The Mold.



A vibrant, varied new world of color is now at your fingertips.

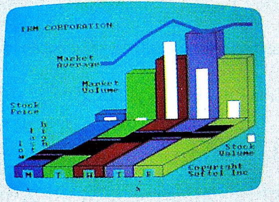
We've shattered the mold for color graphics adapters with COLORPLUS, a high resolution, full color breakthrough fully compatible with IBM Personal Computer hardware and software.



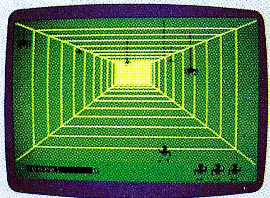
COLORPLUS produces incredibly sharp, detailed multicolor graphics of professional quality at a low PC price.* Its state of the art biplanar technology enables high resolution 4 color 80 character graphics or medium resolution 16 color 40 character graphics.

XT COMPATIBLE

The current IBM PC capabilities of high resolution 1 color 80 character graphics and medium resolution 4 color 40 character graphics simply pale in comparison, now that the era of COLORPLUS has arrived.



Using only a single expansion slot, COLORPLUS includes an integrated parallel port, thereby saving you an expansion slot for future needs. No modification is required to existing software in the IBM modes. Enhanced software supporting COLORPLUS Graphics capabilities is currently available from major software suppliers.



For over 31 years, Frederick Electronics Corporation has developed high quality electronic equipment world-wide. The key to our success is our international reputation for customer support. PC+ Products will continue in this tradition. Frederick Electronics Corporation is a subsidiary of Plantronics, Inc., a publicly owned company listed on the NYSE as PLX.

The goal of PC+ Products is to expand your options, to make your personal computer more valuable and productive. COLORPLUS is just one example of our commitment to that objective.

Contact us for the name of your nearest COLORPLUS dealer.

PC+™ PRODUCTS

PLANTRONICS™
Frederick Electronics
7630 Hayward Road, P.O. Box 502
Frederick, Maryland 21701
Telephone: 1-800-638-6211
(301) 662-5901, TELEX: 893438

---

* Suggested retail price: $475.00, including software.

PC+ and COLORPLUS are trademarks of Plantronics/Frederick Electronics Corp. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

performance. As an investor, you must determine which of these ratios are important to you.

Net cash return on equity is the net cash flow for the year, divided by the total cash invested. It represents the cash flow return to investors on their equity (ownership). The *net cash return on investment* is the result of the present year's cash flow divided by the original investment in the property. Using this rate of return, investors can determine if the property is the best current investment. If another investment appears as though it will yield a higher return, investors should consider "redeploying" their assets.

The equity income section shows us how the property has performed during the present year. *Net spendable income* is the same as the net cash flow, shown in the previous section. When this figure is adjusted by principal payments—either principal reductions or increases, which are determined by the characteristics of the loan—the result is *net equity income.*

The *net return on investment* is computed by dividing net equity income by the original investment. The *net equity income rate* is computed by dividing the current year net equity income by the total cash invested in the property. This result represents the rate at which the current year's equity income is expressed as a percentage of the total cash invested to date. (Note: This differs from the previous calculation in that it uses total cash invested, as opposed to the original cash invested.)

The *equity growth rate* is computed by taking the incremental increase in value of the property (as shown on line 40) and dividing it by total cash invested (line 6). This computation takes into account the noncash appreciated value of the property, expressed as a percentage of the total cash invested. The *total equity rate* is simply the sum of the previously determined net equity income rate (line 33) and the equity growth rate (line 34). This ratio produces the total equity rate by combining the equity derived via current equity income with the appreciated value of the property.

The depreciation section shows the current year's depreciation broken down between real and personal property. This represents the amount that has been deducted based on the ACRS methods chosen during data entry.

The summary is just that. It starts out with net equity income (line 39) and increases this amount by the *current year's computed appreciated value* (line 40) based on the investor-supplied growth rate. The combination of these two amounts represents the *total gain on the property* for the year (line 41). The ratio calculated on line 42 is the total gain expressed as a percentage of the original investment.

The "results of sale or exchange at year end" section provides information on the overall tax and equity effects that would result if the property were sold or exchanged at year end. This section is designed to take into account the results produced from all the previous calculations, combined with current tax law (which must be updated to reflect changes) and other investor-supplied data, to produce the information supplied in lines 43 through 54. It can "tempt" an investor to sell, or it can promote the idea of holding onto the property.

How do you know whether to hold or sell a property? *REAP* won't tell you what to do, and we won't try to either. Investments are very personal matters, and the results of a sale or exchange of real estate or investment property can have very complex tax and legal ramifications. For these reasons, you really should discuss any moves with tax and legal experts.

So what has *REAP* done for us? Primarily, it has forced us to structure our analysis. It will not let us forget about an important assumption or variable. No matter how structured an analysis is, however, or how often *REAP* prompts you to enter data, the program's analysis will only be as good as the data you enter. Remember the old data processing adage: GIGO (garbage in, garbage out). In other words, if you are not realistic, *REAP* will not be realistic either.

One of the major strengths of the software is that it allows an investor to analyze many different sets of alternatives quickly and easily. Naturally, the higher the quality of information on which you base your decision, the better that decision will be.

The documentation that comes with *REAP* is clear and easy to read. However, it is designed for the expert real estate investor. The program makes no effort whatsoever to explain either how the analysis is run or how it should be interpreted. The interpretations in this article are the authors', and you should be aware that it took many hours of banging on a calculator to figure out how various computations were made. This was necessary, because *REAP*'s documentation does not show the user what formulas are used in the program. To add validity to its results, any analytical tool really should be fully documented in this area.

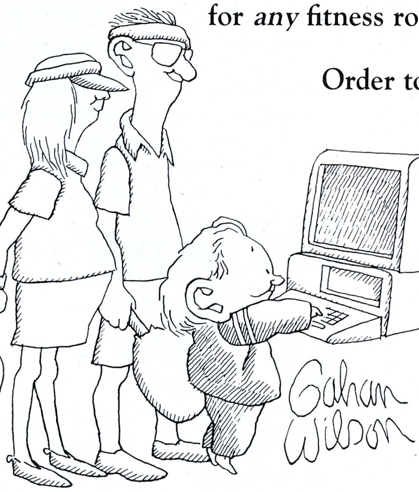
In its current form, without sufficient written backup information about its calculations and terminology, or explanations of what the numbers mean, *REAP* will probably be of value only to sophisticated real estate investors or marketeers. If you don't fancy yourself as a world-class real estate investor, you're likely to find *REAP* easy to operate but difficult to interpret. (Chart follows on page 133.) ▲

Get InShape!™

THE PERSONAL DIET AND EXERCISE PROGRAM FOR IBM-PC USERS.

In Shape™ makes it easy to keep daily records of diet and exercise with an extensive, computerized food dictionary. Automatic calculation of points for aerobic exercise. Flexible plotting capabilities. InShape can be used by anyone— for *any* fitness routine!

Order today from DEG Software, 800/231-0627. In Texas, call 713/531-6100. Suggested retail price $95.



DEG software
11999 Katy Freeway, Suite 150
Houston, Texas 77079
800/231-0627, 713/531-6100.

From the makers of PerFin, the personal finance program for the IBM-PC.

MLS
FOR THE IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER
IBM

RESTON INTRODUCES MICRO LEARNING SYSTEMS™

You can't learn to fly a plane just by reading about it. The same goes for using your personal computer. That's why Micro Learning Systems™ created a new series of microcomputer training programs, the **Teach**™ series. They're interactive, computer-based programs that teach you to use your computer ON your computer. Each program is your private teacher, guiding you through a series of customized, self-paced lessons. Graphic displays make learning easy, and the source material becomes your reference for years to come. Micro Learning Systems™training programs make complex hardware and software truly "user-friendly". You'll save time and money learning how to get the most out of your microcomputer investment—the easy way—with Micro Learning Systems training.

Micro Learning Systems presents for the IBM Personal Computer™:

- The IBM™ Teach Program
- Teach Program for VISICALC™
- The BASIC Teach Program
- dBase II™ Teach
- Multi Plan™ Teach
- XT-2.0™ Teach

Reston Software™

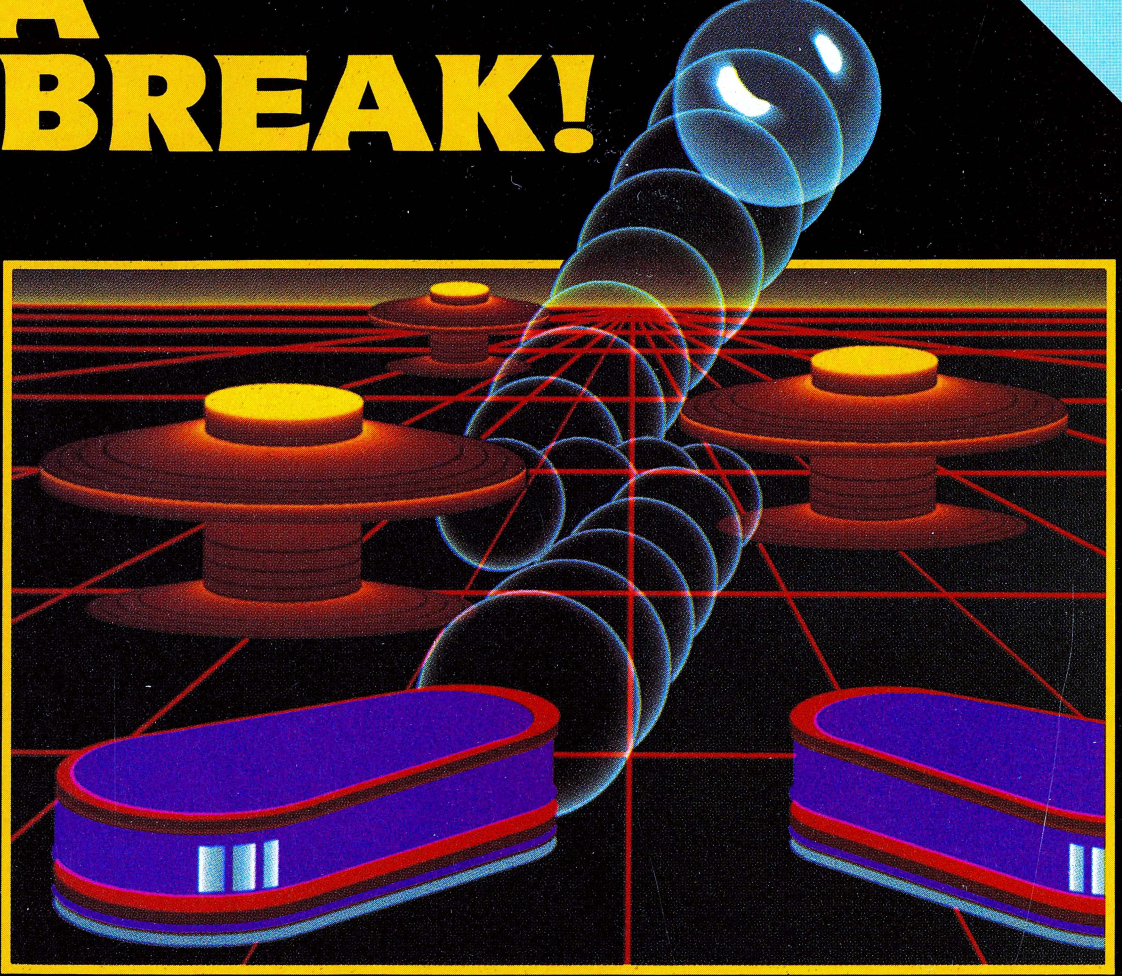
A Prentice-Hall Company
11480 Sunset Hills Road
Reston, Virginia 22090

Available at local computer and software stores or order directly from Reston at (800) 336-0338

IBM™, IBM Personal Computer™, and TX-2.0 are registered trademarks of International Business Machines.
VISICALC™ is a trademark of VISICORP.
dBase II™ is a trademark of Ashton Tate.
MultiPlan™ is a trademark of Microsoft.
Micro Learning Systems™ is a trademark of Reston Publishing.

For IBM-PC
and IBM-XT

TAKE
A
BREAK!



WITH NIGHT MISSION

PINBALL

You deserve the best. You've earned it. Now reward yourself with a session of **Night Mission PINBALL**, the most realistic and challenging arcade simulation ever conceived! ■ Stunning graphics and dazzling sound effects put **Night Mission PINBALL** in a class by itself. Game features: multi-ball and multi-player capabilities, ten different professionally designed levels of play, and an editor that lets you create *your own* custom modes. ■ So take a break with **Night Mission PINBALL** from SubLOGIC. Winner of *Electronic Games* magazine's 1983 Arcade Award for Best Computer Audio/Visual Effects.

SubLOGIC
Night
Mission

See your dealer . . .

or write or call for more information. For direct orders please add $1.50 for shipping and specify UPS or first class mail delivery. Illinois residents add 5% sales tax. American Express, Diner's Club, MasterCard, and Visa accepted.

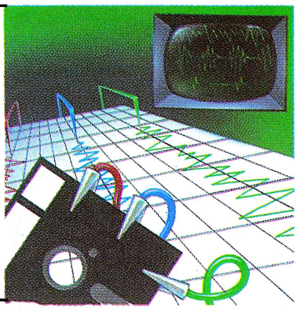
Order Line: 800/637-4983

subLOGIC
Corporation
713 Edgebrook Drive
Champaign IL 61820
(217) 359-8482 Telex: 206995

ID: OFFICE COMPLEX 2323 KEENER LANE, CHARLOTTE, NC 28299

BEGINNING OF YEAR VALUES	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1 Purchase Price	1100000	1149500	1252955	1365721	1488636	1622613	1768648	1927826	2101330	2290450
2 Loan 1	750000	749850	749515	749126	748675	748151	747543	746837	746018	745067
3 Loan 2	150000	161951	177885	183197	177886	161952	0	0	0	0
4 Loan 3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
5 Total Loan Balance	900000	911801	927400	932323	926561	910103	747543	746837	746018	745067
6 Cash Invested	200000	237699	325555	433398	562075	712510	1021105	1180989	1355312	1545383
7 Adjusted Cost Basis	1100000	1022000	890000	768000	654000	548000	492000	444000	404000	364000
PROPERTY INCOME ANALYSIS										
8 Gross Scheduled Income	150000	313500	325000	354250	350000	381500	415835	453260	494053	400000
9 Less Vacancy Factor	12000	25080	26000	28340	21000	22890	24950	27196	29643	40000
10 Gross Operating Income	138000	288420	299000	325910	329000	358610	390885	426064	464410	360000
11 Less Operating Expenses	87500	182875	199334	217274	200000	218000	237620	259006	282317	307726
12 Net Operating Income	50500	105545	99666	108636	129000	140610	153265	167058	182093	52274
13 Capitalization Rate	4.59	9.18	7.95	7.95	8.67	8.67	8.67	8.67	8.67	2.28
TAXABLE INCOME										
14 Net Operating Income	50500	105545	99666	108636	129000	140610	153265	167058	182093	52274
15 Less Interest Payments	56245	112455	112401	112339	112266	112182	112084	111971	111839	111686
16 Interest By Rule of 78's	25451	42934	32312	21689	11066	1549	0	0	0	0
17 Less Depreciation	78000	132000	122000	114000	106000	56000	48000	40000	40000	40000
18 Taxable Income	-109196	-181844	-167047	-139392	-100332	-29121	-6819	15087	30254	-99412
CASH FLOW										
19 Net Operating Income	50500	105545	99666	108636	129000	140610	153265	167058	182093	52274
20 Less Principal & Interest Payments	81846	155724	145102	134479	123856	276290	112790	112790	112790	112790
21 Gross Spendable	-31346	-50179	-45436	-25843	5144	-135680	40475	54268	69303	-60516
22 Income Tax Benefit	-54598	-90922	-83523	-69696	-50166	-14560	-3409	7544	15127	-49706
23 Less Reserves Transaction	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
24 Net Cash Flow	23252	40743	38087	43853	55310	-121120	43884	46724	54176	-10810
25 Cumulative Cash Flow	23252	63995	102082	145935	201245	80125	124009	170733	224909	214099
26 Reserve Account Balance	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
27 Net Cash Return on Equity	11.63	17.14	11.70	10.12	9.84	-17.00	4.30	3.96	4.00	-0.70
28 Net Cash Return on Investment	11.63	20.37	19.04	21.93	27.66	-60.56	21.94	23.36	27.09	-5.41
EQUITY INCOME										
29 Net Spendable	23252	40743	38087	43853	55310	-121120	43884	46724	54176	-10810
30 Principal Payments	-11801	-15599	-4922	5763	16458	150608	706	819	951	1104
31 Net Equity Income	11451	25144	33165	49616	71768	29488	44590	47543	55127	-9706
32 Net Return on Investment	5.73	12.57	16.58	24.81	35.88	14.74	22.30	23.77	27.56	-4.85
33 Net Equity Income Rate	5.73	10.58	10.19	11.45	12.77	4.14	4.37	4.03	4.07	-0.63
34 Equity Growth Rate	24.75	43.52	34.64	28.36	23.84	10.25	15.59	14.69	13.95	13.34
35 Total Equity Rate	30.48	54.10	44.83	39.81	36.60	14.39	19.96	18.72	18.02	12.71
DEPRECIATION										
36 Real Property	48000	88000	80000	72000	64000	56000	48000	40000	40000	40000
37 Personal Property	30000	44000	42000	42000	42000	0	0	0	0	0
38 Total Depreciation	78000	132000	122000	114000	106000	56000	48000	40000	40000	40000
SUMMARY										
39 Net Equity Income	11451	25144	33165	49616	71768	29488	44590	47543	55127	-9706
40 Plus Increase in Value Property	49500	103455	112766	122915	133977	73018	159178	173504	189120	206141
41 Total Gain	60951	128599	145931	172531	205745	102506	203768	221047	244247	196435
42 Total Gain as % of Orig. Invest.	30.48	64.30	72.97	86.27	102.87	51.25	101.88	110.52	122.12	98.22
RESULTS OF SALE OR EXCHANGE AT YEAR END										
43 Purchase Price	1149500	1252955	1365721	1488636	1622613	1768648	1927826	2101330	2290450	2496591
44 Less Selling Cost	86213	93972	102429	111648	121696	132649	144587	157600	171784	187244
45 Less Adjusted Cost Basis	1022000	890000	768000	654000	548000	492000	444000	404000	364000	324000
46 Taxable Gain	41287	268983	495292	722988	952917	1143999	1339239	1539730	1754666	1985347
47 Excess Depreciation	48000	136000	216000	288000	352000	408000	456000	496000	536000	576000
48 Depreciation for Recapture	41287	136000	216000	288000	352000	408000	456000	496000	536000	576000
49 Tax on Ordinary Income at Sale	20644	68000	108000	144000	176000	204000	228000	248000	268000	288000
50 Tax on Capital Gain at Sale	0	26597	55858	86998	120183	147200	176648	208746	243733	281869
51 Total Tax at Sale	20644	94597	163858	230998	296183	351200	404648	456746	511733	569869
52 Equity if Sold	130842	136986	167111	219429	294631	537256	631754	740966	861866	995515
53 Equity if Exchanged	237699	325555	433398	562075	712510	1021105	1180989	1355312	1545383	1752628
54 Internal Rate of Return DCF	0.00	0.26	11.85	19.39	24.49	26.27	26.21	26.04	25.82	24.87

marketalk reviews



Unless otherwise indicated, software listed runs in DOS 1.1 or 2.0 with either display adapter and requires 64K and at least one disk drive.

The Creator

Software Technology for Computers bills *The Creator* as a "Basic Program Generator." There're lots of ideas tied up on those few words that need clarification before we come to grips with the program itself.

In the ancient microcomputing era that was BBB (before Big Blue), a British concern made waves at the West Coast Computer Faire with a program called *The Last One.* It too was a Basic program generator, and the good folks from Great Britain hyped it as "the last program you'll ever need to buy."

In essence, what they were alleging was that *The Last One* was capable of writing any application program that you were capable of conceiving. Those with generous spirits labeled that claim "hyperbole." The less generous were. . .well, less generous, using a term generally reserved for waste matter from a bovine male.

As events transpired, the latter group was closer to the mark. If *The Last One* turned out to be the last program you ever bought, it was because you got fed up with computing and turned to needlepoint.

Program generators do indeed write programs, but they have limitations that invalidate any pretentions to being the only program you'll ever need.

Application programs that write application programs are a relatively new development at all levels of computing. On larger systems, they're more flexible than their micro cousins, but all suffer generally from the same deficiency—they allow you to generate only those programs that the author of the program generator provided for. If you want to write a statistical analysis package and the author only provided for database applications, you have arrived at that location most often described as being upstream in a sewage disposal system without means of propulsion.

Most commonly, program generators actually function to create specialized database applications. They normally don't do much else, and they certainly don't do windows.

The word "Basic" has real meaning in the description as well; and whether that word implies a strength or a weakness depends on the individual end user.

In fact, the programs written with *The Creator* and other common microcomputer program generators are executed in Basic. For users demanding high performance, the slowness of execution speed inherent in a Basic program can be frustrating.

But there's another side to that issue. First, the program can be compiled for faster execution. Second, the program in its native form can be easily understood and modified. That modifiability is one of the strengths of a program generator.

The Creator goes a couple of tentative steps beyond producing listable, modifiable code for specific database functions. It also lets you generate your own text editor—called a word processor in the manual—and your own graphing module. And the program performs its functions with simplicity and speed. It generally is true that the greenest novice can write hundreds of lines of bug-free code in a few hours using *The Creator.*

Author Gary Haffer has taken care not to leave the beginner behind. His manual starts with a brief but pithy explanation of Basic programming techniques that will stand the user in good stead as time goes by. He concludes the manual with various helpful tips about the use of the pc that can do nothing but make the owner a better microcomputer user.

And within the guts of the manual itself are clear and concise explanations of how the program works that approach being foolproof. With *The Creator*, you can get a mailing list program in less than thirty minutes and an invoicing program in less than an hour. What you don't get with those programs is peak performance. That's where modification and compiled code enter the picture.

Once *The Creator* has chunked out miles of Basic code, the smart

THE USUAL HOLIDAY DRIVEL IN THE GUISE OF A HOUSE AD

Make no mistake about it: The inexorable sands of time have crept around again to that spot on the calendar we so euphemistically call the "Holiday Season." We get Thanksgiving this month, followed by Christmas, New Year's, and then a chance to catch our breath.

So what are we thankful for? Well, we're thankful *PC* and *PC World* haven't put us out of business yet. And we're thankful that our book division has almost earned its name by getting at least one manuscript almost ready for printing. We're also grateful that one or two of our columnists are actually sending in their copy on time.

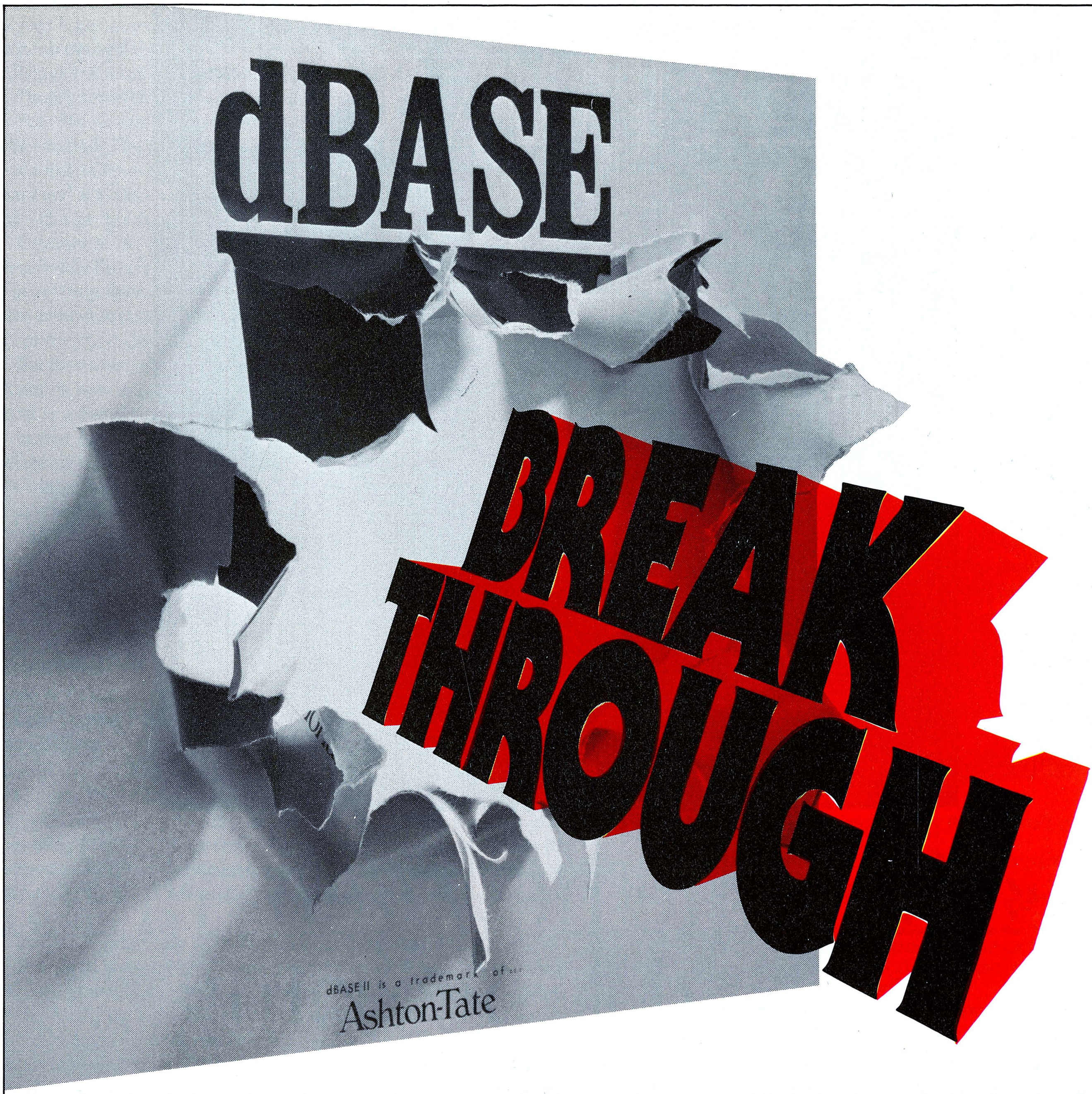
Of course we're grateful that so many of you readers are deciding to continue with us after your free trial subscription has expired. But we'd be even more grateful if you'd all stop taking so much pride in being the only ones on your block with a subscription to *Softalk.*

GIVE!

Give *Softalk* to Aunt Millie, the postman, the crotchety neighbor next door, cousin Arnold, and the cute kid who can't stay out of your crab-apple tree. Give *Softalk* to your school library, your public library, and your company library. Give lots of *Softalk*s. Then you'll be infused with the Christmas spirit and we'll be thankful for your generosity. That way, we can both enter the new year with smiles on our faces.

There, we've done it! We've paid our homage to three holidays in one appeal. How can you resist?

P.S.: We'll even save you money. Through December 31, we'll take $18 instead of $24 for a one-year subscription.



Announcing

the most sophisticated database program development tools available on any personal computer anywhere.

The Database ACCELERATOR™

Automatic program, screen, menu, report generation.
Automatically checks, formats, documents your programs.
Now available for the IBM PC at an introductory price of $195. 30 day money back guarantee.

from
Optimal Software

The Database Accelerator is a trademark of Optimal Software.

Distributed by Programming International
505 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 301, Palo Alto, CA 94301
(800)222-8811 inside California: **(800)631-4400**

Dealer inquiries welcome.

Also available at
SOFTWARE To Go
and other fine
software dealers

SOFTCON
NEW ORLEANS
La Superdome
Feb 21-23, 1984
Booth 1151

Leading the new generation in word processing...

Textra leaves behind the costly and complicated word processors of yesterday.

Leading in performance.
Most of today's word processors were converted to work on the IBM PC from their designs for yesterday's machines. If this seems like a step backwards, it is.

Textra was designed to take advantage of the speed and power in your IBM PC and the result is clear—a word processor that helps you work faster with less effort.

Leading in learning.
Learning to use Textra is easy too!

Our highly acclaimed tutorial is actually a film on disk, rolling by on your screen. You can pause, change speeds, even fast forward or rewind, (and for the first time, have fun while learning to use a software program).

Leading in price.
Let's face it. The days of the $495 word processor are numbered. There is simply no reason to pay that much now that Textra is here.

Take a closer look.
See for yourself how easy Textra makes word processing. Ask your dealer for a demonstration today, or order directly from us. Send $95 with the confidence of a money back guarantee, or $3 for a full Test Disk. (Visa/MC, COD accepted)

Textra also works with the PC XT and leading compatibles.
Textra requires PC DOS (any version), 128 K, and a monochrome or color monitor.

Textra and the A² Software logo are trademarks of Ann Arbor Software.
© 1983, Ann Arbor Software, All rights reserved.

TEXTRA

™
*A² Software
*Ann Arbor Software, 407 N. Main Street
P.O. Box 7345, Ann Arbor, MI 48107
Phone: 313-769-9088

Textra Jr. 39.95

**An outstanding text editor.
An outstanding price.**

Ideal for:
program editing • simple word processing • dBase II™ programming • works with Visicalc,™ Supercalc,™ Lotus 1-2-3™

P.S. You can upgrade to Textra at any-time for the difference in price.

TM = Manufacturers trademark.

user will go in and optimize that code for faster execution. The smarter user will then compile the program for even speedier execution. Even then, no one will think they're seing *dBase II* in action. But the program will have the merit of being precisely what you want, when you want it. There's something to be said for that.

For *The Creator* to accomplish its mission, certain niceties have been omitted. There's no attempt at precision screen editing. Each field gets a line of its own. That may be efficient, but it certainly lacks elegance and at times—when it would be helpful to have several fields on a line—can be disconcerting.

Elegance aside, however, program generators have a real place in the software library of all microcomputer users who want the flexibility of generating their own specific applications. A program writer spews forth error-free code in a hurry, leaving the author merely with the task of optimizing it. Just as a labor-saving device, they earn their keep.

But they aren't a replacement for the powerful commercial database programs now appearing on the pc market. They can best be understood as a complement to commercial programs.

In that light, *The Creator* stands up very well, thank you. No one will throw away *dBase II* for the database features or *WordStar* for the text editor. But it's hard to imagine anyone being disappointed with it, unless they thought they were buying their last program. *The Creator* shouldn't be the last program you'll ever buy, but maybe it should be the next one. ART

The Creator, by Gary Haffer, Software Technology for Computers (153 California Street, Newton MA 02158; 617-923-4334). $300. Requires two double-sided disk drives.

MasterType
Type & Learn
Touch Typing Made Easy!
Type-Righter

Many are the skills that the owner of a personal computer might wish to acquire. You could master Basic or another high-level language and get your pc jumping through hoops. You could learn assembly programming to make it jump faster. Word processing would facilitate the composition of that Gothic romance you've always meant to dash off over a long weekend. Or perhaps you fancy battling trolls in an underground empire.

Before you start any of these, however, you should learn to type.

The days are long past when learning to type was the exclusive province of would-be secretaries. As the computer becomes a window on the world for everyone from corporate executives to elementary school kids, keyboard mastery becomes an important requisite for frustration-free computing. After all, the world's most sophisticated word processor will be to no avail if you laboriously have to hunt and peck the steamy dialogue for your novel. And what about program listings? Man knows no greater drudgery than to input several dozen lines of data statements number by number. And because you must shift your eyes from page to keyboard to screen to page, there's an excellent chance you will make enough typing errors to hang up the whole system the first time you try to run your program. And wouldn't battling trolls be more fun if your fingers flew along the keys at your subconscious command?

For those of us who shunned the junior high school typing class, all is not lost. Several companies have produced typing tutors in an attempt to make it possible for even the most obdurate one-finger hunter and pecker to build speed and confidence. It's possible that even those already initiated into the touch system of typing would want to consider working with one of these programs, whether to increase speed or simply to adjust to the eccentricities of the pc keyboard.

Type-Righter, from Oakes, starts with a display of the keyboard and the option of having all the keys labeled or just the ones you'll be working with. It might be advisable for a beginner to leave the key display off, as otherwise you'll spend as much time trying to spot which key is blinking on your display (the program's prompt for typing) as

PC-DEMO

At last: An inexpensive, quick way to have demo programs of IBM software delivered to your door!

Information Unlimited
Easy Business
Easywriter II
American Training
Training Modules
Software Publishing
pfs: write
Laboratory Micro
PC/Forth
Software Solutions
Data Ease
WordEase
Word Associates
Jotto
Cdex
Training Program
Symmetric Software
Blue
Computer Aided Design
MicroCad
Desktop Computer
Graph 'n Calc
Micro Investment
Stock Portfolio Reporter

PC Software
PC crayon
Lifetree
Volkswriter
Fox & Geller
Quickcode
VisiCorp
VisiWord

Morgan Computing
TED
Trace86
Prof'l BASIC
Image Processing
Proofwriter
Metasoft
Benchmark
Bellesoft
ESP Pascal
C Programmer
RoseSoft
ProKey
Financier, Inc.
Financier
Satellite Software
Word Perfect
Select Info
Select

. . .and many more!

Hundreds of subscribers now enjoy **PC-Demo's** benefits:

- ☆ **a monthly diskette** packed with demo programs,
- ☆ **a catalog of demo** programs that can be ordered,
- ☆ **a $6 discount coupon** each month good toward any software purchase from 800-Software,
- ☆ **prompt service** and reasonable prices.

Our price? **$6 per month.** All you need is 64K of RAM and one single-sided disk drive to sample the best newly-released software for the IBM PC and XT. Join the others and sign up for a 3-month subscription today.

To subscribe, phone **(415) 974-5134** with Visa or MasterCard or send us the coupon below:

Please sign me up for the next three issues of **PC-Demo** at a cost of just $18.

Payment: ☐ Check or M.O. ☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard
Card Number ________________
Expiration Date ________________
Signature ________________
☐ Tell me how I can get my software on PC-Demo

Name ________________
Address ________________
City ________ State ________ Zip ________

Mail to: PC-Demo, 1724 Sacramento St. #444
San Francisco, CA 94114

you do learning the keyboard. If you have a graphics adapter, you have the option of watching ghostly hands float over the keyboard and indicate which key you're to strike.

The program offers a series of "lessons" and "exercises" that concentrate on different sections of the keyboard. An evaluation option stops the lesson and informs you of the number of hits and misses as well as the number of strokes per minute that your fingers have been able to manage. Isn't typing speed usually measured in words per minute? Yes, but *Type-Righter* does not actually feature any words; its lessons concentrate on single keys. The program is designed to teach the utter neophyte the layout of the keyboard, so those who wish to brush up on their rusty typing will probably find it inadequate.

Touch Typing Made Easy!, from Alkazar Associates, has a keyboard display similar to that of *Type-Righter.* The exercises provided include typing lists of words and short sentences such as "firs lure dealers." This probably does more to take the budding typist beyond merely learning the layout of the keyboard and toward greater speed and confidence. Just how much greater speed you may never know, as the emphasis in the exercises is on accuracy; speed is not reported. Still, this could be an excellent program for those wishing to brush up dormant typing skills but not planning on becoming typesetters.

Type & Learn, from Simsoft, represents a step up in both sophistication and cost. The authors take the educational aspect of their program very seriously. Practice is provided in typing letters, words, and phrases. What's more, the exercises themselves serve a didactic purpose—students practice typing computer terms and definitions. There are two hundred of these words and definitions in the program's data files, so a serious-minded typist could get plenty of practice. The program provides an evaluation that includes the right-to-wrong ratio and (at the intermediate level) words per minute.

Type & Learn takes a no-nonsense approach to the rote typing instruction drills, and teachers are likely to appreciate the efforts the program's authors have made to ensure that the program can be used in a classroom setting. Younger typists, however, might find the soberness of the program a bit daunting.

MasterType takes a completely different tack. Lightning Software's entrant is essentially an attempt to create a typing arcade game. The user types letters or words at the program's prompting. Each correctly typed word unleashes a blast of energy to destroy one of four creeping aliens that threaten the spaceship in the center of the screen. The game, er, educational program, makes effective use of color and sound to turn the inevitable typing drill into something that, while not exactly *Pac-Man*, is kind of fun.

In addition, *MasterType* lets you choose the typing speed goal that you would like to achieve and provides you with an accuracy and words-per-minute evaluation after each onslaught of aliens. Don't worry, if you set your goal too high, the program gently hints that you try an easier level. Another excellent feature of the program is its ability to recognize words that take the user more than one attempt to type and to repeat these words shortly afterward as a kind of Skinnerian reinforcement.

MasterType is the sort of sugar-coated educational program that kids will love; they can even make their own word lists so they can learn to type the names of, say, their favorite sports stars and zap aliens too.

Of course, most people could probably learn to touch-type simply by learning the home keys and carefully working out which letter should be hit by which finger. Any of these programs, however, will teach your digits to dance much faster than you could do alone. Who knows, you might even find it fun. JB

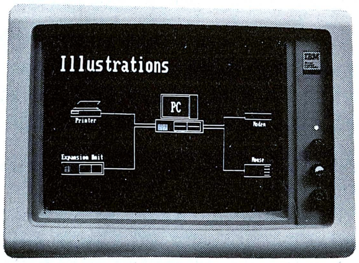
Type-Righter, by Martin Oakes, Oakes (2100 Oriole Drive, Freeport, IL 61032; 815-235-9131). $19.

Touch Typing Made Easy!, Alkazar Associates (2638 South Lynn Street, Arlington, VA 22202; 202-382-7407). $24.95.

Type & Learn, Simsoft (Box 7095, Port Huron, MI 48301; 313-984-1570). $60.

Master Type, by Bruce Zweig, Lightning Software (480 California Avenue, Palo Alto, CA 94306; 415-327-3280). $49.95. ▲

PYXEL Presentations!
Maximum Quality ... Minimum Effort



PYXEL Visuals lets you create screens with text in 4 character sizes (¼" to 1" high) and drawn lines. Reposition any part of the screen with cursor controls. Fully interactive design and edit capabilities. Print horizontally or vertically.

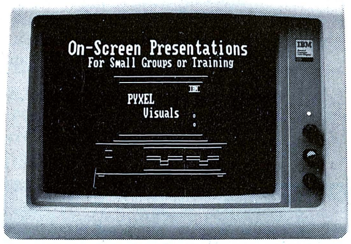
There are no commands (not one!) to learn — or forget! You select the action with the function keys and manipulate the image you see on screen. It's easy — and fast.

Our new BATCHPRINT utility (used for the headline of this ad) lets you print PYXEL Visuals screens in the highest possible resolution on an EPSON or IBM Graphics printer. Create and edit a list of screens (SHOWTIME compatible) then print them while you get a cup of coffee.

PYXEL
APPLICATIONS

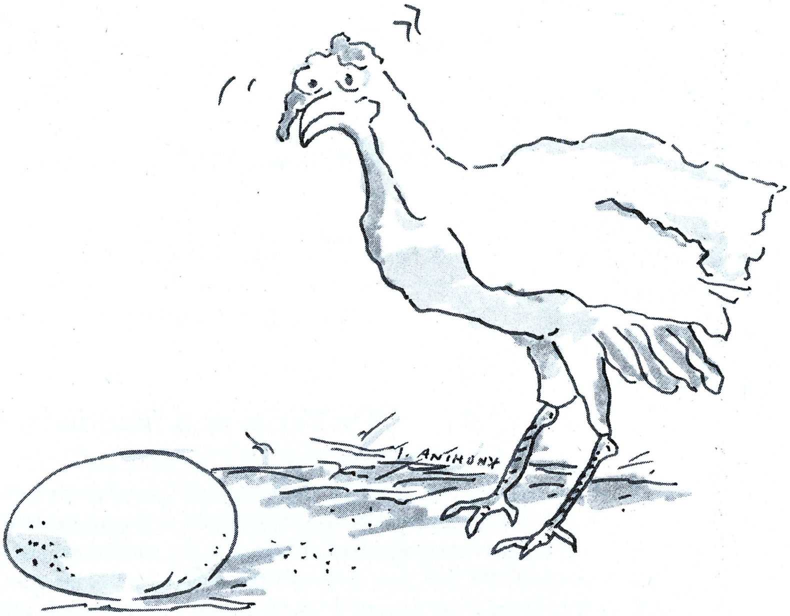
2917 Mohawk Dr.
Richmond, VA 23235
(804) 320-5573

PYXEL Visuals - $98
BATCHPRINT - $75
MasterCard/Visa Accepted



The SHOWTIME utility, included with PYXEL Visuals, lets you link screens together and create a free-running show. You choose the time between screen changes. Or use prompt mode to step forward to each screen or go back to a previous screen.

Requires: IBM PC with PC-DOS; 128K RAM; Color/Graphics Adapter; Graphics Monitor; EPSON MX-100, MX-80 with GRAFTRAX, FX-80, IBM Graphics Printer. DOS 2.0 and XT compatible.



Which Came First?

QUOTEMINDER and TELEMINDER are the revolutionary software packages that access quotes and news faster and cheaper than ever before.

Fast Quotes

- Fast quotes means spending little or no time in front of your computer; and best of all, money in your pocket.
- How fast? QUOTEMINDER can get you up to 40 quotes in as little as 60 seconds!*
- How cheap? As little as a penny and a half per quote!*
- How versatile? *QUOTEMINDER automatically interfaces with Dow Jones Software,™ VisiCalc,® Lotus 1*2*3*™ and more.*
- How much? QUOTEMINDER costs only $99.
- Get all the quotes you want and get them fast.

QUOTEMINDER
Quote Retrieval Software

*1200 Baud, non-prime time, Warner Computer.

Better Decisions

- Better decisions require up-to-the-minute, comprehensive news information.
- Dow Jones News/Retrieval® is the finest source for business and financial news.
- *Now you can tap into Dow Jones for less money and less time than ever before with TELEMINDER.*
- Less time—TELEMINDER runs all by itself.
- Less money—TELEMINDER's speed and efficiency save up to 50% of your on-line charges.
- Get all the business and financial news you want… when you want it. And it's only $195.

TELEMINDER
News and Quotes Retrieval Software

QUOTEMINDER and TELEMINDER. Which came first? It really doesn't matter. The fact is with either one you save money; you waste no time and you can almost count your chickens before they hatch.

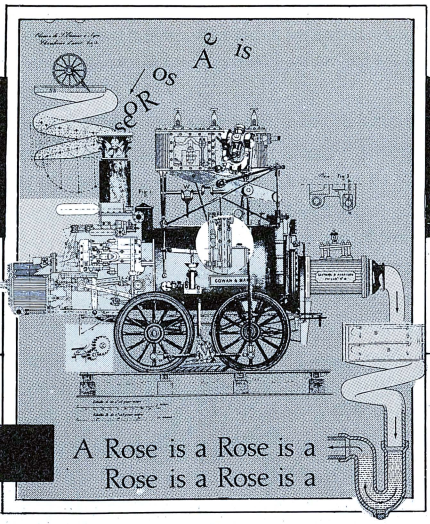
TELEWARE

Creators of the Dow Jones Market Manager™

For further information call **1-800-225-0076** (in N.J. 201-882-0466) Dealer inquiries invited.
Teleware, Inc. • P.O. Box 729 • 28 Bloomfield Ave. • Pine Brook, NJ 07058

© Copyright, 1983, Teleware, Inc., Pine Brook NJ
Dow Jones News/Retrieval is a registered trademark of Dow Jones Co., Inc. Dow Jones Software and Dow Jones Market Manager are trademarks of Dow Jones Co., Inc.
Lotus 1*2*3 is a trademark of Lotus Development Corp.

THE PROCESSED WORD


Rose Is A
A Rose is a Rose is a
Rose is a Rose is a

by F. Lloyd Datz and Terry Tinsley Datz

PFS: Write and MultiMate

This month we'll look at *PFS:Write* and *MultiMate*, two new word processors aimed at vastly differing audiences.

PFS:Write

PFS:Write is the newest member of the PFS family, which also includes *PFS:File, PFS:Report,* and *PFS:Graph.* Software Publishing Corporation's programs have a reputation for being incredibly easy to learn and use, and *Write* is no exception. To keep the program simple, *Write*'s designers have tried to include only the most commonly used features and have purposefully left out some of the frills you'll find in the more powerful (and more expensive) word processing programs. The result is a straightforward program that's both effortless to learn and efficient to use.

DISKETTES
3M Scotch BRAND
AT SUPER LOW PRICES
FOR YOUR IBM COMPUTER
Scotch DISKETTES
ARE TESTED AND GUARANTEED
ERROR FREE
CALL TOLL FREE TODAY
IBM CLUB MEMBERS WELCOME
WE SHIP WITHIN 24 HOURS
MASTERCARD • VISA • C.O.D.
WE PAY SHIPPING CHARGES
CALL TOLL FREE
800-922-8193
IN CA 800-468-1068
Tayco Business Forms
Computer Supplies
P.O. Box 605
Newbury Park, CA 91320

Overall Design. *Write* works as easily as the other PFS programs. All commands are entered through a series of menus, except for the editing operations, which are done with special function keys. Throughout the program you use the F10 key (instead of the enter key) to give the go-ahead after you enter a command, while the escape key puts the brakes on and returns you to the main menu.

Text Entry and Editing. When you select the type/edit submenu from the main menu, the editing screen appears and you're ready to go. Lines at the top and sides of the screen represent the edges of the electronic page; at the bottom are a ruler and a status line. The ruler marks the left and right margin settings, any tab stops that you have set, and the horizontal position of the cursor. The status line displays the name of the document being edited and the line and column coordinates of the cursor. There's also a "gas gauge" that indicates the percentage of memory your document occupies.

When you enter the type/edit menu, the editor is automatically in overtype mode. To insert text, you press the insert key; this mode change is indicated by the cursor, which instantly changes from a blinking underscore to a rectangle.

Although *Write* doesn't give you an overabundance of ways to move the cursor, it doesn't compromise on speed—the cursor covers ground at a gallop. The arrow keys move the cursor a character or a line at a time, and the F3 and F4 keys, combined with the shift key, move the cursor forward and backward word by word and to the left and right margins respectively. The home and end keys take you to the beginning and end of the document.

Unlike some programs that page through your document at a snail's pace, rewriting the screen one line at a time, *Write* displays each new screen almost instantly, even when you move ahead by several screens at once. On the other hand, *Write* doesn't scoll horizontally, so you can't create documents wider than seventy-eight columns. At print time, however, you can merge wider documents, such as spreadsheets, by sending your printer a special code for printing in compressed mode.

Write deletes by character, word, or line. The backspace key deletes the character to the left of the cursor, the delete key removes the character under the cursor, and the F5 and F6 keys delete the word or line that the cursor is on.

You can manipulate larger segments of text with the block editing functions. To mark a segment you want to move or delete, press F5 and move the cursor to the end of the block; the cursor highlights characters as it passes over them. If you mark the wrong block by mistake or change your mind, press F5 again and the highlighting will disappear.

Once you've marked the block, you can remove it simply by pressing delete, if delete is all you want to do. Instead of throwing your text away, *Write* stows it in a temporary buffer where it remains until you replace it with another block, turn the computer off, or indicate where you want the block to go.

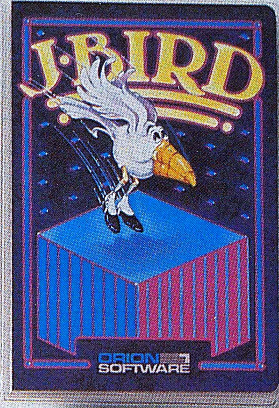
This means that in order to move a block you have to delete it first (a very disconcerting procedure), then move the cursor to the new location, and press F6 to retrieve the block from the buffer. The buffer can hold only thirty-five lines at a time; you can't move a larger block. If you try to manipulate more than thirty-five lines, the program cautions you that part of your text will be lost unless you break the block into smaller segments. If you're deleting text, you can ignore the message; if you're moving text to a new location, you'd better heed the warning.

The search and replace functions give you plenty of on-screen help. You begin a search by pressing F7; "Search for:" appears at the bottom of the screen. Type in the word (or phrase)

J-BIRD™

Hop into excitement with J-BIRD! As you rush to change the color of your 3-D pyramid of blocks you have to avoid the critters that are out to make a meal of you. You're going to love the exciting sound and animation of J-BIRD. There are magic balls, jumping frogs, frisky cats, coily snakes, and a host of other obstacles out to do you in. SPECIAL FEATURES INCLUDE: Composite and RGB color modes, giving you beautiful colors on any monitor you use; incredible graphics and sound; sound on/off option; two player option; joystick or keyboard operation; joystick calibration; multiple difficulty levels; high scores saved on disk. These features make J-BIRD enjoyable for everyone.

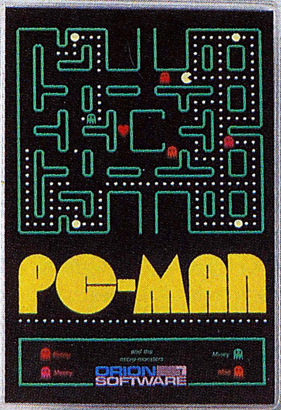
$36.95



PC-MAN™

A fast, personal computer version of the arcade classic. As the game begins you move through a maze, gobbling tiny, white dots to gain points as you go. But you must avoid the micro-monsters who are also moving through the maze seeking a meal at your expense. Don't let them get too close or your only escape will come from gobbling an energizer. This adds points to your score and briefly turns the micro-monsters into harmless ghosts. Make your escape hurriedly and race for your next meal! Contains the same special features as J-BIRD.

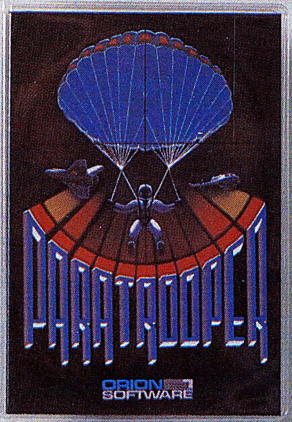
$34.95



PARATROOPER™

"You're the only defender left alive... The enemy has closed in, tested your defenses, and is sending in paratroopers to launch a ground assault... Your one remaining rapid-fire, land-to-air cannon must prevent the paratroopers from landing because four successfully landed paratroopers will stage a ground attack—And once the attack has started, it cannot be stopped. Meanwhile, beware of enemy jets with lethal aim, lurking behind the horizon. You are alone and outnumbered. Can you defend your territory?" Paratrooper is an exciting, high resolution game that can be operated by keyboard or joystick. OPTIONS INCLUDE: pause during play; joystick adjustment; sound on/off toggle; and BREAK for new game.

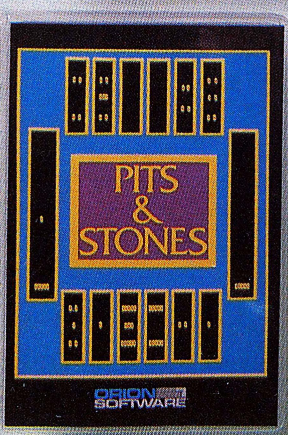
$29.95



PITS & STONES™

This ancient game of skill and cunning has enchanted people all over the world for centuries. Now from the computer science discipline of Artificial Intelligence comes PITMAN, your worthy opponent. After challenging PITMAN you'll be ready to play Pits & Stones with another person. Animation and music (8 songs!) add an engaging counterpoint of sound and motion to this time-honored game. Pits and Stones appeals on some level to all ages: it's a musical counting game for toddlers, a strategy game for children, and an optimal Artificial Intelligence sparring partner for the office tournament. Exercise every aspect of your PC and your mind at the same time . . . play Pits & Stones!

$36.95



To order by mail send check or money order to:
ORION SOFTWARE, P.O. Box 2488, Dept. 1183, Auburn, AL 36831
1-800-821-8088

MasterCard VISA

ORION SOFTWARE

Orion Games

Holiday Excitement for your IBM* Personal Computer! Available at ComputerLand® and other fine PC dealers.

*IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines.

you want to find, press F10, and *Write* displays the word's first occurrence. Just keep pressing F7, followed by F10, to search for other occurrences.

When searching, *Write* ordinarily looks for whole words (as opposed to words within other words); it also ignores case. You can search for partial words or phrases, such as all words beginning with invest, by attaching two periods to the beginning or end of the word. If you enter *invest..* the words *invest, invests, investment, investor,* and the like will be found. If you want to replace a word (or phrase) with another, you can either review each occurrence individually before giving your okay to the change or ask the program to do an automatic global replacement.

An interesting variation on the search function tells you the total number of words in your document or counts the number of times you've used a particular word or phrase. To get a total word count, type two periods after the "Search for:" prompt. As your document scrolls by, the cursor races furiously through it and the program counts words as it goes.

Among the editing features *Write* doesn't offer are column mode, math capability, and windowing.

Formatting and Printing. *Write*'s excellent on-screen formatting ensures that what you see on-screen almost always corresponds to the printed page. However, the notable exceptions are that the screen shows only single spacing no matter how you have formatted the spacing, and, on color monitors, *Write* designates boldfacing and underlining with color.

Page breaks are shown as a pair of horizontal lines; you can start a new page anywhere in a document by embedding the command **New Page**. By moving the cursor through the define-page menu, you can adjust the margin settings, change the page length, and insert any text that you want to have appear in headers or footers. *Write* won't have page numbers automatically printed; if you want them, you have to insert the starting page number in a footer. Since *Write* assumes that any number it encounters in a footer is a page number, you'll have to be careful about using other numbers in your footers (such as chapter numbers). Headers and footers can be no more than two lines long and they cannot be aligned with the left or right margin (as you may well want to do); the headers and footers are always centered.

Any changes that you make in the format menu will affect your entire document. For example, if you change margin settings when you're on page five, the program will back up to the beginning of your document and quickly adjust the margins to the new values. This means that you can't vary the margins within a document (which you may want to do in an outline, for example) without breaking it down into more than one file.

A feature you might not expect in a program of this price is automatic paragraph reform. You never have to worry about straightening up your paragraphs after you make deletions or insertions or, as we just mentioned, after you change the margins. In fact, the text snaps back into shape so quickly that you won't even notice that it's being reformed.

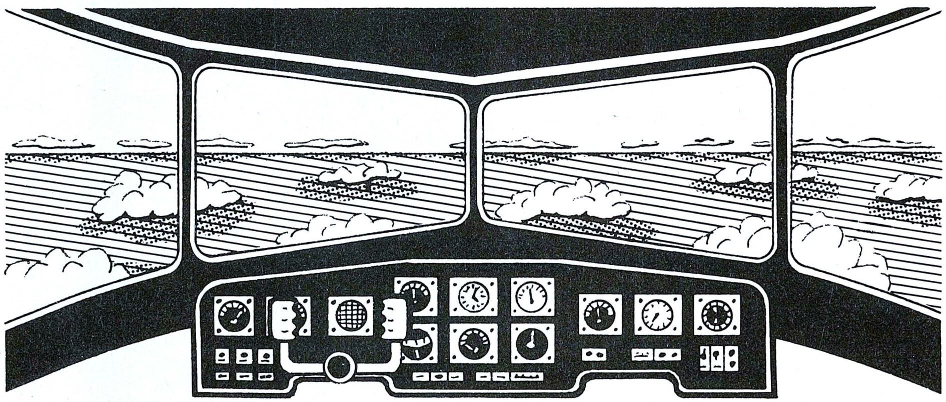
Write handles other simple formatting functions like a pro. You set tab stops by pressing F2 and positioning the cursor at the appropriate column on the ruler. You indicate whether you want a regular typewriter tab or a decimal tab by typing either a T or D respectively. You can center-, left-, or right-justify individual lines of text by pressing F8, followed by C, L, or R.

You will not find it so easy to gain access to your printer's special features, on the other hand. Although you boldface and underline text by just pressing F7 or F8, other printing enhancements, such as overstrike and super- and subscripts, require you to send ASCII control codes to your printer. You'll have to consult your printer's manual to see which codes the printer accepts.

If you need formatting capabilities beyond the basic functions, you'll definitely want a more powerful program. For example, *Write* won't help you with hyphenation or allow you to produce fully justified or proportionally spaced text. It also won't set up temporary margins for typing indented text, nor will it do automatic footnoting.

File Handling. *Write* keeps your entire document in memory, as opposed to writing parts of it to disk, so the maximum file size is about sixteen double-spaced pages. Once your document reaches this size you have to save it to disk and continue editing in a new file. This isn't really much of a disadvantage, however, because *Write* makes it very easy to join two or more files together at print time. By embedding the command **Joinfilename** at the end of each file, you can indicate which file you want printed and wedded with the previous file.

This handy file-joining feature makes it easy for you to merge files from programs other than *Write*. For example, you can add a report produced by *PFS:Report* or a graph from *PFS:Graph*. You can even insert a *VisiCalc* worksheet or a document you produced with another word processing program. The only limitations are that all nonstandard files be converted to standard ASCII files and that wide documents be printed in compressed mode.



Flight-Command© puts YOU in the cockpit!
A Software Program for IBM-PC*

Experience a whole family of flight simulators in one package:

- Cessna 150
- Pitts Special
- P-51 Mustang
- F-14 Tomcat
- Boeing 747
- Concorde

Flight-Command© requires 80 column display and 64K RAM, PC DOS, BASICA

$49.95 including instructions

Lighthouse distributing
P.O. Box 10938 Bainbridge Island, WA 98110
206-842-5557

*IBM-PC is a reg. T.M. of IBM Corp.

As pilot in command you will:

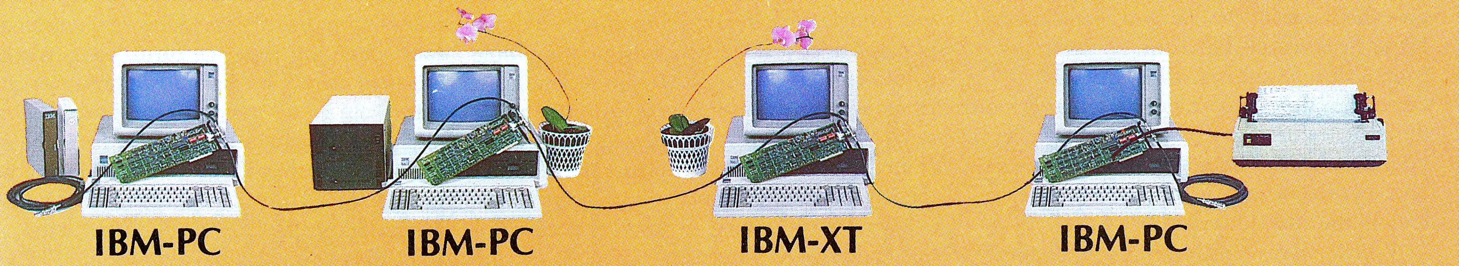
- taxi around airport
- get weather and tower information on the radio
- watch yourself on airport radar
- practice aerobatic skills
- use Autopilot to navigate the globe in a few minutes of real time
- use all controls: throttle, elevator, rudder, ailerons, flaps and brakes
- analyze your performance with flight recorder data from your printer

Washington residents add 6.5% sales tax

Name ____________________
Address ____________________
City, State, Zip ____________________
Amount enclosed ____________________
☐ MC ☐ VISA # ____________________ Exp. date ______

PCnet™ and the IBM-XT

Your Total Solution for IBM PC Local Area Networks.



Share Your IBM-XT Hard Disk or other Hard Disk (*)

PCnet Major Features

- **Local Area Network and Shared Resource Management**
  - Broadcast Coaxial Bus Network
  - Network errors handled similar to DOS
  - PC to PC communication

- **Remote PC Execution**
  - Background program execution at Shared PC
  - Multi-tasking use of Printers, Modems, etc...

Electronic Mail
NOW
AVAILABLE

- **Performance**
  - Serial coaxial bus at 1 megabit/sec up to 7000 feet
  - No significant User PC degradation

- **Computer Vendor Independence**
  - IBM PC, IBM PC-XT
  - Compaq
  - Columbia
  - Corona

- **IBM MS-DOS Transparency**
  - MS-DOS 1.1, 2.0
  - Off the Shelf program execution over network
  - File Transfers use MS-DOS commands

Future Features

- Networking SNA, ETHERNET, X.25
- Value Added Applications
- Electronic Mail

See us at
COMDEX™
Fall '83
November 28-December 2, 1983
Las Vegas Convention Center,
Booth # 1601

- ***Hard Disk Vendor Independence**
  - IBM
  - Tallgrass
  - Microcode
  - QCS
  - Datamac

  and many other well known Hard Disk Drives

- **Disk and File Sharing**
  - Public and Private Files/Volumes and Disk
  - File/Record Locking and Unlocking
  - No Dedicated File Server; PC can act as File Server
  - Multiple File Servers

- **Ease Of Use**
  - Single PC slot for PCnet adapter card
  - Standard coax and BNC connectors
  - Automatic Load using AUTOEXEC.BAT

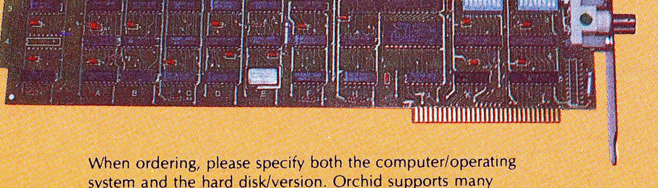
ORCHID
TECHNOLOGY

47790 Westinghouse Drive,
Fremont, California 94539 • (415) 490-8586
Telex-171596

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
MS DOS is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
PCnet is a trademark of Orchid Technology.

Copyright 1982 Orchid Technology

Specifications subject to change without prior notice.



When ordering, please specify both the computer/operating system and the hard disk/version. Orchid supports many different combinations and is adding new configuarations each day.

You don't have to wait until print time to join two documents together as long as both fit into available memory. Simply press F9 and give the name of the file you want inserted; *Write* retrieves the file from the same disk or from a disk in another drive, inserts it at the cursor position, and, if the file's margins are different, reformats it within the margins of your document. This makes it easy to preview how a graph or sales report, for example, will look in the final document.

When you're ready to print your document you call the print menu to define how you want the printing done. By changing the values in this menu you can indicate whether you want single or double spacing, specify a range of pages to be printed, and even print multiple copies of your document. If you're printing a letter, you can have an envelope printed at the same time. The program extracts the address from the letter (it looks at the first line of text at the left margin), prompts you to insert an envelope into the printer, and automatically centers and prints the address.

The final option in the print menu allows you to merge data from *PFS:File* with documents in *Write* to produce form letters. *Write* makes an ordinarily tricky process amazingly easy. First you type the form letter, placing identifier names from *PFS:File* wherever you want data to be inserted—for example, you might want to place an identifier from the address slot so that *Write* can read in the addresses of all the fly-fishermen in Duluth, Minnesota, from *PFS:File* into your letter. At print time you enter the appropriate *PFS:File* filename in the print menu and insert the disk containing that file. *Write* automatically does the printing without having to make use of the *PFS:File* program disk.

Ease of Learning and Use. *Write* combines friendliness and ease of use with efficiency. Software Publishing Corporation has done a superb job of providing plenty of on-screen help without letting the assistance get in your way. Although you can call a help screen from anywhere in the program, the menu choices are so logical that you'll seldom need assistance. If you do get into a dangerous situation, such as forgetting to save one document before starting another, *Write* displays a warning message that clearly explains the problem. All this is done in a low-key manner, without annoying sound effects or flashing screens.

Even after you're an expert with the program (which is to say after about fifteen minutes), the menu system won't slow you down. Since most of *Write*'s editing functions are handled by special function keys, you'll need the menus only for less-often-used operations, such as changing formats and saving your work. Best of all, *Write* responds very quickly to commands; since the program and your document both reside in RAM, you never have to wait while *Write* accesses the disk.

Documentation and Support. *Write* comes with a one-hundred-twenty-five-page user manual, complete with a table of contents, index, glossary, appendixes, keyboard overlay, and quick reference card. Not intended as a reference, the entire manual is written in tutorial style. You can try out virtually every feature using step-by-step instructions on a set of sample documents provided on disk. The instructions are written in a friendly style with an abundance of suggestions and helpful hints. The manual's only problem is that it isn't organized logically. Nonetheless, by consulting the index you can usually find the information you're looking for.

Write is copy-protected and comes with one backup disk. Software Publishing Corporation will make updates of the program available to registered users for about $15. You're also entitled to receive Software Publishing Corporation's newsletter, which has product-update information and useful tips on all the PFS programs.

SATORI SOFTWARE presents

SPECIALIZED DATA-BASE PROGRAMS

BULK MAILER

A profesional mailing list program that includes a sophisticated duplication search and an incredible 32,000 name capacity with hard disk (2400 names with a dual drive, 1200 names with a single drive). Very straight forward and easy-to-use.

- **Duplication Elimination**
- **Broad Coding Capability**
- **Can upgrade to hard disk**
- **Zip and Alpha sorts**
- **1-UP,2-UP,3-UP & 4-UP labels**
- **Default Options**
- **Remarks line**
- **Plus other marketing features**

Apple II diskette version -2400 names (dual drive) or 1200 names (single drive) **$125. Hard Disk version** -32,000 names **$350.**
IBM PC diskette version -Up to 5400 names, depending upon configuration. **$125. Hard Disk version** -32,000 names **$350.**

INVENTORY MANAGER

Perfect for retailers, distributers or any business involved with sales. Can track 2700 items (1200 items on a single drive system), and provides numerous information reports.

- **Stores up to 2700 items**
- **Up to 99 vendors**
- **Prints purchase orders**
- **Easy stock up-dates**
- **Lists stock sold & gross profits**
- **Prints suggested orders**
- **Sorts by vendor, department, profit**
- **Many more features**

"Inventory Manager is among the most complete programs of its type on the market today" SOFTALK, Dec. 1982

Apple II & //e version - 2700 items (dual drive) or 1200 items (single drive) **$150. IBM PC version** - up to 10,000 items, depending upon configuration **$150.**

LEGAL BILLING

Very friendly and complete legal billing system. Allows a great deal of user control.

- **Prints customized statements**
- **Prints aging reports**
- **Up to 200 clients**
- **Up to 4000 transactions**
- **Includes Trust Accounts**
- **User designated codes**
- **Automatic interest added**

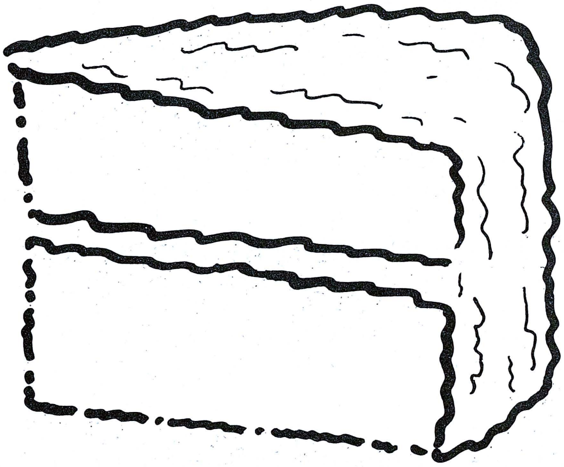
Apple II or IBM PC version - $350.

Available at your dealer or order directly from:

SATORI SOFTWARE

5507 Woodlawn N.
Seattle, WA 98103
(206) 633-1469

MicroGANTT™ XT makes project scheduling this easy...



Finally there is a fully interactive Critical Path program that allows novice or experienced computer users to derive a professional quality project plan, in just minutes. As you describe the work, MicroGANTT automatically displays the schedule of events graphically. Single keystrokes change the display from Gantt chart to time summary to financial summary. Carry up to 100 tasks in a single project. Incorporate that project as a task in an even larger project. The possibilities are endless! Change any variable entered at any time and see the entire projection recalculated, instantly. Project files can be used again and again. Simply alter the begin date, time scale, work week, worker dedication, or any factor, and the new schedule and critical path will appear immediately. No rekeying of data.

Run MicroGANTT XT on your fixed or floppy disk system and turn your IBM PC or XT compatible system into a powerful and versatile work management station. With MicroGANTT XT, it's a piece of cake!

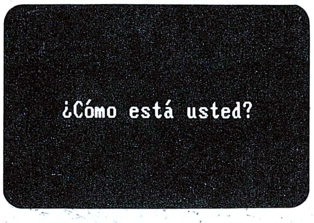
Program and Documentation: $395
Documentation alone: $25

(C) 1983 Earth Data Corp.

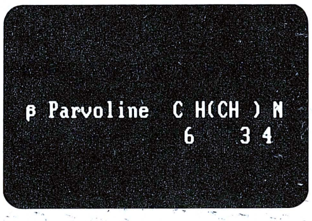
Earth Data Corporation
P. O. Box 13168
Richmond, VA 23225

(804) 231-0300

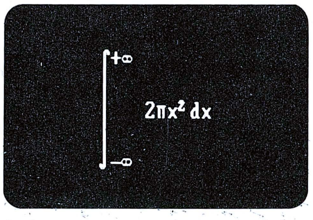
WE SPEAK YOUR LANGUAGE!



¿Cómo está usted?



```
β Parvoline  C H(CH ) N
               6   3 4
```



$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} 2\pi x^2 dx$$

Reproduction of actual output (NEC Spinwriter 3530):

¿Cómo está usted? β Parvoline $C_6H(CH_3)_4N$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} 2\pi x^2 dx$$

Swift — FLUENT WORD PROCESSING FOR THE IBM PC

Finally, a sophisticated Word Processor that displays and prints the IBM characters, does complete on-screen formatting, and is very easy to use. And it's fast! But there's more:

- Unlimited number of named saves
- 240 characters in two fonts
- Composite characters
- Microspaced justification
- NO embedded commands
- Background printing
- Multiple wheel support
- Supports hard disks
- Automatic file backup
- Undelete, cancel key
- Single sheet feed in background
- On-screen merge of documents
- Multiple format rulers
- Unlimited document size
- Scroll to 132 columns across
- What-you-see-is-what-you-get
- Continuous screen reformatting
- Word-wrapped center, right-align
- Bold and underline on screen
- One-key Cut, Paste, Delete
- Multiple header-footers any size
- In-context, instant Help
- Unlimited length Cut/Paste
- Full use of function keys
- Decimal-aligned tabs
- Real tabs (not spaces) for tables
- On-line directory with wildcards
- Indents, exdents-left and right
- Many cursor jumps
- File erase from directory
- Global search and replace
- Centered tabs
- Unlimited number format changes
- Uses all available memory for text
- Written in assembler for the PC
- Pagination, hyphenation, & more!

$149

INTRODUCTORY SPECIAL
(Regular Price: $299)

MasterCard VISA

Includes complete manual, keyboard template, and quick reference guide. You will also receive two disks: a demonstration disk to try out *Swift* to see how you like it, and a second disk containing the full *Swift* package. If you are not completely happy with what you see, just return everything to us with the seal unbroken on the second disk within 30 days and we will send you your money back (minus a $10 handling charge).

Newburyport Computer Associates, Inc.
27 Fair St., Newburyport, MA 01950

Telephone charges credited to orders.
No shipping charges.
No credit card charges.

(617) 462-9411

Requires 128K IBM PC or compatible (192K with DOS 2.0), one DS disk drive. Supports IBM 80 CPS & Graphics printers, NEC 3510/20/30/50/15/25, NEC 7710/20/30/15/25 Qume 5&9, C.Itoh F-10, Smith-Corona TP-1, Epson MX-80 & MX-100, ASCII-only printers.

IBM PC is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation NEC Spinwriter is a registered trademark of NEC.

Audience. *Write* is definitely not Software Publishing Corporation's answer to *WordStar.* But if you're in the market for a word processor that can handle the basics with a minimum of fuss, *Write* is ideal—especially if you're already using one of the other PFS programs.

System Requirements. The program requires 128K of RAM; it won't take advantage of additional memory your system might have. Although you can get by with one disk drive, you'll have to reinsert the program disk at print time and whenever you need on-screen help. The program can also be installed onto the XT's hard disk (and some non-IBM hard disks as well).

Write comes with default settings for the IBM dot-matrix, but it can be set up to work with other printers (serial printers, for example) by means of a utility program.

Software Publishing Corporation has successfully used *Write* with the Compaq and the Hyperion, and they're currently in the process of testing it with the Columbia MPC, the Eagle PC, and the Victor 9000.

MultiMate

MultiMate owes its existence to an enterprising life insurance company that wanted the pc to perform like a dedicated word processor. Not just any word processor, mind you, but specifically the Wang.

Connecticut Mutual Life Insurance Company was looking for a way to integrate a new batch of pcs into their offices without having to retrain secretaries and executives who were already using the Wang. Realizing there were no programs available that fit the bill, they called on the people at Softword Systems to come up with a new program. From that work sprang *WordMate,* which has since been modified and renamed *MultiMate*.

Overall Design. *MultiMate* has a look and feel about it that almost makes you think you've got a dedicated machine at your fingertips. For example, the function buttons, used in various combinations with control, shift, and alt, give you one- or two-keystroke access to almost every feature. Throughout the program, helpful prompts and messages written in plain English (such as "Move what?" "To where?") guide you.

One of *MultiMate*'s most pleasant similarities to dedicated word processors is its practice of automatically saving your work to disk. When you've filled the page you're working on, the program beeps to remind you to begin a new page. The previous page is then automatically saved to disk, whisked out of harm's way.

Except in the editing mode, *MultiMate* is menu-driven. From the main menu you can create a new document, edit an old one, print, create form letters, or run one of the utility programs. You can save time by choosing any of the main menu's options from anywhere in the program—by pressing alt and the number of the desired function.

Text Entry and Editing. A status line that displays the name of your document along with the page, line, and column number of the cursor heads the editing screen. A ruler marking the current tab settings, margins, and line spacing appears below the status line. You will notice a set of arrows in the bottom-right corner of the screen. These arrows ought to become part of every word processing program for the pc: By pointing up or down, they indicate whether you've (intentionally or unintentionally) engaged the caps-lock key or the num-lock key, thereby overcoming what many users find to be an irksome inadequacy of the IBM's keyboard.

MultiMate offers no less than seventeen ways to move the cursor, including jumps to specified page numbers or markers. As a convenience, Softword Systems's designers have located all the keys that affect cursor movement (except the go-to-page key) in the numeric keypad.

The editor is normally in typeover mode. To insert text, you press insert; all but half a line of text is pushed off the bottom of the screen to accommodate the additions. Since the few words remaining on-screen are your only reminder of what follows, it can be difficult to insert several sentences. As a result, you may have to switch between the overtype and insert modes to refer to the trailing text.

In previous versions of the program, you had to do all deleting by entering delete mode and marking the text to be removed. Since this approach proved inconvenient when you wanted to delete a single character, Softword Systems recently modified the program so you can delete the character under the cursor by pressing the minus key. While this is an improvement, you have to alternate between the minus and left arrow keys to delete several characters consecutively. It would be nice if you could delete continuously using the backspace or delete key as you can with many other word processing programs.

If you want to delete several words or lines, position the cursor over the first character, press the delete key, and move the cursor over the text you want to erase. You can easily accomplish this by typing in the last character in the block. For instance, if you enter a carriage return, the cursor will jump to the end of the paragraph, highlighting everything in its path. If you overshoot the targeted text with a fancy cursor move, just use the left arrow key to unhighlight anything you don't want erased. When you're finished marking, press delete again and the highlighted text will be removed.

You can cut and paste by typing the *move* command (F7), after which you are asked, "Move what?" Once you mark the appropriate text by highlighting it, the program asks, "To where?" prompting you to move the cursor to the new location. When you press F7 again, the new text is inserted where you indicated. The copy function works in a similar manner.

MultiMate offers the standard search and replace functions, although it will also find all instances containing a given word. Unfortunately, this means that if you're looking for sea, you'll also get search. If you tell the program to locate sea only when there is a space on both sides, you'll miss any occurrences followed by punctuation. Searching can be done only in the forward direction.

Although earlier versions of *MultiMate* did not support columns, Softword Systems has remedied this situation in the latest release. The program can now copy, insert, delete, and move columns of numbers and text. In addition, the program will now add and subtract vertical columns and horizontal rows of numbers. These new capabilities, along with horizontal scrolling (up to one hundred fifty-six columns) and decimal tabbing, give you all the column help you will need.

There is one problem with the column move feature, however: Sometimes the carriage returns following the numbers are also moved, causing the format of any columns to the left to be destroyed.

ANTISTATIC
DUST COVER SET
$19.95

- One cover designed to fit over the P.C. and monitor (advise type), a second cover for the keyboard.
- High quality, attractive, heavy gauge clear vinyl.
- Return within 30 days for 100% refund if not satisfied.

PRINTER COVERS — $10.90
(advise type and/or dimensions)
MasterCard and Visa orders call Toll Free 1-800-531-3122, Operator 27. In Wash. State, call 1-800-227-7800.

IN STOCK
FOR IMMEDIATE DELIVERY

Send Check, Money Order or credit card number and expiration date to:

P.C.A.
16625 Redmond Way, Suite 107
Redmond, Washington 98052
(206) 882-0385

Dealer inquiries welcome.
Washington residents add 7.8% sales tax.
Prices may increase without notice.

Formatting and Printing. *MultiMate* presents text on-screen as it will appear on the printed page, with some notable exceptions. No matter what line spacing you choose, the document always appears single-spaced. This arrangement seems logical, since it allows you to see the maximum number of lines per screenful, but it can, at times, be a disadvantage. Anyone who has spent hours on end at the keyboard knows that double-spacing strains tired eyes less. Other features that don't show up on-screen include double-striking and full justification.

MultiMate makes defining your document's layout a breeze. Pressing F9 places the cursor on the ruler; you then move the cursor to change line spacing, tab stops, and the right margin setting. You can change formats anywhere in a document, even in the middle of a page, by creating a new ruler. The settings you've chosen are stored with the document so that you don't have to reset them each time you edit. *MultiMate* automatically reforms your text according to the new format changes, just as dedicated machines do, eliminating the necessity to reform each paragraph manually.

The program, unfortunately, lacks hyphen help, a virtual necessity if you want to create attractive, fully justified text. You can, however, insert ghost hyphens if you can figure out where they're needed.

MultiMate's method of pagination is similar to that used by many dedicated systems. Unlike most other pc word processing programs, which automatically place page breaks after a preset number of lines, this program gives you the option of setting breaks where you want them. You specify the approximate number of lines you want per page, and you hear a beep when you reach that limit. You can enter up to one hundred fifty lines on a page—this means you can easily squeeze a few more lines at the bottom of the page if necessary. With most of the word processing programs for the pc, you can end a page before the preset limit, but never after it.

The program allows headers and footers of up to five lines; and for bound manuscripts, a different header or footer can be printed on alternate pages. However, *MultiMate* doesn't do automatic footnoting.

MultiMate's print-format screen is a hands-down winner for the busiest screen in a word processing program. It includes a plethora of information about the document to be printed, seventeen options, and a list of sixteen printers that can be used. Fortunately, once you get used to the program, the table really isn't that bad. In fact, if you don't want to fool with this table each time you print, you can save the default settings on disk.

Although busy, the print-format screen's complexity gives you precise control over printing. You can set up a list of documents (a queue) to be printed automatically one after the other, and you can do background printing (spooling). You can even set the printing process to begin automatically at a preset hour of the day. This means that, if you share a printer, you can schedule your pc to begin printing at an assigned time.

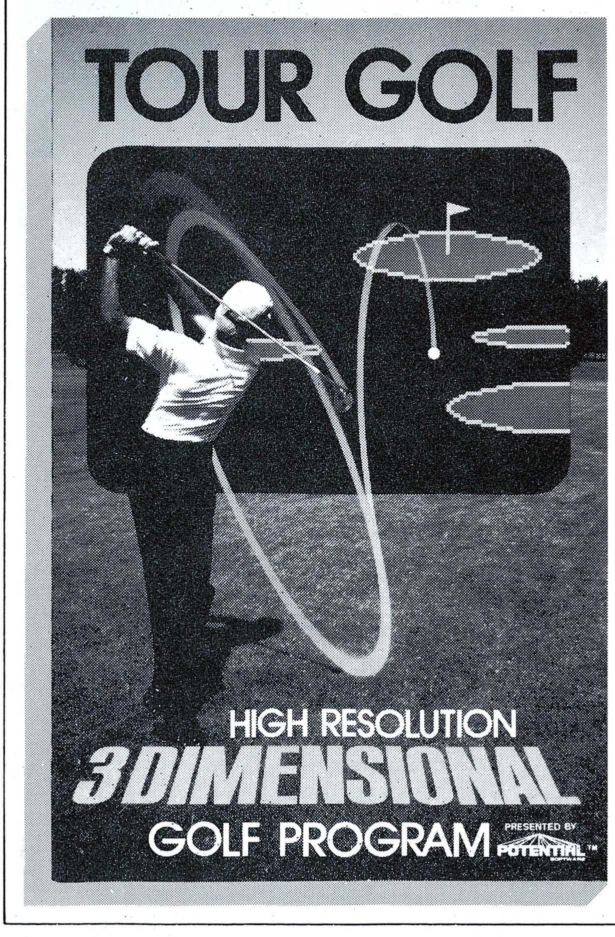
File Handling. *MultiMate*'s file directory is comprehensive. It lists the name of the document (up to twenty characters rather than the usual eight), the author, the addressee, key words for identification of the document (see following paragraph), summary comments, the creation date, and the most recent editing date. The creation date and the most recent editing date are automatically filled in from DOS or, if you have one, from an on-board clock.

What's even more exceptional is the program's ability to search for documents using information from the file directory. This feature allows you to identify any or all documents created by the same author, addressed to the same person, or containing the key words you've specified. This is especially useful if you store a large number of documents on a hard disk. As another plus, the directory information can be printed to give you a short description of each document.

MultiMate allows you to create keyboard macros for frequently used text. You create a library of phrases by naming the library and entering each macro along with a three-character identification code; you can set up different libraries for each type of document you write. To use a library with a document, you must first indicate which library you want to use. Then, to invoke a macro from that library, you press F5 followed by the three-character ID code; the program instantly inserts the text at the cursor's position. You can't, at present, set up macros of commands (the way you can with *ProKey*), but Software Systems says they'll add this capability to the next revision of *MultiMate*.

Because of the large number of control codes embedded within the text, files created by *MultiMate* can't be used with other word processing, spelling checker, or telecommunication programs without modification. A utility program is provided that converts *MultiMate* files to standard ASCII files. When we tested this program, however, we found that it changed the format of some text and often lost the last line on a page.

Mailing List Program. *MultiMate* includes a mailing list program that allows you to generate form letters. You first create the form letter with variables inserted wherever you want information to be merged and then set up the



REALISTIC
GOLF
SIMULATION

- 3 dimentional display of each hole
- Two courses: regular or championship
- Two levels of difficulty for each course
- Optional data diskette with other courses available
- 1 to 4 players
- Automatic scoring
- Complete club selection: 4 woods, 9 irons, putting
- *Designed for IBM PC 64KB color graphics board, 160 KB diskette*

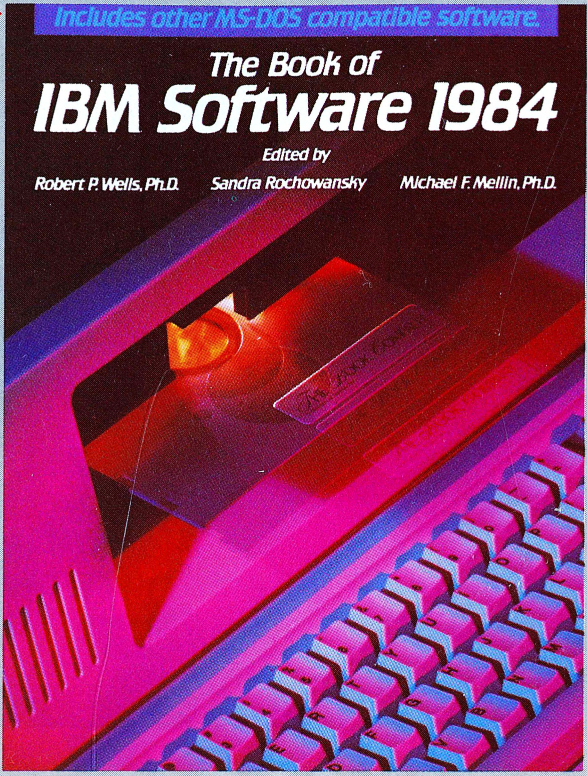
$39.95

POTENTIAL SOFTWARE

POTENTIAL SOFTWARE
P.O. Box 230232
Portland, OR 97223
(503) 650-0671

DON'T BUY IBM SOFTWARE.

(UNTIL YOU READ THIS BOOK.)



THE BOOK OF IBM SOFTWARE 1984

Your IBM PC is only as good as the software that runs on it. So it makes sense to have the most detailed, up-to-date software review book there is. Especially when it can save you hundreds of dollars and hours of frustration.

The Book Company, the established authority in the field of software review guides, is famous for its consumer report styled evaluations.

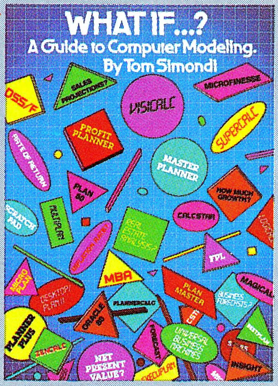
Our latest publication, **The Book of IBM Software 1984,** evaluates IBM PC/XT and IBM compatible software for such applications as Accounting, Database Management, Spreadsheet Modeling, Telecommunications, Word Processing, Education, Entertainment, Utilities and much more.

You get incisive, impartial evaluations written by experts. What's more, programs are reviewed and graded according to Ease of Use, Reliability and Value for Money. Plus you get all the hard facts such as price, system requirements, etc.

Don't settle for simplistic listings of available programs. Get ALL the information you need. Buy **The Book of IBM Software 1984** today.

THE BIG BONUS

When you send in the coupon and order **The Book of IBM Software 1984,** we'll send along, free of charge, our popular book on financial modeling, **WHAT IF . . . ? A Guide to Computer Modeling** (retail value $19.95). If you buy **The Book of IBM Software 1984** from your dealer, send us proof of purchase and we'll send you the financial modeling book. Free.



TIPS ON BUYING SOFTWARE

Send for our free 64 page booklet, **"Tips on Buying Software."** You'll learn how to evaluate your software needs and find out what's available. Plus much more.

THE BOOK COMPANY
A Division of Arrays, Inc.

Available at computer stores everywhere or directly from The Book Company.

Title	Qty.	Price	Total
The Book of IBM Software 1984 (Includes **WHAT IF . . . ? A Guide to Computer Modeling**)		**$19.95**	
Tips on Buying Software		**N/C**	

Mail to: THE BOOK COMPANY, Dept. STI, 11223 S. Hindry Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90045. Or call toll free in California 800/441-2345, ext. 518. Outside California in the continental U.S. call 800/556-1234, ext. 518.

Name

Address

City State Zip

Visa, MasterCard, Check or Money Order accepted.

Card #

☐ Visa
☐ MasterCard
Exp. Date Signature

Total Amount Enclosed $ California residents add 6% sales tax.

Postage will be paid by The Book Company.

IBM PC/PC XT are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp.

Get it all...

COMMUNICATIONS

- ASCII/EBCDIC
- Manual/Automatic dialup and logon
- Automatic search for available line/port
- File transmit/receive and data capture
- Single-key host selection
- Easy menu-driven port definition
- Backwards scrollable terminal
- XMODEM protocol support
- APL support
- User defineable macros

DATA MANAGEMENT

- Menu-driven file and data selection
- Plain English file and variable names
- Up to 400 time-series variables per file
- Up to 208 periods and 125 categories per variable
- Data import/export
- Easy file subsetting
- Full screen data editor with 2-dimensional scrolling and global edit/statistical commands

GRAPHICS

- Pie, bar, line, area-fill, and scatter charts
- 1 or 2 charts per screen
- Easy interactive chart creation
- Fast chart display
- Direct text entry into any chart
- Display memo and graph in same screen
- Hardcopy printout with one keypress
- Automatic least squares data projection
- Automatic scaling
- Alternate Y-axis for trend analysis

To put it simply, with PCDI you can quickly and easily dial in to any mainframe computers, information services, and bulletin boards and retrieve the data you want. Your retrieved numbers can then be manipulated, swiftly graphed (in a variety of formats and colors), and passed to your favorite spreadsheet or custom programs, all in a matter of seconds.

Absolutely, the finest.

Several Fortune 500 corporations have already installed PCDI as the base for their entire, companywide "electronic office" applications. Without exception, PCDI is the most comprehensive and easiest-to-use communications package available for the IBM PC. Its data manager offers complete menu-driven file and data management in plain English. PCDI's presentation quality graphics have more interactive features than any other graphics program in its class. And PCDI can be quickly expanded by integrating your favorite programs directly into it. It is simply the easiest way to retrieve, display, and analyze your data.

with PCDI.

PCDI

Personal Computer Data Interface

- Telecommunications
- Color Graphics
- Data Management
- User expandable
- Fully integrated
- Online "HELP"
- Easy to read manual
- Program updates available
- Corporate license available

$250

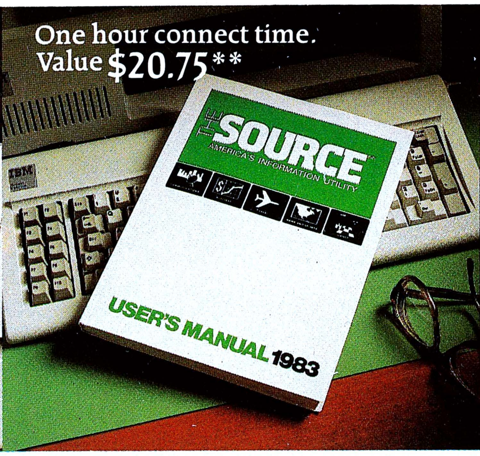
PCDI provides all the tools you need to perform easy numerical data analysis. Stock quotes, economic and industry indicators, pro-forma financial statements . . . all those numbers you've laboriously compiled and keyed in make interesting reading with PCDI's interactive graphics. And PCDI's communications and data management features insure that you won't be doing the keypunching the next time around. Make us prove it. Visit your local IBM dealer for a demonstration or contact us for our free color information kit.

System Requirements: IBM PC or PC-XT • 256K main memory • Color graphics adaptor • 2 double sided diskette drives or hard disk • Hayes Smartmodem (300/1200) • Epson compatible printer

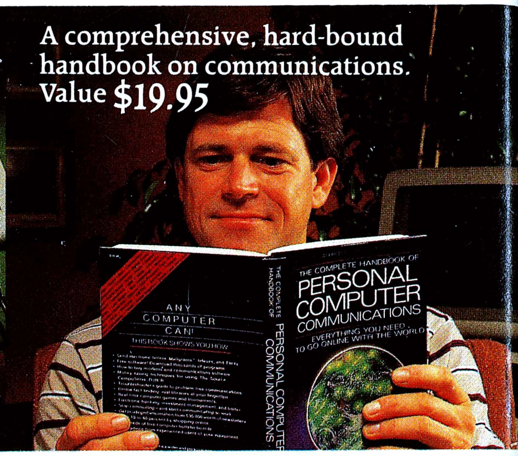
Applied MicroSystems, Inc.
P.O. Box 832
Roswell, Georgia 30077
(404) 475-0832 (404) 371-0832

Buy Smartmodem 300 *right now*, and get this $140 value FREE!

Subscription to THE SOURCE, *including* User's Manual. Value $100*



One hour connect time. Value $20.75**



A comprehensive, hard-bound handbook on communications. Value $19.95

Hayes Your computer's telephone

SMARTMODEM
Hayes
AA CD OH RD SD TR MR
4378.

Between Nov. 1–Jan. 15, you and your personal computer can make the big break. From isolated desktop computing. To the exciting world of telecomputing. With Hayes Smartmodem 300. The most popular 300 bps modem you can buy, for any computer with an RS-232C port. Let Smartmodem 300 connect you, via telephone lines, to computers, terminals and information services all across America. Including THE SOURCE,℠ AMERICA'S INFORMATION UTILITY.℠

This offer takes you right to THE SOURCE! And you won't have to pay to join! The same day you purchase your Smartmodem, call THE SOURCE on their toll-free number. And you're already well on your way to getting on-line!

It frees up your time. This offer also entitles you to $20.75 worth of connect time–at no charge. Use it as you please! Check the latest news and sports. Look up your flight schedule. View your stock portfolio. You name it. The time is yours! Sixty minutes worth, or more, depending on the day and hour.

Giving you lots of connections. THE SOURCE has assembled the most comprehensive programs available on any system. For fun and practical applications. From games to commodity news. Electronic mail to teleconferencing. Discount shopping to abstracts of articles from business magazines. And everything you need to know is right there in your comprehensive, illustrated User's Manual. Included with your free membership to THE SOURCE during this special, limited time offer from Hayes.

Plus the last word on communications. Now here's a book that delivers what it promises! In Alfred Glossbrenner's best seller, *THE COMPLETE HANDBOOK OF PERSONAL COMPUTER COMMUNICATIONS*, you'll find a thorough, informative study of microcomputer communications. Worth every cent of the $19.95 this hard-bound book sells for. And yours absolutely free!

If you act now! See your dealer soon. Buy Smartmodem 300, and get the best 300 bps modem around. *Plus* a $140 value FREE.

Hayes®

Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc. 5923 Peachtree Industrial Blvd., Norcross, Georgia 30092. 404/449-8791.

Here's all you have to do:

1. When you purchase your Smartmodem 300, *save* your sales receipt and Hayes registration card (packed inside the box).
2. Pick up the phone and call THE SOURCE, on their toll-free number:

1-800-336-3366.

Tell THE SOURCE representative that you are participating in the special Hayes promotion, give the serial number of your Smartmodem (on the modem), and your credit card number (VISA, MasterCard, or American Express).† You will get your password to THE SOURCE, right on the spot!

3. Within a week you will receive an agreement from THE SOURCE, along with your New Member Kit. Sign the agreement, and return it within 10 days to THE SOURCE, along with your sales receipt for Smartmodem 300 and Hayes registration card. Remember, send no money. Your membership is free!
4. That's all it takes! Look for your User's Manual and free communications book within two weeks of receipt of the agreement, sales receipt and registration card.

†THE SOURCE requires a major credit card for billing of hourly connect time to individual members. Corporate members may apply for direct billing.

*Suggested retail price. **60 minutes or more connect time, depending on the day and hour.
THE SOURCE and AMERICA'S INFORMATION UTILITY are service marks of Source Telecomputing Corporation, a subsidiary of The Reader's Digest Association, Inc.

©1983 Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc.

mailing list itself. Since the program doesn't force you to use a predefined form, you have a lot of flexibility in the information you may want to include. Unfortunately, the price you pay for this freedom is a lot of extra typing—you have to type in each variable name along with its value for every new record. The problem is compounded by the requirement that you type alt-M to mark the beginning and end of each field. You then call up the merge screen from the main menu and enter the names of the files containing the form letter and the data to be merged; finally, you print the letters just as you would any other document.

Ease of Learning and Use. Because it's logically designed, *MultiMate* is relatively simple to learn—notwithstanding the number of features it offers. When in virgin territory, you can usually go with your instincts without courting disaster. If you don't trust your instincts, you can use the on-line help feature to list the key assignments or information about specific features.

Through careful attention to detail, Softword Systems has made this program ergonomically efficient. For example, since all the cursor movement keys are located together on the right side of the keyboard, you don't waste time hunting for the correct key. And, as already mentioned, you can bypass the main menu to hurry things along.

Documentation and Support. *MultiMate*'s manual appears very professional. It's printed on heavy stock, the type is large and bold, and the screen outputs are highlighted in green print. The manual converts into an easel for placement beside the keyboard.

But looks can be deceiving. The reference section's step-by-step instructions only minimally describe each feature; it's impossible to take full advantage of a program this powerful without its features being described in greater detail. Fortunately, the people at Softword Systems are aware of this problem and are just finishing an expanded version of the current manual.

In addition to the reference section, the manual contains a three-lesson tutorial that gives you a nice introduction to the program. A set of stick-on key labels is provided along with a chart showing you what keys perform which functions.

Software Systems hasn't copy-protected *MultiMate*. They have provided a telephone hotline for questions; the technical support personnel are both patient and knowledgeable.

Since *MultiMate* is in the process of evolving, with new features being added periodically, the company offers free updates for six months following purchase. Enhancements to be included in the next update (which should be out soon) are a spelling checker, sheet feeder support, and proportional spacing.

Audience. *MultiMate* should make anyone looking for a powerful yet easy-to-use word processor happy; it is well suited to business environments, especially those in which some users will be switching over from dedicated machines or in which several pcs are networked with a common hard disk and printer.

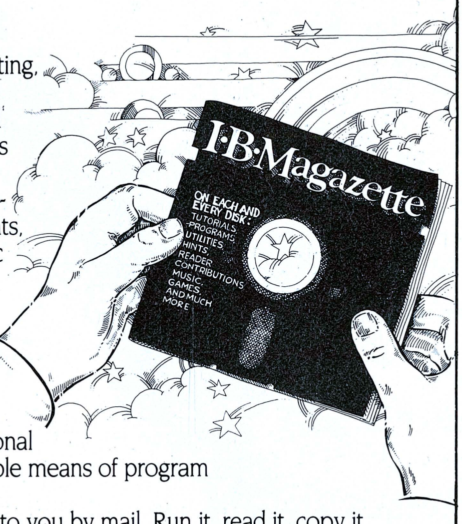
System Requirements. With DOS 2.0 you need 192K of RAM, while with DOS 1.1 you can get by with 128K. Over twenty different printers are supported; Softword Systems will modify *MultiMate* to work with any printer if you send them the printer's manual—now that's support.

Softword Systems has successfully tested *MultiMate* with the Compaq, Chameleon, Hyperion, Columbia, Corona, and Victor 9000.

PFS:Write $140
Software Publishing Corporation
1901 Landings Drive
Mountain View, CA 94043
(415) 962-8910

MultiMate $495
Softword Systems
52 Oakland Avenue North
East Hartford, CT 06108
(203) 522-2116

▲



Introducing I.B.Magazette.

Our Magazine On Diskette Is More Than Just A Bunch of Programs.

I.B.Magazette is a new form of communication that is an exciting, entertaining way to build your program library, sharpen your skills and have fun while expanding the usefulness of your PC.

Each issue contains detailed step-through tutorials, programs, utilities, hints, reader contributed material, even music and games. Always included is a major program or a demonstration version of commercially available soft-ware. This alone is worth far more than the subscription price.

Our bi-monthly diskette provides current hands-on experience. As a national user's group we are a regular dependable means of program and information exchange.

The flippy-floppy diskette is sent to you by mail. Run it, read it, copy it, and enter your comments through your keyboard. Then return the original along with your check for the next issue in the provided postage-paid mailer.

I.B.Magazette is $15 for your initial issue. Subsequent issues are only $10 each with return of the diskette. Annual subscriptions (6 issues) are $80. To join, fill out the form below and send it to us with your check.

Mark issues desired and send your check for total purchase (foreign: only Money Orders U.S. funds; add $7 U.S. per order):

I.B. Magazette
1306 Petroleum Tower
Shreveport, La. 71101

(IBM-PC-64K & ONE DRIVE REQUIRED)

☐ CURRENT ISSUE: Featuring a demo of VOLKSWRITER DELUXE™ ________ $15
☐ ANNUAL (6 issues) ________ $80

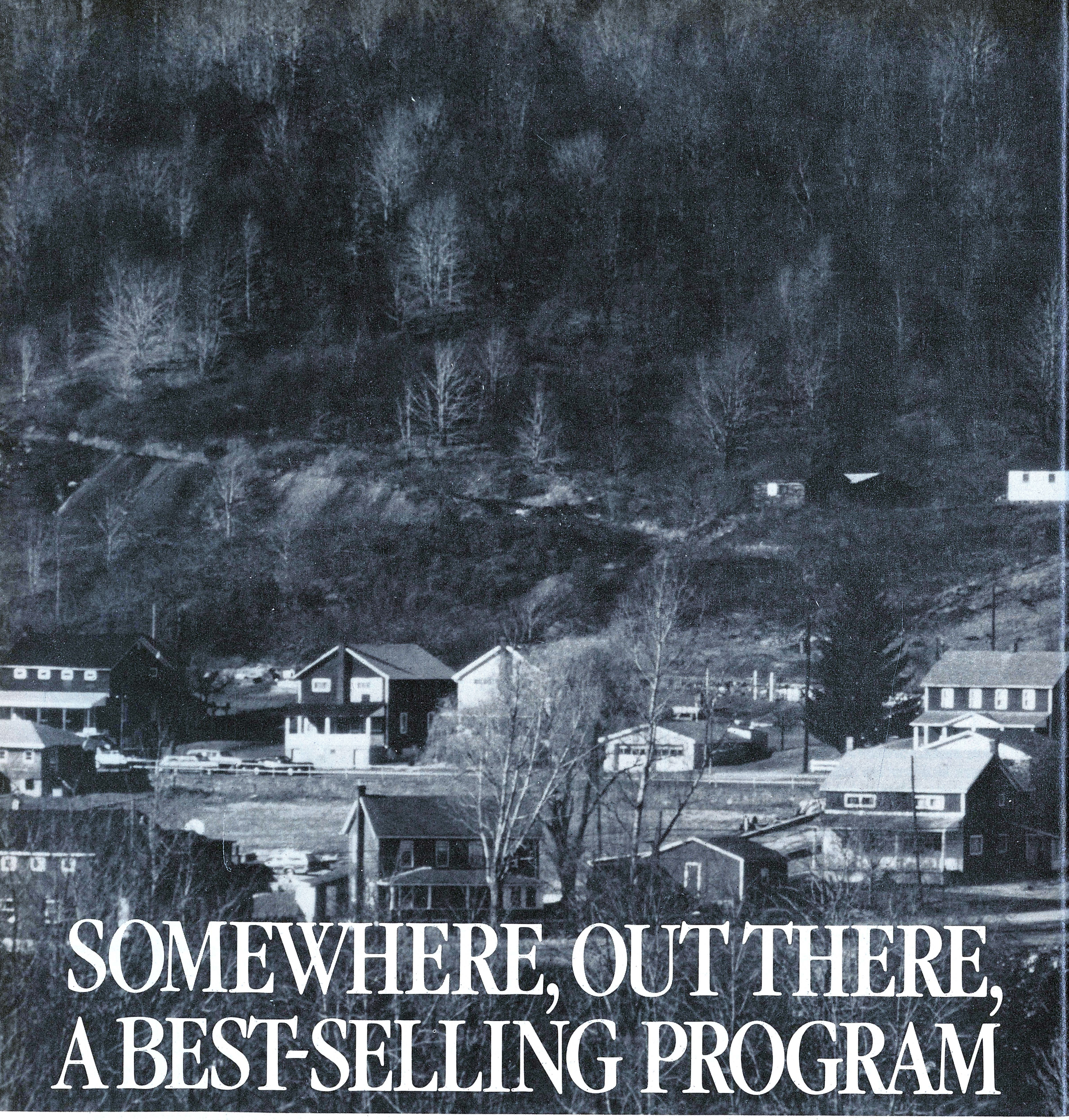
BACK ISSUES

1982 ☐ VOL. 1.1 First edition — games (TOOTER and HI-LO) • demo of VOLKSWRITER (word processor) • PHONE CHECK (long distance number verifier) • ARITHA (a math driller) • and more ________ $15
☐ VOL. 1.2 Part 1 interactive sort tutorial • an interactive demo of ≪ANSWER≫ (data base manager) • game: SIMON • game: CAPTURE • display utilities • music • diskette hints • and more ________ $15
☐ VOL. 1.3 Part 2 of the sort series • ALGEBRAIC GRAPHIC DISPLAY • QUIZMAKER • QUIZGIVER • MORE UTILITIES • A USA MAP • complete PC-FILE program • music: Auld Lang Syne ________ $15
1983 ☐ VOL. 2.1 Part 3 of the sort series • demo: D-Base II • GUMUPS (set of utility programs) • simulation game of LIFE • user contributed programs • song: Anitra's Dance • more ________ $15
☐ VOL. 2.2 Part 4 of sort series: Shellsort • demo: Stock Portfolio Reporter • BLACKJACK • Graphics demo • PC/PAD (Word processing spreadsheet) • utilities • music • hints • and more ________ $15
☐ VOL. 2.3 Part 5 of sort series: Disk Sorting Methods • HELP utility • START-UP utility • games • music • hints • tutorial on SEARCHING TECHNIQUES • statistical program • plus more ________ $15

NAME ________

ADDRESS ________

IBM IS A TRADEMARK OF INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION



SOMEWHERE, OUT THERE, A BEST-SELLING PROGRAM

WHERE IS IT?

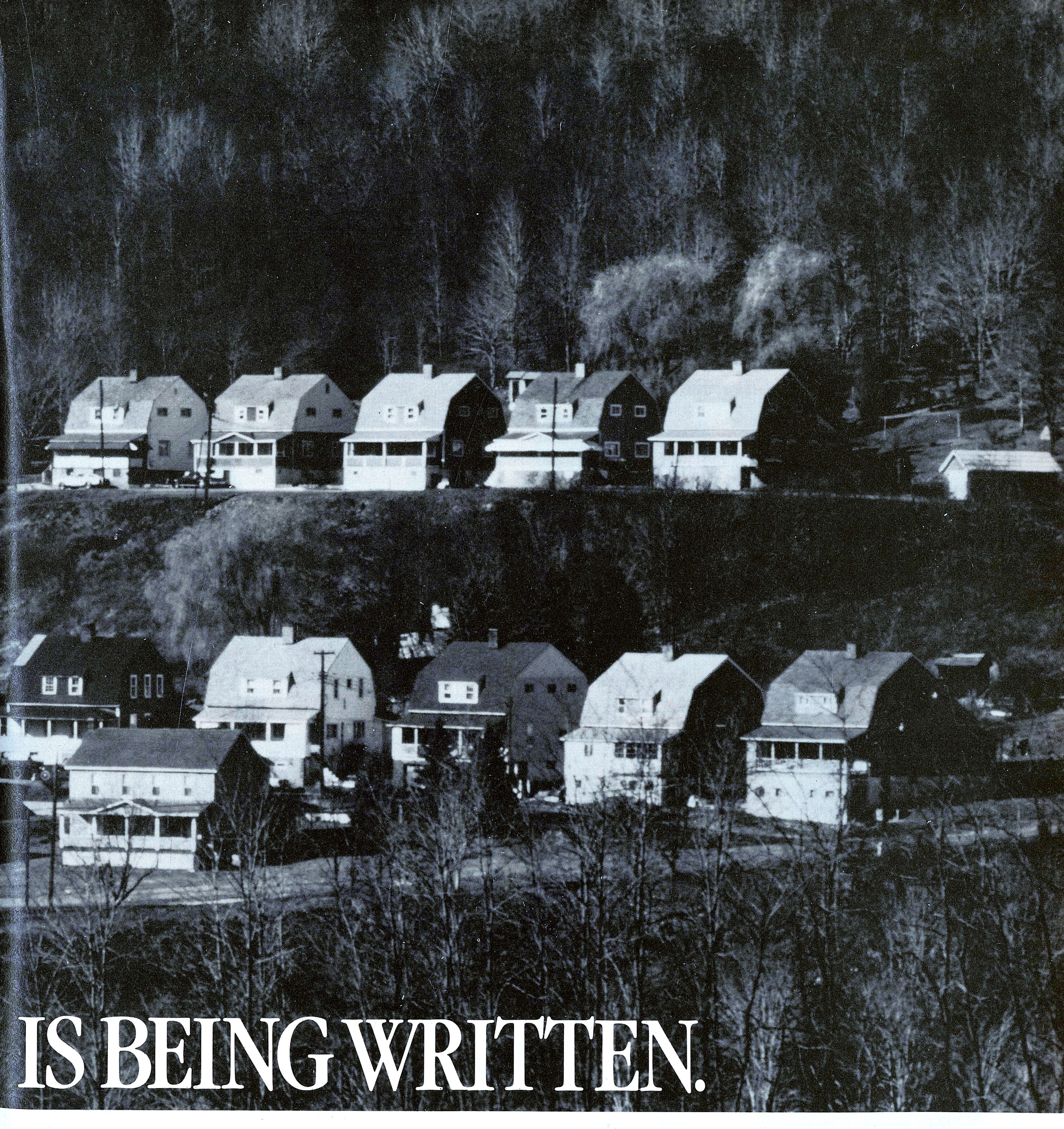
Wherever it is, we want it. Maybe, just maybe, we're searching for your program, but we'll never find it unless you call us.

It has to be good, though. Because we're The Software Guild™, an organization devoted to finding the very best microcomputer programs for packaging and distribution under the Softsmith™ label. Hundreds of titles have already been licensed to the Softsmith library. But they're only the beginning. Our goal is to have the best program in major categories on every popular machine. Of course, we can't do it without you.

If you're a program author or publisher, The Software Guild offers some distinct professional and monetary advantages.

First, you devote your time to what you do best: programming. You can leave the manufacturing, packaging, documentation, distribution and customer service to us.

Second, our revolutionary retail merchandising system will put your program before the public through the normal computer and software stores, plus record outlets, department stores, book shops, and more places where software has never before been available.



Third, is royalties. Wider distribution means more substantial royalties. And, your Software Guild royalties start to accrue when the dealer makes his purchase in quantity, so you aren't left waiting while money trickles in.

Fourth is flexibility. We do not insist on the exclusive rights to your program. You can deal with other publishers and distributors, or market your program yourself, while it is in Softsmith distribution.

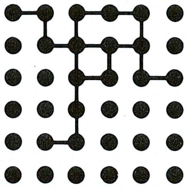
We know you're out there, working and dreaming, and we want to help make your dream come true. Our full staff of professional evaluators are waiting to review your best-seller.

So call us, wherever you are.
Contact Regina Roberts at (415) 487-5200.
Or write:
The Software Guild
2935 Whipple Rd.
Union City, CA 94587

The Software Guild™
(415)487-5200

Conclusion

A PRIMER ON NETWORKING



by Bruce Churchill

The following is the final installment in a series of five articles excerpted from the book Communications and Networking for the IBM PC, *by Larry Jordan and Bruce Churchill, published by the Robert J. Brady Co. (Note: This material was written before the introduction of DOS 2.0.)*

This month we conclude our survey of the first three local area networks to be implemented on the IBM Personal Computer. In this installment we'll look at *EtherLink*, from 3Com (1390 Shorebird Way, Mountain View, CA; 415-961-9602).

Overview

EtherLink is hardware and software that connects as few as two or as many as one hundred pcs via a single segment of network cable and allows them to share floppy drives and printer resources.

EtherLink is the first local area network for the IBM pc designed in accordance with Ethernet specifications. And because *EtherLink* is an Ethernet-compatible LAN, it supports multiple segments, connected to one another by means of devices known as repeaters. These repeaters make several physical segments appear to be one logical network.

EtherLink runs under PC-DOS. Everything, except for the additional operating-system-level commands necessary to establish links between user pcs and server pcs, is transparent to the user.

Each pc in the Ethernet LAN requires a network adapter card containing the standard Ethernet logic circuits and firmware.

Although floppy disk drives and a printer can be shared among networked pcs, hard disks cannot. The addition of the *EtherShare* network server allows for the sharing of up to seventy-two megabytes of hard-disk storage capacity. Two software packages, *EtherPrint* and *EtherMail*, available separately, can also be connected into this server. If no *EtherShare* server is present, a printer can be attached to one or more pcs that have been designated servers; these server pcs also provide shared floppy disk resources.

The manufacturer of this product, 3Com, uses the name *EtherLink* to refer to the basic network and its supporting software but does not necessarily include *EtherShare*, *EtherPrint*, or *EtherMail* under that banner. For purposes of this article, however, we'll extend the term *EtherLink* to describe all the components the company provides to set up an LAN; these would include not only the basic system hardware and software but also the extra servers and their accompanying software packages.

EtherLink Hardware

The hardware associated with *EtherLink* comprises network bus components, the *EtherShare* network server, and the adapter card(s). We'll now discuss each of these elements in more detail.

Network Bus Components. The *EtherLink* data path is formed by coaxial cable—either RG-58A/U thin coaxial with BNC-type hardware, or the commercial-grade Ethernet thick coaxial with N-type hardware. Thin cable can be connected directly to an adapter card with a BNC T-connector, in an arrangement similar to the hardware connections in PCNet I, while thick cable requires an external transceiver and a cable tap. Thick and thin cable may be intermingled on the same network so long as basic network configuration rules are followed. These rules, which conform to Ethernet specifications, are summarized in table 1 and illustrated in figure 1.

Although thick cable allows for longer segments, it is considerably more difficult to install. In addition, thick cable is more expensive—it costs more per linear foot than thin cable, and extra hardware is required at each device connection point. Examples of network installations for both the thick and thin bus cases are shown in figures 2 and 3.

STOP WAITING FOR YOUR IBM PC!

Install QUICKON!

Tired of waiting for your PC to come on after you flip the switch? Your PC will come alive in 3-4 sec. or less with QUICKON, NO MATTER HOW MUCH MEMORY YOU HAVE!

Easy installation:
- Remove your IBM BIOS ROM and plug it into our QUICKON Module.
- Plug QUICKON into the PC's ROM socket. No Expansion Slot needed.

Works with all IBM PCs EXCEPT the XT.

No PC warranty problems - easily removable.

INTRODUCTORY offer - $49 postpaid

U.S. money order or check. NY buyers add 8.25% tax. Foreign orders - $65

SECURITY MICROSYSTEMS CONSULTANTS
16 Flagg Place Suite 102S
Staten Island, NY 10304
(212) 667-1019

EtherShare Network Server. Although it does not function as a network workstation, this hardware component is a general-purpose microcomputer. The server uses an Intel 8086 processor operating at 10 MHz and has 512K of parity-checked random access memory.

Any number of servers can be placed on *EtherLink*, although the cost of these devices would tend to put a limit somewhere.

Each server comes with a keyboard, video display, and *EtherLink* adapter card. Each station can be equipped with either ten or thirty-six megabytes of hard-disk storage and one drive of equal capacity can also be added externally. It is thus possible to have 10, 20, 36, or 72 megabytes of hard disk storage.

Each server can be equipped with a one-megabyte 5 1/4-inch floppy disk drive for backup purposes. A seventeen-megabyte cartridge tape drive is another optional peripheral. Each server can accommodate either one or two printers.

Adapter Card. Each device, or node, on the network must have an *EtherLink* network adapter card installed. This adapter card contains the circuitry and firmware required to implement layers 1 and 2—physical and data link—of the seven-layer ISO model (see the August installment of this series). The adapter card comes with a transceiver capable of driving the thin Ethernet cable. As mentioned earlier, the thick Ethernet installation requires an external transceiver, which can be supplied by 3Com or by the Xerox Corporation.

The adapter card handles a number of functions required for proper network operation. Among these are DMA (direct memory access) transfer operations with the host computer's RAM, the formatting of data into Ethernet packets for transmission, the passing of received data packets to the host pc's operating system, data error checking, data encoding and decoding, and access control in accordance with the Ethernet CSMA/CD protocol. Because the Ethernet CSMA/CD access protocol is widely used, let's take a moment to look at it more closely.

The *EtherLink* adapter card implements the full CSMA/CD protocol according to the Ethernet specification. With data packet sizes ranging from 64 to 1,518 bytes, this protocol

The Twelve Commandments of Ethernet

I. 100 nodes maximum on any single segment
II. Nodes must be at least 2.5 meters apart
III. Node is defined as an addressable entity connected via:
  - Cable tap (T-connector for thin cable)
  - Transceiver (on adapter card for thin system)
  - Controller (on adapter card for thin system)
IV. Any number of devices may be connected to a node
V. Repeaters may be placed at any or every node position
VI. Maximum length of cable between any two nodes is 1,500 meters
VII. Maximum segment length:
  - 300 m Thin Ethernet
  - 500 m Thick Ethernet with non-3Com transceivers
  - 1,000 m Thick Ethernet with 3Com transceivers
VIII. Maximum length of transceiver cable is 50 meters (adapter card to thick cable transceiver)
IX. Maximum of two repeaters in a path between any two nodes
X. Maximum of 1,000 meters for a point-to-point link
XI. Maximum end-to-end network length is 2,800 meters
XII. Maximum of 1,024 nodes on a complete network.

Table 1.

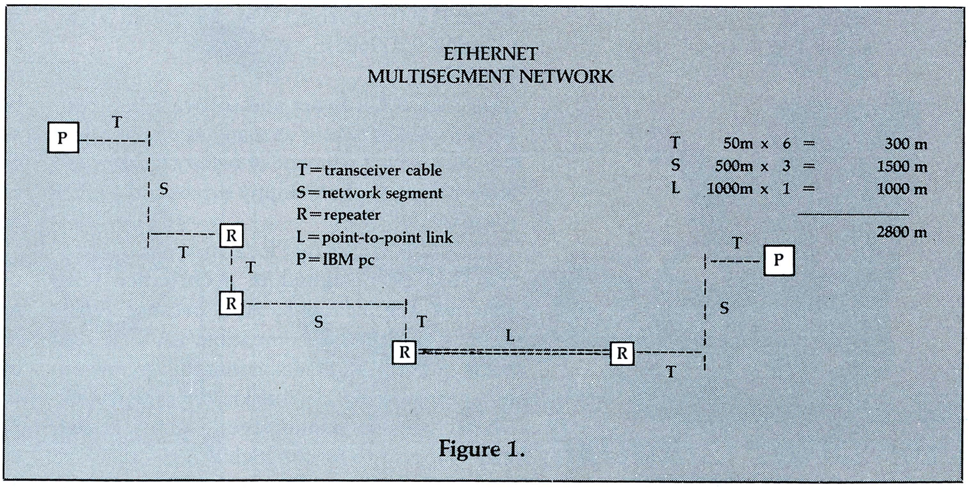


Figure 1.

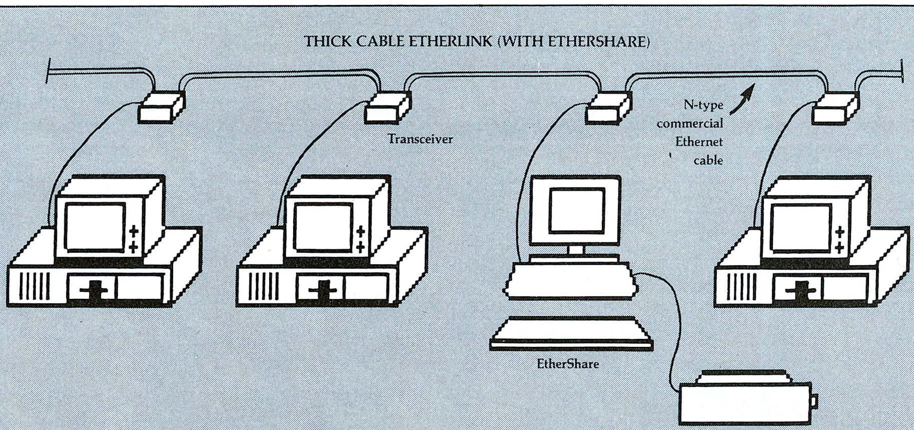

THICK CABLE ETHERLINK (WITH ETHERSHARE)
Transceiver
N-type commercial Ethernet cable
EtherShare

Figure 2.

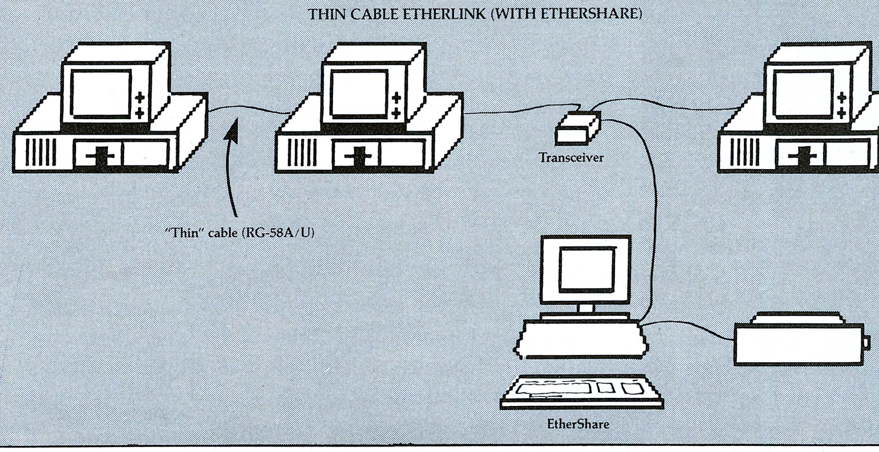

THIN CABLE ETHERLINK (WITH ETHERSHARE)
Transceiver
"Thin" cable (RG-58A/U)
EtherShare

Figure 3.

NEW! for IBM

The Full-Featured WORD PROCESSOR

GOOD-WORDS™

with Space Saver Disk System™

- easy to learn and use
- full screen editing
- on-demand help screens
- function keys
- complete search/replace
- easy block moves: within a page, page to page, file to file, diskette to diskette
- on-line manual with index
- requires 128K min., 2 drives
- justification, centering
- easy cut/paste
- insert/delete characters, lines, pages
- simple file and disk commands
- space-saver-disk-system: 25% extra storage on every diskette
- back-up diskette included
- multiple printer support (incl. T.I. 810 LQ)
- auto page numbering

FLASH XT version available 11/83. order now – just **$149.95.**

"Made in the shade."

Only 99^{95}

CREDIT CARD ORDERS, 24 hours, Toll-Free *1-800-824-7888* (operator 685) Continental U.S., Virgin Islands, Puerto Rico.
Alaska or Hawaii *1-800-824-7919* (operator 685)
mail orders: oak tree computing, inc., 481 fairview ave., arcadia, ca. 91006 sorry no c.o.d.'s
IBM and XT are Trademarks of IBM Corporation. Good-Words and Space-Saver-Disk-Systems are Trademarks of Oak Tree Computing, Inc. California residents add 6½% sales tax.

NEW

PC STATISTICIAN™

A POWERFUL, NEW STATISTICS PACKAGE FOR THE IBM PC

EASY TO USE

PC STATISTICIAN™ is flexible and sophisticated, yet simple to use. Follow the examples in the manual, then start analyzing experimental or survey data immediately.

CHOOSES CASES AUTOMATICALLY

To get reports on your data, specify the analysis, then the variables and variable levels. If you have all of your data in a single file, PC STATISTICIAN™ can choose the records and variables for your analysis automatically. It even handles missing data automatically.

COMPREHENSIVE

You will be able to carry out virtually all of your data analysis with this one package. PC STATISTICIAN™ includes:

Research data base
Search & select on 1-4 variables
Crosstabulation on 1-5 variables
Descriptive statistics
Frequency distribution
T-tests
1-way anova
Nonparametrics
Correlations
Curvefitting
Multiple regression
Contingency tables
Data transformations
Graphics

PC STATISTICIAN™ comes with a 10 day money back guarantee. This is the first program in The Statistics Series™ for the IBM PC. IBM PC, PC DOS, 128K, 2 DSDD Disk Drives. $300.00

Are you tired of complicated data input and analysis specification on mainframes? Do you need data management, reports, statistics on unlimited cases? Are you ready to do professional statistics in your own office within minutes?

Let PC STATISTICIAN™ do the work for you.

HSD
HUMAN SYSTEMS DYNAMICS

To Order — Call (213) 993-8536
or Write
HUMAN SYSTEMS DYNAMICS
9010 Reseda Blvd. Suite 222
Northridge, CA 91324

VISA Dealer Inquiries Invited MasterCard

supports a network configuration of up to 2.8 kilometers between any two workstations. A multisegment Ethernet (or *EtherLink*) LAN is pictured in figure 1.

The *EtherLink* packet format is shown in figure 4.

Maximum packet size is based on efficiency and the desire to minimize collisions (two or more data packets on the network simultaneously). Minimum packet size is chosen to guarantee collision detection (CD) at maximum network sizes. Figure 5 illustrates how minimum packet size and maximum network size interact to provide collision detection under the "worst case" condition.

Transmitting sixty-four bytes of data takes 51.2 microseconds at a ten-megabit data rate. This is approximately equal to the amount of time required for a bit of data to make the round trip between two pcs located at the extremities of the networks illustrated in figures 1 and 5. If pc A commences a packet transmission on the network, pc B won't sense the carrier until A's packet begins to arrive. If pc B were to start a transmission just prior to the arrival of A's packet, as the CSMA/CD protocol would allow, a collision would be generated at B when A's packet arrived. B would then transmit a collision signal, which would begin to arrive at A while A was still transmitting the original sixty-four-byte packet. Thus, the adapter card in A would also detect a collision and begin its collision-recovery routine. This routine consists of continuing the transmission process for a short interval in order to generate the collision signal just mentioned (this is known as a *jam transmission*), followed by a random period of silence before attempting to send the packet. Since this is the worst-case example, it means that any longer packet size and any two nodes closer together on the network will also have guaranteed collision detection.

The logic we've just been discussing is the most difficult part of the CSMA/CD protocol to understand. The remaining aspects of this access-control method are relatively straightforward.

If the physical layer of a station does not sense a carrier, it signals the data link layer to begin transmission of one or more data packets. On a baseband network such as *EtherLink*, a "carrier" is actually the presence of digital signal transmissions from bit to bit. Once the packets are transmitted, the collision-detect logic works as described above. With Ethernet packet sizes, the percentage of collisions is quite low (less than 1 percent), even on relatively large and busy networks. Therefore, business users of *EtherLink* or a similar LAN need not be overly concerned about degraded performance as a result of collisions.

EtherLink Software

Basic System. *EtherLink* software is supplied in the basic system (without *EtherShare*) to allow designated pcs to be set up as server pcs. While it is so designated, a server pc cannot be used to run other application programs. There is no limit to the number of pcs that may be set up as servers. And any printer or floppy I/O

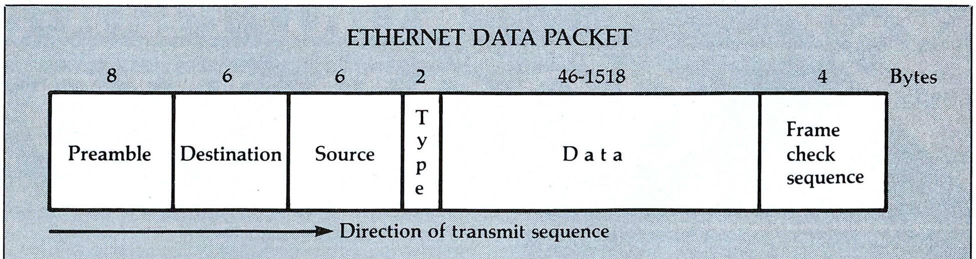


Figure 4.

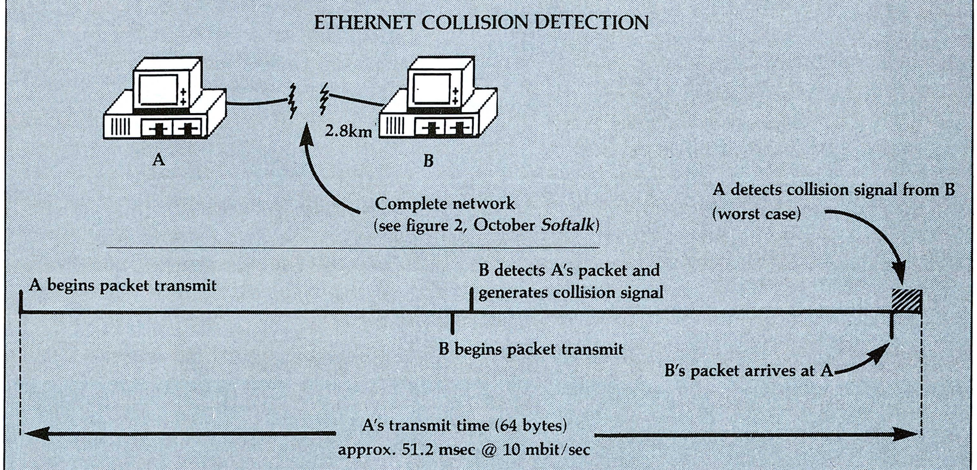
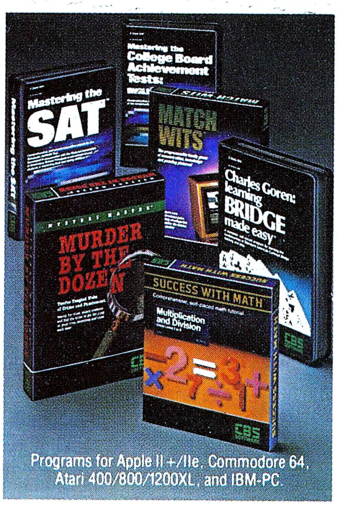

ETHERNET COLLISION DETECTION
A
2.8km
B
Complete network (see figure 2, October Softalk)
A detects collision signal from B (worst case)
A begins packet transmit
B detects A's packet and generates collision signal
B begins packet transmit
B's packet arrives at A
A's transmit time (64 bytes) approx. 51.2 msec @ 10 mbit/sec

Figure 5.

SUCCESS WITH MATH
Comprehensive, self-paced math tutorial
Multiplication and Division

WE PROVOKE, AMUSE, STIMULATE, SPUR, DELIGHT, AWAKEN, INTRIGUE, CHALLENGE...

WE TICKLE THE MIND.


Mastering the SAT
Mastering the College Board Achievement Tests
MATCH WITS
Charles Goren: learning BRIDGE made easy
MURDER BY THE DOZEN
SUCCESS WITH MATH
Multiplication and Division
CBS

Programs for Apple II+/IIe, Commodore 64, Atari 400/800/1200XL, and IBM-PC.

If you're looking for computer programs that can satisfy you in special ways, take a look at CBS Software.

We've got programs that tickle the mind.

SUCCESS WITH MATH SERIES™ (Apple, Atari, Commodore)—Students who want to get ahead in math—or, students who want to catch up—will find these classroom-tested programs add up to positive results! ADDITION/SUBTRACTION and MULTIPLICATION/DIVISION, are for elementary level and up. LINEAR EQUATIONS is for grades 7-10, and QUADRATIC EQUATIONS is for grades 8-11.

MASTERING THE SAT™ (Apple, IBM)—It's a private tutor that helps college-bound students score better on the Scholastic Aptitude Test! Developed with the National Association of Secondary School Principals.

MASTERING THE COLLEGE BOARD ACHIEVEMENT TESTS: ENGLISH COMPOSITION™ (Apple, IBM)—This comprehensive, self-paced preparation program covers the four categories of questions found in the ECAT—helps students analyze their need for further study.

CHARLES GOREN: LEARNING BRIDGE MADE EASY™ (Apple, IBM)—You'll play better bridge by actually learning from the world's foremost bridge authority, Charles Goren.

© 1983 CBS Inc. A Unit of CBS Inc., One Fawcett Place, Greenwich, CT 06836. (203) 622-2503. "Apple" is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. "Atari" is a trademark of Atari, Inc. "CCW" is a trademark of Children's Computer Workshop, Inc. "Commodore" is a trademark of Commodore Business Machines, Inc. "IBM" is a trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

MYSTERY MASTER™: MURDER BY THE DOZEN™ (Apple, Commodore, IBM)—Mystery buffs can sharpen their deductive reasoning skills on this exciting and entertaining concept in crimebreaking: the compudunit! Twelve crimes can be investigated by up to four players in a race to unmask the perpetrator.

MATCH-WITS™ (Apple, IBM)—Here's a challenge to your knowledge and powers of concentration and memory. Play it solo—better yet, in competition—and if that's not enough, program in your own challenges!

We know you're itching for software that can do more for you.

Discover CBS Software.

And let us tickle your mind.

CBS SOFTWARE

device that can be attached to a pc can become a shared resource. For example, the following sequence can be used to establish a pc as a server named Server1, with drive B (write-protected) and line printer Lpt2: available as shared resources:

```
A>PCSERVER [executes
  PCSERVER.COM program]
  Server name?     SERVER1
  Server drive ID?  B:
  Write protect?  Y
  Server printer ID?  LPT2:
```

This command could also have been entered as:

```
A>PCSERVER SERVER1 B:        /WP LPT2:
```

From this point on, all pcs in the *EtherLink* network can access Server1, but they can do so only one at a time. The user pc links a local driver designator (in this case, C:) to the shared floppy with the following command:

```
A>EL LINK C: SERVER1
```

The effect of this command is to make drive B on Server1 available as logical drive C on the user pc workstation. Local drive designators A through D can be linked to the named server's shared drive. Although linked access to a server pc is exclusive (only one user pc linked to a resource at a time), the user pc may link to the floppy and printer simultaneously. Only one drive and one printer on a server pc may be designated as shared resources.

ACCESS MICRO
11306 Southland Road
Forest Park, Ohio 45240

SOFTWARE FOR YOUR COMPUTER

Attractive Prices
Informative Catalog*
Prompt Shipping
Toll Free Ordering

*Our catalog contains useful programming tips -don't miss it !

CALL
1-800-543-1114
Ohio·Alaska·Hawaii
Call 513-825-5803

Figure 6 illustrates the general capabilities and limitations of *EtherLink*'s basic software. It should be obvious from this simplified example that the capability for multiple users to access the basic *EtherLink* network is limited when only one server is designated. In fact, when more than one server is designated, only that number of virtual circuits can be in use at any given moment, regardless of how many pcs are connected to the network. On networks with a relatively large number of user pcs, this arrangement wastes *EtherLink*'s capacity. On an *EtherLink* network that contained an *EtherShare* server, the problem would not be noticeable.

Compatibility of existing IBM pc software must be carefully assessed before applications are planned on an *EtherLink* network. Generally speaking, if a software package is to be compatible, the following criteria must be met: The package must run in PC-DOS and use standard floppy disk and printer drivers. The code must be relocatable in user RAM, and there must be sufficient room in RAM for program code and data; and the program must not require physical insertion of a disk during operation.

Representative programs and the degree to which they meet these criteria are listed in table 2. The programs are shown there to help give you a feel for compatibility requirements. Keep in mind that later versions of some of the programs listed as incompatible may now meet the compatibility criteria after all.

EtherShare Software. The addition of the *EtherShare* server to the *EtherLink* network adds a new dimension to its usefulness in the business environment. Hard-disk resources require the addition of this separate microcomputer and the *EtherShare* software package. The hard disk drives are provided by 3Com with the *EtherShare* server; network server software does not support other types of drives.

EtherShare is made up of three distinct parts: the *EtherShare* server, which manages all *EtherShare* resources, such as hard-disk volumes and printers; the *EtherShare* administrative program, which performs housekeeping jobs on the server; and the *EtherShare* commands, which are executed from a command file on each user pc's local drive (usually drive A).

Fourteen *EtherShare* commands are accessible by each user on the *EtherLink* network. These commands allow the user to log in and log out from the server by user name, create or delete *EtherShare* volumes, link local floppy drive designators to *EtherShare* volumes, modify user access and volume parameters, and display directories of network users and volumes.

EtherLink Software Compatibility

Compatible Software	Incompatible Software
VisiCalc*	EasyWriter 1.0
SuperCalc	VisiTrend/Plot 1.0
EasyWriter 1.1*	VisiDex 1.0
PFS:File*	VisiSchedule
PFS:Graph*	Time Manager
Desktop/Plan*	
WordStar	
VisiFile	

*These programs are self-booting and are loaded with the command *el boot*. This allows the network linkages between the user and server pcs to remain intact. A normal warm boot would break any existing links.

Table 2.

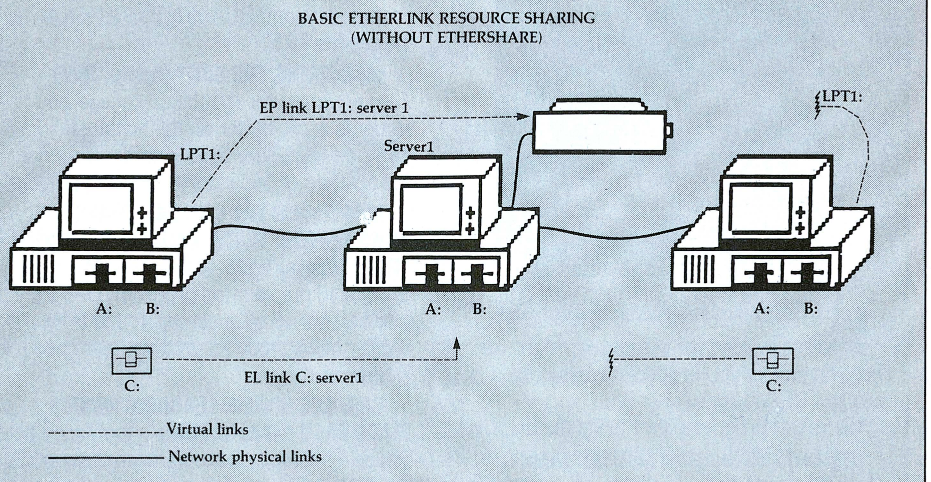
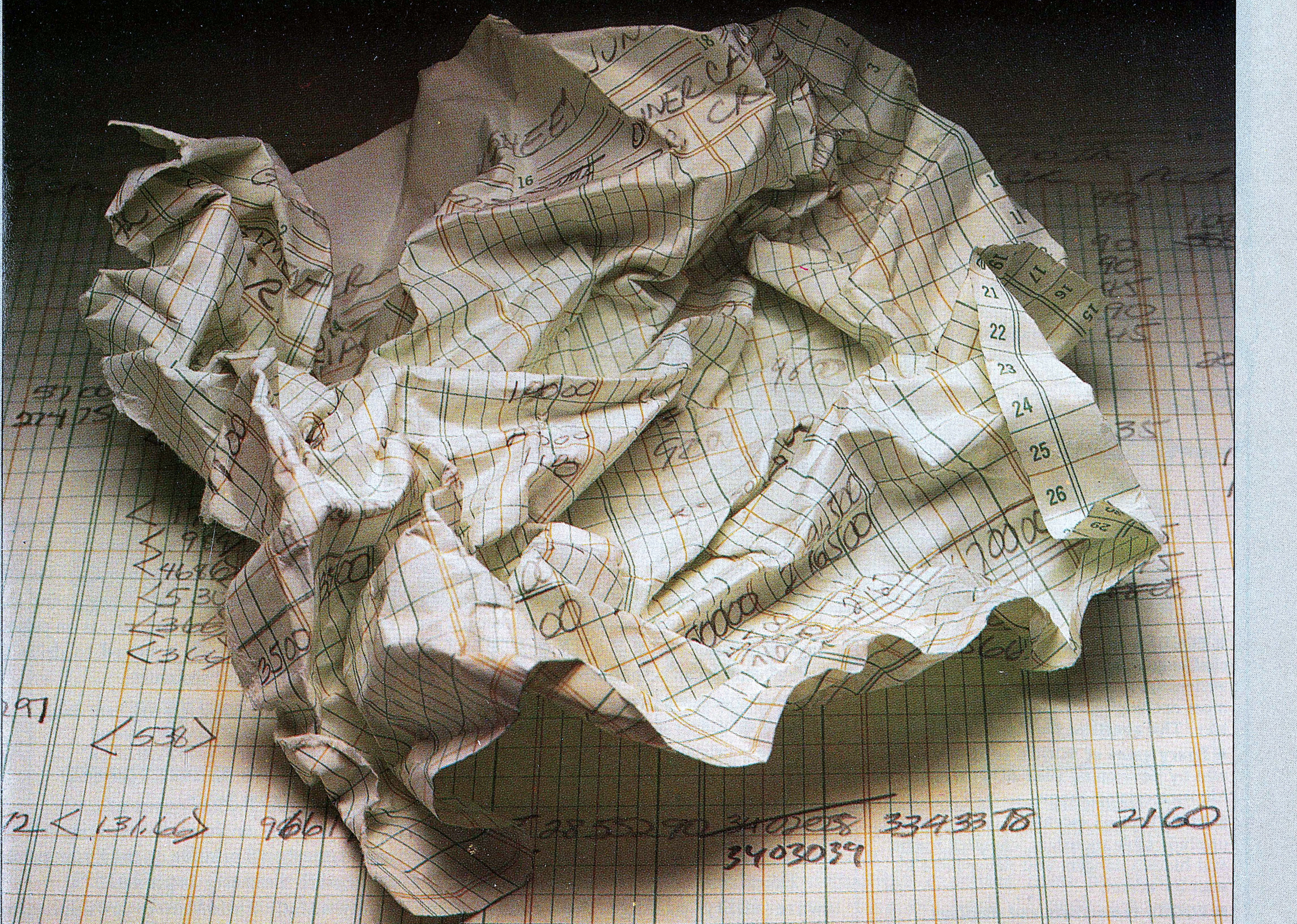


Figure 6.

Who says General Ledger is simple?



We do.

BPI System's General Ledger System is one of the most advanced accounting systems available today for microcomputers.

Ease of use and simplicity of data entry mean that anyone familiar with the basics of bookkeeping can operate the system within minutes, without specialized training. The package includes a demonstration disk for training and a thorough owners manual for quick instruction.

Features programmed into the BPI General Ledger System include six custom journals: Invoice Register, Cash Receipts, Merchandise Purchased, Cash Disbursements, Cash Register Journal, and General Journal. The data entry procedures for these Journals are standardized to make data entry fast and easy. And each of the journals can be listed on your CRT screen or printer.

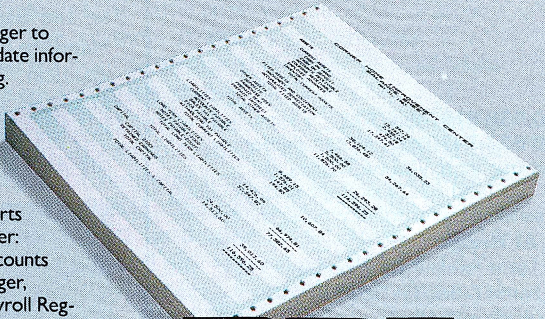
The BPI General Ledger is probably all the accounting software many businesses will ever need since it also includes important subsidiary ledgers: such as an Accounts Receivable Ledger to record customer activity. An Accounts Payable Ledger to record vendor activity. And, a Payroll Ledger to maintain monthly, quarterly, and year-to-date information needed for 941 and W-2 reporting.

The BPI General Ledger System can produce up to ten departmental or branch Profit and Loss Statements and a consolidated Profit and Loss Statement.

For quick access to vital information whenever you want it, the following reports can be listed to your CRT screen or printer: Financial Statements, General Ledger, Accounts Receivable Ledger, Accounts Payable Ledger, Monthly, Quarterly, and Year-to-Date Payroll Registers, Merchandise Purchased by Due Date, and alphabetical and numerical sequenced lists of payors/payees, vendors, customers, and employees.

To protect important accounting data, the system even provides for making backup data disks. The process is so simple you can do it as often as you wish. And, the General Ledger interfaces with the entire family of BPI Accounting Systems.

Ask for a demonstration by your computer dealer or write us for more information. You'll see how powerful, yet simple, a General Ledger system can be.



BPI SYSTEMS ™

SIMPLY, THE MOST POWERFUL SOFTWARE IN BUSINESS.

3423 GUADALUPE / AUSTIN, TX 78705 / 512-454-2801

BPI and BPI Systems are trademarks of BPI Systems Inc.

Never The Same Game Twice

Rogue™

Now your PC can handle Rogue... can you?

Rogue, the most popular UNIX* game ever, now runs under MS-DOS* on the IBM PC.

- **ROGUE's many intricacies make its challenge a lasting one** Expert game writers spent four man years devising the most exciting adventure you'll ever undertake: **The quest for the Amulet of Yendor.**
- **Every game of ROGUE is different** You win by developing **your ROGUE** character, not memorizing events.
- **ROGUE plays quickly** It's so full of unpredictable monsters, complex magic and hidden dangers you never have to wait for action.
- **ROGUE remembers and displays strategic information** You never interrupt the action to make separate maps or notes.

Don't Wait To Challenge Yourself

Order ROGUE Today—Call toll-free:
800-538-8157 ext. 973
800-672-3470 ext. 973 in California
And use your Visa or MasterCard
$44.95 (add $2.00 postage and handling)
or send check or money order to:

AI Design
1989 Santa Cruz Avenue
Santa Clara, CA 95051
(408) 296-1634

Ask for **ROGUE** at your computer store.

Requirements
IBM Personal Computer or IBM Personal Computer XT ■ DOS 1.1 or 2.0 ■ 128K of Memory ■ Single Disk Drive ■ Monochrome or Color monitor

VISA MasterCard

*UNIX is a trademark of Bell Labs, Inc.
*MS-DOS is a trademark of Microsoft, Inc.

Volumes can be established on the hard disk as either 160K or 320K areas. In this context, a volume simulates the presence of an additional single- or double-sided floppy drive. A ten-megabyte drive can accommodate about thirty double-sided floppy equivalents, or a proportionately higher number if some volumes are single-sided equivalents. Any user on the network can link from one to three local drive designators to the *EtherShare* server. The allowable drive designators are A:, B:, C:, and D:, just as in the basic *EtherLink* software. The normal procedure would be to allocate drive A to the local floppy and to link B, C, or D to appropriate hard-disk volumes. A single user would then have access to a maximum of 1.28 megabytes of combined floppy and hard-disk mass storage.

An individual user may establish only one set of links (drive designators to volume names) to a given server at a time. Over the entire network, however, any number of links may be set up from multiple users, up to the limit of the server capacity. The job of the *EtherShare* housekeeping software is to sort out the flow of data to and from the server when multiple users are accessing the hard disk.

File protection is accomplished by means of passwords and a simple scheme of access control. Protection is provided only to the volume level of storage; individual files and records are not protected.

A volume can be public or private. If a volume is public, everyone on the network has access to it, unless a password is assigned; if a volume is private, only the creator of that volume has access. Passwords can be assigned to any volume. Table 3 summarizes the protection scheme maintained by *EtherShare* software.

EtherPrint. *EtherPrint* is supplied as a software utility package that runs on the *EtherShare* server and on user pcs. It performs in similar fashion to the print-sharing software on the basic *EtherLink* network. The commands to link and unlink printer resources are identical. The major difference between the *EtherLink* network software and *EtherPrint* is that the latter allows the use of two printers on the server. Print files are queued in the *EtherShare* server on a first-in first-out basis until the selected printer is available. Once a printer link is established between a pc and one of the two print devices, normal PC-DOS or Basic print commands can be executed on the selected printer.

The following sequence illustrates how *EtherPrint* can be used to print a final report (produced in *WordStar*) on a letter-quality printer attached to the server (Server1). The first step is to establish the printer link:

```
A>EP LINK ?
Your printer ID?   LPT1: [what printer device to link]
To whom?   SERVER1 [designate the proper server]
SERVER1 linked to LPT1: [confirmation of link]
```

In the event that a review of *EtherShare* printer assignment is desired, the following sequence can be used to list printers attached to the server:

```
>EP DIR ? [list printers on the server]
Server?   SERVER1 [designate the proper server]
A>EP LINK   LPT1: /? [what printers are attached?]
Printer(s) supported by the server:
        1 -DIABLO
        2 -EPSON
Selection?   2 [use the Epson printer]
SERVER1 linked to LPT1: [confirmation]
```

The next step is to load *WordStar* from a shared volume on the hard disk. Let's assume that *WordStar* is located on public volume WordProc, which is linked to drive B, and that the file to be printed, *Report.doc*, is on private volume Myfiles, which is linked to drive C. Here's the command sequence:

```
A>B:WS  [load WordStar from the hard disk]
P [Print file from WordStar's no-file menu]
Name of file to print?   C:REPORT.DOC
        [Now answer the print file questions]
Ready printer, press Return
```

The report file on hard-disk volume Myfiles would now begin printing on the Epson printer attached to the server as printer 2.

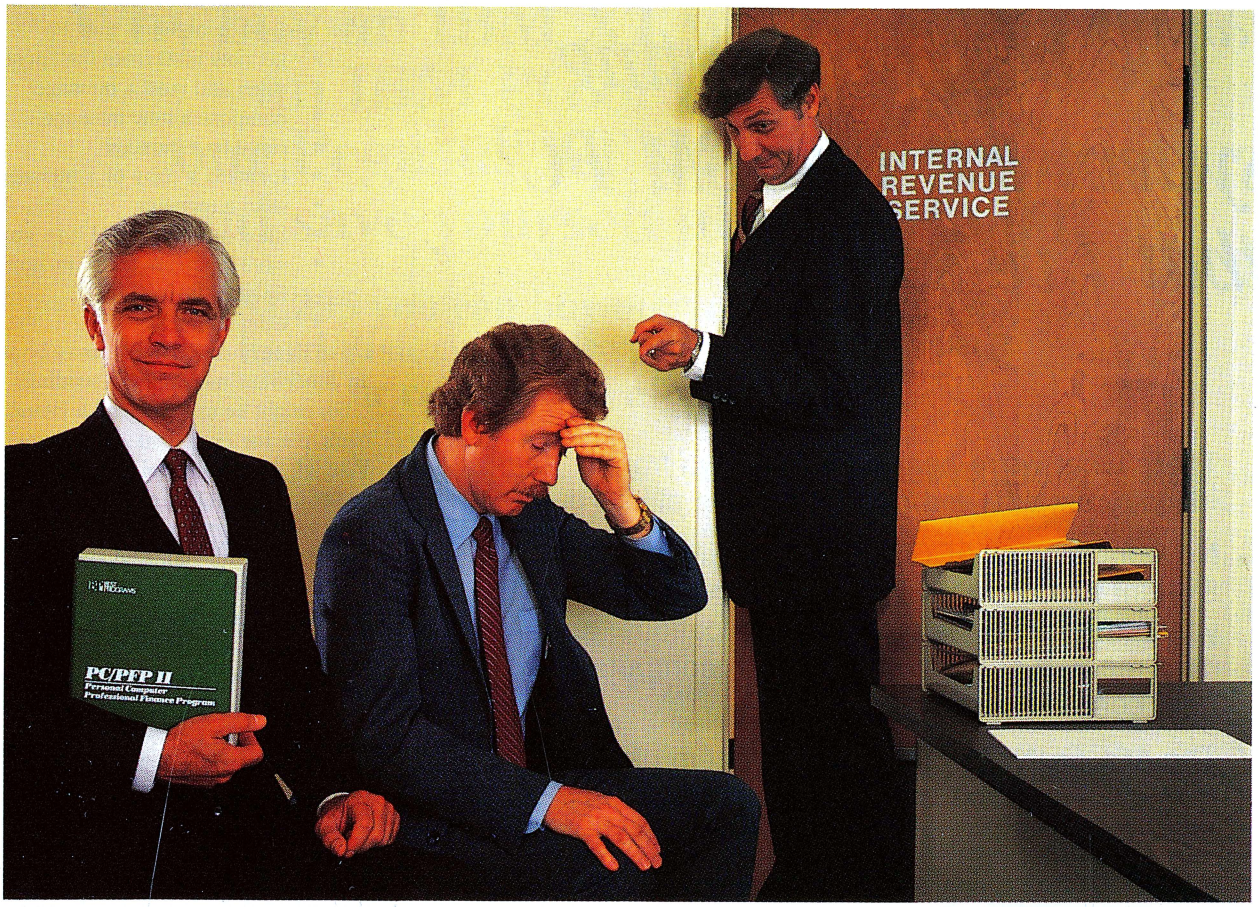
EtherMail. *EtherMail* is an application package designed to run on the *EtherShare* server and on networked pcs. The server acts as a post office and mail administrator for the network; each user pc runs an *EtherMail* program that provides the network mail capabilities we'll look at now.

EtherMail is an internal message processing system; there is no tie-in to modem networks

EtherShare Volume Protection

Volume Access	Password Assigned	No Password
Public—many users; shared access	Password required	Anyone can use
Private—only one user can access; exclusive access	Password required	Only the creator may use

Table 3.



WE TAKE THE WORRY OUT OF PERSONAL AND BUSINESS FINANCE

For many people managing personal financial activity has become the equivalent of managing a small business. **Best Programs' Personal Computer/ Professional Finance Program, PC/PFP II** gives you the tools to make financial management as professional as you need or want it to be, for personal or business finance. Set up your budget, plan cash flow, evaluate your assets and liabilities or just monitor results. The **PC/PFP II** is a powerful system for personal or business financial management that puts all the resources of a professional accounting system at your disposal. With one big difference! Unlike professional accounting systems, **PC/ PFP II** is designed to be understandable and easy to use. You will not need any financial background or specialized accounting skills to put this sophisticated, yet simple accounting system to work for you in your home or business.

With **PC/PFP II** you can generate a virtually limitless number of customized and current financial management reports, performance to budget reports, bar graphs to get summary impressions of your progress, reports on your overall income and expense distribution, and keep checkbook and other account balances.

PC/PFP II reports give you all the information you need to prepare and support your income tax returns. Our program features the standard categories for tax-deductible expenses used by IRS, which makes your task on April 15 each year a whole lot simpler.

With **PC/PFP II** you can even have the computer print a check at the same time you enter the transaction into the system. It prints the address of the payee, so all you do is slip the check in a window envelope and add the stamp.

The **PC/PFP II** takes the worry out of financial management. It's simple, the **PC/PFP II** runs on the IBM Personal Computer (and the model XT) with a minimum of 128KB memory, two diskette drives, one of which must be double sided, an 80 column display, a printer and any version of IBM-PC DOS.

Don't wait any longer. Control your financial future with the **PC/PFP II**. For more information or to order use your Mastercard or Visa and call 703-931-1300 or send $245.00 plus $2.00 for postage and handling to **Best Programs**, 5134 Leesburg Pike, Alexandria, VA 22302.

BEST
PROGRAMS

"The best accounting system for the IBM PC® that I've seen."

Boston Microcomputing Consultant

That's what we're hearing these days from industry experts and business users alike.

No wonder. Our ACCOUNTMASTER 8/16™ System has been perfected over the last seven years in a complete range of applications, and it's already running on 8,000 microcomputers from coast to coast.

The ACCOUNTMASTER 8/16 System has a combination of features you won't find in any other microcomputer accounting software.

It has the flexibility to adapt to your procedures, the capacity to accommodate a growing business, and the modularity to let you build the coordinated general accounting system you really need, function by function.

What's more, the ACCOUNTMASTER 8/16 System runs not just on the IBM PC but on any 8 or 16-bit microcomputer that uses CP/M™, CP/M-86™, MP/M™, MP/M-86™, or MS-DOS™. You're not limited to one brand of hardware.

If you'd like to read all about the best price/performance accounting software on the microcomputing market, just drop us a line or give us a call toll-free at 800-547-SBSG (except in Mass.)

The Can-Do People in Microcomputing

SMALL BUSINESS SYSTEMS GROUP

6 Carlisle Road • Westford, MA 01886 • 617-692-3800

User-proven microcomputer software and systems for accounting, communications, electronic mail and more

Trademarks: IBM PC, International Business Machines; ACCOUNTMASTER 8/16, SBSG: CP/M, CP/M-86, MP/M, MP/M-86, Digital Research; MS-DOS, Microsoft.

through gateways or modem servers. *EtherMail* allows the network user to

- get new mail from the "post office"
- open and read a message
- compose a new message
- reply to a message
- forward a copy of a message
- send a message
- file a message (send it to yourself)
- save a message in progress (to be finished later)
- delete a message

Up to twenty-six DOS files may be attached to an *EtherMail* message for sending; this capability might be used to send a *WordStar* document file for comment or perhaps to send a *VisiCalc* budget model as an update to a cost center's entries. You can send mail automatically to predefined groups of recipients by entering only a file name. A text editor included in the software is automatically invoked when messages are created, replied to, or forwarded. This editor may also be used off-line. Any other editor or word processor may also be used, and the resulting file may be sent as an attachment to a normal message.

The *EtherShare* server's primary functions in the *EtherMail* process are to accept and distribute a user's messages, checking all servers on the network to find the proper addressees. If more than one server is present, each active user on the *EtherLink* network must be logged on to a specific server. Message routing is transparent to the user. The server also accepts messages addressed to all logged-in users, holding them in the "post office" until recipients wish to retrieve their mail. In addition to maintaining the post office, the *EtherShare* server maintains personal "mail folders" for the users who normally log on to that server. These mail folders are managed by the users, not by the *EtherShare* post office.

In keeping with our continuing effort to compare network costs, let's refer now to figure 7. The eight-member *EtherLink* network shown there, with a ten-megabyte hard disk, requires eight *EtherLink* adapter cards at $950 each, two hundred feet of thin coaxial cable at $80 (custom assembled), one terminator kit at $25, and one *EtherShare* network server, costing $11,500. The nominal cost for this network would be $19,205. *EtherPrint* software, *EtherMail* software, and use of the commercial standard Ethernet cable and its associated transceivers would result in additional costs. Repeaters to extend the network to a multisegment installation cost approximately $1,300.

Before rejecting *EtherLink* out of hand because it appears to be so costly, remember that it is fully Ethernet compatible and may be the only solution where tie-in to an existing Ethernet or expansion to a full-size Ethernet is required. From a cost-benefit standpoint, this network is most appropriate where the num-

Why buy an IBM® XT when you can buy an IBM PC or compatible, our Pegasus XT Conversion Kit,™ and save yourself almost $1,600?

For $1,295 you can buy our internal 10 megabyte hard disk system installed in an IBM PC or compatible of your choice.

Think about it. When you consider buying an IBM XT or XT look-alike, you're after large storage, the convenience of IBM compatible software, and the peace of mind associated with a quality product. But one thing you're not looking for is paying more than you have to.

The Savings

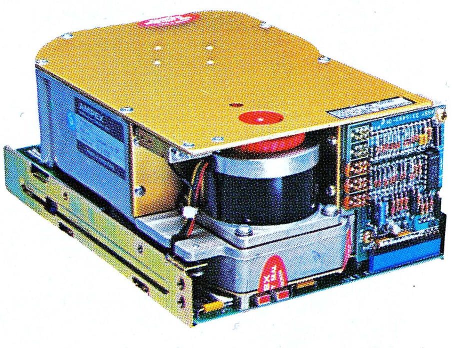
If you buy an IBM XT, it's going to cost you $4,995 for the XT system unit. You'll get 10 megabytes of hard disk storage, one 320 Kbytes floppy disk drive, 8 slots, a $120 asynchronous communication adaptor, 128K of RAM and the three IBM intials.

We recommend instead, that you buy the IBM *PC* for $2,104. You'll get one 320 Kbyte floppy disk drive, 5 slots, 64K of RAM, the same three IBM initials, a space for your dealer to put the Pegasus XT Conversion Kit, and an extra $2,891 to buy it with. But since the Pegasus XT Conversion Kit costs only $1,295 installed, you'll have an extra $1,596 — almost $1,600 — left over. With many compatibles you'll have even more.

But if you already own an IBM PC and were thinking you'd just get the XT expansion chassis, we have a surprise for you. If you add the $1,295 cost of the Pegasus XT Conversion Kit to the $2,104 price of an IBM PC, you can have a second computer — instead of a dumb box — for less than the price of the XT expansion chassis.

Hard Disk Quality

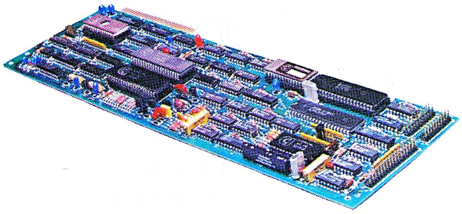
Now, before you start thinking that IBM's hard disk is better than ours, remember that IBM doesn't make their own hard disk for the IBM XT. They go into the marketplace, just like we do, and strike the best price they can. If you were to buy an IBM XT, your hard disk might come from one of four manufacturers. It's possible, in fact, that the IBM XT might have the same hard disk that you'd get in our Pegasus XT Conversion Kit.



The Role of the Controller

But the hard disk is not the whole story. It takes a controller card to get your files from the hard disk to your computer so you can use them.

The IBM XT has a good controller card. Unfortunately, it is not designed to take advantage of some of the advances in hard disk technology. Our controller card will work with our 10 megabyte hard disk all the way up to our 140 megabyte hard disk — and everything in between. With the IBM XT controller, you're limited to four manufacturers. The Pegasus controller board, on the other hand, configures to whatever hard disk you may want to install in the future. There is virtually no limit on hard disk size or number of manufacturers you can use.



Larger Disks

Pegasus offers an entire line of hard disks. You can expand your IBM PC far beyond the storage of the IBM XT. You can add our 23 megabyte hard disk for only $1,995, or our 40 megabyte for only $800 more. And if you really need storage, we offer a 65 and 140 megabyte hard disk that slides right into the same space that IBM and the compatible manufacturers put their 10 megabytes.

So, before you decide to spend more money than you have to, consider the Pegasus XT Conversion Kit. You'll get dealer support, the same 90 day warranty IBM gives, and have enough money left over to buy one of our larger hard disks. And isn't larger storage why you were looking at the hard disk in the first place? Contact your computer dealer today.

PEGASUS
A DIVISION OF
GREAT LAKES COMPUTER PERIPHERALS, INC.

2200 West Higgins Road, Suite 245
Hoffman Estates, Illinois 60195
In Illinois (312) 884-7272
800-323-6836
Dealer Inquiries Invited

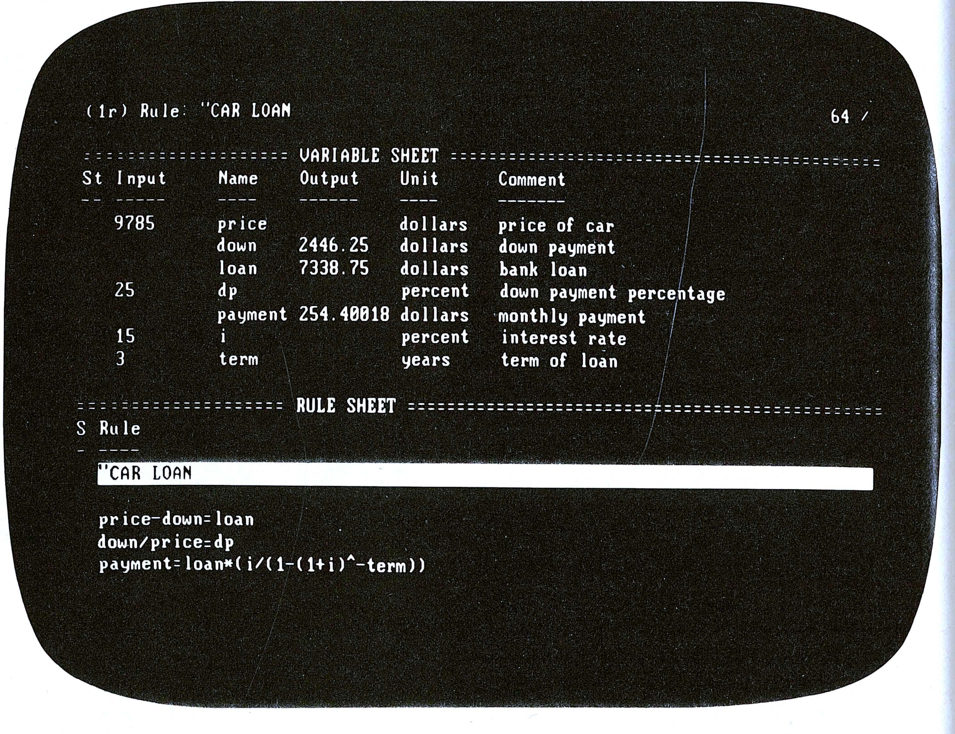
IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc.
XT Conversion Kit is a trademark of Great Lakes Computer Peripherals, Inc.

TK!SO
EXPLA

TK!Solver does for equations what word processing did for words. The first thing you should know about the TK!Solver™ program is that it is not a spreadsheet. Instead, it does something completely unheard of (until now)—it turns your personal computer into a voracious equation processor.

The next thing you should know is that if the TK!Solver program can't make life with your personal computer easier (and pay for itself), even if you use it only 15 minutes a week, you are a very rare person.

And finally, you should know exactly what equation processing is, and how it works. If you keep reading this, you will.



```
(1r) Rule: "CAR LOAN                                                   64 /

==================== VARIABLE SHEET ===========================================
St Input     Name    Output    Unit     Comment
-- -----     ----    ------    ----     -------
   9785      price             dollars  price of car
             down    2446.25   dollars  down payment
             loan    7338.75   dollars  bank loan
   25        dp                percent  down payment percentage
             payment 254.40018 dollars  monthly payment
   15        i                 percent  interest rate
   3         term              years    term of loan

==================== RULE SHEET ===============================================
S Rule
- ----
 "CAR LOAN

 price-down=loan
 down/price=dp
 payment=loan*(i/(1-(1+i)^-term))
```

Equation processing with TK!Solver, or problem solving made easy. The best way to understand what the TK!Solver program *is*, is to understand what it *does*. The following simple example is designed to do just that. If you're still a little in the dark after reading it, stop in at your local computer store for a very enlightening hands-on demonstration.

Begin by setting up your problem. The TK!Solver program lets you do it quickly, easily, and naturally. For example, a car costs $9785. What would be the monthly payment on a three-year loan if the down payment is 25% and the interest rate is 15%?

STEP 1. Formulate the necessary equations to solve your problem and enter them on the "Rule Sheet" simply by typing them in (as in the screen photo). For example: "price—down = loan."

STEP 2. Enter your known values the same way on the "Variable Sheet." For example: "9785" for price. You may also enter units and comments, if you want.*

STEP 3. Type the action command ("!" on your keyboard) to solve the problem.

STEP 4. TK!Solver displays the answer: the monthly payment is $254.40.

Backsolving, the heart of TK!Solver. Now that you've defined the problem and solved it, TK!Solver's unique backsolving ability also lets you think "backwards" to solve for any variable, regardless of its position in the equation. For example, if you can only afford a monthly payment of $200, you can re-solve the problem in terms of that constraint. The TK!Solver program will solve the problem, displaying your choice of a higher down payment, a longer loan term, or a lesser interest rate. This unique backsolving capability forms the basis of TK!Solver's remarkably flexible problem-solving ability.

OLVER™
AINED:

Also, as you can see from the example on the screen, TK!Solver deals not only with single variables, but with entire equations and sets of simultaneous equations. It also deals with much more complicated problems than this one. How complicated? That's up to you. What kinds of problems? That's up to you, too, but popular applications include finance, engineering, science, design, and education.

Other extremely useful and interesting things TK!Solver does. Aside from its basic problem-solving abilities, the TK!Solver program performs a number of pretty fancy tricks. Like: *Iterative Solving;* in which TK!Solver performs successive approximations of an answer when confronted with equations that cannot be solved directly,(like exp (x) = 2 – x • y and sin (x • y)= 3 – x – y). Like: *List Solving;* in which TK!Solver attacks complete lists of input values and solves them all, allowing you to examine numerous alternative solutions, and pick the one you like best. Like: *Tables and Graphs;* using the values you produced with the List Solver, the TK!Solver program will automatically produce tables and graphs of your data. You can look at your formatted output on the screen or send it to your printer with a single keystroke. And like: *Automatic Unit Conversion;* in which TK!Solver lets you formulate problems in one unit of measurement, and display answers in another. Very convenient what with all this talk about going metric.

The TK!Solver program also provides a wide variety of specialized business and mathematical functions like trig and log and net present value.

Then, there's TK!Solver's on-screen Help facility that provides information on commands and features any time you want it. Just type "?" and a topic name.

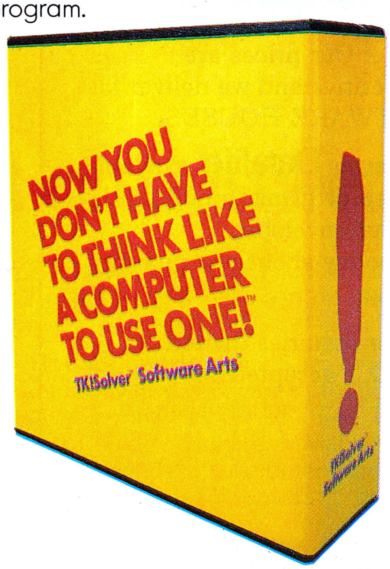
And of course the TK!Solver program combines all these features in one *integrated program.*

TK!SolverPacks make problem-solving a picnic. TK!SolverPack™ application packages are specially developed by experts in specific fields. Each package contains a diskette with about a dozen models that include the necessary equations, values, and tables for solving a particular problem. The models are usable as-is or you can easily modify them.

TK!SolverPack application packages available from Software Arts include Financial Management, Mechanical Engineering, Building Design and Construction, and Introductory Science. Additional TK!SolverPacks are on the way from Software Arts, McGraw-Hill,™ and others.

We know you're out there. No matter who you are, or what you do, if it involves using equations, the TK!Solver program is an indispensable tool for you.

So, visit your local computer store today, and see TK!Solver in action. You'll be amazed at how much faster and more effectively you'll be able to work when you discover the power of equation processing with the TK!Solver program.



Software Arts™
The inventors of VisiCalc®

27 Mica Lane, Wellesley, Massachusetts 02181
617/237-4000

---

*You can easily define appropriate unit conversions on the unit sheet.

TK, TK!, TK!Solver, TK!SolverPack, The Problem Cruncher, the stylized ! and the slogan "NOW YOU DON'T HAVE TO THINK LIKE A COMPUTER TO USE ONE!" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Software Arts, Inc. SATN, TK!SATN and DIF are trademarks or registered trademarks of Software Arts Products Corp. Software Arts is a trademark of Software Arts, Inc. and Software Arts Products Corp. The TK!Solver program and the TK!SolverPack applications packages are products of Software Arts, Inc. which is solely responsible for their contents. VisiCalc is a registered trademark of VisiCorp.

Copyright © 1983 Software Arts, Inc. All rights reserved.

P/N 100-092 P 8/83

ber of potential users is near the capacity of the network server.

Summary

In this series, we have taken a good look at currently available local area networks for the pc. New networks may differ in detail from the three reviewed here; however, the ability of a network to support file transfer, disk and printer sharing, and concurrent access should be closely examined before significant resources are committed to the system. The availability of application software that can take advantage of network features (concurrent-access databases, for example) should also be determined.

In the course of examining these three networks, we've been able to identify some similarities and differences among them. Table 4 summarizes the salient features of the three networks. The intent here is not to show one network as being "best" in all situations, but rather to illustrate that each of these systems may be the best for a given set of circumstances.

The strengths of the *PCNet I* system are its ease of use and simplicity of configuration. *Omninet* excels in terms of flexibility; it permits you to connect dissimilar computers and operating systems, and it allows you, at relatively low cost, to add workstations to the net. *EtherLink* has the advantage of its compatibility with standard Ethernet components and networks. ▲

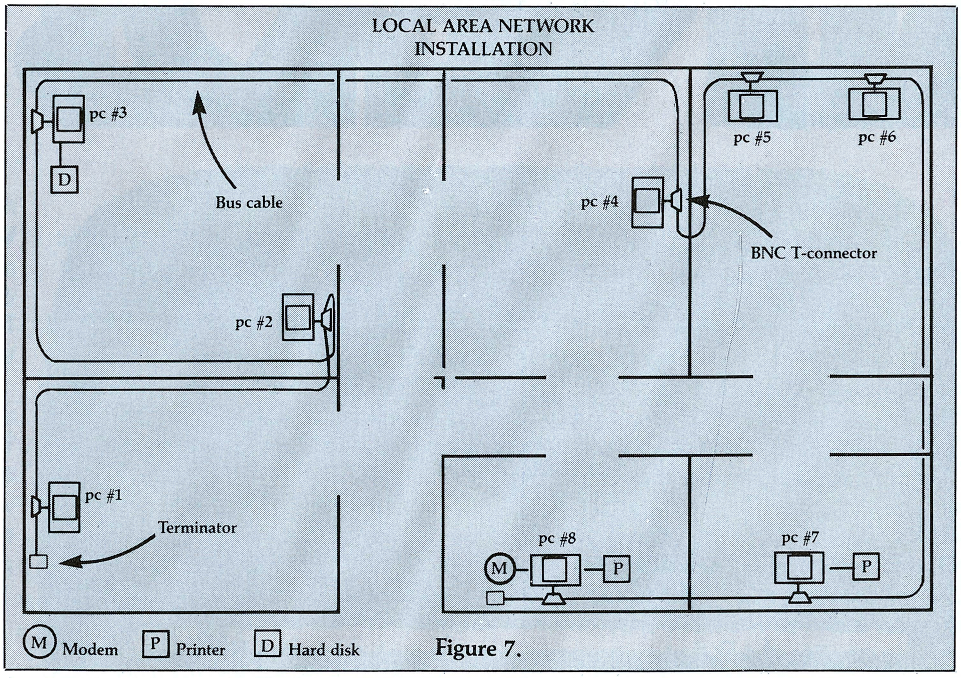


Figure 7.

Summary of Network Features

Feature	PCNet I	Omninet	EtherLink
Transmission media	Coaxial	Twisted pair	Coaxial
Adapter cost	$695	$495	$950
Cable cost	$0.16/ft	$0.08/ft	$20+$1/meter
Access protocol	CSMA/CD	CSMA	CSMA/CD
Higher protocol	No	Layers 3/4	No
Max length (ft)	3000/7000	4000	300 m-2.8 km
Servers	No	Yes	Yes
Multiple OS	No	Yes	No
Multiple computers	No	Yes	No
Data rate	1 Mbit/sec	1 Mbit/sec	10 Mbit/sec
No. of devices	64,000	64	1,024
Gateways	Future	Future	Repeater
Printer sharing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Bandwidth	Baseband	Baseband	Baseband
Topology	Distributed bus	Distributed bus	Distributed bus
Concurrent Access	Record level	File level	By volume
Multiuser OS	No	No	No

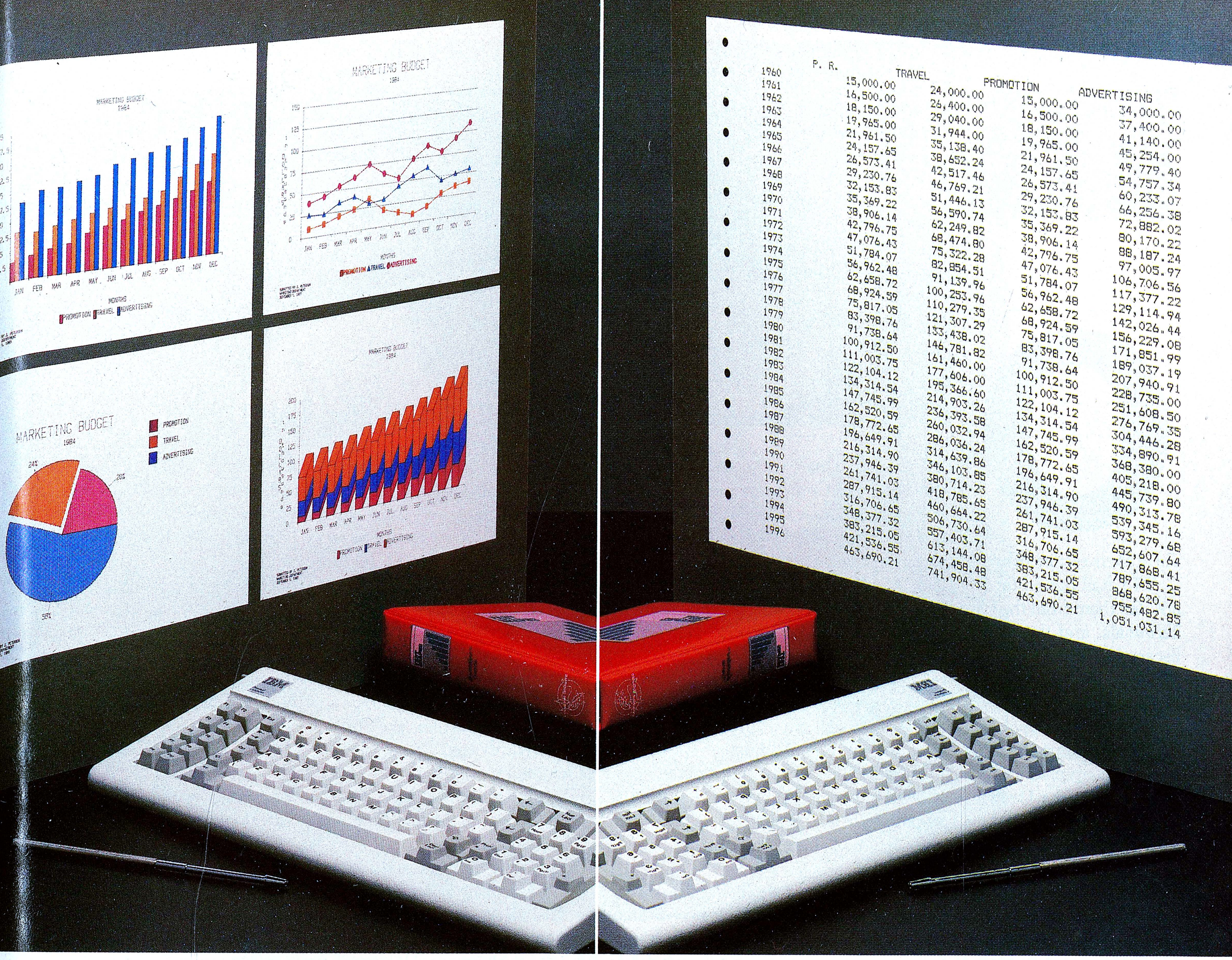
Table 4.

When you need competitive prices on Verbatim® diskettes, you need SJB Distributors.

We're SJB. One of the fastest growing distributors in the country. And the reasons are simple. Our prices are competitive and we deliver fast.
SOFTWARE HOUSES:
Verbatim Datalife® available labeled or blank 'n bulk, with or without envelopes.
Call today about our quantity pricing.

Dealer inquiries invited.
C.O.D.'s accepted.

SJB Distributors, Inc.
10520 Plano Rd., Suite 206
Dallas, Texas 75238
(800) 527-4893 or
(800) 442-1048 in Texas



```
        P. R.        TRAVEL       PROMOTION     ADVERTISING
1960    15,000.00    24,000.00    15,000.00     34,000.00
1961    16,500.00    26,400.00    16,500.00     37,400.00
1962    18,150.00    29,040.00    18,150.00     41,140.00
1963    19,965.00    31,944.00    19,965.00     45,254.00
1964    21,961.50    35,138.40    21,961.50     49,779.40
1965    24,157.65    38,652.24    24,157.65     54,757.34
1966    26,573.41    42,517.46    26,573.41     60,233.07
1967    29,230.76    46,769.21    29,230.76     66,256.38
1968    32,153.83    51,446.13    32,153.83     72,882.02
1969    35,369.22    56,590.74    35,369.22     80,170.22
1970    38,906.14    62,249.82    38,906.14     88,187.24
1971    42,796.75    68,474.80    42,796.75     97,005.97
1972    47,076.43    75,322.28    47,076.43    106,706.56
1973    51,784.07    82,854.51    51,784.07    117,377.22
1974    56,962.48    91,139.96    56,962.48    129,114.94
1975    62,658.72   100,253.96    62,658.72    142,026.44
1976    68,924.59   110,279.35    68,924.59    156,229.08
1977    75,817.05   121,307.29    75,817.05    171,851.99
1978    83,398.76   133,438.02    83,398.76    189,037.19
1979    91,738.64   146,781.82    91,738.64    207,940.91
1980   100,912.50   161,460.00   100,912.50    228,735.00
1981   111,003.75   177,606.00   111,003.75    251,608.50
1982   122,104.12   195,366.60   122,104.12    276,769.35
1983   134,314.54   214,903.26   134,314.54    304,446.28
1984   147,745.99   236,393.58   147,745.99    334,890.91
1985   162,520.59   260,032.94   162,520.59    368,380.00
1986   178,772.65   286,036.24   178,772.65    405,218.00
1987   196,649.91   314,639.86   196,649.91    445,739.80
1988   216,314.90   346,103.85   216,314.90    490,313.78
1989   237,946.39   380,714.23   237,946.39    539,345.16
1990   261,741.03   418,785.65   261,741.03    593,279.68
1991   287,915.14   460,664.22   287,915.14    652,607.64
1992   316,706.65   506,730.64   316,706.65    717,868.41
1993   348,377.32   557,403.71   348,377.32    789,655.25
1994   383,215.05   613,144.08   383,215.05    868,620.78
1995   421,536.55   674,458.48   421,536.55    955,482.85
1996   463,690.21   741,904.33   463,690.21  1,051,031.14
```

FAST GRAPHS™...
The Best Reflection of Your Spreadsheet.

Numbers can be boring even when they're coming from your favorite spreadsheet. So don't waste time trying to explain complicated figures. Reflect them with FAST GRAPHS, the full color business graphics package from Innovative Software. It's perfect for interpreting VisiCalc®, Perfect Calc™, MultiPlan™, SuperCalc™ and 1-2-3™, as well as T.I.M. IV®, our data base management program and FAST FACTS™, our executive filing system.

With FAST GRAPHS, numbers take on exciting visual dimensions which capture your audience's attention. Choose designs from simple line charts to detailed three dimensional stacked bar charts. Then customize with FAST GRAPHS full graphic editing and drawing options. Special graphic analysis features let you quickly spot trends and serve as practical aids in the development of business forecasts.

Display charts and graphs on the computer screen with FAST GRAPHS built in "Slide Show." Or get hard copy (even overhead transparencies) in the colors of your choice from a graphic printer/plotter. And now with new features such as extensive titling selections and direct, true plotting, FAST GRAPHS has established itself as the only choice for professional business graphics.

So don't continue using columns of figures that put an audience to sleep. Interpret and dramatize your spreadsheet with FAST GRAPHS. It'll make a great reflection on you, too...

Be sure to ask your dealer about all of Innovative Software's products — FAST GRAPHS, FAST FACTS and T.I.M. IV. They're available at Computerlands®, Computer Marts, Entre Computer Centers™ and other quality dealers. For more information call **1-800-255-0470.**

INNOVATIVE™ Software

developers of practical businessware for the executive.

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210 USA
913/383-1089 • Telex: 209542
800-255-0470

The Printed Word

by John Dickinson

The Intelligent Printer, Part II

Once upon a time there was a great Kingdom in the World of Computers named ASCII. The King was a wise man named aSC who had earned his position by leading his people in their escape from the chains of their previous leader, TTY.

TTY had bound the people of ASCII to the World of Teleprinters. aSC led them from the World of Teleprinters to the World of Computer Terminals, and thence to the great World of Computers. This Great Escape had brought unity and peace to the Kingdom of ASCII.

There were two nations in the Kingdom of ASCII. One was in the HardLands and was populated by the HardWares. The other, in the SoftLands, was populated by the SoftWares. The HardWares and the SoftWares communicated using the common language of ASCII, which had originally been invented by TTY. One of aSC's greatest contributions to the lifestyle of the Kingdom was his extension of the ASCII language to include lower-case letters. To honor this contribution the people of ASCII always spelled aSC's name starting with a lowercase letter.

The two nations communicated and got along well using the ASCII tongue. Many of the HardWares and SoftWares got along so well that they married, producing HardSoftWare and SoftHardWare offspring. This presented few problems, as offspring of this hybrid type were thought to strengthen the breed in the World of Computers.

The workaday lifestyle of the HardWares included processing the data in their memory banks, operating video displays, running disk drives, and printing reports. The SoftWares had the job of providing instructions to the HardWares to tell them how and when to do their work. The HardWares also had the job of providing the SoftWares with places to live and work; so, you see, the relationship was mutually beneficial.

As with any family of nations, there were some disagreements. One of them was the rather pleasant wrangle of deciding how to celebrate the Great Escape of the ASCII people from the chains of TTY. On one point they all agreed: The date of freedom was the Twenty-Seventh Day of the Twenty-Seventh Month of the Twenty-Seventh Year of the Twenty-Seventh Century of the Twenty-Seventh Aeon in the history of the World of Computers. (In case you're wondering, an aeon in the World of Computers is about the same length of time as a day is in the Human World.)

They all agreed on one or two other points about the event as well. The letter marking the day should be the Character Number Twenty-Seven in the alphabet of the language of ASCII (there were two hundred fifty-six characters in all). With so many twenty-sevens in the historical date, who could disagree? They also agreed to call the twenty-seventh character Escape, meaning that it should mark the Great Escape from the chains of TTY.

The disagreement came over how the twenty-seventh character should be displayed. "We can't just use the word Escape. That has six characters, and there must be only one character," said the SoftWares.

The HardWares agreed. "We should show the Escape by leaving what we're doing and doing something else." They added, "We could make a key with the word Esc on it. That way when it is pressed, we'd all know to leave what we're doing."

That seemed like a fine idea to the SoftWares. "We'll just leave what we're doing too. How symbolic, to Escape from the chores of telling you HardWares what to do!"

The only problem was that if the SoftWares left what they were doing, they couldn't tell the HardWares what to do. If the HardWares left what they were doing, there was little chance they would pay attention to the instructions the SoftWares gave them.

The HardWares had a solution. "We'll hold a special event instead of just doing nothing," they said.

"Sure," said the 8088s, "we'll have the 8087s do their special tricks when we see the Escape. That'll be something to see!"

The printers concurred. "Why, we can make magic happen when we see the Escape. We'll make different fonts, turn on the underscore, darken the print, change the page length. You name it, we'll do it!"

This all seemed quite marvelous—such entertaining tricks in celebration of the Great Escape!

"The heck you say! We're just going to take some time off," said the SoftWares. "It's supposed to be a holiday. If you folks want to entertain the crowds, that's your business."

This was, indeed, quite an impasse. Much arguing took place, and finally aSC himself was asked to step in to settle the dispute. Being the wise and good man that he was, he said, "I need a consultant to help out here. I'm too old to settle disputes like this by myself."

It had long been rumored in the Kingdom of ASCII that there were Oracles to be found in the City of Armonk in the neighboring Kingdom of EBCDIC. "Perhaps," aSC thought, "they will be able to help me out." So aSC journeyed the long distance to the City of Armonk to consult the Oracles there.

"They are both right," said the Oracles, for they were wise consultants. "You should seek a compromise amongst the squabblers. The Linguists of your Kingdom can help you find one."

aSC journeyed back to ASCII feeling that he had the answer. The Linguists, you see, were a special clan in the SoftLands who could communicate with both the SoftWares and the HardWares under even the most catastrophic conditions. Ordinary SoftWares used the Linguists in their work, but often did not take advantage of their great powers. The results were sometimes embarrassing to aSC.

Upon his return aSC called all the Linguists together. "Everyone wants to celebrate the Escape in his or her own way," he told them, "and I need some help from you to pull things together."

Basic looked at the problem for a moment. "Trivial," he said. "All we have to do is send the HardWares a CHR$(27), and they'll know to put on their special shows."

MULTIMATE WORD PROCESSOR

MULTIMATE
Word Processor Ver 3.11
1) Edit Old Document
2) Create New Document
3) Print Document Utility
4) Printer Control Utilities
5) Merge Print Utility
6) Document Handling Utilities
7) Other Utilities
9) Return to DOS
DESIRED FUNCTION: 1
Enter the number
tion, press RETURN

Some people
have dreams
while others
have visions.

MULTIMATE: THE WORD PROCESSOR YOU'VE BEEN DREAMING OF

At SoftWord, we had a vision of what word processing on a personal computer ought to be.

We were challenged by a blue chip insurance company to create word processing for the IBM† PC that would mimic the features and functions of a dedicated system. Other software manufacturers thought we were dreaming.

We envisioned a word processing system that would make full use of the PC and its keyboard. With MultiMate‡, you get over 80 powerful word processing functions. Merge, a library for boilerplate, automatic underlining on the screen, on-line help, everything dedicated word processing could give you and more.

In our wildest dreams, we never imagined we would write the documentation reviewers say is the best in the industry. Or offer free enhancements for 180 days, including a spell checker/corrector with an 89,000 word dictionary.

Or that we would be called the "industry heavyweight."

By adding quality technical support, toll-free to end users, we took the nightmare out of word processing. In case you think it's still a dream, try MultiMate at a computer store near you.

SOFTWORD SYSTEMS, INC. (203) 522-2116, 52 Oakland Ave., North, East Hartford, CT 06108

†IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp. ‡MultiMate is a trademark of SoftWord Systems, Inc.

"What about the SoftWares?" said aSC.

"No problem. When the Escape Key is pressed I'll just let the SoftWares jump off line until someone tells them that the holiday is over."

Assembler agreed. "Look, just MOV a 27 into a register and tap the HardWares on the shoulder with an INT. They'll know what to do. The SoftWares won't care, and we'll just do whatever they ask with their Escape."

Pascal was miffed. "After I did all that work to provide a built-in chr variable, you have to ask what to do? And the time I spend compiling it? Hmmph!"

And so it was that the Linguists agreed on how to solve the problem for aSC. "What about our Human users?" he asked.

"Well, Basic here seems to be the most available of the Linguists," said Assembler. "He's always hanging around the ROM chips, and he's quite good at interpreting things for people."

"I guess you have the easy answer, then, Basic," said aSC. "I just hope you other Linguists can help out when the time arrives." Fortran left the room in a quiet sulk.

And so it was that the Great Escape dispute was resolved. If Human computer users are willing to call on the Linguists, they can watch their HardWares celebrate the Escape in all the ways they provide.

I tell this little fable not just because it's probably a cold November night where you live. I tell it because for the life of me I cannot figure out how else such a crazy situation could have occurred on the pc.

Here you have a solid, reliable microcomputer (the pc), with a good operating system (PC-DOS), and an excellent selection of compatible printers to choose from. Yet there is no simple way to use the printers! It's easy enough to make them print ordinary text characters; making them do their "special shows" by using their built-in features and options is altogether another matter.

Last month's column covered the simple feat of printing some characters and issuing line feeds, carriage returns, and form feeds. You turned your pc and a printer into a typewriter by using the PC-DOS copy command.

If you recall, the characters and commands sent to the printer were defined as ASCII codes. The printed characters each had a number in the ASCII code sequence, as did the line feeds, carriage returns, and form feeds. Each printed character was in the normal printable ASCII range of character 032 (blank) through character 126 (tilde), and the action codes, such as line feed, had codes below 032 (010 for line feed, 013 for carriage return, and 012 for form feed).

When a printer is required to take a nonprinting action, it must be sent some sort of code having the following two characteristics:

- It is not a printable code.
- It has meaning to the printer's computer.

The codes for line feed, and so on, fall below 032 and therefore meet the first criterion—they are not printable codes. They are also universally defined among printers to have exactly the same meaning and therefore meet the second criterion.

You were able to tell your printer to use these codes by using the PC-DOS *copy* command just as if the codes had been printable characters. The carriage return and line feed codes were automatically generated by the pc's enter key, and we were able to generate the form feed using the alternate key in combination with the pc's numeric keypad. This worked fine for these well-defined action codes, but if you wish to explore your printer's intelligence further, you must step into the strange world of escape sequences.

If you go back to the September issue you can review the rather large group of nonprinting features available on the Epson MX-80 (with Graftrax-Plus) Printer and its IBM Personal Computer Graphics Printer cousin. How can we define nonprinting codes for all of those features and options using just the thirty-two numbers (000—031) available below the printable range of ASCII codes?

One answer might be to use the character codes above ASCII 126. This would not be satisfactory for two reasons: First, many microcomputers for which ASCII printers are designed (Apple II and TRS-80, for example) are unable to send codes to the printer with values greater than 127 (they only send seven bits instead of the eight sent by the pc). Second, restricting such a wide range of codes to nonprinting status would cripple the ASCII code standard's ability to expand, for example, into international character sets. (Remember that part of aSC's reputation as a wise leader stemmed from his introduction of lower-case letters into the ASCII language.)

The alternative is to define one character as the character that tells the printer to stop printing characters and do something else, in this case to make use of one of its features or take some other nonprinting action. This has been the method of choice in the design of most features of most pc-compatible ASCII printers. The character usually chosen, of course, has been the escape character, which is number 027 in the ASCII code sequence. The code sequences used to enable and disable printer features have become known as "escape sequences," since they almost always start with the escape character.

Look at the table from the September column once more. Roughly 90 percent of the code sequences in Basic notation start with *chr$(27)*, Basic's version of the escape character. In fact, the names of most entries in the table start with Esc.

In the IBM pc environment the escape key, which is also defined as character 27 in the ASCII code sequence, is used by most software packages, including PC-DOS itself, to mean "Leave whatever you're doing and throw the previous work away." IBM's *Software Submission Guide* suggests that software authors "design . . . so that users can backtrack or exit from a program or safely cancel it using the escape

MUNCH $29.95

MUNCH is an absolute must for everyone who enjoys fast action arcade games. As you race through a maze in your quest to eat all the dots, four ghosts are in hot pursuit. Your only hope is to find a POWER DOT to give you super strength (for a limited time). Bonus points can be earned by eating prizes which occasionally appear in the maze.

- Requires an IBM with 64K, 1 disk drive, color/graphics, joystick optional.

FUZZY WORM $29.95

FUZZY WORM is an absolute must for everyone who enjoys fast action arcade games. The object of the game is to destroy all of the FUZZY WORMS while avoiding the DROPPERS and the deadly SPIDER. Bonus points can be earned by shooting the FIREBALLS which occasionally make their way onto the screen.

- Requires an IBM-PC with at least 64K memory, 1 disk drive.
- Includes Monochrome version and graphics version.

SOLITAIRE $24.95

SOLITAIRE is a very enjoyable pastime. This version of SOLITAIRE is a machine language game that is about as fast as you are. It is played the same as you would normally play the game.

- Requires a 64K memory, 1 disk drive, any monitor.

WRITE FOR A FREE CATALOG.

BOISE COMPUTER
2417 BANK DRIVE
SUITE 11
BOISE, IDAHO 83705

VISA MasterCard
Telephone orders call:
(208) 344-7202

3M
diskettes
Box of 10 5¼ inch
SS,DD,RH
single side
double density
Reliable.

You can count on 3M diskettes. Day after day.

Just like the sun, you can rely on 3M diskettes every day. At 3M, reliability is built into every diskette. We've been in the computer media business for over 30 years. And we've never settled in. We're constantly improving and perfecting our product line, from computer tape and data cartridges to floppy disks.

3M diskettes are made at 3M. That way, we have complete control over the entire manufacturing process. And you can have complete confidence in the reliability of every 3M diskette you buy.

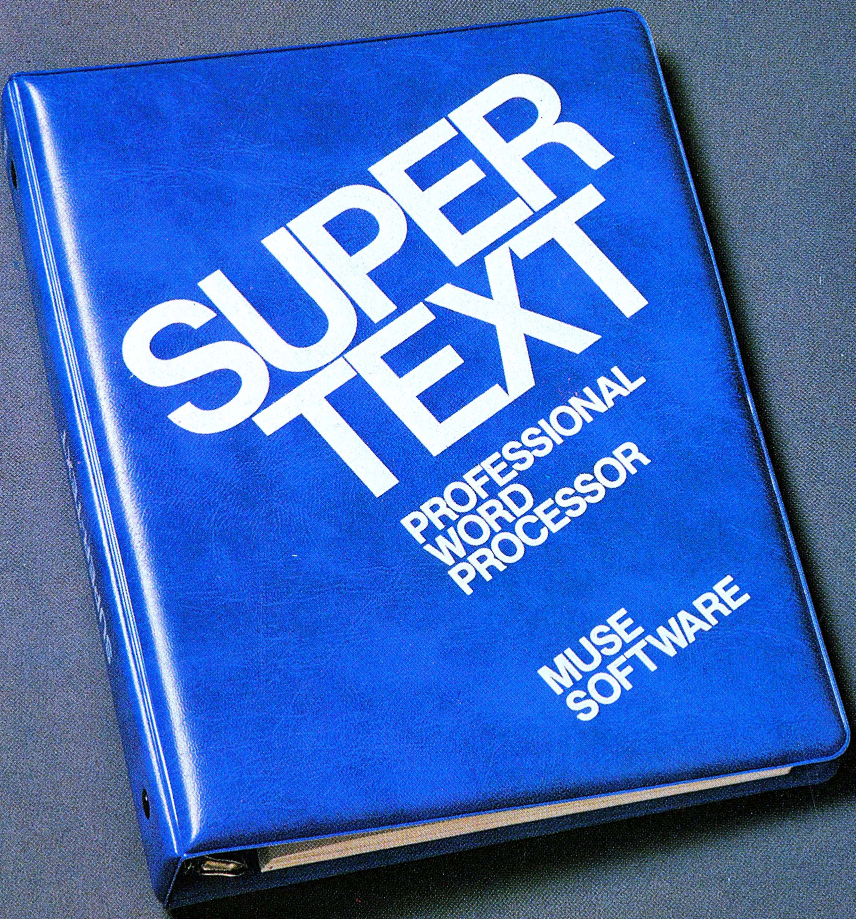
Look in the Yellow Pages under Computer Supplies and Parts for the 3M distributor nearest you. In Canada, write 3M Canada, Inc., London, Ontario. If it's worth remembering, it's worth 3M diskettes.

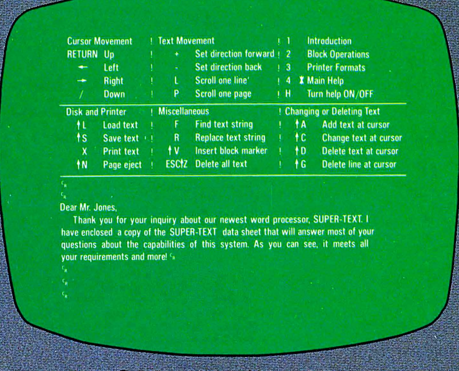
3M
diskettes
Box of 10 5¼ inch
3M
electronic typewriter
compatible
3M
diskettes
Box of 10 5¼ inch
SS,DD,RH
single side
double density

3M hears you...

3M

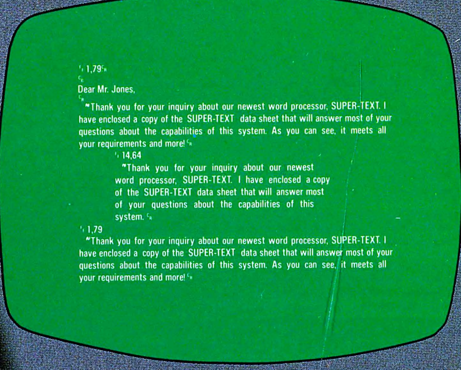
SUPER-TEXT Professional does everything the competition does, except one thing.





```
Cursor Movement    ! Text Movement                ! 1     Introduction
RETURN  Up         !    +    Set direction forward ! 2     Block Operations
  ←     Left       !    -    Set direction back    ! 3     Printer Formats
  →     Right      !    L    Scroll one line'      ! 4   ⧗ Main Help
  /     Down       !    P    Scroll one page       ! H     Turn help ON/OFF
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Disk and Printer   ! Miscellaneous                ! Changing or Deleting Text
  ↑L    Load text  !    F    Find text string      !   ↑A   Add text at cursor
  ↑S    Save text  !    R    Replace text string   !   ↑C   Change text at cursor
   X    Print text !   ↑V    Insert block marker   !   ↑D   Delete text at cursor
  ↑N    Page eject ! ESC↑Z   Delete all text       !   ↑G   Delete line at cursor
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
␍
␍
Dear Mr. Jones,
   Thank you for your inquiry about our newest word processor, SUPER-TEXT. I
have enclosed a copy of the SUPER-TEXT data sheet that will answer most of your
questions about the capabilities of this system. As you can see, it meets all
your requirements and more! ␍
␍
␍
␍
```

ON-LINE "HELP"



```
' 1,79␍
␍
Dear Mr. Jones,
␍
  "Thank you for your inquiry about our newest word processor, SUPER-TEXT. I
have enclosed a copy of the SUPER-TEXT data sheet that will answer most of your
questions about the capabilities of this system. As you can see, it meets all
your requirements and more! ␍
          ' 14,64
            "Thank you for your inquiry about our newest
          word processor, SUPER-TEXT. I have enclosed a copy
          of the SUPER-TEXT data sheet that will answer most
          of your questions about the capabilities of this
          system. ␍
' 1,79
  "Thank you for your inquiry about our newest word processor, SUPER-TEXT. I
have enclosed a copy of the SUPER-TEXT data sheet that will answer most of your
questions about the capabilities of this system. As you can see, it meets all
your requirements and more! ␍
```

ON-SCREEN FORMATTING

It doesn't cost nearly as much.

SUPER-TEXT PROFESSIONAL FOR IBM* provides the most powerful word processing features on the market today at a sensible price. Super-Text makes word processing easy. A few of its many features are valuable **On-Screen Formatting**, easy to use **On-Screen Help Reference Guides**, professional **Split-Screen capability**, and **Autolink**.

Super-Text Professional utilizes all of the IBM function keys. It provides automatic page headers and footers, automatic page and chapter numbering, and the Preview Mode allows you to check page endings.

Super-Text provides for easy text editing. Special block operations for text copy, save and delete. Automatic tabbing and formatting plus multi-file search and replace. User definable characters allow you to make full use of most printer functions, including multi-color printing, superscripting and subscripting. Plus Super-Text provides full compatibility with IBM Edlin Files.

This very powerful and easy to use word processor can be yours for only **$175.00**.

*Super-Text requires IBM DOS Version 1.1., minimum 64K. Also available for Apple II+ and Apple IIe.

Special Offer! **$99.**
ALSO AVAILABLE FOR APPLE
PROFESSIONAL OR HOME/OFFICE

MUSE®
SOFTWARE
347 North Charles Street, Baltimore, Maryland 21201 301/659-7212

key (Esc)." Most pc programs do this, or something close to it.

However closely software packages follow IBM's guidelines, none of them (with the exception of a special feature in the IBM *Personal Editor*) allows you simply to enter an escape character into your data. (Feel free to send in references to any pc software that does allow direct entry of the escape character—we'd like to know about them!)

Let's go back to the *copy* command typewriter environment we used last month. Remember, at the PC-DOS prompt type:

```
A>COPY CON: LPT1:
```

Your cursor will be positioned on the video display to receive data just as it was last month. Type *the quick brown fox,* or whatever else you wish. This time, however, press the escape key at some point while you're typing or after you've typed the line. The result will look something like this:

```
A>COPY CON: LPT1:
The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy yellow\
dog.
```

Notice the backslash. It was placed there by PC-DOS when you pressed the escape key. At that point the first line was completely canceled by PC-DOS. (Remember, PC-DOS is one of the SoftWares who celebrate the Great Escape by quitting.) When you press the F6 key to close the Con: file, your printer will start chattering away as it did last month. This time, however, only the second line will be printed. The first line is gone! (By the way, you won't have this problem if you type a backslash into your text. The backslash key has no relationship to the escape key.)

When you press the escape key in PC-DOS, Basic, Edlin, or most other PC-DOS-compatible software environments, whatever you are doing will be stopped, and whatever you did will be gone. (The IBM *Personal Editor* is an exception to this.)

Let's define a problem requiring an escape sequence to be sent to the printer and try to solve it in the pc environment. You'll have to go to the Linguists for help, but remember, they promised aSC that they would help you. Don't worry if you don't know how to talk to them (program). We'll get you through it.

Suppose you want to print the word *Softalk* on your printer using an enhanced print mode. These modes, which darken the characters, are usually called emphasized, double-strike, boldface, or shadow printing. Just about all printers having this feature use an escape sequence to enable enhanced printing modes.

You might remember from last month that printing *Softalk* normally requires the following ASCII code sequence:

```
083 111 102 116 097 108 107 013 010
```

By using the PC-DOS *copy* command you were able to send this sequence to your printer and have it print *Softalk* followed by a carriage return and a line feed.

The emphasized print mode on all IBM and Epson printers is defined by the following escape sequence:

```
027 069
```

The Texas Instruments 850 printer uses the same escape sequence. Other makes and models use different sequences for enhanced printing. The C. Itoh Prowriter uses 027 033 for boldface, and the Okidata Microline 92 uses 027 072 for emphasized print. The NEC 3550 uses 027 069, and the Diablo 630 uses 027 079 to enable their boldface print modes. Consult your printer manual if you have a different make or model.

Printing *Softalk* in emphasized print mode on an Epson, IBM, or TI 850 printer requires the following ASCII code sequence, including the escape sequence (underlined portion; substitute the correct escape sequence for your printer):

```
027 069 083 111 102 116 097 108 107 013 010
```

Notice that the escape sequence precedes the rest of the ASCII code sequence required to print *Softalk* and issue the carriage return and line feed. This enables the emphasized printing mode, and all subsequent printing occurs in this mode. The escape sequence that enables the emphasized mode has no effect on the printer's ability to perform carriage returns and line feeds.

You may remember that any nonprinting code that doesn't appear on your pc's keyboard (such as 012, the form feed) can be entered by means of the alternate key combined with the number keys on the numeric keypad. This works for all codes except ASCII 027, the escape code. Whether you use the escape key or the alternate-numeric keypad combination, PC-DOS will quit whenever the escape code is entered. Yet our ASCII code sequence requires the escape code. It's time for the Linguists to step in!

All pcs come equipped with the Basic language installed in the hardware, so selecting a Linguist to help out here isn't much of a problem. Load your working copy of PC-DOS (be sure it includes the Basic.com or BasicA.com file) in drive A. Load a formatted scratch disk in drive A. Log on to drive B by typing:

```
A>B:
```

PC-DOS will respond by prompting you with a B> instead of an A>. Now you're ready to start Basic. From the PC-DOS prompt type:

```
B>A:BASIC
```

or

```
B>A:BASICA
```

(If you have a single disk drive system, don't bother logging on to drive B. Just insert your scratch disk in the disk drive after Basic starts.)

Either the Basic or BasicA version of Basic will work fine. When Basic starts, there will be some messages, and then the word Ok will appear somewhere near the top of your screen. The bottom row of your display will show the function key definitions (see your Basic manual for details; the function keys won't be needed here).

From the Basic Ok prompt, type:

OPTIMIZING C86™

is now (8/15/83) in Beta Test.

Call us to see if it is available now.

Any customer who purchases the current product will be able to upgrade to Optimizing C86 without charge.

It includes the following improvements from C86 1.33:

- Substantially **faster execution speed** of the programs you write. We've seen some programs run 300% faster. Overall speed has been improved along with I/O and string handling.
- **1,000K Addressing** of code and data is supported as a compile-time option - "Large Model"

When released commercially it will also have:

- **Object** module **format** compatible with your OS and Assembler
- **8087** code **inline** (faster execution)
- Option for **Assembler output** from the compiler
- Extra functions for MSDOS **2.0**
- **New manual** has examples for every library function

Other Notes:

- **ISAM** products and products compatible with C86 and with OPTIMIZING C86 are available from some of our customers. **Graphics** and **screen** manipulation function libraries are available. Ask for a product list.
- **C_to_dBASE™** is in Beta Test by CI. It is a package to interface C86 with dBASE files. Heavily annotated source to the product and a function library are included. Save time and learn C86 quickly.
- A C86 **User's Group** is being formed.

See your local Dealer or Call Computer Innovations to:

☐ Buy C86 for $395.

☐ Get Details.

All formats available.
PC, Rainbow, Victor, Z100, etc.

VISA and MasterCard accepted.

C86, OPTIMIZING C86 and C_to _dBASE are trademarks of Computer Innovations. CPM-86 and MPM-86 are registered trademarks of Digital Research. MSDOS is a trademark of MicroSoft. PCDOS is a trademark of International Business Machines. dBASE is a trademark of Ashton-Tate.

Prices subject to change without notice.

Computer Innovations, Inc.
10 Mechanic St.
Suite J-145
Redbank, NJ 07701
Phone: (201) 530-0995

```
AUTO
```

This will start Basic's automatic input mode. The number 10 will appear on the left of your screen. As each line number appears, type in the following program:

```
10 OPEN "ESCAPE.ASC" FOR OUTPUT AS #1  ' Open Escape.asc
20 PRINT #1, CHR$(27);                 ' Escape character
30 CLOSE #1                            ' Close the file
40 SYSTEM                              ' Back to PC-DOS
```

When the number 50 appears, hold down the control key and press the break key (the one marked Scroll Lock). This will end Basic's automatic input mode. List the program on your screen by typing *list* after the Ok prompt. If you've made any mistakes, simply retype the line, including the line number on the left. This will replace the line. List the program again to be sure everything is correct.

What this program will do is write a small (one-character) ASCII file on your B disk (remember to make it a scratch disk) containing the escape character. We've named it Escape.asc to remind you of what it contains and that it is an ASCII format file. Please be sure to enter the semicolon into your program following the *chr$(27)*. This tells Basic that you don't want a carriage return and line feed inserted into your Escape.asc file.

To run the program, type *run* or press the F2 key, which does the same thing in Basic. When the program ends, you will return to PC-DOS with the familiar B> prompt on your screen. Now you're ready to send an escape sequence to the printer!

The PC-DOS *copy* command includes a feature allowing you to append one file to another. The command for appending File1 to File2 and putting the results into File3 is:

```
B>COPY FILE1+FILE2 FILE3
```

Using the *copy* command to make your pc into a typewriter is no different from appending one file to another. Just use the reserved file names you've already learned (Con: and Lpt1:) and the name of another file. In this case we'll use the Escape.asc file we've just created. Remember that the first character needed in the required ASCII sequence is the escape character. The rest, including the 069 required for emphasized print, are in the printable range of the ASCII code (069 is capital E), and are therefore available on our keyboard. You could, of course, type them all using the alternate keys and the numeric keypad.

So, to print *Softalk* with emphasized printing, type the following:

```
B>COPY ESCAPE.ASC+CON: LPT1:
ESoftalk
```

Press F6 as before and your printer will type *Softalk* in emphasized print.

You could just as well have included the E in the Escape.asc file. But that might have limited the file's use. For example, if you want to print something else in normal printing mode, you have to disable the emphasized print mode. How? Most printer features can be disabled as well as being enabled. In this case, emphasized print is disabled with the escape sequence:

```
027 070
```

ASCII code 70 is capital F. To disable emphasized print and have the printer type the rest of our magazine's title, type:

```
B>COPY ESCAPE.ASC+CON: LPT1:
Ffor the IBM Personal Computer
```

Once again, press the F6 key to close the Con: file and the printer will start printing. This time it will print normal characters. You could have disabled the emphasized print by switching the printer off and then on again, but that wouldn't have been as much fun!

Last month we began to write a hypothetical Pascal program that could theoretically run our intelligent printer's computer. Before ending for the month we should update the program. When we left off last month it looked like this:

```
if character_code >= 32 and character_code <=127
then printable_code := true
else printable_code := false;
if printable_code then print_a_character (character_code)
else if [character_code = 007
or character_code = 008 or character_code = 009
or character_code = 010 or character_code = 011
or character_code = 011 or character_code = 013
or character_code = 024]
 then take_an_action (character_code);
```

Remember that *character_code* is the ASCII code sent from the computer to the printer; *printable_code* is a Boolean expression that is true or false, depending on the value of *character_code*; *print_a_character* and *take_an_action* are procedures that were defined in last month's column.

For now we'll add just one line:

```
else if character_code = 027 then escape;
```

The new procedure *escape* is also defined elsewhere. Its purpose is to process the escape sequence sent from the computer and to take the action specified by that sequence.

More about that in a later issue. For now, enjoy your turkey! ▲

SevenWare, for the 8087

Friendly — Powerful — Fully Documented — Available NOW

Test 87 Verifies correct installation and performance of 8087 Co-Processor.

Intro 87 Gives you an **interactive tour** of 8087 capabilities. Compares 8087 to 8088 for speed, precision and range.

MacLib 87 Extends IBM Macro Assembler to include 8087 instruction set. Uses **Intel standard mnemonics,** fully supported by DOS 2.0 "Debug".

Documentation Explains all 8087 functions, with examples and application notes. Usable at any level of experience, fully integrable with IBM Macro Assembler.

SevenWare software package, including all three programs & documentation **$109**; with 8087 chip, **$309**

Send check or money order to:

??? SolveWare !!!™
P.O. Box 1246, Dept. K
Redondo Beach, CA 90278
(213) 543-4242

VISA/MC Accepted. Dealer inquiries invited. Calif. residents add 6½% tax.

Intel, 8087 and 8088 are trademarks of Intel Corporation. 8087 mnemonics used by permission of Intel Corporation, copyright 1981. IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation. SevenWare, Test 87, Intro 87, MacLib 87, SolveWare, and the SolveWare logo are trademarks of SolveWare.

marketalk news

Δ Fully compatible with the Unix Version 7 C language standard, *Digital Research C* is a full-featured standard C programming language compiler. From **Digital Research** (Box 579, Pacific Grove, CA 93950; 408-649-5500), the software features multiple memory model, chaining support, and extensive compiler command line option switches. Requires 112K. $350. Δ *Dr. Logo* is an advanced version of Logo, the educational graphics language, written in C. The self-contained programming environment includes its own operating system, editing and debugging features, and turtle graphics cursor. *Dr. Logo* supports double-precision floating-point mathematics and requires graphics adapter and 192K. $149.95.

Δ A pocket-sized guide to software for the pc is available from **UOI Company** (15445 Ventura Boulevard, Sherman Oaks, CA 91413; 213-785-5050). The *Software Plus Buying Guide* describes software by key features. Contains a search service and references to published reviews. $2.

Δ A Farm Computer section comprising more than forty exhibit booths will display agricultural software and hardware for problem solving, information retrieval, and agriculture/farm office management at the Eighth Annual Southern Farm Show. The show takes place February 1—3, 1984, at the North Carolina State Fair Grounds in Raleigh. A series of miniseminars is also planned. Sponsored by **Southern Farm Show** (Box 36859, Charlotte, NC 28236; 704-376-6594).

Δ **Comshare** (3001 South State Street, Ann Arbor, MI 48106; 313-994-4800) has introduced the Target line of decision-support software, including *Target Financial Modeling,* a two-window model manipulator that uses either the spreadsheet or command file method. Requires 128K. $325.

Δ New releases from **CBS Software** (One Fawcett Place, Greenwich, CT 06836; 203-622-2620): *Charles Goren: Learning Bridge Made Easy* is a tutorial developed by the internationally known master. Teaches both bidding and play of the hand. $79.95. Δ *Match-Wits* is a game of memory, logic, and strategy for one to four players. First to uncover a picture puzzle wins. $29.95. Δ *Mystery Master: Murder by the Dozen* is a logic and deduction game that challenges the player to unravel twelve murder cases in the city of Micropolis. Map included. $34.95. Δ *Mastering the College Board Achievement Tests: English Composition* is a tool for student review. Offers problems and pointers. $175. Δ *Mastering the SAT* prepares students for the Scholastic Aptitude Test and includes practice in all skill areas. $150.

Δ Link application programs together with a system-building tool called *Starburst* now available from **MicroPro International** (33 San Pablo Avenue, San Rafael, CA 94903; 415-499-1200). Create custom menus and help messages using a *WordStar*-like text editor. Twenty-four simple one-key commands help automate tasks for your custom system. As many as one hundred lines of task commands can support each menu choice. $195.

Δ **IBM Direct Education** (909 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10022; 800-631-5582) offers a series of Information System Management Institute seminars around the country until mid-December. Topics include data security planning, managing data processing, application backlog management, project implementation, and twenty-three others. Seminars range from two to five days each and tuition includes course material and computer time if used. Call for information.

Δ The Benchmark system is a collection of routines that use applied geometry to solve land-surveying and civil-engineering problems. From **The Coppersmith** (143 Kimball Hill Road, Hudson, NH 03051; 603-889-2670). Programs include *Traverse Boundary, Coordinate Geometry,* and cul-de-sac, street intersection, and lot design utilities. Requires two disk drives. $1,500.

Δ *Megawriter* is a low-priced word processor that features a mail merging function and full eighty-column screen. From **Megahaus** (5703 Oberlin Drive, San Diego, CA 92121; 619-450-1230), the package can move and copy almost unlimited text at one time and prints documents with boldface, underlining, and so on. Menu-driven. $99.95.

Δ The object of the arcade-style game *J-Bird* is to outwit and outmaneuver the critters chasing you as you hop among the cubes of a 3-D pyramid. From **Orion Software** (Box 2488, Auburn, AL 36831; 800-821-8088), the game includes a two-player mode, multiple play levels, and joystick option. Requires color/graphics adapter. $36.95.

Δ **Ariel** (600 West 116th Street, New York, NY 10027; 212-662-7324) has introduced the Ariel RTA 331, a one-third-octave real-time audio frequency spectrum analyzer that plugs into a single expansion slot. The board divides the audio spectrum into thirty-one third-octave bands from twenty Hz to twenty kHz and interactively displays the relative amplitude of each band. Several other features included. $649.95.

Δ A five-and-one-quarter-inch floppy disk controller designed for use with the Faraday model FE 64 CPU board has been introduced by **Faraday Electronics** (1029 Corporation Way, Palo Alto, CA 94303; 415-961-0600). The model 514 board controls from one to four single- or double-sided disks. $135.

Δ Emulation software is now available from **Interlan** (3 Lyberty Way, Westford, MA 01886; 617-692-3900). The *Poly-TRM* package can issue commands to a Interlan NTS10 Terminal Server to request a virtual circuit connection over the network to the desired EIA RS-232-C target device. Files can be transferred to and from the target device. $150. Δ *Poly-XFR* is a program that provides error-free transfer of binary and ASCII files over Ethernet. $150. Δ *Poly-Com* is both packages combined. $200.

Δ *The Reference Encyclopedia for the IBM Personal Computer* has been published by **Ashton-Tate** (10150 West Jefferson Boulevard, Culver City, CA 90230; 213-204-5570). The one-thousand-page encyclopedia-style sourcebook, by Gary and Karen Phillips, contains more than forty-three hundred entries on a variety of pc-related subjects. Computer terms, functions, product details, and programming tips are indexed and cross-referenced. Two volumes, hardcover. $69.95.

Δ **Emerging Technology Consultants** (2031 Broadway, Boulder, CO 80302; 800-782-4896) has introduced *Offix,* a filing, word processing, forms design, and report-generating package. Pop-up menus and on-line documentation make the personal office system easy to learn and use. Requires 128K and two disk drives. $99. Δ *Wordix* is a word processor that offers a macro-instruction capability, string variable and numeric variable assignments, and a set of integer arithmetic operators. Requires 96K. $195. Δ *Spellix* is a spelling checker with a forty-three-thousand-word dictionary. Requires 96K. $95.

Δ *Screen* is a full-screen text editor from **Basic Business Software** (Box 26311, Las Vegas, NV 89126; 702-876-9493). Features full-screen cursor movement (line lengths of up to two hundred forty characters); horizontal scrolling; and block move, copy, and delete. $5 for disk. $35 for documentation and latest release if satisfied.

Δ The second edition of *The Microcomputer Marketplace* is available from **Dekotek** (2248 Broadway, New York, NY 10024; 212-799-6602). More than ten thousand companies are listed, with in-depth profiles on each. Includes software publishers, distributors, magazines and newsletters, database publishers, and more. The cross-indexed volume also contains a month-by-month calendar of one hundred sixty-five industry meetings and details on each. $59.

Δ A consumers' guide to the pc/XT and compatible software, called *The Book of IBM Software 1984,* has been introduced by **The Book Company** (11223 South Hindry Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90045; 213-410-9466). Features *Consumer Reports*-style reviews of business, personal, educational, utility, and game software. Programs are graded from A to F, based on ease of use, vendor support, error handling, and so on. $19.95.

Δ **Taurus Software** (3685 Mount Diablo Boulevard, Lafayette, CA 94549; 415-283-7222) has announced *CP+* Version 2.0, a combination package featuring a tutorial on the basic uses of the personal computer, an English front-end interface, and a package of file utilities. New feature is *Start+*, a menu-building facility. $200.

Δ A word processing system that has a built-in ability to integrate with the company's full line of accounting software has been introduced by **State of the Art** (3183-A Airway Avenue, Costa Mesa, CA 92626; 714-850-0111). Information from accounts receivable, payable, and billing can automatically be inserted into form letters and reports. $395.

Δ *The BPI Church Management System* enables the small- to medium-sized church or synagogue to do accounting and record keeping on the pc. Includes family and member record keeping, income accounting, mailings to the entire congregation or selected groups, and letter writing. Creates deposit registers from entered contributions and analyzes budget projections. Requires two disk drives (for up to twelve hundred members) or hard disk (six thousand members). $795. Δ *BPI Association Management* allows organizations to do accounting, record keeping, and word processing. Spreadsheet for up to ten different projects included. Requires two disk drives (one thousand members) or hard disk (up to five thousand). $795. Δ *BPI Personal Accounting* is a home system that lets you define assets, liabilities, net worth, income, and so on. The system also plans your budget and prints checks. Requires two disk drives. From **BPI Systems** (3423 Guadalupe, Austin, TX 78705; 512-454-2801). $195.

Δ *Windrive*, from **Tall Tree Systems** (1032 Elwell Court, Palo Alto, CA 94303; 415-964-1980), is software support for add-on hard disk systems. The package divides up the hard disk by creating individual volumes; a total of thirty-three volumes can be created. A menu-driven program selects the volume organization that suits your needs. Runs under both DOS 1.1 and 2.0. $40.

Δ A comprehensive client information and money-management database system has been released by **IMSI** (Box 2643, San Anselmo, CA 94960; 415-454-7101). *Bisybase* can be used as an activity planner as well as a financial planner. Foreign currency conversions are handled automatically. Compatible with five popular word processing programs. $275.

Δ Upload and download information on the Techland 4341, 3033, and 3081 with version 1.07 of *Blue Lynx.* The micro-to-mainframe communication package has been released by **Techland Systems** (25 Waterside Plaza, New York, NY 10010; 212-684-7788). *Blue Lynx* features a simplified configuration routine that makes installation easier. Hardware and software: $690.

Δ Repair shops, computer stores, and serious users can check the alignment and operation of a floppy disk drive using *ReadiScope*, diagnostic software from **ReadiWare Systems** (Box 680, West Redding, CT 06896; 203-431-3521). Proper overall operation of the drive may also be determined and alignment may be accomplished without special tools. $295.

Δ Interactive tutorials designed to help the user maximize the potential of *1-2-3*, *VisiCalc*, *SuperCalc*, and *Multiplan* are available from **Cdex** (5050 El Camino Real, Los Altos, CA 94022; 415-964-7600). Δ The Managing Your Business Series is designed to analyze various aspects of business: sales forecasting, product margins, budgeting, cash flow, and so on. $69.95.

Δ *MetaBasic* is a precompiler for Basic that develops programs in a modular fashion. Programs written on *MetaBasic* can contain real subroutines (not gosubs) to other modules. Full argument passing is supported. From **M-R Associates** (162 Great Road, Acton, MA 01720; 617-263-0578). The package also compresses programs to allow for the use of descriptive remarks and clarifying spaces. For both interpretive and compiled Basic. $59.

Δ The new *Crosstalk XVI* communications package, now shipped with all pc Modem Plus systems, features script processing and terminal emulation. *Crosstalk XVI* ensures that less time is required to dictate a modem's operation. From **Ven-Tel** (2342 Walsh Avenue, Santa Clara, CA 95051; 408-727-5721). Modem Plus: $689.

Δ **Applied Software Technology** (170 Knowles Drive, Los Gatos, CA 95030; 408-370-2662) offers three new Versaform templates. *Mailing List* provides a database design for mailing labels. *Expense Journal/Distribution* and *Cash Receipts Journal* feature formats similar to a journal entry page. Both function as journal of original entry. $39.95 each.

Δ *Using 1-2-3*, by Geoffrey LeBlond and Douglas Cobb, is a book designed to provide an overview of the spreadsheet's features with detailed explanations and examples of keyboard macros, database functions, and graphics capability. Explanation of the special function

DOS 1.1 and 2.0 UTILITIES
SOFTWARE PRINTER SPOOLER

Save Time!! Spooler allows the computer to be printing text to the printer while running a program. Supports Visicalc, Basic, Macro-Assembler, Multiplan, FinalWord, Wordstar etc.

➜ 5 different buffer sizes from 4k to 64k (DOS 1.1)
➜ DOS 2.0 buffer sizes to 320 kbytes
➜ Supports Xon-Xoff protocol for serial printers.

$45.00 Req. 1 drive, 64 kbytes, parallel or serial printer

RAM DISK

➜ No internal switches to set on the PC
➜ Disk sizes from 32k to 320 kbytes (32 kbyte steps)
➜ Keyboard reset (Ctl-Alt-Del) is disabled so you won't lose data
➜ Click from PC speaker can be enabled for disk access signal

Price $40.00 Requires 96 kbytes and 1 disk drive
Ram Disk and Software Printer Spooler both for $69.00

COPYLOCK PROTECTION PROGRAM

An effective protection system for your COM or .EXE file which is not copyable by any of the general copy programs such as Copy- PC, COPY2PC, System Backup v1.3 and the DOS Disk-copy command. Disk can also be made a "bootable" disk by the end user by using the SYS command from DOS.

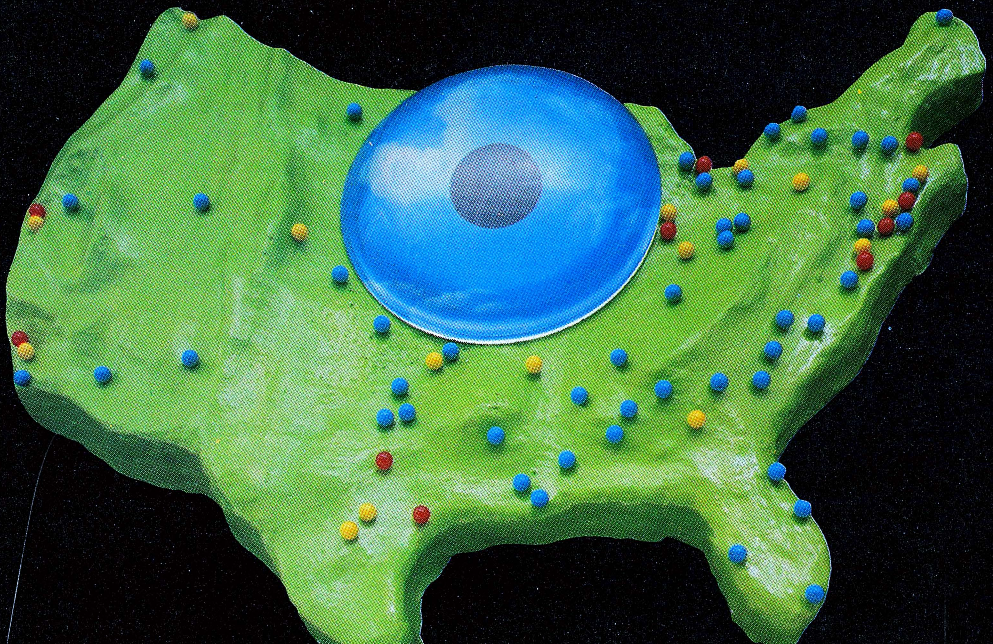
➜ Supports Compiled BASIC programs with chaining

Requires 2 drives, 64 kbytes. ~~$799.00~~
New Price $399.00

See us at PC '83 EAST
Bayside Exposition Center
Boston
Saturday-Monday
October 8-10, 1983

SoftDesign 617 861-0902
6 Blodgett Rd. Lexington, Ma. 02173

Our Vision Is Peripheral



Yours Can Be, Too, With Multi-Tech Systems' New Modem For The IBM PC

Expand your horizons. Connect your IBM PC to San Diego, San Antonio, Savannah, and points between. Link up to New York for the Dow Jones News, or check out The Source in D.C. Dial up CompuServe in Ohio, or the corporate mainframe downtown. Swap programs with your pal in Seattle. Transfer files with your friend next door.

Share the latest excitement at Multi-Tech: the MT212PC Intelligent Modem for the IBM PC.

- Plugs into any IBM PC expansion slot.
- Transmits at 0-300 or 1200 bits per second.

MULTI-TECH SYSTEMS
MULTI-TECH SYSTEMS
IBM
IBM

MT212PC Board Modem

- Automatically dials, answers, hangs up, redials.
- Stores phone numbers, parameters, log-on sequences.
- Creates, stores, prints, displays, and transfers files.
- No IBM serial card needed . . . price includes all software.

At Multi-Tech Systems, our future is new markets for us, and new products for you. Since 1971, we've been building acoustic couplers, direct-connect modems, testers, multiplexers, and now this newest generation of intelligent modems.

The MT212PC modem has a two-year warranty and a suggested retail price, including companion software, of just $549. For more information, write to Multi-Tech Systems, Inc., 82 Second Avenue SE, New Brighton, Minnesota 55112. Or phone us at 612-631-3550.

TWX 910-563-3610

Trademarks: IBM Personal Computer (IBM PC): International Business Machines Corporation; Dow Jones News/Retrieval Service: Dow Jones & Company, Inc.; The Source: Source Telecomputing Corporation, a subsidiary of The Reader's Digest Association, Inc.; CompuServe: CompuServe Information Services Division, Columbus, OH.

MULTI-TECH SYSTEMS

The Peripheral Vision People

See us at
COMDEX™/Fall '83
Booth 3035

keys is also included. Published by **Que** (7960 Castleway Drive, Indianapolis, IN 46250; 317-842-7162). $14.95.

Δ **Agricultural Software Consultants** (1706 Santa Fe, Kingsville, TX 78363; 512-595-1937) offers *Price-It,* a feed-pricing and inventory program for anyone who mixes and sells feeds. The program stores hundreds of ingredients and formulas, using either English or metric systems, and converts the company's *Mixit-2* ingredient lists to its own. $395. Demo: $30.

Δ Vertec's *Agency Automation System (VAAS)* provides independent insurance agencies with accounting, production control, commission reporting, and word processing capabilities. From **Vertec** (8079 North Lake Boulevard, Kings Beach, CA 95719; 916-546-8222), this PC-DOS version is identical in performance and capabilities to the CP/M release. $39.95.

Δ Designed for users of the popular database management system, *dBase II: A Reference Guide* is a forty-page, spiral-bound booklet that contains sections on commands, functions, data I/O formats, and control-key usage. From **GAA** (Box F, Deer Park, NY 11729; 516-586-8615). $9.95.

Δ *How to Use SuperCalc* is the newest audio-cassette lesson package from **FlipTrack Learning Systems** (999 Main, Glen Ellyn, IL 60137; 312-790-1117). Learn the commands and functions of the spreadsheet in the step-by-step development of a cash flow budgeting example. Four cassettes and lesson summary: $75.

Δ The Koala Touch Tablet allows you to draw patterns with a stylus or your finger on a four-inch-square digitizing tablet. From **Koala Technologies** (4962 El Camino Real, Los Altos, CA; 415-964-2992). Your drawings immediately appear on-screen and spaces can be painted in selected colors or a cross-hatch pattern. Modifiable as a joystick or a set of over forty function keys. Requires 128K, color/graphics adapter, games control board, and DOS 2.0. $100. Programmer's guide: $15.

NEW

Announcing a solution to the most common computer problem.

(Where to put the equipment.)

$129.95 RETAIL

Monitor Mover. You won't have to buy any expensive new furniture. You won't lose any desk space. Monitor Mover adjusts in four ways to each individual user while keeping the monitor (and system, if necessary) completely off your existing work space. Available for most popular brands of computer monitors.

LinTek
Computer Accessories

Dealer inquiries welcome.

P.O. Box 8056, Grand Rapids, MI 49508 (616) 241-4040

Δ An automated employee time and attendance system has been developed by **Coastal Data Products** (7370 N.W. Thirty-sixth Avenue, Miami, FL 33147; 305-696-6800). The software integrates the Smart Clock data collection terminal (a wall unit with internal microprocessor—similar to a time clock) and provides daily and weekly time and attendance reports, employee listings, and adjustment readings. Job costing and labor distribution options available. System: $675. Smart Clock: $2,695.

Δ Light gray characters on a blue background with boldface characters in white is one of the color combinations available with the *Color Qwerty* word processor from **HFK Software** (Old Danbury Road, Danbury, NH 03230; 617-259-0059). Free upgrade to *Qwerty* users. $325. One-month full-function trial copy: $25.

Δ Protective dustcovers made of canvas-weave cotton material with a soft inner lining are made by **Contemporary ComputerWear** (1320 Thirty-sixth Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94122; 415-564-0506). Design features include a woven binding and an embroidered red rose emblem. Covers are beige. Keyboard: $16. Drive, monitor, and printer: $18 each. One-piece monitor-on-drive combination: $36.

Δ **Reston Computer Group,** a division of Reston Publishing (11480 Sunset Hills Road, Reston, VA 22090; 703-437-8900), has announced a new line of business software called *Pro Works.* For use with *1-2-3,* the programs include *Executive Assistant,* a collection of time and work management tools. $100. Δ *Key Business Measures* is a program that converts financial data into displays. $100. Δ *Business Forecasting* provides an array of business statements and balance sheet forecasts. $100. Each package requires 256K, two disk drives, and *1-2-3.*

Δ The Qubie PC 212A/1200 modem card and *PC-Talk III* software are controlled with the same commands used with the Hayes SmartModem. From **Qubie Distributing** (4809 Calle Alto, Camarillo, CA 93010; 805-482-9829). The card features autodial in both pulse and tone as well as direct keyboard dialing. Software stores phone numbers, saves to files, and transmits from files. Cable included. $299.

Δ Manage your personal finances with *Certified Personal Accountant* from **Sundex Software** (3000 Pearl Street, Boulder, CO 80301; 303-440-3600). Handles cards, checking and savings accounts, and money market funds. Tax categories match those on an IRS form. Prints cash flow, net worth, and budget reports; also prints checks. $149.95. Trial offer: $19.95. Δ *Personal Payables* is a program for paying bills and organizing personal financial records. Handles up to ten separate checking and savings accounts, sixty different bills and recurring payees, and up to one thousand transaction entries per disk. $99.95.

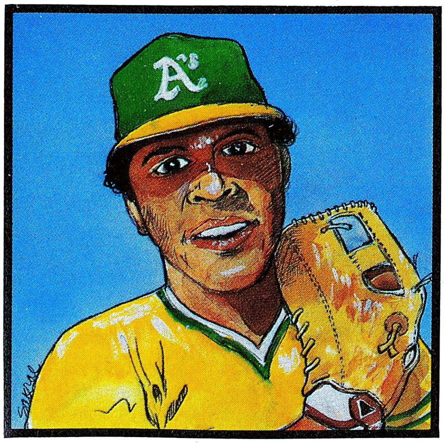
Δ *Connexions,* from **Connexions** (55 Wheeler Street, Cambridge, MA 02138; 800-562-3282) is an interactive job database for technical professionals. Help-wanted ads are displayed by more than one hundred recruiters in corporations ranging from IBM, Wang, and GTE to Kay Instruments and Dynamic Research. Job seekers simply enter their resumes from their terminals if job descriptions correlate with their skills. Advertising is on-line for two months. $15 for two hours.

Δ Houston will play host to the IBM PC World Exposition February 2 through 5, 1984, at Houston Astro Hall. The show will be a regional dealer expo for the first two days, then the doors will open to the public. Seminars, conferences, and exhibits are planned for both audiences. Dealers can contact Mike Wayshak with **Mitch Hall Associates** (Box 860, Westwood, MA 02090; 617-329-7644).

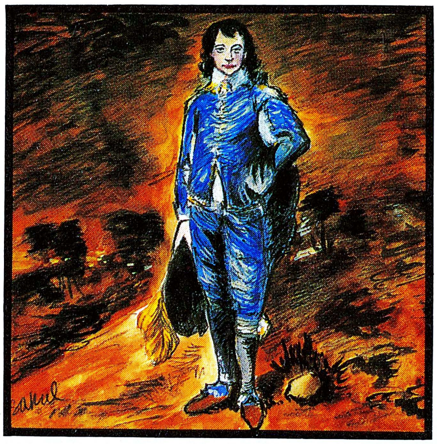
Δ The G-Net Z-80 processor-based board allows up to two hundred fifty-five pcs to be connected in a local area network. From **Gateway Communications** (139 Alton Avenue, Santa Ana, CA 92707; 714-261-0762). The system allows databases and peripherals to be shared and is field-installable. Added features include a CP/M 2.2 software option and a 3270 terminal option as well as access to SNA, BSC, and X.25 networks. Software included: $595.

Δ A budgeting, forecasting, and discounted cash flow package called *Planfin* has been introduced by **Business Software** (10 Help Street, Chatsworth, N.S.W. 2067, Australia; 02-419-6077). The menu-driven

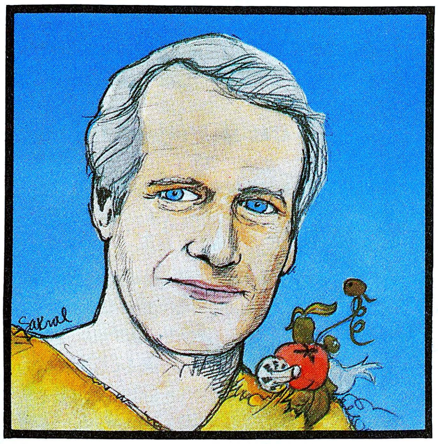
Famous "Blues" Guess Who's



Famous baseball player.

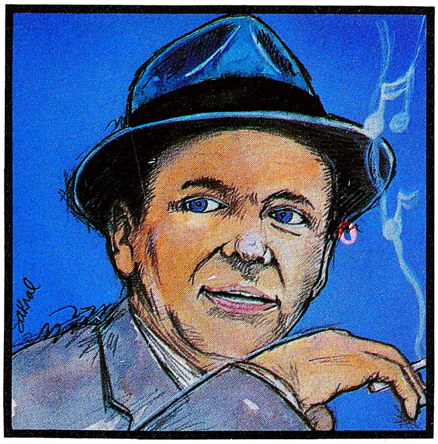


Famous 18th century painting.



Famous actor with those "Baby Blues" and a taste for salad dressing.

Famous "Big Blue."



Famous entertainer, singer and actor with the nick name Ol' Blue Eyes.

Powerful CPM co-processor.

The Guessing Game Stops Here.

It's the Z-80 microcomputer you plug into your IBM PC to gain instant access to thousands of CP/M programs . . . languages, programming utilities, and the world's largest library of applications.

No Guesswork in How to Use.

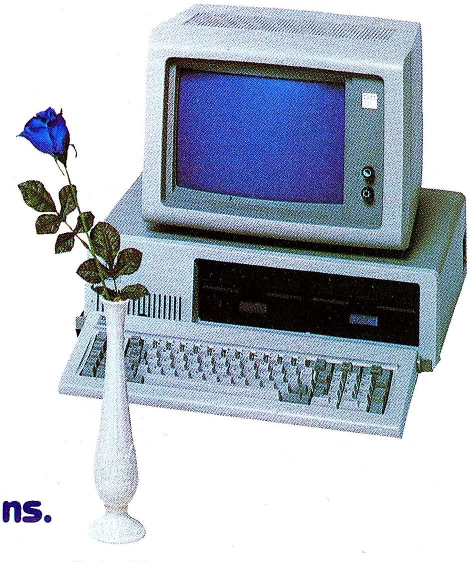
Just plug **Baby Blue** into any expansion slot, run the CONVERT utility, and your CP/M-80 programs execute transparently in your PC. You don't have to worry about which disks are CP/M disks and which are PC-DOS.

Offering you Total File Compatibility.

Your CP/M programs read and write PC-DOS files, so that CP/M and PC-DOS programs can share data with each other. And when you're not using **Baby Blue** to run CP/M applications, its 64K of RAM is still there for your PC.

And the Function Key enables you to move mountains.

Our KEYFIX utility expands the power of your extended IBM PC keyboard. Single keystrokes can move tons of text, or provide standard answers to often asked questions. Our **Baby Blue** also comes bundled with ***Micropro's WordStar/MailMerge***, ideally configured for the IBM PC keyboard, or with ***InfoStar***, for high-speed, easy to use data base management.



Baby Blue	**$600**
Baby Blue with WordStar/MailMerge	**$995**
Baby Blue with InfoStar	**$895**

As far as the rest of the "Guess Who's Blues" go, we'll keep you guessing; but for more details see your microcomputer dealer or contact Microlog at:

Microlog
A TU INTERNATIONAL COMPANY

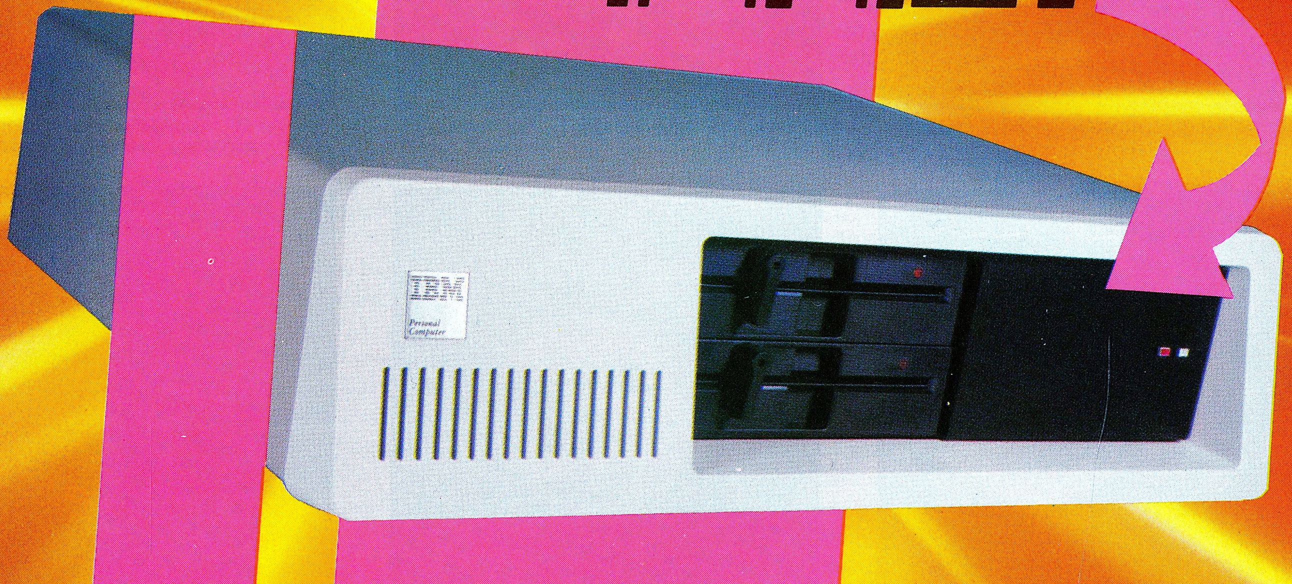
(914) 368-0353 MICROLOG, INC., 222 Rte. 59, Suffern, NY 10901

announcing

THE INSIDER™!

A 10 Mega-byte Internal Hard Disk Drive System . . .

Only **$995!**



Expand your IBM PC so that it performs like the PC XT for a fraction of the cost.*

Micro Design International announces a major breakthrough in peripheral technology — The Insider™! It is the only hard disk drive system to offer you 10 Mega-bytes of formatted capacity with complete internal installation, all for $995. Now you can expand your IBM* PC to handle heavyweight data with the same ease and efficiency as the PC XT. By equipping your PC with The Insider™ you can save up to $2,000 over the cost of a PC XT. It's the perfect solution to your data needs *and* budget.

The Insider's™ engineering is far superior to any other hard disk drive system on the market. Unlike other internal drives which require an external power supply, The Insider™ uses available power. In fact, it uses only 0.9 A of direct current thereby eliminating overheating, a problem which has plagued other drives. Our drive and electronics are so good that we carry a full one year warranty.

The Insider's™ low price of $995 includes complete software with all needed utilities; a Sandstar™ Hard Disk Controller Card which has expansion slots for other SandStar™ Modules; complete cables and simple instructions for easy installation.

The Insider is also compatible with most IBM PC look alikes.

To expand your PC to the performance of a PC XT at a fraction of the cost, *CALL TODAY* to order The Insider™. MasterCard and Visa are accepted; or, send check or money order to Micro Design International.

TO ORDER
CALL COLLECT 305/788-3475

Micro Design International, Inc.
Suite 375
100 Sybelia Ave.
Maitland, Florida 32751

---

* IBM is a trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.
** Sandstar™ is a registered trademark of Maynard Electronics.

package is designed for small-business owners and accounts as well as financial controllers and marketing and general managers. Can be interfaced with *Multiplan*, *VisiCalc*, and other DIF spreadsheets. $195.

Δ Back up and store files between a hard disk and one or more floppies with *Hard-to-Floppy Disk Dump* and *Restore*, two utilities from **Micro Systems Software** (2905-B Homestead Road, Santa Clara, CA 95051; 408-984-0660). Operation is similar to the copy command. Hard disk must be DOS-compatible. $50.

Δ *p-Comm 3.0* is an upgrade of the professional communications package for p-System users. Features single-keystroke directory control, the widely used Christensen protocol, and pacing protocol for older computers that prompt for each line of text. From **ErgoSoft** (7122 Cather Court, San Diego, CA 92122). $95.

Δ *WordStar in Everyday English* is a book written for the person who knows absolutely nothing about a computer. From **Devin-Adair Publishers** (143 Sound Beach Avenue, Old Greenwich, CT 06870; 203-637-4531), the one-hundred-sixty-page publication is organized by the job that needs doing, not by computer function. $9.95.

Δ An electronic shopping catalog is available from **IBM** (Box 3148, Wallingford, CT 06494; 800-426-2468) and offers a wide range of pc-related products. Hardware, software, disk accessories, printer accessories, books, and computer furniture can be ordered from the disk catalog by calling the company direct. $3; refundable with first purchase.

Δ The Inline Data Entry Station provides a slanted document surface positioned just above the keyboard that puts material to be entered right in front of you. From **Pentek Products** (Box 54, Wellsboro, PA 16901; 717-724-2554), the station has space for the system unit and a monitor to be stacked above the slanted work surface. Built of furniture-quality laminate; smoke-gray color. $179.

Δ **Bristol Information Systems** (84 Main Street, Fall River, MA 02720; 617-679-1051) has announced a new line of business software. Packages include general ledger, payroll, accounts payable and receivable, inventory, order entry/billing, and professional time accounting. All modules are menu-driven, have unlimited file size, and are fully integrated. Construction accounting and estimating, wholesale distribution, and newspaper circulation modules available. $800 per module. Three for $2,000.

Δ Two publications from **Microcomputer Applications** (827 Missouri Street, Fairfield, CA 94533; 707-422-1622): *High-Tech Consulting: A Guide to Making Money as a Computer Consultant*, by John Zarella, provides essential information for anyone considering computer consulting as a career. Paper: $18.95. Δ *Consultant's Log* is a monthly record-keeping logbook to record mileage, time spent on each project, and more. Paper: $3.

Δ *Labyrinth Run* is a game designed for the monochrome monitor. The object is to capture all the computer's markers by running them into walls before it captures your marker. False walls, invisible walls, and a teleport option add to the fun. From Dennis Charles Smart & Company (6848 B Seagull Lane, New Orleans, LA 70126; 504-245-8439). $25.

Δ **VisiCorp** (2895 Zanker Road, San Jose, CA 95134; 408-946-9000) has announced *VisiCalc IV*. The new program integrates all the features of the standard *VisiCalc* with graphics, sorting, spreadsheet management, and easy function-key definition. "What if" calculations can now be seen graphically in any of eight graph options. Sorting can be performed on rows or subsets of rows enabling quick projection reports. Sixty-six commands can be stored. $250.

Δ A multiuser version of the *MIS Builder* database management system is now available for *PCnet* from **American Planning** (4600 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22304; 312-751-2574). The system integrates a menu-driven database manager with an automated program development system. Handles up to eighty thousand records. $495. Functions package for advanced programmers: $295.

Δ Two training programs on disk are available from **Witech** (763 Vallejo Way, Sacramento, CA 95818; 916-441-7772): *Witech Tutorial for DataStar* covers the database software in depth, from form design to file maintenance. Two disks. $59.95. Δ *Witech Tutorial for ReportStar* starts with an introduction to the report generator and includes advanced report design. Two disks. $59.95.

Δ Emulating the pc disk-controller instruction set, the P-Series Disk Controller card is DOS 2.0-compatible and takes full advantage of the existing software base. From **Adaptive Data & Energy Systems** (2627 Pomona Boulevard, Pomona, CA 91768; 800-824-0114). Additional features include multiple sector read/write and physical sector operations. $395.

Δ For the business manager: The *Open Access* package includes an electronic spreadsheet, a 3-D color graphics, word processor, appointment scheduler, and communications. From **Software Products International** (10343 Roselle Street, San Diego, CA 92121; 619-450-1526). Windows enable simultaneous viewing of operations; option to use a mouse is built in. $595.

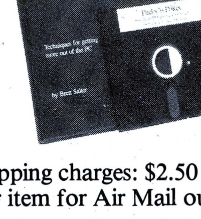
Δ *The Computer Publishing & Advertising Report* provides readers with facts and figures about the computer publishing and advertising

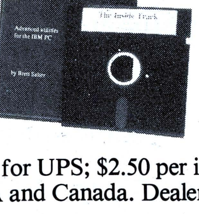
Know Thy PC!

Are you writing programs in BASIC or Pascal? The popular **Peeks 'n Pokes** has a disk with 58 programs and a 38-page manual that helps you get 'underneath the covers' of the PC. Learn how to use PEEK, POKE, INP, OUT, and DOS/BIOS function calls to do what you want, fast! Do you want to perform functions not available from BASIC or Pascal? It's all explained in the manual and demonstrated in the sample programs. Source code included!

Want to know more? **The Inside Track!** is a collection of advanced utilities for the PC programmer. It contains a disk with 61 programs, a 42-page manual, and a fold-out memory map that helps you get better performance from the PC. With this package you can give your programs assembler-assisted speed from high-level languages, get control over memory, customize and control the PC, and more. Some programs require DOS 2.00. Source code included!

Peeks 'n Pokes shows you how to:
- Access the system's configuration
- Unprotect BASIC programs
- Scroll part or all of the screen
- Access the file directory
- Logically swap printers
- Read and change the keyboard
- Find more Peeks and Pokes
- And much more... for only $30.00





The Inside Track! shows you how to:
- Read/write files as fast as DOS
- Display data on the screen faster
- Reserve memory for your use
- Copy memory to another location
- Copy-protect your programs
- Load large programs faster
- Control the keyboard settings
- And much more... for only $45.00

MasterCard and VISA accepted. Shipping charges: $2.50 per order for UPS; $2.50 per item for First Class Mail to USA and Canada; $6.00 per item for Air Mail outside USA and Canada. Dealer inquiries invited.

Data Base Decisions • 14 Bonnie Lane • Atlanta, GA 30328 • 404/256-3860

field. Published biweekly by **Communications Trends** (710 Webster Avenue, New Rochelle, NY 10801; 914-576-7175), the publication tracks market trends, new opportunities, lurking dangers, competitors' plans, and more. Six months: $98. One year: $188.

∆ A surge suppressor unit that can handle six devices with a combined load not exceeding 1,875 watts, the Electra-Guard System 6 provides line-to-line and line-to-ground clamping protection with a response time of less than five nanoseconds to overvoltage spikes and surges. From **Computer Power Solutions** (8800 Forty-ninth Street North, Suite 203, Pinellas Park, FL 33565; 813-544-8801). $69.95.

∆ **The Computer/Investor User Group** (36 Highland Avenue, Metuchen, NJ 08840; 201-494-1200) shares information on databases and programs covering all aspects of using computers to aid in investment decisions. Membership includes a ten-issue newsletter, consultation, seminars, a group discount card, telephone assistance, and optional database services. $145 per year.

∆ *The Law Office Guide in Computers,* from **L.O.G.I.C.** (Box 701-B, Larkspur, CA 94939; 800-227-3800), is a monthly newsletter for lawyers and legal administrators that features articles and reviews. Topics covered include word processing, consultants, hardware and software, plus purchasing guidelines and conference and trade show news. $120 per year. ∆ *The L.O.G.I.C. 1984 Directory* is a resource book of product and service listings. $110.

∆ Project managers can use the *Project Cost/Management Information System* for project planning, scheduling, budgeting, and performance monitoring. The PC/MIS software assists in testing and evaluating cost implications of alternative project labor mix and tracking contracts. Also has built-in audit routines. From **Davis & Associates** (1655 Peachtree Road N.E., Atlanta, GA 30309; 404-875-0793). $495. Demo: $50.

∆ Learn how to sell your own personal software creations in an eighty-page manual from **Associated Technology** (Route 2, Box 448, Estill Springs, TN 37330; 615-967-9159). Topics covered show users how to obtain national directory listings, price new products, operate a successful mail-order fulfillment service, and write a user's manual. $20.

∆ A *VersaText Word Processor and Database System* in Hebrew is available from **TexaSoft** (1028 North Madison Avenue, Dallas, TX 75208; 214-946-7912). The system can perform a variety of office jobs, such as mail merge, label generation, reports, and letters. Entries can be made in both Hebrew and English characters by way of a character-generator chip available for support on the monochrome or graphics adapter. $400 to $500.

∆ Compare leading word processors, feature by feature, using the *Word Processor Comparison Tables.* Comparisons of more than one hundred fifty features of forty leading packages are included, along with guidelines for selection and a checklist for contract negotiations. From **Information Research** (10367 Paw Paw Lake Drive, Mattawan, MI 49071; 616-668-2049). $39.95.

∆ Used by the Army and currently being evaluated by the Navy, *QTime* is a fully automatic, menu-driven database management system that includes a tutorial mode for easy learning. Modification and updating of applications can be done without programming or procedural language experience. From **Quality Information Systems** (2801 Buford Highway N.E., Atlanta, GA 30329; 404-325-0987). Executive version: $695. More advanced professional version: $995.

∆ *GrafTalk* is a business graphics package from **Redding Group** (609 Main Street, Ridgefield, CT 06877; 203-431-4661). English-language commands allow the software to produce stacked, percentage, clustered, or floating bars; exploded pies; scatter diagrams; line and combination plots; and a range of *move, draw,* and other graphics and text commands. Supports a range of popular plotters. $450. ▲

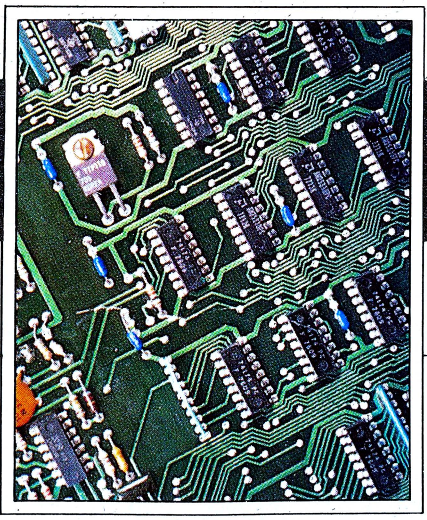
MULTIPLE USERS UNDER PC-DOS!

MultiLink. *A unique software system which turns PC-DOS into a multi-user multi-tasking operating system for the IBM Personal Computer.*

- Inexpensive terminals attach to serial ports on your PC
- Up to 9 concurrent users
- Terminals can run most existing non-graphics software designed for PC-DOS
- Full-screen support for appropriate CRTs
- Minimal overhead, no dedicated disk
- Shared access and update of disks and files
- Supports Basic, Pascal, COBOL, and other development languages
- Compatible with hard or floppy disks
- Free host communications software supports public dial-in
- Available NOW at $225! Ask about our demo version!

VISA, MC Accepted. Dealer inquiries invited.

THE SOFTWARE LINK, INCORPORATED • 6700 23-B ROSWELL ROAD • ATLANTA, GEORGIA 30328 • 404/255-1254



BOARDS AND BUSES

by Kevin Goldstein

Great Lakes Revisited

Priced at a thousand bucks, the ten-megabyte hard disk subsystem from Great Lakes was the deal of the year. Unfortunately, as noted in this column last month, that outstanding price was offered for a limited time only. Get your order in now, folks; you'll never see another offer like this. The disk reads, it writes, it dices, it peels . . . but you get the message.

The offer expired October 15, Great Lakes has become Pegasus, and the same disk can be had through your friendly local dealer, only now it will cost you $1,395. For the extra $395 you get the chance to try out the disk in the showroom to see if it works with your own software before you buy, as well as dealer support—nontrivial add-ons, considering the (usually well-hidden) complexity of hard disk systems.

Even at $1,395, the drive is still a pretty good bargain. A study of the latest advertising shows a number of manufacturers offering IBM pc compatible drives. None of the ten-megabyte-capacity drives is priced lower than the Pegasus offering; as a matter of fact, few other manufacturers or distributors come close. There are a few five-megabyte drives in the same range, but a five-megabyte drive can't be completely compatible with the XT.

As it turns out, the Pegasus drive isn't totally XT-compatible either. As of now, there appear to be only two companies offering true XT-compatibility: Mountain Computer and Apparat. If you intend to use your pc with only PC-DOS, the incompatibilities range from minor to nonexistent. But if you plan to use some other operating systems, you could run into trouble—as noted later in this column.

The drive we received to replace the original but faulty drive has been relatively trouble-free. In particular, the intermittent high-pitched squeal caused by the static discharge brush riding against the bottom of the flywheel—a harmless but teeth-gnashing annoyance—has been tamed. According to Great Lakes president Dick Brown, the manufacturer (Shugart) tweaked its manufacturing process and the problem has been banished for good. Nor did this disk need to be jump-started, although since the cause of that rather strange malady is unknown, it could turn up again in the odd unit here and there. Great Lakes has gone to a better shock absorber for its packing material, so if that was the cause of the problem, it too may be gone for good.

There's good news and bad news about using the Great Lakes disk, although by far most of the news is good. Probably the most welcome thing about this unit is how absolutely quiet it is. Compared to the Great Lakes disk, the XT's sounds like a jet engine. Great Lakes spent a little extra money on a high-quality whisper fan, and it was money well spent.

The hard disk is interfaced to DOS 2.0 via an installable device driver supplied by Tallgrass Technologies. (Great Lakes is a systems integrator, remember, not a manufacturer.)

The Tallgrass driver permits some flexible configurations of the hard disk that are simply not possible with the XT using IBM standard software. To wit: It is possible to partition the disk so that it appears to be a number of separate drives of arbitrary size. For example, a single drive can be configured to be drive C with five megabytes, drive D with three megabytes, and drive E with two megabytes. A single drive can be partitioned into as many as thirty-two partitions (although only sixteen may actually be active at any one time); each "logical" drive (that is, partition) can be any arbitrary size, as long as the total size of all partitions is no larger than the total capacity of the disk, of course.

As good as the Tallgrass driver is in operation, that's also how bad it is during installation. To put it bluntly, the Tallgrass user interface is a mess. The only way to get through the whole thing with sanity intact and disk properly configured is by following the directions in the manual keystroke by keystroke. Just pretend you're baking a fancy souffle and following the directions to the T.

Not that the directions Great Lakes supplied are so great. As a matter of fact, they do little to make the job easier. Nonetheless, after two or three tries you'll probably get the job accomplished. One note here might help: Near the end, there's an instruction that says, "Set the active drives to ⟨2⟩⟨ENTER⟩ (Set the logical number as required.)" What this really means is set the *logical* number of drives to the number of partitions you have created (which in the example is 2). Period. If, for example, you created drives C, D, and E, on the hard disk, you would type a 3 at this point.

Great Lakes has promised a revamping of the installation manual. The manual that came with the replacement disk was different from the original, but not a whole lot better. Here's hoping the next vamping takes care of the problem.

In operation, a pc running Great Lakes' ten-megabyte disk operates a lot like, although not identically to, an XT. The main difference is at boot-up time: You can't boot from the add-on hard disk. At boot time, both the XT and the pc fetch instructions from the onboard ROM. In the XT, these instructions tell the microprocessor to look first at the A drive floppy disk for a copy of the operating system; if no floppy disk is found, the instructions direct the microprocessor to look for a boot record on the hard disk.

The pc contains a different ROM, which knows nothing of hard disks, so the pc must always boot from the A drive. That's where the Config.sys file comes in; DOS knows to look for such a file on the boot disk, and if such a file is found, any device drivers specified therein are loaded. Since the device driver is loaded before the Autoexec.bat file is read, it can automatically log the now-installed hard disk drive as the default drive. If you always keep a boot disk in the A drive, the pc and XT will look the same at start-up.

They should look the same after that, and the fact that they don't is no fault of Great Lakes'; it's because DOS 2.0 has a bug in it. Unlike DOS 1.1, DOS 2.0 (supposedly) imple-

IT'S HERE.

The first computer magazine for PC users . . . entirely on disk!

MENTOR . . . the magazine on disk talks directly to your IBM PC, not about it. Features that augment popular programs . . . unique graphics . . . software news . . . helpful hints and new product demos are included in each exciting issue.

Published bi-monthly, MENTOR can be your passport to the wider world of the personal computer.

Charter subscriptions are now open. The premiere issue is ready now.

MENTOR
MENTOR

MENTOR™
. . . the magazine on disk
1362 Pacific Ave.
Santa Cruz, CA 95060
Toll Free 1-800-227-3900
In California 1-800-632-2122

OK!

☐ Enroll me as a charter subscriber 6 issues $99.
☐ Send me the first issue. Enclosed is $19.97
☐ Check or money order
☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard
No. ____________
Exp. ________ Bank No. ______
Name ____________
Company ____________
Address ____________
City ____________
State/Zip ____________
Signature ____________
Note: Check here ☐ if you have single-sided drives.

ments a method by which the user can substitute a shell of his choice for the standard version of Command.com supplied with DOS. The trick is supposed to be possible either by specifying *Shell*=⟨*name of substitute shell*⟩ in the configuration file, or by altering the *Comspec*=⟨*name of active shell*⟩ in the environment. Assuming that either one worked (which neither does) and that C was your hard disk drive, you could simply specify

COMSPEC=C:COMMAND.COM

in your Autoexec.bat file, and then whenever DOS needed to reload the transient portion of Command.com, it would know to look on the C drive for it. (To save space, DOS allows application programs to overlay a certain portion of the operating system. The overlayable portion, called the transient portion, must be read back into memory when the application program returns control to DOS.)

Since you can't do that because the command doesn't work properly, DOS will go to the boot drive to reload Command.com. This means that whenever a large program concludes, you must return the boot disk (or any other disk that has Command.com on it) to the A drive. It also means you've got to put up with irritatingly slow floppies, which is not something you want to do after spending mucho bucks for a hard disk. Let's hope the problem will be fixed in DOS 2.1. In the meantime, we're working on a temporary patch.

There are two other places in which you'll notice the difference between an XT and a pc with a Great Lakes disk. The first is when you try to partition the hard disk to support the UCSD p-System; as of now it's not supported, and there are no plans to do so. (CP/M support, on the other hand, has been promised for the near future.) For that matter, you're liable to run into problems when trying to use any "foreign" operating system; Venix, for example, has recently become available for the XT, but as of now it can't be run from a "nonstandard" hard disk. (We're working on this one, too, although it doesn't look good at the instant. More in a future issue.)

The moral here is that if you plan on using any "nonstandard" operating system (meaning anything other than PC-DOS) and you want to be able to run that system from the hard disk, you'd do well to think long and hard about using hard disks whose interfaces do not conform exactly to the XT's. (We'll be looking at the drives from the two manufacturers who do claim a 100 percent XT-compatible interface. More on that, too, in a later installment.) In the case of Venix, the option of running off floppies doesn't even exist; Venix requires a hard disk. Right now, that means if you want Venix, you need an XT.

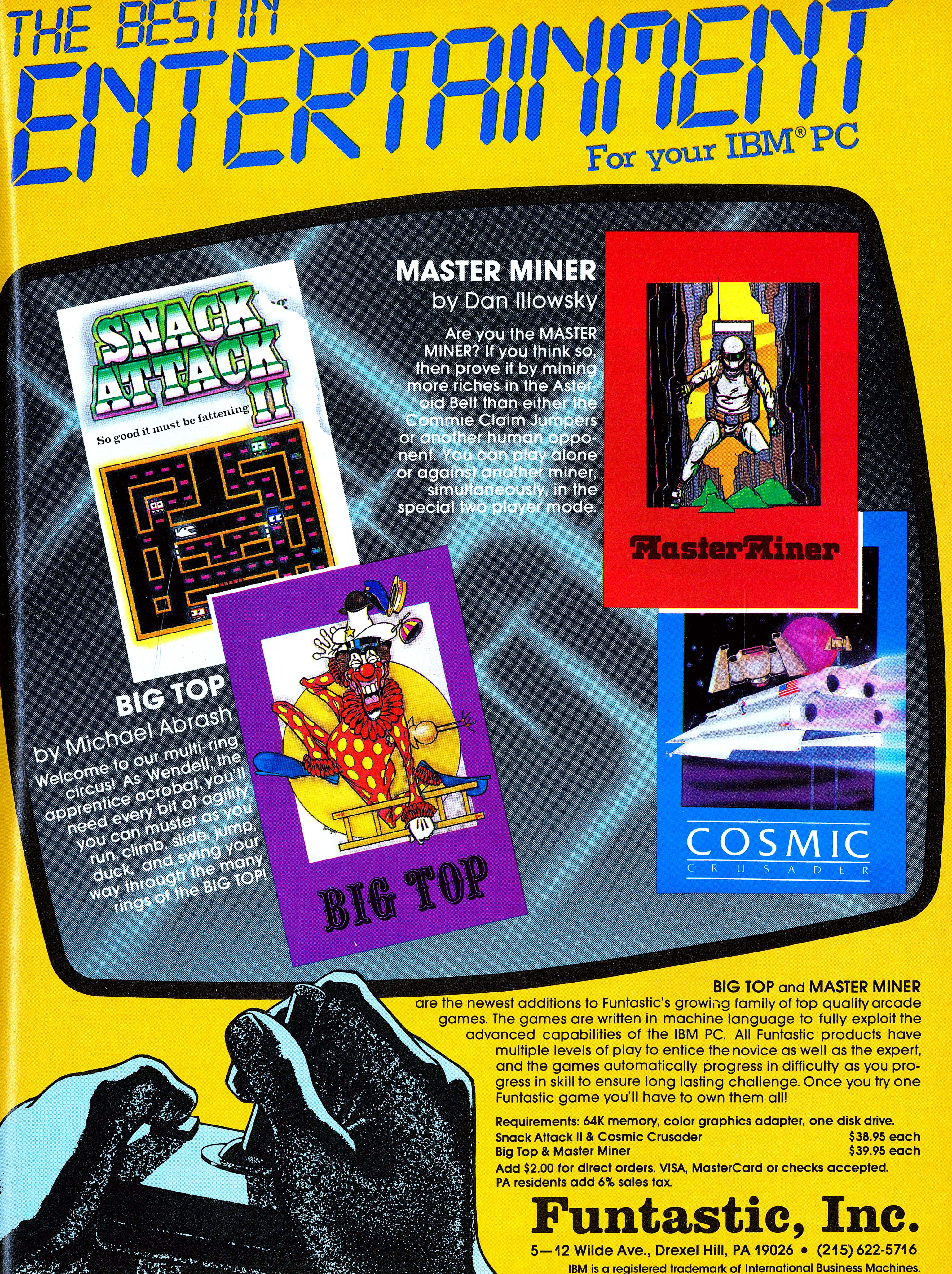
If this column seems to be ignoring the often-raised subject of speed, that's because it is. Speed benchmarks (comparisons), unless done in a lab under the most careful of conditions, are often more misleading than helpful. (As some pundit once said of benchmarks, "There are lies, there are damned lies, and there are benchmarks.") Further, unless your applications are incredibly I/O-intensive, you're simply not going to notice the difference between a disk with sixty-five-milliseconds average access time and one with ninety milliseconds. (The data transfer rate for disks of this size has been pretty much standardized at five megabits per second.)

If you do find yourself in the position of having an important I/O-bound application, the most accurate test would be to run your own program at a dealer's showroom, since the relative speeds of two disks can vary when run with different application programs. For what it's worth, seat-of-the-pants measurement says that the Great Lakes disk offers about the same speed as the XT's.

That about takes care of the really important points, although a couple of nits that came up during installation are worth mentioning. Any hard disk requires a host adapter card—a card that plugs into the bus of the pc and connects to the hard disk via a flat cable. The host adapter boards supplied with both the original Great Lakes disk and the replacement were lacking a back panel cover and connector; that made it necessary to thread the cable end through the back panel, attach it to the host board, and then install the host board. That makes for a somewhat sloppy installation, and Great Lakes has promised to supply a back cover with connector. Also, the cable itself could be a foot or two longer. (If you get a long enough cable, you can get the whole box off the desktop, a not unimportant consideration in view of the potential proliferation of peripherals an active pc'er faces.)

Incidentally, Great Lakes includes software with its disk that allows you to run it under DOS 1.1. With DOS 2.0 going for only $60, there seems little reason not to move up and take advantage of that much more powerful operating system. Even so, if you want to use the disk with 1.1, you can.

Now That's Portable. One of the real movers and shakers in the world of computers is Alan Kay, designer of Xerox's Alto computer, from which we got both the mouse and the concept of overlapping windows. One of Kay's Holy Grails, and an idea that has been seminal in the evolution of personal computers, is what he calls the Dynabook, a portable personal computer that "could be owned by everyone and could have the power to handle virtually all of its owner's information needs." Dynabook would be notebook-sized, which is in keeping with Kay's own rather succinct working definition of a portable: a computer that can be carried in addition to something else. ▲



THE BEST IN ENTERTAINMENT

For your IBM® PC

MASTER MINER

by Dan Illowsky

Are you the MASTER MINER? If you think so, then prove it by mining more riches in the Asteroid Belt than either the Commie Claim Jumpers or another human opponent. You can play alone or against another miner, simultaneously, in the special two player mode.

BIG TOP

by Michael Abrash

Welcome to our multi-ring circus! As Wendell, the apprentice acrobat, you'll need every bit of agility you can muster as you run, climb, slide, jump, duck, and swing your way through the many rings of the BIG TOP!

BIG TOP and **MASTER MINER** are the newest additions to Funtastic's growing family of top quality arcade games. The games are written in machine language to fully exploit the advanced capabilities of the IBM PC. All Funtastic products have multiple levels of play to entice the novice as well as the expert, and the games automatically progress in difficulty as you progress in skill to ensure long lasting challenge. Once you try one Funtastic game you'll have to own them all!

Requirements: 64K memory, color graphics adapter, one disk drive.

Snack Attack II & Cosmic Crusader	**$38.95 each**
Big Top & Master Miner	**$39.95 each**

Add $2.00 for direct orders. VISA, MasterCard or checks accepted.
PA residents add 6% sales tax.

Funtastic, Inc.

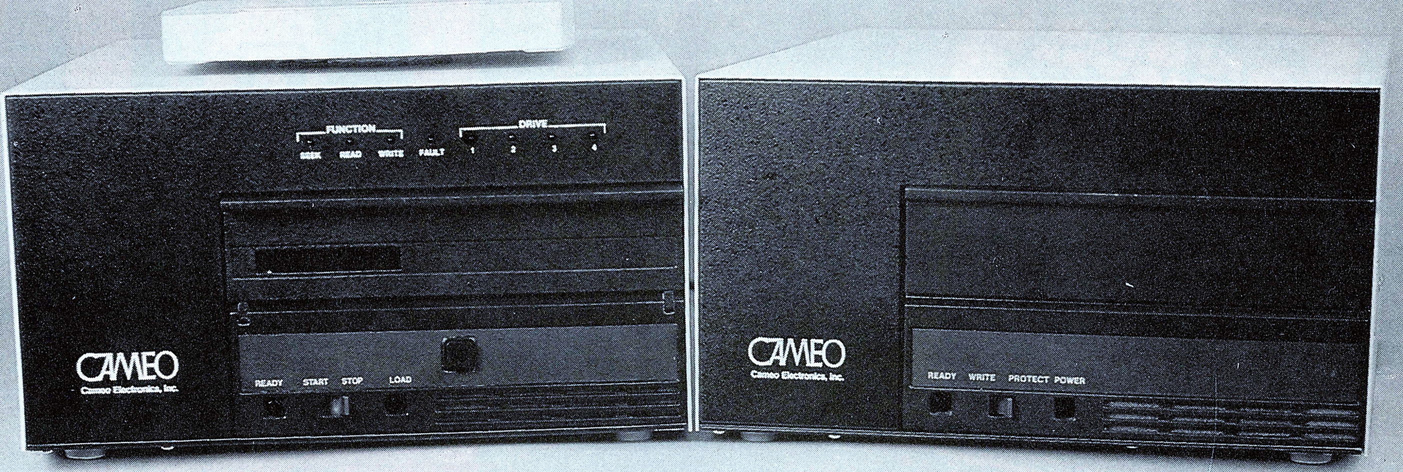
5—12 Wilde Ave., Drexel Hill, PA 19026 • (215) 622-5716

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines.

CAMEO

HARD DISK SYSTEMS ARE THE SOLUTION TO:

- **Reliable Back-Up Requirements**
- **Large Data Storage Needs**



CAMEO large capacity high performance hard disk systems are the ideal mass storage system for use in those business environments where a company's data bank itself is understood to be one of the most valuable parts of the whole micro-computerized office system. The data bank was costly to acquire and could be more costly to replace. Regular access to it is needed every day without fail.

CAMEO'S subsystem 1050, consists of 40 formatted megabytes of on-line winchester data storage and 10 formatted megabytes of removable winchester cartridge back-up capability. In the unlikely event of a problem with the fixed winchester drive the removable cartridge drive can perform as a fully operable full function high performance on line random access winchester hard disk system. It provides highly reliable (full CRC error checking on full spec winchester media) permanent off-line data storage capability for permanent data archiving.

CAMEO'S configuration options allow multiple computers to access all areas of the disk as well as virtual RAM disk configuration from add-on memory boards. Higher capacity systems and nationwide third party maintenance are available. Immediate availability through CAMEO'S regional distributor network.

IBM® VICTOR
ZENITH NEC
COMPAQ EAGLE

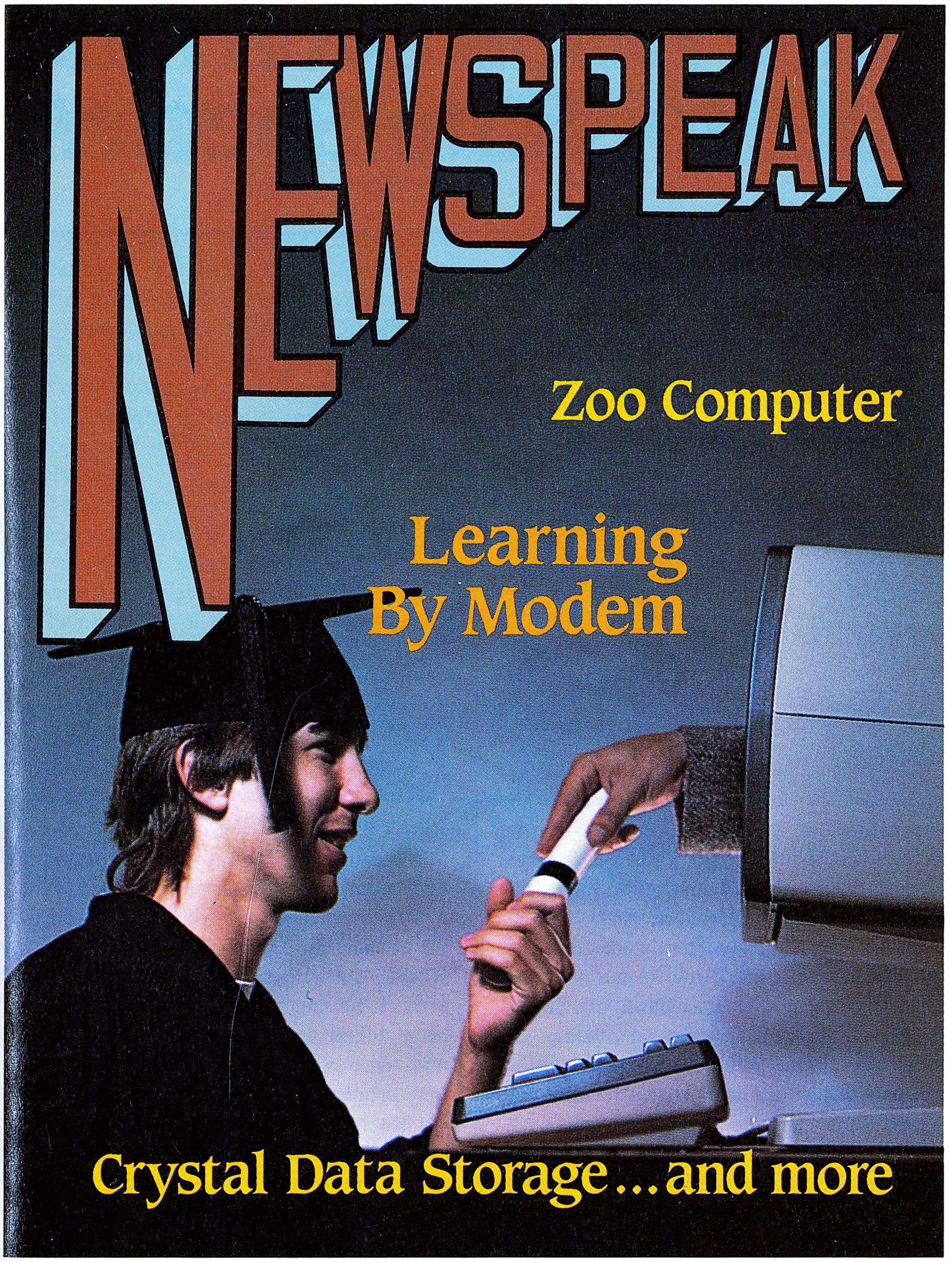
A CAMEO interface is available for the above as well as almost any brand of high performance micro computer you are considering for your office use.

Contact your local CAMEO dealer or:

- **CAMEO ELECTRONICS, INC.**
  1626 Clementine
  Anaheim, Ca. 92802
  (714) 535-1682

- **CAMEO EUROPE**
  Postfach 227
  8120 Weilheim
  West Germany
  TEL 08802-691
  TLX 59903 CAMEO D

The Trade Marks and Logos of the computer companies referred to above
are owned by them respectively and are not the property of CAMEO ELECTRONICS, INC.



EDUCATIONAL NETWORK USES MODEMS AND MICROCOMPUTERS

On September 12, TeleLearning Systems of San Francisco, California, announced a development that should go a long way toward making the "computers in education" revolution come to pass—the TeleLearning telecommunications system, a package designed to transform a personal computer into a personalized "electronic university."

So far, versions of the TeleLearning telecommunications system package are available for use with any Apple II series machine and the IBM Personal Computer. A Commodore 64 version will be released this month, to be followed shortly by versions for TRS-80 and Atari machines. All versions require disk drive and monitor; a printer can also be used, though none is required.

The basic TeleLearning package is composed of a 300-baud autodial modem (the "knowledge module"), communications and educational environment software, and a catalog that lists the courses offered, what they cover, and what they cost. For the benefit of computerists who already own modems, the TeleLearning software can also be purchased separately. And for computer novices, there's a special package containing the knowledge module, TeleLearning system software, course catalog, and instructional

GOTO page 196, column 2

AT&T MICRO TO COMPETE WITH IBM'S

Better late than never. American Telephone & Telegraph is planning to enter the microcomputer market within the next six months.

According to a recent report published by International Resource Development (Norwalk, CT), AT&T's micro will use thirty-two-bit architecture based on Western Electric's Bellmac microprocessor and will feature software based on Bell Laboratories's Unix operating system.

It's long been expected that AT&T would clash head-on with IBM and other office automation companies, once the communications giant had freed itself from public utility status. AT&T is looking to invade IBM's territory but realizes how strong Big Blue's position is. The bout has just begun.

AT&T's micro will have the option of running software developed for the IBM pc, according to the IRD report—which is titled *Microcomputer Operating System Strategies*. Microsoft, apparently, is developing a "MS-DOS look-alike" program for the new computer.

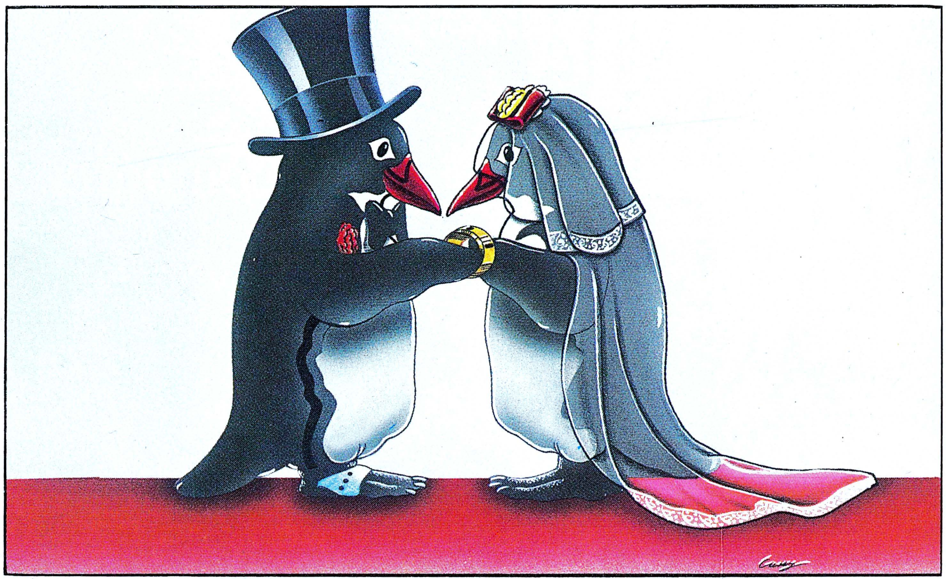
IBM, on the other hand, may implement "selective price reductions" to undercut AT&T and is encouraging the development of Unix-based operating systems for several IBM computers, including the pc. IBM is also now geared up to outproduce AT&T, at least through 1984.

The AT&T micro is not expected to feature Lisa-like software. IRD does not rule out, though, a crash effort or "maybe another deal with Microsoft"—whereby AT&T's micro would be equipped with Lisa-like productivity tools or something like VisiCorp's long-awaited *VisiOn*, which will run on the IBM pc.

Throughout the IRD report, the importance of operating systems is emphasized in relation to competitive strategies for success in the personal computer market. The report predicts that MS-DOS will be running on 50 percent of the microcomputers in use in 1986, compared with 29 percent in 1983. Unix, running on only 2 percent of the computer population today, will run on 10 percent in 1986. But by then, MS-DOS will be nearly equivalent to Unix—with Smalltalk-like (Smalltalk was the inspiration for Lisa's operating system) enhancements and other extensions—according to IRD researchers.

GOTO page 194, column 3

Computer Service Helps Zoos Find The Perfect Mate for Rare Species



Nathan Flesness likes to tell a story about a zoo that was famous for its penguins. This zoo had the largest and most diverse penguin population in the country. And all other zoos came to this zoo to buy or borrow offspring of the famous penguins to add to their own penguin populations.

Eventually, all the penguins in the zoo's exhibit died. Immediately, an investigation was launched. A great deal of money was spent, all possible factors were weighed, and, in the end, the cause of the devastation of the zoo's famous penguin population was discovered: old age. The zoo had been using only its original penguins for breeding, while selling off the offspring. And no one had thought to keep track.

Flesness is the director of ISIS, the International Species Inventory System, which is dedicated to making sure that things like that don't happen again.

The capture and importation of animals belonging to endangered species became forbidden in the early seventies. That constraint, plus other import restrictions and quarantines, meant that zoos had to obtain virtually all their animals from captive populations—which are never the demographic equal of what they would be in the wild and, in the case of endangered species, could be smaller than your immediate family.

Ten years ago, at the Minnesota Zoo, Drs. Ulysses S. Seal and Dale Mackey thought it would be helpful to have a source of information on wild animals in captivity comparable to the files kept on people by government agencies and financial institutions. The animal files would be geared to the survival of species rather than the catching of tax cheats and parking violators. And zoos could know what other zoos had.

Seal and Mackey took their idea to the American Association of Zoological Parks and Aquariums and the American Association of Zoo Veterinarians, both of which agreed to participate and help out with funding. More money from a private foundation and a grant from the Department of the Interior followed.

The result was ISIS, a comprehensive collection of information on fifty-seven thousand captive birds and mammals in 175 locations around the world, stored and maintained on mainframe computers. The main database consists of such basic information as an animal's age, sex, parentage, where it was caught or born, its current location, and where it is scheduled to go. Linked databases have more specific information and medical histories for disease detection.

Participating zoos (currently consisting of the majority of North American zoos, thirteen European, two New Zealand, one South American, and growing by an average of fifteen new members annually) now can locate genetically desirable mates for specific animals and develop intelligent breeding practices.

Suppose a zoo wishes to find a suitable male Przewalski's horse for its female Przewalski's horse and indicates that it wishes to participate in the ISIS program. ISIS sends a set of standard forms. The zoo director fills them out with the requested info on all the zoo's animals, keeps a carbon, and returns the forms to Minnesota. There, one of the four full-time ISIS employees batches all the forms and enters them into the computer.

The zoo director is now entitled to a 500-page document with the basic information contributed by the 175 participating zoos and institutions. Every six months, he also gets a microfiche record on all 57,000 animals. If there's an eligible male Przewalski's horse in there, he will probably find it.

This process is not exactly the epitome of the streamlined, high-speed computer age.

"We've got 150 megabytes of data sitting in a drawer," sighs Flesness. The lack of sufficient funds to maintain a hard disk and the inability of zoos to take advantage of an online database, even if the system could afford it, has caused ISIS to embark on a quest for a microcomputer programmer who can create a program that will expedite the record keeping at individual zoos.

ISIS is now looking for a sponsor for the project, having already sunk $300,000 into three failed tries—attempted by programmers who believed it was a standard inventory problem.

"It's not," says Flesness. "The program has to update, edit, and have several report-writing functions. It'll need to communicate with the ISIS system and deal with the fact that an animal does not have a constant I.D. Each zoo has its own identification system."

Last June, Washington's National Zoo became the first to computerize its animal records. It sent a magnetic tape off to ISIS instead of a printed report. This was a start. The dream of a microcomputer-based, ISIS-compatible, two-way telecommunication system has yet to be realized, but the organization expects it to happen "within a couple of years."

The continuing expansion of ISIS (they're now working up a database for reptiles and amphibians) is not analogous to a successful business interested in improving its operations. For many animal species, the captive populations may soon be the only ones left on the planet. The existence of these captive populations will depend increasingly on cooperative management between zoos based on good, readily accessible biological information. AC

NARA Sponsors High-Tech Forum Featuring Digital Music System

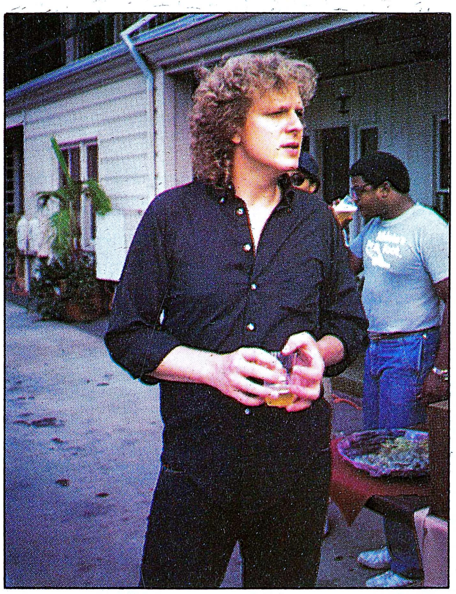
The National Academy of Recording Arts and Sciences (NARAS)—the august assembly that presents the Grammy Awards each year—sponsored the second annual digital synthesis forum this past September to promote the advancement of knowledge about digitally generated music among NARAS members and other music industry professionals.

The affair drew around five hundred attendees and featured hands-on interaction with practically every digital-based music system currently available.

The organizer of the forum was Michael Boddicker, the current governor of the NARAS board of trustees, as well as a composer and keyboardist who has contributed his talents to many albums of note. Herb Alpert and Don Hahn donated the use of the multi-studio facility of A&M Records, located on the site of the former Charlie Chaplin studios in Hollywood.

The size of the facility enabled the manufacturers that were showcasing their products to do so in separate, well-insulated rooms that had been acoustically fine-tuned. This permitted each product to be viewed and heard discretely, without distraction. According to Boddicker, the likes of Barbra Streisand, the Police, and Sergio Mendes, who were slated to use the studio for current productions, generously rearranged their recording schedules to accommodate the event.

Among the manufacturers that provided top-of-the-line computer-based instruments for the attendees to scrutinize were digital-music heavyweights Fairlight and E-mu Systems. Music Technology Incorporated presented its Synergy digital keyboard instrument. Music Technology's vice president, Tom Piggott, proposed mounting a showcase concert—early next year at Carnegie Hall—featuring Boddicker on the Synergy.



Michael Boddicker, NARAS forum organizer.

Other instruments presented were Yamaha's new DX-7 digital synthesizer, the OB-8 composer/sequencer/rhythm generator from Oberheim, and the Casio 7000 polyphonic synthesizer. Standalone digital rhythm generators (drum machines) included the Linn Drum, Simmons electronic drums with the peripheral SDS6 sequencer, and E-mu Systems's Drumulator. Garfield Electronics showed the Doctor Click, a device that allows the user to interface synthesizers, sequencers, and rhythm generators—from different manufacturers—that otherwise would be incompatible.

The issue of system compatibility was addressed further by those manufacturers who have committed themselves to producing equipment fitted with the Musical Instrument Digital Interface specification, or MIDI. This hardware-based system, and the nonproprietary language it uses, makes it possible to interface instruments from different manufacturers under the control of an external microcomputer. Roland Corporation featured MIDI on its Jupiter-8. Moog harnessed MIDI to its newly released SL-8 synthesizer. Sequential Circuit's Prophet 5 synthesizer was interfaced with the Commodore-64.

The recently formed MIDI Users Group was represented at the forum by organizer Brian Vincik. This organization's goals entail the dissemination of technical information about the MIDI specification, the development of an interactive database for users, the presentation of seminars bringing users together, and the publication of a newsletter.

Apple-based systems included the Soundchaser from Passport Designs, the alpha-Syntauri from Syntauri Corporation (with the new *Simply Music* software), and the Chroma from Fender/Rogers/Rhodes. Programmer Kevin Laubach was on hand to demonstrate the new software he had developed for the Chroma, which provides an on-screen graphic representation of the synthesizer's patches as you modify them.

Other notable systems are the PPG Wave 2.2 polyphonic synthesizer and the optional Waveterm, which includes a monitor and eight-inch drives and which allows the sampling and treatment of acoustical sounds. Also, 360 Systems demonstrated a digital keyboard that plays recorded acoustic sounds—from instruments and percussion to human vocalizations—which are stored in memory chips that can then be purchased individually.

Boddicker, who currently is composing the music for the new *Star Trek* game to be published by Sega, echoed the participants' feelings that the event was a success. The first digital synthesis forum was held at United Western Studios in Los Angeles a little more than a year ago, with fewer musical products presented and about a hundred attendees. It is Boddicker's hope to maintain the intimate, hands-on atmosphere that characterized this year's forum in subsequent gatherings. TG

LOOKING FOR THE BEST DEAL?

Then look to
MY *Supplier, Inc.*
to give you what you
want, when you
want it.

We care about you, as its you
that keeps us in business.

DISKETTES•RIBBON•PAPER
BINDERS•DISKETTE STORAGE
EQUIPMENT
LABELS AND MUCH MORE.

MasterCard VISA C.O.D.

...AND WE PAY THE SHIPPING

CALL TOLL FREE
800-448-4016
IN CA 800-556-6786
MY *Supplier, Inc.*
COMPUTER AND WORD PROCESSING SUPPLIES
348 No. Moorpark Road
Thousand Oaks, CA 91360

Personal Computer
SMARTWARE™

Revelation™ Data Base for IBM PC & XT $950

Large System Relational Database now available for IBM PC

- Variable length records
  Up to 65K in length
  (That's right—65,000 characters)
- Dictionary driven files & reports
- 8087 compatible for superior number crunching
- Report writer with many levels of sort
- Data compatible with Pick™ operating system mini
- XT compatible - handles files as large as the disk
- MS DOS compatible
- IBM PC, Columbia, Eagle, Compact, Hyperion, etc. compatible
- Many more features
- 32 bit technology, not old fashioned 8 bit technology
- More powerful than most mainframe data bases

MergeCalc™ $125

- **Consolidates VisiCalc® spread sheets**
- **Compares two or more VisiCalc® spread sheets**

Applications MergeCalc merges VisiCalc® files and extends the utility of VisiCalc®. One of the shortcomings of VisiCalc® is the inability to consolidate, merge or manipulate multiple VisiCalc® models automatically. With MergeCalc, you can perform operations between your models without changing the models in any way. MergeCalc is ideally suited to add segments of a total business into a consolidated model. This enables all types of complex analyses, such as variance analysis, percentage change reports, time change reports, share of market analysis, incremental sales or investment analysis.

LoadCalc™ $95

- **Converts textfiles to DIF™ files**

Applications: LoadCalc creates DIF files from textfiles, so you can move mainframe or minicomputer data into VisiCalc®, VisiTrend/Plot, VisiWord or any program that uses DIF. LoadCalc allows selective conversion of the data, so you only get what you want. No programming required. With LoadCalc you can load "Actuals" from the mainframe into your "Budget" spreadsheet and *compare* the numbers.

Send me a catalog! ST11i

CYPHER, 121 Second St., San Francisco, CA 94105

NAME ____________

COMPANY ____________

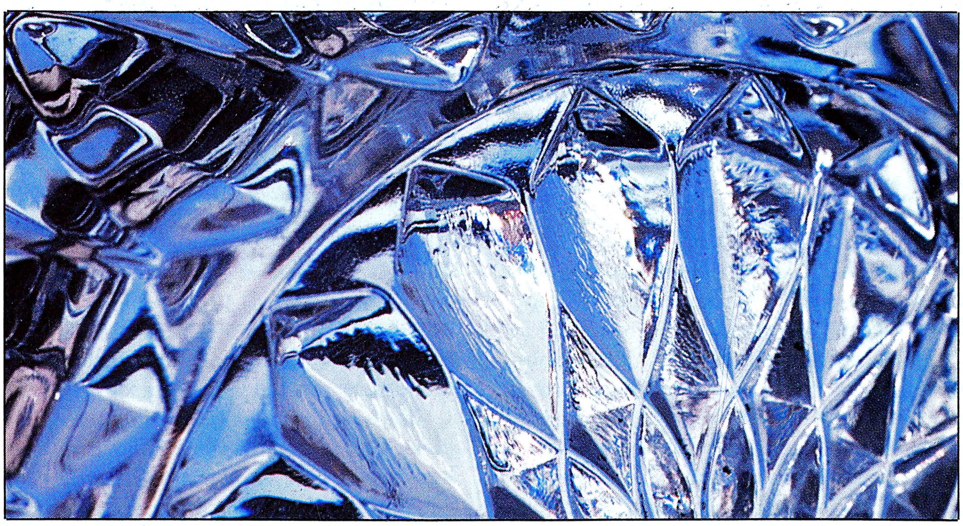
ADDRESS ____________

CITY ______ STATE ______ ZIP ______

800-SMARTWARE
Visa/MC accepted
In California 415-974-5297

VisiCalc® is a registered trademark of VisiCorp.

Scientists Look at Crystals As a Data Storage Medium



First it was stone. Then it was animal hides, papyrus, felted vegetable fiber, celluloid, magnetic tape, and silicon chips. One of the longest ongoing quests of humankind is the search for a better way to store information.

The combination of lasers and photorefractive manmade crystals is one of the most exciting future data storage technologies currently being explored in research labs around the world. The theoretical potential for storing data on crystals is tremendous.

"The problem is making large, high-optical-quality, homogeneous crystals and controlling, in a predetermined fashion, their properties, microsensitivity, and storage density," says Lynn A. Boatner, a physicist at the Oak Ridge National Laboratory in Tennessee.

Boatner is involved with the "materials science" aspects of developing methods and techniques for creating an active medium out of photorefractive crystals. Originally begun at the Phillips Research Lab in Hamburg, Germany, Boatner's research in crystals is something he works at on the side at Oak Ridge. The lab is funded by the Department of Energy and there are no direct energy applications currently foreseeable from crystals.

Nevertheless, Boatner is excited by the potential of manmade potassium tantalate niobate crystals, niobium oxide, and potassium carbonate. The ratio of niobium to tantalum can be changed and other substances added to alter the crystal's properties.

Laser light of a proper wavelength alters the crystal's index of refraction at illuminated points within the crystal. The spots of altered refractive index shift a light beam's path slightly. A laser beam of another color can read information, encoded by the original laser, without changing it.

How much information can a crystal store? "All of man's knowledge would probably fit on a cubic crystal one meter on each side. We can't grow one that big, though." Still, Boatner says it's not hard to imagine the day when you'll have the contents of the Library of Congress on a crystal in the home.

Boatner also believes you could store holographic images as interference patterns on a crystal. By rotating the crystal slightly between each illumination, one could pack it with thousands of such images.

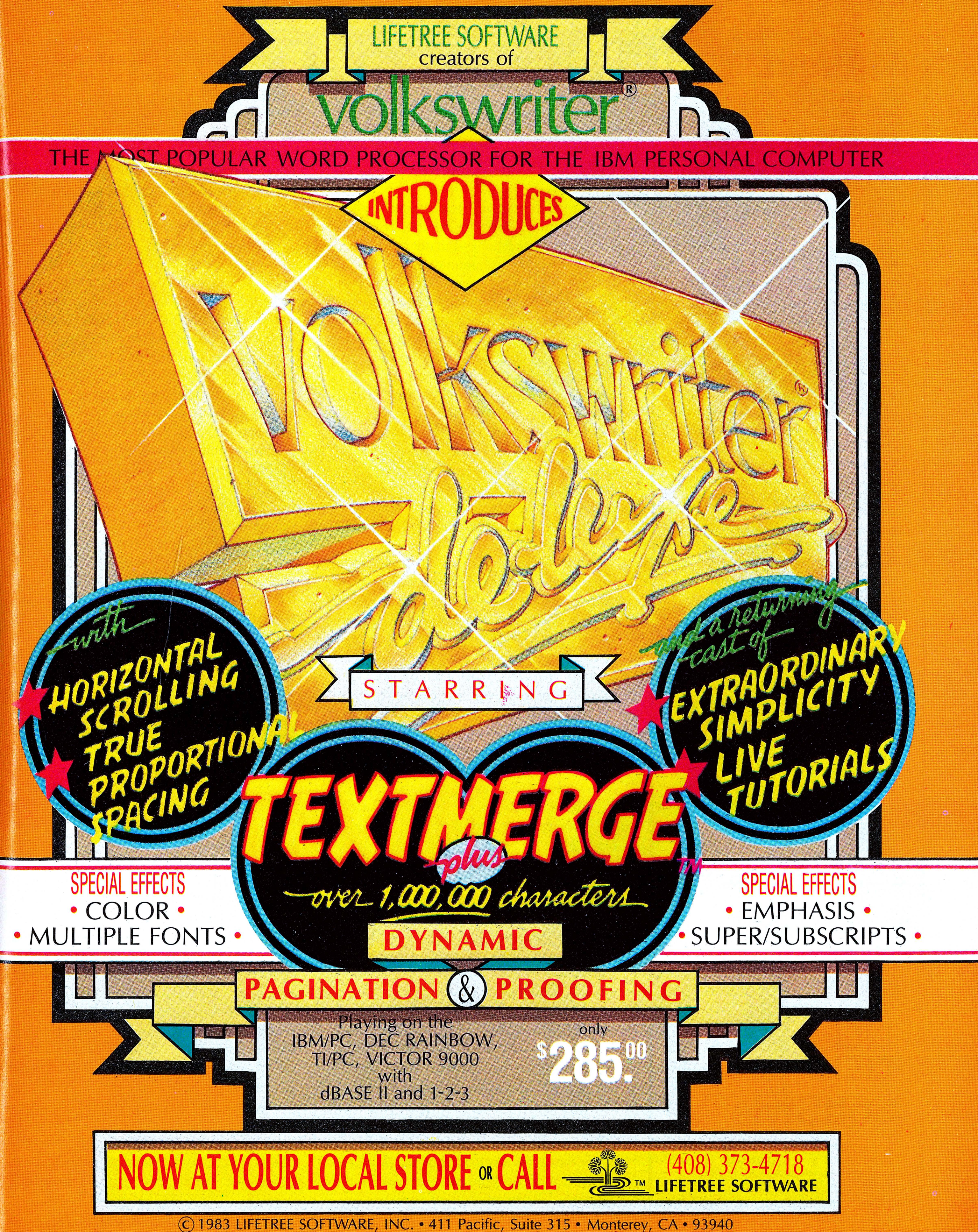
It will be about ten years before we'll see much in the way of photorefractive crystal data storage systems. "It's possible we'll see specialized applications before then," says Boatner. DH

AT&T

continued from page 191

IRD predicts that the competition between IBM and AT&T will significantly affect the strategies of Apple and other hardware and software firms. The report forecasts that virtually all future micros, at least for the next few years, will have to include MS-DOS and Unix capabilities to compete.

The 237-page *Microcomputer Operating System Strategies* report is available from IRD for $1,650. A description and a copy of the table of contents are free. DH



LIFETREE SOFTWARE
creators of

volkswriter®

THE MOST POPULAR WORD PROCESSOR FOR THE IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER

INTRODUCES

Volkswriter® deluxe

with
- HORIZONTAL SCROLLING
- TRUE PROPORTIONAL SPACING

and a returning cast of
- EXTRAORDINARY SIMPLICITY
- LIVE TUTORIALS

STARRING

TEXTMERGE™ plus

over 1,000,000 characters

DYNAMIC

PAGINATION & PROOFING

SPECIAL EFFECTS
• COLOR •
• MULTIPLE FONTS •

SPECIAL EFFECTS
• EMPHASIS •
• SUPER/SUBSCRIPTS •

Playing on the
IBM/PC, DEC RAINBOW,
TI/PC, VICTOR 9000
with
dBASE II and 1-2-3

only
$285.00

NOW AT YOUR LOCAL STORE OR CALL (408) 373-4718 LIFETREE SOFTWARE

© 1983 LIFETREE SOFTWARE, INC. • 411 Pacific, Suite 315 • Monterey, CA • 93940

FOR DEMOS OF VOLKSWRITER DELUXE, REFER TO THE ADVERTISERS INDEX. SEE I B MAGAZETTE AD IN THIS ISSUE.

An Epson FX Without Set-FX™ is Like a Porsche Without a Key

Your Epson FX printer is a powerful machine. Alas, getting into the driver's seat isn't always easy. Set-FX software lets you and your IBM PC take your FX for a real tour. It's as simple as touching a key and taking off.

With Set-FX, you can now conveniently:

- **Print** those missing IBM characters as they appear on the screen, including block and line graphics, foreign characters, and math & science symbols.
- **Set** print modes to condensed, emphasized, italics, proportional, and 50 more. Control Margins.
- **Create** your own typefaces for logos, forms, and unique styles.
- **Explore** your FX's capabilities with our FX-Ideas program, Instructional Manual, and Quick Reference Card.

Race away with Set-FX . . . it prints in full-speed text mode!

At last, you get the printer control, IBM character set, custom typefaces, and high-speed printing in one comprehensive package.

For the key to great performance from your Epson FX, ask your dealer or order direct. Price $59.95

SoftStyle, Inc.
Suite 200, Dept. D11
7192 Kalanianaole Hwy.
Honolulu, Hawaii 96825
(808) 396-6368

SoftStyle™

For the IBM PC or COMPAQ with Epson FX-80 or FX-100. DOS 1.1 or 2.0. Works with most word processors and spreadsheets. MC or VISA accepted. Add $2.00 for handling.

Network

continued from page 191

software designed to teach them how to operate the computer.

This computerized educational system bears some resemblance to the traditional correspondence school—but not much. True, the student does communicate with the instructor through the mail. But in this case, the mail is electronic and pupil and instructor can interact, regularly discussing the course material as they work through it. The fact that students can learn (and teachers can teach) at their own convenience is another major plus of the system. There are no scheduling conflicts to overcome, no transportation arrangements to make, no parking problems to contend with. Instead, class begins whenever you want, wherever you want. You take tests when you're ready, not before, and feedback, guidance, and clarification are there for the asking. What more could a student want?

As of this writing, some 170 TeleLearning courses are on-line, and more are in the planning stages. Course fees range from $35 on the low end to around $150 on the high end; such factors as instructor, length of course, complexity of material being taught, and cost of supplementary course material are taken into account in establishing course fees.

The biggest news, beyond the existence of the TeleLearning system itself, is the fact that the system software and the company's expertise are available for a fee so that corporations, educational institutions, and public and private agencies can create and teach TeleLearning courses of their own. Some already have.

When TeleLearning chairman Ron Gordon and president Tom White founded the company, their primary objective was to devise a way of using technology to make educational opportunities more accessible to more people. They planned to create and market a learning system that would facilitate this turn of events.

TeleLearning's host computer is a Prime 850. Connections between a personal computer and the host are made through one of the three packet-switching networks—Tymnet, Telenet, and Uninet. To get started, a first-time user is prompted to look up a local access code number in the catalog and enter it at the keyboard. This lets TeleLearning know where the user is located; from that point on, the system does all the work of making the necessary telecommunication connections.

Like a regular modem, the knowledge module hardware connects a personal computer to a telephone jack and makes use of the phone lines to transmit and receive information. The TeleLearning software ensures that the communication process is "transparent to the user." And a communications analysis system built in to the software enables the system to look at the linkage at every step and to make whatever adjustments are necessary to ensure that the user does get connected with one of the three networks.

Because the dialing, log-on procedures, passwords, and other business are handled by the software, the jargon that once seemed to be inextricably linked to telecommunication is eliminated. The company is now at work on additional software to further simplify telecommunications. The software will make using the "knowledge module" modem for other than TeleLearning-related purposes as easy as it is to use within the TeleLearning environment.

Once a student has bought the Knowledge Module package, he or she is ready to enroll in the "electronic university." The first step is to choose the desired course or courses from the catalog. The student registers electronically by filling in pertinent information, such as credit card number, in an order form that appears on-screen. It's also possible to register by mail—for those who haven't yet entered the "age of plastic." As soon as the student's credit card number is verified (or the check clears), the enrollment process is complete.

Within twenty-four hours of signing up for a TeleLearning class, a textbook and any other course materials a student needs are sent out. If the course calls for graphics or other special information, there may be a need for an additional disk or two. All these materials, and all of the costs involved in using the system—communicating with the instructor, and so on—are covered in the course fee paid at the time of enrollment. And once they've signed up for one class, students automatically receive quarterly updates of the system's offerings.

When beginning a course, the student is greeted by a digitized photograph of the instructor. After introductions have been made, an overview of the course is next. Then it's the student's turn to tell the instructor why he or she is taking the class, what the student hopes to get out of the course, and so on. Having this information enables the instructor to be more helpful, to individualize the course to meet a particular student's needs.

All interaction with the system is accomplished by following instructions spelled out in on-screen menus. And a simple text editor

GOTO page 198, column 2

Software Labs is More than Software...

MailClerk
Accounts Receivable
General Ledger
FileClerk
Computer Tutor
MasterKey
S-Basic
MasterKey
Professional Series

It's Profit!

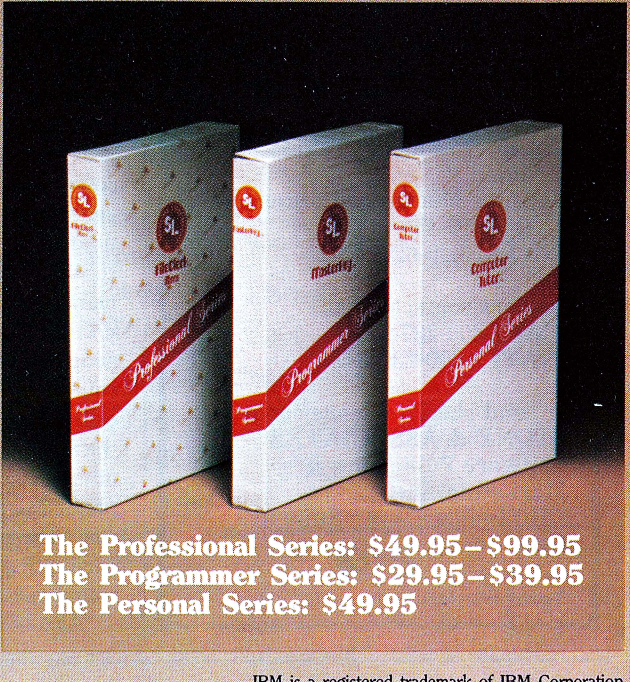
Whether you use your IBM PC in the office, for programming, or at home, you will profit from Software Labs' Professional, Programming and Personal Series. **Our Professional Series** meets the needs of today's business people with an integrated package of management programs: General Ledger, Accounts Receivable, and Accounts Payable; FileClerk™ (data base manager) and MailClerk™. **The Programmer Series** puts you in total control of your IBM PC with the S–BASIC™ programming language, MasterKey™ (for making backups of copy protected disks), and the Cross Reference Lister for BASIC. **The Personal Series** features Computer Tutor™ which has 30 BASIC programs filled with knowledge, entertainment and useful information for everyday living. Our programs are great, our prices are below the competition's, and *you* reap the profit from your wise selection of our products.

Ask for our software series at your local computer store, or

CALL NOW 1–800–531–1309

to order our programs or receive our catalog. In Ohio or for technical information call 614/889–5083.

Mail orders shipped within 24 hours via UPS.


FileClerk
MasterKey
Computer Tutor
Professional Series
Programmer Series
Personal Series

The Professional Series: $49.95–$99.95
The Programmer Series: $29.95–$39.95
The Personal Series: $49.95

SOFTWARE LABORATORIES inc.

The Software Seal of Quality

IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation.

MY LETTERS NUMBERS AND WORDS™

By *ELMER LARSEN*

"My Letters, Numbers, and Words" is a pre-primary educational software package for children from one to five. Children are taught the alphabet, the numbers from one to ten and the concept of words through animated flash-card routines and graphic displays.

Excellent For Children With Reading Disabilities.

"The program's attractive graphic and sound features will help keep your child's attention. We are amazed at the amount of time and effort which went into the creation of this program. We wish it were one of ours!"

Keith Oswald and Joseph Juhasz of PCsoftware, San Diego, CA

PCsoftware

For the IBM PC*, Compac*, and Columbia MPC* with 64K RAM, One 160K or 320K disk drive, Dos 1.1, Basica, Color Graphics Board, and Color or Monochrome Monitor.

Orders & Information

$39.95 - Postage & Taxes included.
VISA or Mastercard orders call:
(CA) 1-619-459-9173
(NAT) 1-800-624-2262

Dealers contact Vitek
(CA) 1-800-237-7290
(NAT) 1-800-237-3443

or send check or money order to:
STONE & ASSOCIATES
Software Publishing &
Marketing, Inc.
7910 Ivanhoe Ave., Suite 319
La Jolla, CA 92037

*Registered Trademark.

Network

continued from page 196

included in the software allows you to type in your questions, answers, and comments at the keyboard. The system software can also display and transmit graphics, tests, and other information. If you have a printer, you can also print out test questions and other course information.

There are two ways to communicate with your instructor—via electronic mail (the instructor will make an effort to get back to you promptly) or in person, with an appointment during the instructor's "office hours." Each instructor contracts to spend a certain amount of time "on-line" working with students.

TeleLearning found most of its instructors by placing ads in the campus newspapers of accredited colleges and universities. The fact that these instructors had already taught the courses in a regular classroom environment was considered a plus.

The company is working with various accredited educational institutions that are interested in exploring the possibilities of TeleLearning.

Tom White explains. "Our whole approach," says White, "is not for TeleLearning to be an accredited institution, but for us to work with these instructors so they can offer accredited courses via TeleLearning."

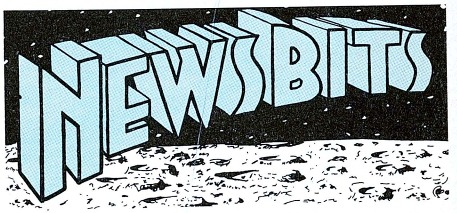
At present, TeleLearning's offerings span three broad areas: adult learning, business education, and courses for children and young adults.

Study topics for adults include everything from parenting to first aid for the weekend athlete, from reading aloud to your child to basic auto mechanics, from starting and managing your own business for profit to improving your word power. Business courses cover such subjects as microcomputer report generation for business, telecommunications, the efficient use of word processing, construction cost estimating, and property management. Also available are courses on *dBase II* and database concepts. For young people, the fare includes a computer-literacy course "for kids and other beginners," a class called Write On, and another called Solving the SAT. A series of courses about space and other science classes are also offered. College preparatory courses in everything from marine biology to writing with style, algebra, accounting, psychology, and economics, round out the bill.

Also listed in the current catalog are five courses developed with the American Academy of Management, on such subjects as communication skills for managers, and administering the company budget.

According to White, there are a couple of ways organizations can work with TeleLearning to develop computerized educational and training courses of their own. The first way is by contracting with TeleLearning to convert their courses to software for a fee. The second way is by licensing the actual course-writing system and creating the software themselves. Student software and instructor software, as well as knowledge modules, are also available for purchase on an OEM basis.

An organization or educational institution that decides to create courses to be converted by TeleLearning becomes a participant in a multistep process consisting of submission, editing, feedback, and modification. The end result of this interaction is TeleLearning software for use in courses designed by the clients themselves and taught by the instructors of their choice. TeleLearning is also set up to train clients in the use of the system to write their own software. Fittingly, the company has even devised a training course that runs on the TeleLearning system. JV

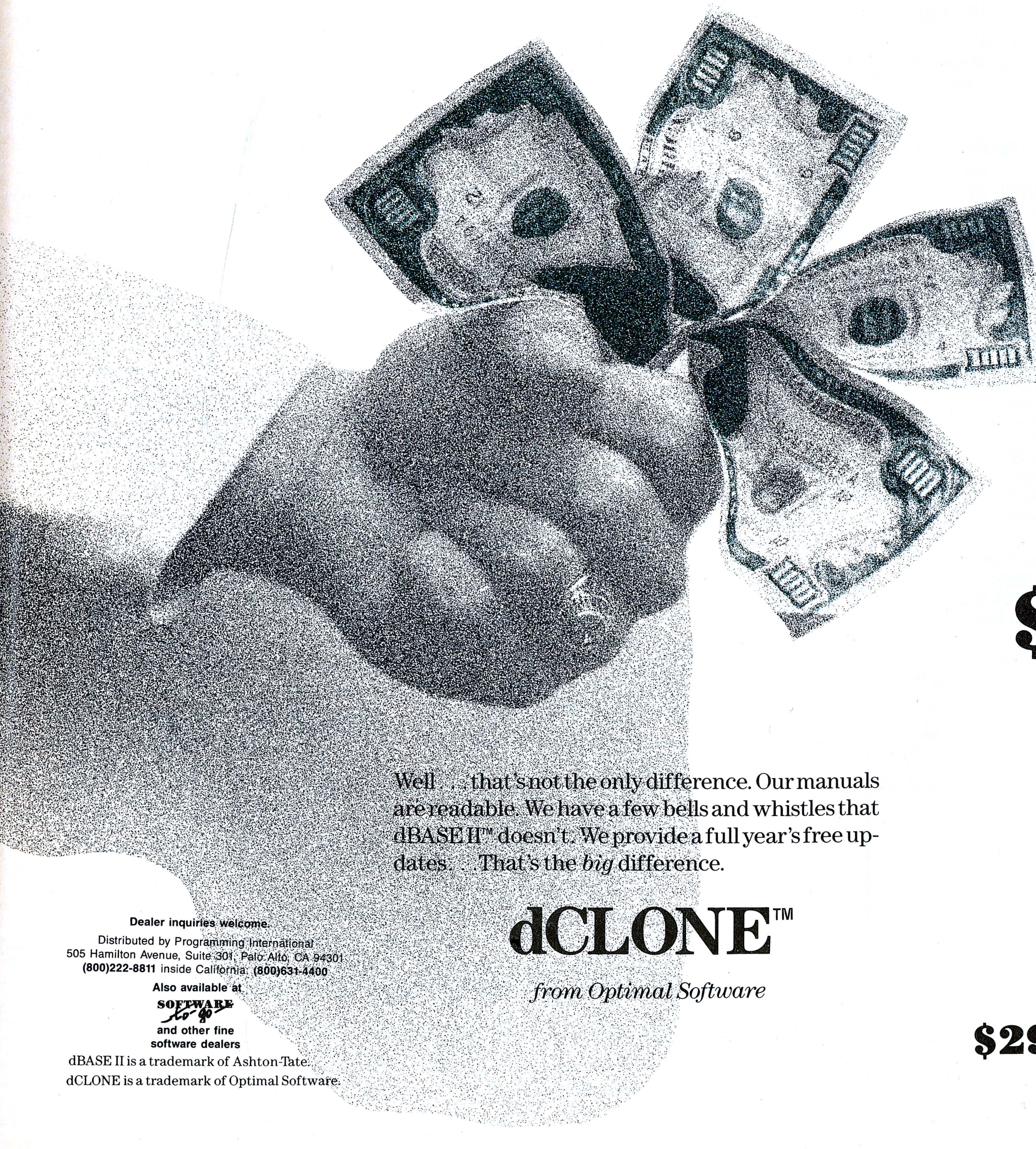


∆ Industry Looks for a High/Low Split. The Fall '83 Comdex rolls into Las Vegas November 28, and the computer industry will try to improve its fortunes. The semiannual dealer show will feature a keynote address by Microsoft's cofounder Bill Gates and fifty-two conference sessions on everything from management methods to market trends. Several hundred exhibitors will invade the Riviera, Sahara, and Las Vegas Hilton hotels, as well as the Las Vegas Convention Center. Comdex is one of the premier trade shows for introducing new products and making business deals. The show is organized by The Interface Group in Needham, Massachusetts.

∆ Get Together and Get Down. The T.E.D. (technology, entertainment, and design) Communications Conference will be held February 23–26, 1984, at the Monterey Conference Center in Monterey, California. The theme of the conference is the design of information as entertainment. An impressive lineup of artists, thinkers, and professionals in the technology and entertainment industries will explore with attendees, through visual and audio presentations, the process of being informed through entertainment.

WHAT'S THE DIFFERENCE

between Optimal Software's dBASE interpreter and Ashton Tate's dBASE II™?



$400

Well . . . that's not the only difference. Our manuals are readable. We have a few bells and whistles that dBASE II™ doesn't. We provide a full year's free updates. . . That's the *big* difference.

dCLONE™

from Optimal Software

$295 Unconditional 30 day money back guarantee.

Dealer inquiries welcome.

Distributed by Programming International
505 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 301, Palo Alto, CA 94301
(800)222-8811 inside California: **(800)631-4400**

Also available at
SOFTWARE To-Go
and other fine
software dealers

dBASE II is a trademark of Ashton-Tate.
dCLONE is a trademark of Optimal Software.

ACTIVE TRACE
the UNutility

Why? Because when BASIC users have ACTIVE TRACE, they don't need caffeine to stay up nights doing the tedious work that a computer should do.

Do these real reactions to ACTIVE TRACE sound like they are describing an unglamorous, unsexy, stay-in-the-drawer utility?

Beginner

"It's really neat," said a beginning programmer who'd copied a program, which wouldn't run, out of an instructional book. "Active Trace worked right away, and I didn't even read the documentation. It showed me the problem, and then I figured out how to fix it."

Professional

"Active Trace saved my a!"** said a man whose business is programming and customizing. "I don't work without it."

Critic

"Extremely useful program," said a professional reviewer.* "If you do much programming in Microsoft Basic, you'll appreciate Active Trace a lot."

WE DO WINDOWS

ACTIVE TRACE pops a window into Basic that lets you see inside your program as you run it, letting you know variable values as they change. You can analyse all variables and functions throughout your program, or just those you specify in a section of your program. There is no need to "single step." In a form a novice can understand, a program's activity is presented on your screen, or printer, or for the more advanced programmer, as a disk file. The disk file can be used with your word processor to automatically find the source of an error and display the circumstances surrounding its occurrence. Complete, professional cross-reference facilities are included.

*Jerry Pournelle, *BYTE Magazine*, April '83, p 234.

To order or request information contact your dealer or CALL TOLL FREE 800-358-9120 (US) In California call 800-862-4948

Active Trace
Complete package includes Scope. XREF mapping and documentation — $79.95 was $125.00
Scope Separately — $49.95
Only recommended for those who already own professional mapping (XREF) programs — Newly available
Documentation — $12.50
Applicable to purchase

Active Trace is available for most **MS-DOS** and **CPM 2.2** systems and supports the special features of Brand specific versions of Microsoft Basic such as **BASICA** on the **IBM-PC**.

AWARECO
Active Software
P.O. Box 695 Gualala, CA 95445
(707) 884-4019

Active Trace, Active Software, AWARECO and Scope are trademarks of A Ware Company—CPM is a trademark of Digital Research—MS-DOS and Microsoft are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation—IBM-PC is a trademark of IBM Corp.

Scheduled to make presentations at the four-day conference are filmmaker Robert Abel, Pentagram's Colin Forbes, jazz musician Herbie Hancock, electronic musician Suzzane Ciani, publisher Stewart Brand, and computer graphics wizard Benoit Mandelbrot. The keynote speaker is Frank Stanton, president emeritus of CBS. The conference is aimed at professionals who are involved with the creation and distribution of information. For more information, contact the conference director, Judi Skalsky, at the T.E.D. Communications Conference office in Los Angeles, California.

Δ **Midwest Educational Computing.** A three-day conference, The Role of the Computer in Education IV, will be hosted by Micro-Ideas (Glenview, IL), March 8—10, 1984 at the Arlington Park Hilton in Arlington Heights, Illinois. The conference will feature several day-long seminars and many sessions covering a wide range of educational topics. For further information contact Micro-Ideas.

Δ **New Screen for Portable Machines?** When British inventor Clive Sinclair introduced his micro TV two months ago, computer industry analysts were impressed by the mini-boob tube's two-inch flat screen. Unlike two new Japanese micro TVs, whose flat screens use digital-watch technology, Sinclair's set produces a conventional picture by beaming the image from the side rather than the back of the screen. Sinclair, who made a bundle with the Sinclair 1000 and other low-cost computers, may have found the answer to the computer industry's need for a low-cost flat-screen monitor to be used in the growing wave of portable computers.

Δ **Chip Watch.** IBM announced the development of a still experimental 512K dynamic RAM chip. The chip is the first "ever to use an electronic technique called 'plate pushing' to read data out of its storage cells, " the company said. Plate pushing produces a strong electrical signal that increases a chip's memory density and reliability. The chip is smaller than a fingernail.

Δ **Whoops.** When the U.S. Army engaged Boeing Computer Services (BCS) to help its recruiters, the brass expected the cost to be about $10,000 a month. They were in for a shock. The first month's bill came to $1.3 million. The Navy too engaged BCS for help in its recruiting. The expected first month's bill of $12,000 came to $350,000. The Army will spend $120 million during its five-year contract with BCS instead of the original estimate of $8.5 million, according to the General Accounting Office (GAO). What happened? The GAO says that such cost overruns are typical in government teleprocessing contracts. The reason? Federal agencies are notorious for underestimating how much computer time they'll need. BCS is not the only computer company to shock government agencies. An audit, performed after the cost overruns in the Army and Navy recruiting systems were uncovered, found that in eleven computer contracts the expected costs of $36.1 million will end up costing taxypayers $165.8 million. That's a cost overrun of 360 percent. Ouch.

Δ **The Emperor's New Clothes.** What's a once-profitable subsidiary of a giant conglomerate to do when it loses several hundred million dollars in a year? Build new headquarters, what else? Sunnyvale, California-based Atari announced plans to develop a major office complex on sixty-five acres of land in San Jose, owned by its parent company, Warner Communications. Construction on the $60-million project is expected to begin by the second quarter of next year, with occupancy scheduled for early 1985. Atari expects to house its research and development, marketing, and distribution offices in about four hundred thousand square feet in four buildings.

Δ **Supercomputer Sibling.** Cray Research, purveyors of multi-million-dollar supercomputers, has announced the formation of a new company, Circuit Tools. The new company will be headed by John C. May, former manager of electrical engineering applications at Cray, and based in Santa Clara, California. Circuit Tools will operate as a subsidiary of Cray Research and develop and market software programs for use in the design of very large scale integrated circuits. Initially, the company will offer two software programs. One will be in the area of circuit simulation, used to verify the design of an integrated circuit. The other will be in timing simulation, used to obtain an accurate overview of the performance of a circuit. In other Cray news, the company's founder, Seymour Cray, has extended his agreement to act as an independent contractor to Cray Research until the end of 1987. Mr. Cray is known to be exploring the use of gallium arsenide in the development of integrated circuits.

Δ **Don't Leave Home.** DataPlus (San Rafael, CA) has released a 197-page book profiling home-banking activities in the United States. *Home Banking Review: 1983* profiles the financial institutions, systems operators, and technological innovators who are driving the home-banking industry. The review links personal computers to the success of almost half of the systems currently being implemented. ▲

Editor
David Hunter
Contributors
Andrew Christie, Tommy Gear and Jean Varven

ACCOUNTING SOFTWARE

for Portable, Personal and Desktop Computers

Available for these popular 8-bit and 16-bit microcomputer formats:

All CP/M® 8″ Computers (SD)
All IBM PC Compatibles
TRS-80 Model 2 (with CP/M)
TRS-80 Model 4 (with CP/M)
Apple II (with CP/M)
Apple IIe (with CP/M)
Franklin ACE (with CP/M)
Morrow Micro Decision
Northstar Advantage
Corona PC & Portable
Corona Portable
COMPAQ Portable
Hyperion Portable
Seequa Chameleon
TI Professional
Columbia MPC
Osborne Executive
Osborne I (SD)
Osborne I (DD)
DEC VT-180
CompuPro
Xerox 820
IBM PC
IBM XT
KayPro II
KayPro 10
Call about other formats

DEBITS and CREDITS
USERS' NEWSLETTER
Desktop Accountant
DISKETTE PACK
GENERAL LEDGER
ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE
ACCOUNTS PAYABLE
READ ME FIRST
PAYROLL

SATISFACTION GUARANTEED or Your Money Back

Complete Package of Software, Training Aids, Manuals, and Users' Newsletter

ONLY

$395
CP/M format

$495
IBM format

"...for several years the defacto standard for microcomputer software, and still a good example of some of the better thought-out software on the market." —Interface Age

Desktop Accountant™

FULL-FEATURE, FULLY-INTEGRATED ACCOUNTING SYSTEM

Everything you need to keep the books...at a price you can afford!

Your Bookkeeper, Accountant, and Banker will love you for installing this fine system!

Check these features:

This remarkably-valued Accounting System will manage your company's business records and **automate your entire bookkeeping process**—from the posting of individual transactions to producing up-to-the-minute Income Statements, Balance Sheets, and other important management reports. Desktop Accountant™ gives you a "Big Company," professional image with **printed** invoices, statements, and checks. It is **user-friendly, completely menu-driven,** offers **system-prompted data entry,** and is compatible with both floppy and hard disks. Feature-for-feature, and dollar-for-dollar it is **the best software value on the market!** But don't let the **low price** fool you. Desktop Accountant™ is **not a "cheap" accounting system, only inexpensive.** That's because original development costs were recovered years ago allowing us to sell **an excellent product** in high volume at low prices and still earn a fair profit. This **high-quality, reliable software** was designed and written in 1975 for small-to-medium sized businesses. Since then, **it has successfully proven itself in well over 10,000 companies** in all 50 states and in 13 foreign countries. It is also used and recommended by **hundreds** of bookkeepers, accountants and CPA's, including the regional offices of several famous "Big Eight" accounting firms! No other Accounting System offers you so many features, benefits, and valuable extra services. You can pay more but you can't buy more! Desktop Accountant™ is backed by our 30-day, no-risk, **money-back guarantee** of 100% customer satisfaction! Call for **free literature** or order now with complete confidence.

Read What Users Say...

"Two hours after receiving the Desktop Accountant I was up and running live data, and generated an entire month's work and financial statements the following day."
—J.C. Bartels, President
(accounting firm) Gonzales, Texas

"To get anything better we would have had to spend multiple thousands of dollars. I think it's a dynamite package for the money."
—Bob Cox, V.P. General Mgr.
(manufacturing company) San Antonio, Texas

LETTERS ON FILE

Here's what you get:

1. A professional-quality, full-feature, fully-integrated accounting system. **2.** Six-to-fourteen diskettes (depending on your system's disk storage capacity). **3.** Four easy-to-follow, self-teaching User's Manuals (over 540 pages!) that are **highly rated by satisfied users. 4.** An exclusive, new **audio cassette tape** with **step-by-step instructions** for quick installation and start-up. **5.** "Read Me First" a unique 40-page system guide and start-up aid. **6. Complete sample data and sample reports** for practice and training...a big help to new users. **7. FREE 1-year subscription to Users' Newsletter,** "Debits and Credits." It's full of tips, ideas, news, and useful suggestions from us and other users. Recent issues have run over 20 pages long! **8. FREE complete Source Code** in popular MBASIC so you can easily customize *any* program to suit your special needs. **9.** Telephone "Hot Line" service for helpful Installation support, Start-up support, Technical support, and Training support. The quality of our cheerful customer support has been acclaimed **"excellent," "first-rate,"** and **"very courteous and professional"** by our users. **10.** Access to our growing network of **Experienced User Consultants**™ in both the U.S. and Canada. These qualified, knowledgeable businesspeople themselves own this fine software and are available to assist you with almost any aspect of installation, training, operation—or even customization, if desired. You'll receive the latest **Directory** of these helpful Consultants.

Look who's using it:

Here is a sample (taken from our customer files) of the wide variety of businesses successfully using this time-tested, solidly-established, user-proven software:

• Bookeeping services • CPA/Accounting firms • Construction companies • Wholesale Florists • Retail Florists • Printers • Insurance Agencies • Shopping Centers • Machine Shops • Engineering firms • Software Companies • Computer retailers • Publishers • Financial services companies • Investors • Appliance service firms • Dairies • Boilerworks • University Business School • Catholic Diocese • Baptist Ministeries • Sail Maker • Convalescent Hospital • Car Wash • Public Library • Cement Plant • Industrial products manufacturing companies • Mortuary • Coal Company • TV/Film producers and distributors • General Store (in Alaska!) • Health services organization • Government Agencies • Record and Tape stores • Trade Association • Graphics firms • Office products companies • Real Estate firms • Oil Products distributor • Instrument Company • Hydraulic Products company • Outdoor Expeditions company • Many types of schools • Chiropractors • Physicians • Landscapers • Law firms • Restaurants • Plumbing Companies • Railroad • Farmers • Banks • Consultants • and many, many, more!!

*Call for **FREE LITERATURE**, including sample reports, comparison chart, user letters, etc.*
Not sold in stores • Order today by Mail or Phone • Phone Orders Filled Promptly

Orders, Questions, and Literature Requests CALL NOW, TOLL-FREE

MasterCard VISA ☎ **1-800-832-2244**

In California call 1-800-732-2311

Please mention
Ad #120-H

Technical Support Hotline (8 AM to 5 PM, Mon.–Fri.): (415) 680-8378

Send Orders To: 1280-C Newell Avenue, Suite 147-H, Walnut Creek, California 94596

• When ordering please mention or include the Ad number appearing near our telephone number • Orders shipped within 48 hours via UPS • Add $5.00 for faster 2-day Rush Air Service • California residents add 6½% Sales Tax • Payment by VISA/MasterCard/COD/MO/Cashier's Check • All Brand Names are manufacturers' registered Trade Marks • No sales to Dealers • Foreign orders please call or write before ordering • ©1983 Rocky Mountain Software Systems.

A Complete System!

includes all four standard general accounting programs:

GENERAL LEDGER is completely integrated to automatically post end-of-month transactions from A/R, A/P and Payroll. It **prints 13 detailed reports** for the entire company, and optional **Income Statements for up to 99 departments.** It produces up-to-the-minute **comparative financial statements** with current, year-to-date, budget, and last year (month and YTD), showing **both dollar amounts and percentages,** and presents everything you, your bookkeeper, and your accountant need to know about the company ● G/L **automatically reconciles all accounts,** and maintains extensive, **detailed audit trails** showing the source of each G/L entry for quick, easy, tracing ● Trial Balance includes all transactions ● **Flexible Chart of Accounts** ● True double-entry bookkeeping ● Master File capacity: 400 Accounts ● Monthly Transactions capacity: 1,000 with 200K diskette; 3,500 with 500K diskette; 7,000 per Megabyte with a Hard Disk.

ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE provides **instant, on-line customer account information (both current and aged),** with complete, timely invoicing, including open-item (or balance forward) and statement capabilities. It makes the entire billing process fast, easy, and efficient. It quickly identifies your overdue accounts, **helps speed collections,** helps control your cash flow, and assists you in making better financial decisions. Both detailed and summary **customer activity and aging reports** are instantly available ● Preprinted forms available for **invoices and statements** ● **Detailed audit trail** ● Maintains comprehensive customer data files ● **Produces 8 reports and documents** ● Includes automatic periodic customer/client billing option which is ideal for service businesses ● **Itemized monthly transactions** ● Master File capacity: 400 Customers ● Monthly Transactions capacity: 800 with 200K diskette; 3,500 with 500K diskette; 7,000 per Megabyte with a Hard Disk.

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE maintains complete vendor/voucher history and includes **check-writing** capabilities. **Current and aged payable reports** are available upon command. It prepares an extremely useful **cash flow/cash requirements report** that greatly improves management control of your most valuable resource—cash! It prints checks (on commercially available forms on which **your company name, address and logo can be imprinted**) with comprehensive check stubs that your vendors will appreciate ● **Produces 11 reports and documents** ● Automatic pay selection program allows payment by due date or by discount date ● **Manual and automatic checkwriting** ● Check register ● **Detailed audit trail** ● Itemized monthly transactions ● Master File capacity: 400 Vendors ● Monthly Transactions capacity: 800 with 200K diskette; 3,500 with 500K diskette; 7,000 per Megabyte with a Hard Disk.

PAYROLL is a complete, **easy-to-use** professional-quality payroll system. Be the office hero each week when the checks come out on time! This program **calculates payroll for every type of employee** (hourly, salaried, and commissioned) and **prints payroll checks** (with popular, comprehensive check stubs) with an absolute **minimum** of input. **Your company name and logo** can appear on these, too. ● Stores and reports comprehensive employee and payroll information. ● Maintains monthly, quarterly, and yearly totals for reporting purposes in **multiple states**(!) ● Offers **user-maintainable Federal, State, and local tax tables**(!). ● W-2 printing ● 941 Reporting ● **Produces 10 reports and documents** ● Master File capacity: 400 employees. An **outstanding** Payroll package!

Produces 42 Reports & Documents:

General Ledger **1.** Chart of Accounts **2.** Chart of Accounts with summary dollar amounts **3.** Chart of Accounts with prior year comparisons **4.** Daily Transactions Report **5.** Itemized Monthly Transactions **6.** Balance Sheet **7.** Balance Sheet with prior year comparison **8.** Income Statement **9.** Income Statement with prior year comparison **10.** Departmental Income Statement(s) **11.** Departmental Income Statement(s) with prior year comparison **12.** Detail report for individual accounts **13.** Trial Balance Statement

Accounts Receivable **1.** Daily Transactions Report **2.** Invoices (with or without preprinted forms) **3.** Statements (with or without pre-printed forms) **4.** Summary Aging Report **5.** Detailed Aging Report **6.** Itemized Monthly Transactions **7.** Detailed Customer Activity Report **8.** Summary Customer Account Report

Accounts Payable **1.** Daily Voucher Report **2.** Daily Credit Report **3.** Checks with Detailed stubs **4.** Check Register **5.** General Ledger Transfer Report **6.** Cash Requirements Report **7.** Transaction Register **8.** Open Voucher Report **9.** Aged Payables Report **10.** Detailed Vendor Activity Report **11.** Summary Vendor Account Report

Payroll **1.** Federal Tax Tables **2.** State Tax Tables **3.** Payroll checks with stubs **4.** Payroll Check Register **5.** Monthly Payroll Summary **6.** Quarterly Payroll Summary **7.** General Ledger Transfer Report **8.** Detailed Employee File Listing **9.** Produces 941 Worksheet **10.** Prints annual W-2 Forms

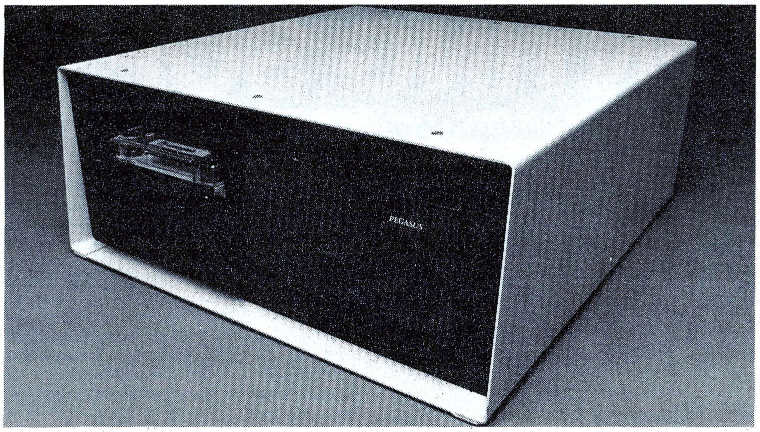
System Requirements: Either CP/M® or MS-DOS (PC-DOS) ● Microsoft BASIC ● 64K RAM ● Two disk drives or hard disk ● 132 column wide carriage printer, *or an 8½″x11″* printer with compressed print mode (an Epson MX-80 or similar printer).

100% SATISFACTION GUARANTEE

No-Risk, 30-day Money-Back Guarantee

Order Desktop Accountant and evaluate it yourself for 30 days. Test the performance of each program using our comprehensive *Sample Data Files* to enter and process data, query accounts, print checks and reports, and more. Review the five User's Manuals, hear the Training Tape, read the users' Newsletter, even call our Technical Support Group with your questions. ***You must be completely satisfied*** with Desktop Accountant or you may return it in good condition *with the Sealed Master Disk UNOPENED* (it installs *your* live data) for a prompt, courteous, complete refund!

ROCKY MOUNTAIN
SOFTWARE SYSTEMS
Specialists in Accounting Software



$1495 for a complete 10 megabyte hard disk system is a good deal — but not if you need 23 megabytes of storage!

That's why our 23 megabyte hard disk system is priced at only $2249. And for another $895, you'll get 23 megabytes of tape backup security.

The Pegasus 10 and 23 come complete with all the software and hardware you need to start operations.

If you've outgrown the storage capabilities of your IBM PC or compatible computer but haven't grown into the giant pricetags on 10- or 23-megabyte hard disk systems, you're in for a surprise.

The price on these complete systems featuring the latest components just reached an all time low!

And you get everything you need to start working on your hard disk system:

- Top quality formatted fixed hard disk (ST506 compatible)
- Top quality controller card
- Software that runs on DOS 1.1 and 2.0, CP/M 86
- Host adapter
- Integral power supply
- Cables
- External custom chassis with additional space for either our tape backup, another hard disk, or floppy disk drive.
- 90 day warranty

What's the catch?

There is none. It's a simple matter of economics. Pegasus saw the growing need for mass storage, made a commitment to fill this need, purchased thousands of the finest quality hard disks, and is now passing the good deal along to you.

The only thing you may be missing in buying the Pegasus instead of the IBM XT expansion chassis is something you may not need in the first place: eight expansion slots, a communications card, three little initials, and an extra $1,000 to $2,000 out of your pocket.

But don't I need a tape backup for all that storage?

We recommend it! That's why we're offering you the same great deal on a ¼″ cartridge tape backup. We've watched other companies offer 10 and 20 megabytes of storage and forget about the backup altogether. Our tape backup, which carries a 90 day warranty, retails for just $895 — a small price for over 23 megabytes of formatted storage and lots of peace of mind.

Where can I buy a Pegasus hard disk system?

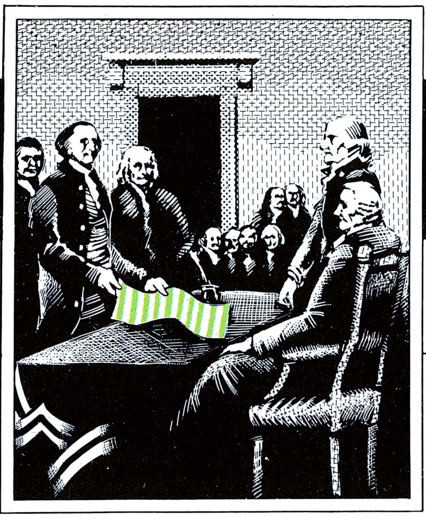
Pegasus systems are available only through dealers. So contact the dealer in your area who sells IBM PC or compatible computers. If he doesn't have Pegasus, chances are he'll carry it soon. Just ask him to call us. We will ship him your Pegasus unit immediately.

Does Pegasus have larger storage systems?

Absolutely. 65 and 140 megabyte systems will soon be available from Pegasus. And the best part is that they, too, are breaking new ground when it comes to pricing. If you've outgrown 10, or even 23 megabytes of storage, ask about the larger capacity units. All with the same top quality hardware and software and full 90 day warranty.

PEGASUS
A DIVISION OF
GREAT LAKES COMPUTER PERIPHERALS, INC.

2200 West Higgins Road, Suite 245
Hoffman Estates, Illinois 60195
In Illinois (312) 884-7272
800-323-6836
Dealer Inquiries Invited



THE RIGHT TO ASSEMBLE

by Ray Duncan

An Introduction to EXE Programs

Many *Softalk* readers have written to express their confusion about the many commands listed in the Microsoft *Macro Assembler* manual. This assembler is so powerful and complex, and the manual so large and detailed, that it is difficult to glean the information necessary to put together a simple executable program. In this month's column we will introduce such a framework and then elaborate on it to produce a more useful utility.

In recent months, we have presented the MEMSIZE, VMODE, and CLEAR utilities as vehicles for discussion of PC-DOS and ROM BIOS service calls. All these programs were written in such a way that they could be assembled into COM files; this way, we could pay more attention to the structure and action of the programs themselves and do minimal worrying about control of the assembler. However, programs of the COM type have some definite disadvantages, and most serious assembly language efforts for the pc are written to be converted into EXE files.

While COM type programs effectively are restricted to a total of 64K for machine code, data, and stack combined, EXE programs can be of practically any size (up to the limit of the computer's addressing capability). EXE programs also separate the code, data, and stack into separate modules for the loader. At present, since PC-DOS does not support multiple concurrent tasks, this is only marginally important. But when PC-DOS 3.0 with multitasking appears on the scene, the ability to load different parts of large programs into several separated memory fragments, as well as the opportunity to designate a "pure" code portion of your program that can be shared by several tasks, will become very significant.

When learning to use a new computer or language processor, it usually is helpful to write a very simple program that includes the basic set of assembler/compiler controls, requires the full sequence of edit/compile/link/execute, yet contains no complicated code that will need debugging. Traditionally, programmers perform this exercise by writing a program that simply prints "Hello" on the principal output device and then exits. Once you can do this successfully, you have the "operational" problems under control and can turn your attention to writing elegant program code.

The HELLO.EXE Program. Let us not abandon time-honored traditions. The "Hello" program in listing 1 demonstrates the fundamental structure of an assembly language program that is destined to become an EXE file. At minimum, it should have a module "name," a "code segment," a "stack segment," and a primary "procedure" that receives control of the computer from PC-DOS after the program is loaded. The program also contains a "data segment" to provide a more complete example. Let's inspect all the pieces of the program in detail.

The NAME statement on line 1 simply provides a module name for use during the linkage process. If the NAME command is not present in the source file, the first six characters of the text provided in the TITLE statement are used as the module name. If neither of these is present, the linker will simply use the filename. Although the NAME statement is not mandatory, it's good practice to use it—as an aid to documentation and understanding the map produced by the linker and to keep the module name from defaulting to something that will cause trouble later.

The PAGE command, when used with two operands as in line 2 of Hello, defines the length and width of the page. These default to 66 and 80 respectively. If you use a PAGE command within your listing without any operands, it causes a form feed to be sent to the printer and a heading to be printed. Use the PAGE command liberally to place each of your subroutines on separate pages for easy reading.

The TITLE command, on line 3, specifies the text string (limited to 60 characters) to be printed on the upper left corner of each page. The TITLE command is optional, but it cannot be used more than once in each assembly language source file.

Dropping down past a few comments and EQUATE statements, we come to a declaration of a CODE segment that begins on line 19 with a SEGMENT command and is terminated on line 53 with an ENDS command. The CODE segment is given a name, "cseg," by the label in the leftmost field of the line, and is given certain attributes, "para," "public," and "CODE," by the operand fields on the right end of the line. You will find it helpful to read pages 5-38 through 5-41 in the assembler manual for de-

1. Extended file-handling services with handles and path name support. Available in PC-DOS 2.0 only, as functions 3CH to 46H via software interrupt 21H. Provided by the PC-DOS BDOS.
2. Traditional file-handling services (descendants of those available under CP/M on eight-bit microcomputers). Available in PC-DOS 1.x and 2.0, as functions 12H to 24H and 27H to 29H via software interrupt 21H. Provided by the PC-DOS BDOS.
3. Device-independent absolute disk read and write, available via software interrupts 25H and 26H. Provided by the PC-DOS BIOS.
4. Device-dependent (disks only) absolute read and write, available via software interrupt 13H. A service of the ROM BIOS, hence usable under all operating systems.
5. Disk I/O by direct access to the disk controller chip. Used by many copy-protected programs to read nonstandard sectoring schemes.

Table 1. Hierarchy of disk access services in PC-DOS (the most complex and abstract are at the top of the list; the most "primitive" or hardware-dependent are at the bottom).

tailed explanations of each possible attribute of a segment. This particular use of SEGMENT tells the linker to expect executable machine code, which must be properly modified and relocated when it is loaded into RAM from the disk.

Following the CODE SEGMENT instruction, we encounter an ASSUME statement on line 21. The concept of ASSUME often baffles new assembly language programmers. In a way, ASSUME doesn't "do" *anything.* It only tells the assembler which segment registers you are going to use to point to the various segments of your program so that the assembler can provide segment overrides when necessary. But it's important to notice that the ASSUME statement doesn't take care of loading the segment registers with the proper values; it just notifies the assembler of *your* intent to do that within your program. Read more about it on page 5-4 of the assembler manual.

Within the CODE SEGMENT, we come to another type of block declaration begun with the PROC command on line 23 and closed with the ENDP on line 50. These two instructions delimit a *procedure,* or block, of executable code that performs a single distinct function. The procedure is given a name by the label in the leftmost field and an attribute in the operand field. If the procedure carries the "Near" attribute, it can be called only by other code in the same segment, while procedures with the "Far" attribute can be called from code located anywhere in the 8088's memory addressing space. Since our procedure in this example, PRINT, is going to be called from PC-DOS, we give it the Far characteristic.

Within the procedure PRINT, our first action is to push the address for the final return to PC-DOS on the stack—not really necessary in this simple short program but vital in larger programs with many linked code modules. Next, we initialize the Data Segment register as we told the assembler we would in the earlier ASSUME statement (the Code Segment and Stack Segment registers were set up automatically by PC-DOS). We load the offset of the message string into the DX register and use PC-DOS function 9 to print it on the screen. Finally, a RET instruction in line 46 uses the segment and offset we pushed onto the stack in lines 28 to 30 to exit to PC-DOS. At this point, you may want to stop and look over pages E-3 through E-8 of the PC-DOS 2.0 manual, which describe the state of the registers and the Program Segment Prefix on entry into an EXE program.

Now let's examine lines 60 to 65. Here we declare a DATA SEGMENT, named "dseg," that contains the variables and constants used by our program. The linker knows that this portion of the program does not include any executable machine code. If the various modules of your program contain multiple data segments with the same name, they all will be collected by the linker and placed in the same physical memory segment.

Lines 71 to 78 establish a STACK SEGMENT; PUSH and POP instructions will access this area of scratch memory. Before PC-DOS transfers control to your program, it sets up the Stack Segment Register and the Stack Pointer according to the size and location of the Stack Segment declared in your

Function 0—Reset disk system
Call with:
AH = 0
Returns:
N/A
Function 1—Return disk system status
Call with:
AH = 1
Returns:
AL = status byte, interpreted as follows:

Bit	Significance
7	disk time/out (failed to respond)
6	seek failure
5	controller error
4	checksum error on disk read
3	DMA overrun on operation
2	requested sector not found
1	disk write failed because of write protect
0	illegal command passed to driver

Function 2—Read disk
Call with:
AH = 2
DL = drive number (0−3)
DH = head number (0−1)
CH = track number (0−39)
CL = sector number (1−9)
AL = number of sectors to transfer (1−8)
BX = offset of user's disk I/O buffer
ES = segment of user's disk I/O buffer
Returns:
AH = disk status, 0 = successful operation, otherwise bits as described under function 1.
AL = number of disk sectors actually transferred
Carry bit = 0 if successful operation
Carry bit = 1 if error
Function 3—Write disk
Call with:
AH = 3
Other registers as described for function 2 (read disk)
Returns:
Registers and status same as function 2
Function 4—Verify sectors
Call with:
AH = 4
Other registers as for function 2
Returns:
Status same as function 2
Function 5—Format track
Call with:
AH = 5
BX = offset of address field list
ES = segment of address field list
Returns:
N/A
Note: the proper use of function 5 is beyond the scope of this column. It assumes a detailed understanding of the disk controller chip.

Table 2. Direct disk access functions available by calling ROM BIOS software interrupt 13H.

Take Your Computer's Commands And Put Them Where They Belong. On Your Keyboard.

PC-DocuMate™ is a documentation template that fits the keyboard of your IBM PC. So the information you want is where you need it. PC-DocuMate templates are professionally designed, logically organized and comprehensive. Each template is printed on both sides on durable, non-glare polystyrene and is color-matched to your PC keyboard.

PC-DocuMates now available for each of the following:

- DOS/BASIC 1.1 (as shown)
- DOS/BASIC 2.0
- CUSTOM "do-it-yourself" template (with pen and eraser)
- WORDSTAR™
- dBASE-II™
- 1-2-3™
- SuperCalc²™
- VisiCalc™
- VOLKSWRITER™
- MULTIPLAN™ 1.00
- MULTIPLAN™ 1.06
- EASYWRITER II™

Control key usage for **ESC, CTRL, TAB, SHIFT**

DEBUG commands & more control key documentation

EDLIN commands are documented

Complete Reference for **DOS** commands and formats

Reference list of **BASIC** commands

EDLIN COMMANDS
DOS COMMANDS & FORMATS Version 1.10
DEBUG COMMANDS
BASIC COMMANDS
FUNCT KEYS
BASIC KEYWORD ABBREV.
PC-DocuMate T.M.

Easy reference for function key use

Reverse side contains reference data on over **130 BASIC** statements and functions (includes advanced **BASIC**)

Control key usage for **ALT** & **PrtSc**

BASIC keyword abbreviations

EACH TEMPLATE IS ONLY $14.95 (includes shipping).

VISA MasterCard

No-Risk, Moneyback Offer: If you are not completely satisfied, return your PC-DocuMate template to us (undamaged) within 10 days for a full refund.

Please send personal check, money order, or credit card information. Foreign orders add $5.00 (except Canada). No COD's please. Telephone orders: Call 919/787-7703. (NC residents add 4% sales tax.)

Systems Management Associates
P.O. Box 20025, 3700 Computer Dr.
Raleigh, N.C. 27619 Dept. D-3

SMA

Canadian customers please send $23.95 CDN for each template to: **Systems Management Associates,** 55A Westmore Dr., Dept. D-3, Rexdale, Ontario M9V3Y6

Dealer Inquiries Invited.

program. Make sure you allow enough room for the maximum stack depth that can occur at runtime, plus a safe number of extra words for registers pushed onto the stack during a PC-DOS service call. If the stack overflows, it may damage some part of your other code and data segments and cause your program to behave strangely or crash altogether!

The END statement on line 84 winds up our little Hello program, telling the assembler it has reached the end of the source file and providing the name of the point of entry from PC-DOS.

In summary, the Hello program provides you with the skeleton of a sophisticated assembly language program that invokes many of the capabilities of the Microsoft *Assembler.* Go ahead and use your favorite program editor to type the source code into a file named HELLO.ASM. If you don't understand all the commands yet, don't worry—we are just trying to give you a shell that you can incorporate into your own programs in a very cookbook-like manner. Once the source file has been created, you can assemble and link it as follows:

```
A>ASM HELLO,HELLO,
   HELLO,HELLO,
A>LINK HELLO,HELLO,,,
```

Now you will find the file HELLO.EXE on your disk, which you can execute simply by entering:

```
A>HELLO
```

If everything went right, you will see:

```
A>HELLO
Hello!
 A>
```

The DISKTYPE.EXE Program. Now that you've worked your way through the Hello program, let's use these new tools to write a more useful utility named DISKTYPE. DISKTYPE is compatible with both PC-DOS 1.1 and 2.0 and can be used to report the format of any disk: single- or double-sided, eight or nine sectors per track. Luckily for our purposes, the second physical sector of any PC-DOS disk always contains the File Allocation Table, and the first byte of that table is a code for the disk type. So you can use this utility under PC-DOS 1.1 to find out if a disk is formatted for PC-DOS 2.0. You can even use it on a single-sided disk drive to check if a disk is formatted for two-sided use—all without risking the data on the disk.

DISKTYPE can be used either with a drive selector, such as:

```
A>DISKTYPE B:
```

in which case it will examine the disk in the specified drive, or it can be used alone:

```
A>DISKTYPE
```

to display the format of the disk in the default drive (in this case, A). The drive selector, if given, must be in the range A to D. If the disk is not in any currently supported PC-DOS format (for example, a CP/M-86 disk), you will receive the message "Diskette. . .is unknown to this program".

The general flow of control for the program DISKTYPE is as follows:

1. Save the address for the final return to PC-DOS on the stack.
2. Examine the command tail passed by PC-DOS to see if the user specified any particular disk drive.
3. If disk drive was specified, make sure it is legal (in the range A to D).
4. If no disk drive was specified, call PC-DOS function 19H to get the identity of the default drive.
5. Turn the drive code into a lower-case ASCII letter and store it into the output string.
6. Read track 0, head 0, sector 2 of the disk into the scratch area named BUFFER. This sector contains the beginning of the PC-DOS File Allocation Table.
7. Get the first byte of buffer and try to match it against the codes in the table named "diskk."
8. Print the appropriate message by calling PC-DOS function 9.
9. Give control back to PC-DOS with a RET instruction.

For convenience, all the executable code, constants, and variables are lumped together inside a single CODE segment, instead of declaring a separate DATA segment as we did in the Hello program. A Stack Segment still is present, as is required for all programs of the EXE type.

In order to read the disk, DISKTYPE makes a direct call to the ROM BIOS disk driver through software interrupt 13H. An entire hierarchy of disk access services is available on the pc under PC-DOS (see table 1); the one we are using here is the most primitive except for direct control of the disk hardware interface. Six different functions are available through interrupt 13H; they are summarized in table 2. The general calling sequence is:

```
MOV AH,function ;AH contains a code
•               ;for the operation type.
•               ;load other registers with
•               ;function-specific values.
INT 13H         ;call the ROM BIOS
```

The segment registers are preserved, as are registers BX, CX, DX, SI, DI, and BP. Register AX is used to return results or status.

Within the data area of the DISKTYPE program, the table named "diskk" warrants closer scrutiny. The table contains six entries; each entry consists of a single byte, which is the disk format code followed by a word that contains the address of the descriptive message for that format. In PC-DOS 2.0, five format codes have been documented:

0FFH 2 sided, 8 sectored
0FEH 1 sided, 8 sectored
0FDH 2 sided, 9 sectored
0FCH 1 sided, 9 sectored
0F8H Fixed disk

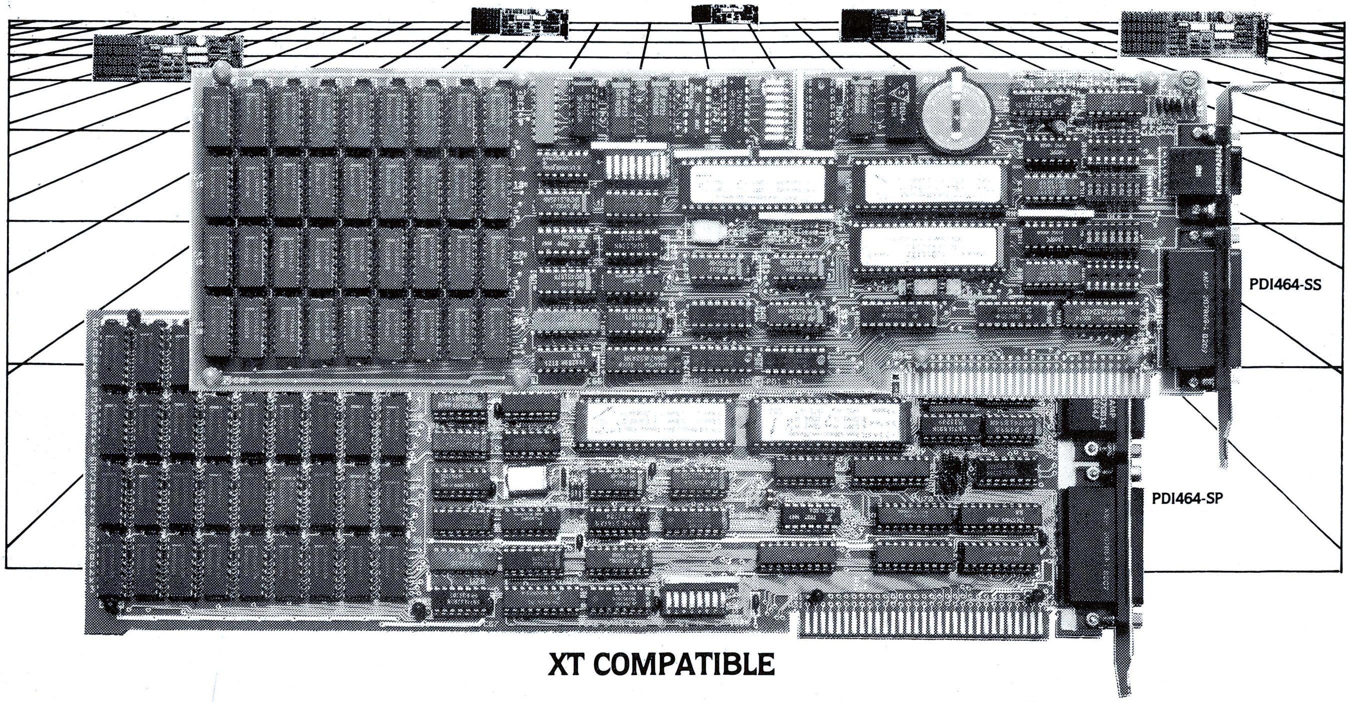
Although the DISKTYPE program using INT 13H is not capable of reading from the hard disk, we put an appropriate entry into the table anyway as an illustration. A 0 byte followed by the address of the "unknown format" message terminates the table. If the program gets this far, it knows that it is not looking at a standard PC-DOS disk (other possibilities include a CP/M-86 or QNX disk). If the disk is uninitialized, you'll also get the BDOS "Read Error" message from the operating system.

What about codes 0FBH, 0FAH, and 0F9H? Your guess is as good as mine. However, the existence of that three-code gap makes one wonder what Microsoft has in mind for the next version. . .maybe support for eighty-track 5¼-inch drives, or the new 3¼-inch drives.

As a test of your understanding of the DISKTYPE utility, change the disk access method to use INT 25H, the PC-DOS absolute disk read service (see PC-DOS 2.0 manual page D-9). This function is not hardware-dependent and can be used to fetch sectors from the fixed disk and RAM disks as well as from floppy disks. Watch out; there are a few tricky aspects to this conversion! ➤

```
1                                  name       hello
2                                  page       55,132
3                                  title      'HELLO—print Hello on terminal'
4                        ;
5                        ; HELLO utility to demonstrate various parts
6                        ; of a functional assembly language program,
7                        ; use of segments, and a PC-DOS function call.
8                        ;
9                        ; Ray Duncan, September 1983
10                       ;
11                                                          ;show use of some EQUATES:
12   = 000D              cr        equ        0dh           ;ASCII carriage return
13   = 000A              lf        equ        0ah           ;ASCII line feed
14                                                          ;
15                       ;
16                                                          ;begin the "Code" segment
17                                                          ;containing executable
18                                                          ;machine code
19   0000                cseg      segment    para public 'CODE'
20                       ;
21                                 assume     cs:cseg,ds:dseg,ss:stack
22                       ;
23   0000                print     proc       far           ;actual program code
24                                                          ;is completely contained
25                                                          ;in the "procedure" named
26                                                          ;"PRINT".
27                                                          ;
28   0000  1E                      push       ds            ;save DS:0000 on stack
29   0001  33 C0                   xor        ax,ax         ;for final exit to PC-DOS.
30   0003  50                      push       ax
31                                                          ;set Data Segment Register
32                                                          ;to point to the Data Segment
33                                                          ;of this program, so that the
34                                                          ;message we want to print is
```

Plug some Pure Data into your PC!



XT COMPATIBLE

PDI464-SP

- Up to 256K of RAM, fully socketed, with parity generation/checking
- Highest quality ceramic RAM chips used throughout
- IBM-compatible serial channel with selectable address and 6-foot cable
- IBM-compatible parallel printer adaptor with selectable address
- Real Time Clock/Calendar with field-replaceable lithium battery backup
- p-Disk™ disk emulator for single/double-sided diskette emulation
- Print spoolers for parallel and serial channels with multiple copies
- Software for clock support, dynamic memory configuration, memory testing
- Only occupies one expansion slot
- Fully-illustrated installation and operation manual

If you're looking for a multifunction board, you're faced with a bewildering array of functions, manufacturers, and prices. It's important to select the right card for your present and future needs. Pure Data offers a variety of high-quality expansion boards designed for the utmost in reliability and flexibility. We invite you to make comparisons with other brands. Our support software and documentation is the most complete available. Surprisingly enough, our products cost a lot less than you would expect. All of our IBM Personal Computer products are covered by a one year limited warranty, with a technical support hot-line and guaranteed 48-hour service.

PDI464-SS

- Up to 256K of RAM, fully socketed, with parity generation/checking
- Highest quality ceramic RAM chips used throughout
- Two IBM-compatible serial channels with selectable addresses, 6-foot cables
- Serial channels feature modem/printer configuration jumpers
- Real Time Clock/Calendar with field-replaceable lithium battery backup
- p-Disk™ disk emulator for single/double-sided diskette emulation
- Print spoolers for parallel and serial channels with multiple copies
- Software for clock support, dynamic memory configuration, memory testing
- Only occupies one expansion slot
- Fully-illustrated installation and operation manual

Pure Data Ltd

950 Denison Street, #17,
Markham, Ontario, Canada L3R 3K5
☎ (416) 498-1616 ☎ (416) 475-2424

Pure Data products are available through.

OnTrak
DATA SYSTEMS
1335 Valwood Parkway, Suite 108,
Carrollton, Texas 75006
Telephone (214) 620-8000
P.O. Box 815155, Dallas, Texas 75381

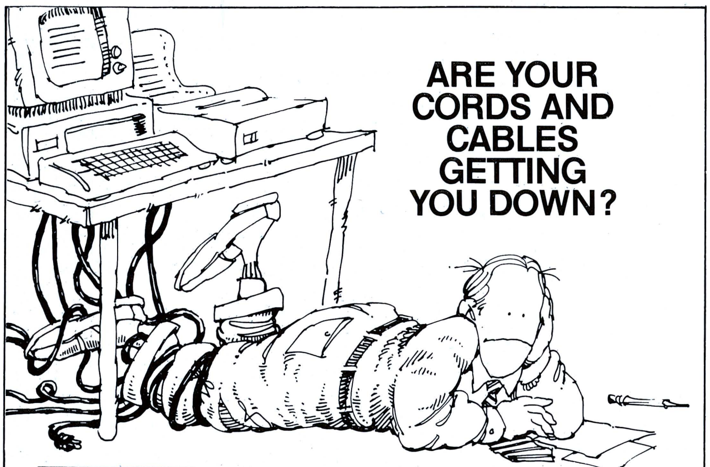
Keysoft International, Computerland, Computer Innovations, Compugroup, ECOSEA Technologies and others.

```
                                                  ;addressable.
0004  B8 ----    R                 mov      ax,seg dseg
0007  8E D8                        mov      ds,ax
                                                  ;now put the offset of the
                                                  ;message text into DX,
0009  BA 0000    R                 mov      dx,offset message
                                                  ;now DS:DX specifies the
                                                  ;full address of the message.
000C  B4 09                        mov      ah,9  ;use the PC-DOS function 9
000E  CD21                         int      21h   ;to print the string.
                                                  ;
0010  CB                           ret            ;now return to PC-DOS using
                                                  ;the addresses we pushed on
                                                  ;the stack at entry.
                                                  ;
0011                     print     endp           ;end of the "procedure"
                                                  ;named "PRINT"
                                                  ;
0011                     cseg      ends           ;end of the code segment
                                                  ;containing executable
                                                  ;program.
                                                  ;
                                                  ;now we define a data segment
                                                  ;containing our program's
                                                  ;constants and variables.
0000                     dseg      segment  para 'DATA'
                                                  ;
0000  0D 0A 48 65 6C 6C  message   db       cr,lf,'Hello!',cr,lf,'$'
      6F 21 0D 0A 24
                                                  ;
000B                     dseg      ends
                                                  ;
                                                  ;lastly, we define a Stack
                                                  ;Segment which contains
                                                  ;a scratch area of memory
                                                  ;for use by our program's stack
0000                     stack     segment  para stack 'STACK'
                                                  ;allow 64 bytes in this case
0000     40 [                      db       64 dup (?)
               ??
                  ]

                                                  ;
0040                     stack     ends
                                                  ;the final "End" statement
                                                  ;signals the end of this
                                                  ;program source file, and gives
                                                  ;the starting address of
                                                  ;the executable program
                                   end      print
```

Listing 1.

```
                              name      disktype
                              page      55,132
                              title     'DISKTYPE---display diskette type'
                    ;
                    ; DISKTYPE utility to display the
                    ; format type of selected diskette
                    ;
                    ; Ray Duncan,  Uncopyright (u) September 1983
                    ; This program may be freely copied,
                    ; mangled, enhanced, and redistributed.
                    ;
  = 0080            input     equ       080h      ;command line tail buffer
  = 000D            cr        equ       0dh       ;ASCII carriage return
  = 000A            lf        equ       0ah       ;ASCII line feed
                    ;
0000                cseg      segment   para public 'CODE'
                              assume    cs:cseg,ds:cseg,ss:stack
                    ;
                    ; This program becomes an EXE file.  On entry
                    ; from PC-DOS, CS = address of entry point, IP = 0,
                    ; SS = segment address of stack segment, DS and
                    ; ES = segment address of Program Segment Prefix area.
                    ;
0000                disktype  proc      far       ;entry point from PC-DOS
                                                  ;
0000  1E                      push      ds        ;put final return address
0001  33 C0                   xor       ax,ax     ;on stack (DS:0000)
0003  50                      push      ax        ;for "Far Return" later.
                                                  ;DS=segment of program
                                                  ;prefix with command tail,
                                                  ;set SI=offset of command
                                                  ;tail's length byte,
0004  BE 0080                 mov       si,offset  input
0007  FC                      cld                 ;clear the Direction Flag
                                                  ;for "LODS" string instruction.
0008  AC                      lodsb               ;check length byte to see if
0009  0A C0                   or        al,al     ;there's any command tail.
000B  74 17                   jz        disk2     ;no, use default drive.
                                                  ;
000D  AC            disk1:    lodsb               ;check the next byte of
                                                  ;the command tail,
000E  3C 0D                   cmp       al,cr     ;if carriage return,
0010  74 12                   je        disk2     ;use "default" disk drive.
0012  3C 20                   cmp       al,' '    ;if blank, keep scanning
0014  74 F7                   je        disk1     ;for another character.
0016  0C 20                   or        al,20h    ;fold the character to
                                                  ;lower case.
0018  3C 61                   cmp       al,'a'    ;make sure it's in range A-D
001A  72 50                   jb        disk8     ;no, print error message
001C  3C 64                   cmp       al,'d'
001E  77 4C                   ja        disk8     ;no, print error message
```



ARE YOUR CORDS AND CABLES GETTING YOU DOWN?

GET THEM UP AND OUT OF THE WAY WITH THE "CORD & CABLE ORGANIZER"

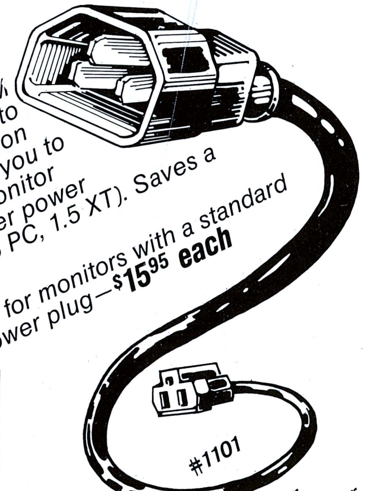
Introductory price **$14.95** plus $2 postage and handling.

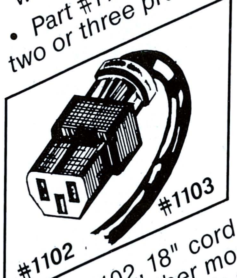
• No more tangles • Conveniently mounts under desk or table • Rugged steel basket with plastic coating • Includes plastic cable ties • Size 6" wide, 12" long, 4" deep

VISA/MC okay
Include Expiration date

the IRON interface group

1-800-328-5727 Ext. 135B
3938 Meadowbrook Road, Minneapolis, MN 55426.
A Division of Dynalysis Corporation. Dealer inquiries invited.
For tech. info. and Minn. residents, call (612) 938-8697





MONITOR CONVERSION CORDS FOR YOUR IBM PC OR XT

Connect your non-IBM or IBM Color Monitor to the CRT power outlet on your PC or XT. Allows you to turn on almost any monitor with the main computer power switch (max amps .75 PC, 1.5 XT). Saves a wall power outlet.

• Part #1101, 18" cord for monitors with a standard two or three prong power plug—**$15.95 each**

• Part #1102, 18" cord for IBM Color Monitors and other monitors with removable power cords that require this special female plug at the monitor. Eliminates the manufacturer's power cord entirely—**$15.95 each**

• Part #1103, 36" version—**$17.95 each**

Add $2 for postage and handling
VISA/MC o.k.
Include expiration date

the IRON interface group

1-800-328-5727 Ext. 135
3938 Meadowbrook Road, Minneapolis, MN 55426
Dealer inquiries invited. Minn. residents call (612) 938-8697

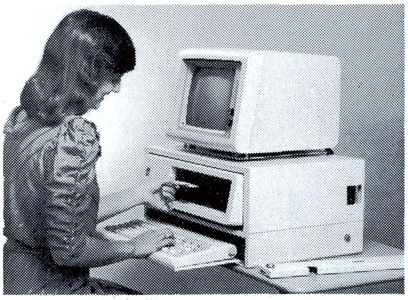
```
0020 2C 61                         sub             al,'a'            ;make drive code 0-3
0022 EB 04                         jmp             short disk3
                                                                     ;
0024                     disk2:                                      ;if operator didn't specify
                                                                     ;disk drive, get the "default
                                                                     ;disk" from PC-DOS, returns
0024 B4 19                         mov             ah,19h            ;drive code in AL
0026 CD21                          int             21h               ;(0=A, 1=B, etc.)
                                                                     ;
0028 8C CB               disk3:    mov             bx,cs             ;now make DS and ES the
002A 8E DB                         mov             ds,bx             ;same as CS at entry
002C 8E C3                         mov             es,bx
002E 8A D0                         mov             dl,al             ;now put drive code in DL
0030 04 61                         add             al,'a'            ;form ASCII character for
                                                                     ;drive code and store it
0032 A2 00B8   R                   mov             diskc,al          ;into the output string.
0035 B6 00                         mov             dh,0              ;set head = 0 in DH,
0037 B5 00                         mov             ch,0              ;set track = 0 in CH,
0039 B1 02                         mov             cl,2              ;set sector = 2 in CL,
003B B0 01                         mov             al,1              ;set number of sectors
                                                                     ;to read into AL,
                                                                     ;put address of data
                                                                     ;buffer into BX,
003D BB 0172   R                   mov             bx,offset buffer
0040 B4 02                         mov             ah,2              ;AH=2 is read command,
                                                                     ;now call ROM BIOS
0042 CD13                          int             13H               ;to read first block of
                                                                     ;File Allocation Table.
                                                                     ;
0044 8A 1E 0172   R                mov             bl,buffer         ;pick up the first byte
                                                                     ;of FAT (contains code for
                                                                     ;disk format type) and
                                                                     ;set SI = start of disk
                                                                     ;type and message table.
0048 BE 0160   R                   mov             si,offset  diskk
004B AC                  disk4:    lodsb                             ;get next type from table.
004C 0A C0                         or              al,al             ;if zero we didn't match
                                                                     ;any valid type,
004E 74 09                         jz              disk5             ;so go print "unknown".
0050 3A C3                         cmp             al,bl             ;check byte from table against
                                                                     ;byte from diskette FAT sector.
0052 74 05                         jz              disk5             ;got a match,jump.
0054 83 C6 02                      add             si,2              ;bump the table pointer
                                                                     ;past the message address,
                                                                     ;and check next table entry.
0057 EB F2                         jmp             short disk4
0059 B4 09               disk5:    mov             ah,9              ;print first part of message,
005B BA 00A0   R                   mov             dx,offset diskb
005E CD21                          int             21h
0060 AD                            lodsw                             ;pick up the message address
0061 8B D0                         mov             dx,ax             ;for this disk type, put into
0063 B4 09                         mov             ah,9              ;register DX, and print it.
0065 CD21                          int             21h
                                                                     ;print final carriage return
                                                                     ;and line feed. . .
0067 BA 015D   R                   mov             dx,offset diskj
006A EB 05                         jmp             short disk9
                                                                     ;come here if letter other
                                                                     ;than A-D or a-d in command
006C                     disk8:                                      ;line, print "invalid disk".
006C 0E                            push            cs                ;make DS = CS  so error
006D 1F                            pop             ds                ;message is addressable.
006E BA 0076   R                   mov             dx,offset diska
                                                                     ;
0071 B4 09               disk9:    mov             ah,9              ;print message whose address
0073 CD21                          int             21h               ;is in register DX, then
0075 CB                            ret                               ;"Far Return" to PC-DOS
                         ;
0076                               disktype endp                     ;end of procedure DISKTYPE
                         ;
0076 0D 0A               diska     db              cr,lf
0078 49 6E 76 61 6C 69             db              'Invalid disk code.  Use A, B, C or D.'
     64 20 64 69 73 6B
     20 63 6F 64 65 2E
     20 20 55 73 65 20
     41 2C 20 42 2C 20
     43 20 6F 72 20 44
     2E
009D 0D 0A 24                      db              cr,lf,'$'
00A0 0D 0A               diskb     db              cr,lf
00A2 54 68 65 20 64 69             db              'The diskette in drive '
     73 6B 65 74 74 65
     20 69 6E 20 64 72
     69 76 65 20
00B8 78 3A 20 69 73 0D   diskc     db              'x: is',cr,lf,'$'
     0A 24
00C0 32 20 73 69 64 65   diskd     db              '2 sided, 8 sectors per track.$'
     64 2C 20 38 20 73
     65 63 74 6F 72 73
     20 70 65 72 20 74
     72 61 63 6B 2E 24
00DE 31 20 73 69 64 65   diske     db              '1 sided, 8 sectors per track.$'
     64 2C 20 38 20 73
     65 63 74 6F 72 73
     20 70 65 72 20 74
     72 61 63 6B 2E 24
00FC 32 20 73 69 64 65   diskf     db              '2 sided, 9 sectors per track.$'
     64 2C 20 39 20 73
     65 63 74 6F 72 73
     20 70 65 72 20 74
     72 61 63 6B 2E 24
011A 31 20 73 69 64 65   diskg     db              '1 sided, 9 sectors per track.$'
     64 2C 20 39 20 73
     65 63 74 6F 72 73
     20 70 65 72 20 74
     72 61 63 6B 2E 24
0138 66 69 78 65 64 20   diskh     db              'fixed disk.$'
     64 69 73 6B 2E 24
0144 75 6E 6B 6E 6F 77   diski     db              'unknown to this program.$'
     6E 20 74 6F 20 74
     68 69 73 20 70 72
     6F 67 72 61 6D 2E
     24
015D 0D 0A 24            diskj     db              cr,lf,'$'
                         ;
                         ; "diskk" is a table in which the byte
                         ;  signifying  a disk  format  is  followed
                         ; by the address  of  a  descriptive message
                         ;
0160 FF                  diskk     db              0ffh              ;2 sides 8 sectors
0161 00C0   R                      dw              diskd
0163 FE                            db              0feh              ;1 side 8 sectors
0164 00DE   R                      dw              diske
0166 FD                            db              0fdh              ;2 sides 9 sectors
0167 00FC   R                      dw              diskf
0169 FC                            db              0fch              ;1 side 9 sectors
016A 011A   R                      dw              diskg
016C F8                            db              0f8h              ;fixed disk
016D 0138   R                      dw              diskh
016F 00                            db              0                 ;unknown,end of table
0170 0144   R                      dw              diski
                         ;
0172 0200   [            buffer    db              512 dup (?)
               ??
                  ]

                         ;
0372                     cseg      ends
                         ;
0000                     stack     segment         para stack 'STACK'
0000     40 [            db        64 dup (?)
               ??
                  ]

0040                     stack     ends
                         ;
                                   end             disktype
```

Listing 2. ▲

PROTECT & ORGANIZE
your IBM PC with COMPUTER ESCORT™



The **COMPUTER ESCORT** is custom designed with optimum quality and utility offering features such as:

- Secures the IBM PC, via a detachable adapter plate, to the low profile lower shelf unit which is secured to your table top via a separate detachable adapter plate.
- Keyboard storage behind locked front panel with optional sliding keyboard shelf.
- Optional POWER SENTRY provides control of 4 a.c. outlets with a keylock switch. All 4 outlets offer your computer and peripherals protection with a state-of-the-art transient suppressor and fuse.
- Rear cover hides excess cables stored in the rear chamber and restricts access to the a.c. outlets when the POWER SENTRY or other power strip is used.
- Optional top shelf unit secures your monitor directly or via an optional ball bearing swivel adapter plate.
- Precision heavy duty welded steel construction thruout is enhanced with textured enamel finish color matched to the IBM PC.
- Designed for easy end user installation saving you both time and money.

APPLE II OWNERS — SEE THE NEW COOL STACK™ — SENTRY II.

IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Co.
COMPUTER ESCORT and **COOL STACK** are trademarks of FMJ INC. Patents Pending.

For more information on these and other fine FMJ products, see your dealer or:
FMJ, Inc., P.O. Box 5281, Torrance, CA 90510 (213) 325-1900 **DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED**

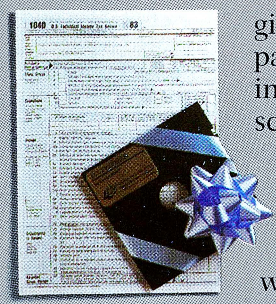
1980
APRIL
IN
OUT
1981
APRIL
IN
OUT
1982
APRIL
IN
OUT
1983
APRIL
IN
OUT
1984
APRIL
IN
OUT
1985
APRIL
IN
OUT

Many happy returns. Seriously.

Preparing your clients' returns is serious business, but it doesn't have to be taxing. Using the HowardSoft Tax Preparer plus your IBM-PC or Apple Computer, more and more returns will add up in less time than you would figure.

With HowardSoft you get calculations quickly and accurately, changes automatically, and error-free print-outs in IRS-accepted formats. When you use HowardSoft, answers to "what if" questions take minutes, not hours.

And, you get a break managing your business with disk client files and automatic billing letters.



As the top-selling tax software on the market, HowardSoft gives you all the features of high-priced packages at a fraction of the cost. Clear instructions, the most-used forms and schedules, and inexpensive annual updates to keep you current year after year.

So, if handling more and more clients and providing faster service would make you happy, go to your nearest computer store and check out the HowardSoft Tax Preparer. Seriously.

Tax Preparer by HowardSoft.™
The #1 selling tax software.

8008 Girard Avenue, Suite 310, La Jolla, CA 92037 • (619) 454-0121

softalk presents the bestsellers

The sun finally set on the British Empire.

Joe Louis finally lost a boxing match.

The Americans lost at basketball and the Russians at hockey in the Olympics.

And now *WordStar* has been dethroned.

This is no David and Goliath tale, however. It more follows the plot line of the decline and fall of the Roman Empire: a little attrition here, another bite there, and suddenly there're barbarians all over the place.

At least, that must be what it seems like to the folks at MicroPro these days.

First there were *EasyWriter 1.0, 1.1,* and *2.0* and *Volkswriter. WordStar* dispatched those aggressors with relative ease. Hovering in the background were such products as *WordPerfect, WordPlus-PC, Palantir,* and *Select*.

Then came the next wave of hostiles, and they finally overran the fort. *MultiMate* took a good chunk of the business market and *PFS:Write* got a fair share of the home market. *VisiWord, Perfect Writer,* and *PeachText* all found adherents.

When the dust settled in September, it was *WordPerfect* that was, by the narrowest of margins, the bestselling word processor for the pc. *WordStar* clung to second place, but *MultiMate* and *PFS:Write* were close behind. And coming on strong were *EasyWriter 2.0, Volkswriter,* and *PeachText*.

As if all that weren't enough to make MicroPro feel like a fox pursued by hounds, Microsoft was finally primed to make its move with its mouse-driven *Word*. Where will it all end? The seven wonders of the world disintegrated. Henry Ford finally painted a car a color other than black. IBM made a computer smaller than a breadbox (almost). *VisiCalc* was dethroned by one of VisiCorp's former employees. Now it's *WordStar*.

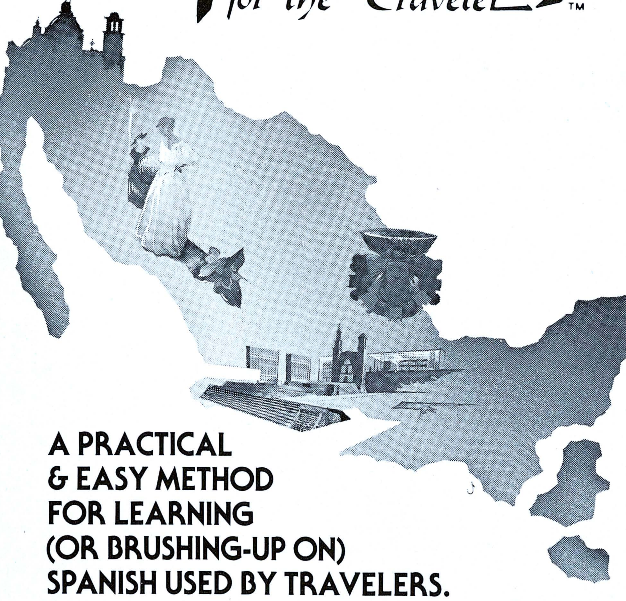
The MicroPro folks must be of a mind to believe that the cynics are right. Maybe there are no eternal verities such as Truth, Beauty, and Justice.

On the other hand, you'd be hard pressed to sell that philosophy to Mitch Kapor's hearty band of integrators at Lotus. Lotus took their stock public in October and the stock jumped six points—that's 1 + 2 + 3—on opening day to close several points higher than Apple Computer. That made instant millionaires out of several people and pumped a ton of filthy lucre into Lotus's coffers. Considering what Kapor did with his first million from VisiCorp, it's probable that pc owners will soon be sampling new delights.

There are other members of the software community who would adopt a more positive attitude about the marketplace—foremost among them being the group at Software Publishing Corporation. They continued to have three programs in the Top Thirty, and *PFS:File* made it into the number 2 slot behind *1-2-3*. *PFS:Write* closed more ground on the leaders, and *PFS:Report* held its ground as the thirteenth most popular program for the pc. *PFS:Graph* was sitting just outside the Top Thirty, giving Software Publishing arguably the strongest family of products extant.

Also unable to commiserate with MicroPro would be the folks at Satellite Software International and Softword Systems.

Satellite Systems publishes *WordPerfect*, the new champion word processor. For them, it's been a slow, gradual climb up the ladder of acceptability to this point. Their distribution is not as widespread as



SOUTHWESTERN DATA SYSTEMS
PRESENTS

Spanish for the Traveler™

A PRACTICAL & EASY METHOD FOR LEARNING (OR BRUSHING-UP ON) SPANISH USED BY TRAVELERS.

ADVENTURE, FUN, EDUCATION, and history are all reasons people travel to other countries. The problem is, when traveling to countries where little or no English is spoken, how to communicate. By spending a few hours with Spanish for the Traveler, you can gain a basic understanding of Spanish and at the same time provide yourself with a **MAGIC KEY** which will open doors to the local culture not normally available to the average traveler. In a Latin country, anyone who tries to speak the Language is almost always treated with a smile and warmth by the people of that country. The way to gain this edge is to practice Spanish with Spanish for the Traveler before your trip . . .

Because:

- It's a quick and easy way to learn Spanish useful in traveling.
- It's an opportunity to learn some of the basics of Spanish without the necessity of attending classes, lectures or listening to endless records.
- It's presented in a manner which catches your interest immediately and encourages you to continue building your Spanish vocabulary.
- It provides you with the essentials of Spanish necessary to make your trip as enjoyable as possible. With emphasis on Spanish required for Your Arrival, Shopping for Souvenirs, Seeing the Sights, Touring the Country, Dining Out and Getting Acquainted, almost every situation is covered.

Available for the IBM P.C. and Apple II, II+, IIe.

PACKAGE INCLUDES:
Diskette, 4 Audio Cassettes, and Take-Along Manual.

PRICE: $59.95
(California Residents add 6% Sales Tax)
Plus $3.00 Shipping

southwestern data systems™
P.O. BOX 582-S • SANTEE, CALIFORNIA 92071 • 619/562-3221

that of some of their competitor publishers, but *WordPerfect* is clearly the word processor of choice in those retail outlets where it's carried.

Softword Systems, on the other hand, seemed to appear with the speed of a comet. The difference is that their product, *MultiMate*, shows no signs of burning out. It gained a couple of positions to eighth in September and looks to be around for a long time.

Friday!, a companion product to *dBase II* from Ashton-Tate, was the highest-ranking newcomer to the list in September. *Friday!* hasn't taken off in the manner that many retailers expected, but its link to *dBase II* has been strong enough to guarantee it immediate attention.

The almost total lack of entertainment software reemphasizes the use of the pc as a business computer. Only *Microsoft Flight Simulator* falls into the category of entertainment, and it is clearly not a "game." *Snooper Troops I*, an educational program with a game orientation, is the only other product that could be considered frivolous on the list.

Everyone spoke as much of IBM's rumored next small computer as they did of the current market during October. The strength of IBM's position in the personal computer market is such that much commerce is being held in abeyance pending the introduction or renunciation of the "Peanut." In late October, it appeared to be a contest between IBM's Peanut and Coleco's Adam to see which machine could be last to market. A strange contest to say the least. ▲

IBM-franchised retail stores representing approximately 4.34 percent of all sales of IBM and IBM-related products volunteered to participate in the poll.

Respondents were contacted early in October to ascertain their sales for the month of September.

The only criterion for inclusion on the list was the number of units sold; such other criteria as quality of product, profitability to the computer store, and personal preference of the individual respondents were not considered.

Respondents in October respresented every geographical area of the continental United States.

Results of the responses were tabulated using a formula that resulted in the index number to the left of the program name in the Top Thirty listing. The index number is an arbitrary measure of relative strength of the programs listed. Index numbers are correlative only to the month in which they are printed; readers cannot assume that an index rating of 50 in one month represents equivalent sales to an index number of 50 in another month.

Probability of statistical error is plus or minus 5.01 percent, which translates roughly into the theoretical possibility of a change of 5.33 points, plus or minus, in any index number.

ISAM ROUTINES **$69.95**

GET and PUT records to disk files by "KEY". Under 2 seconds.
Browse forward or backward in key sequence.
Update any part of the record including the key.
Automatic recovery of disk space occupied by deleted records.
Keys do not have to be unique and can be any length.
Routines accessed from any Basic application. 6K overhead.
FAST!! Sorts 5000 records in 12 seconds.
Supports Multiple Keys. Compilable.
"A Top Notch Subroutine Package" - Vol. 2.4 Personal Computer Age.

MULTI-JOB **$159.95**

Concurrent Processing for DOS 1.1

ELECTRONIC DISK & SPOOLER **$49.95**
HP7470 10 Plotter Programs **$24.95**
FUN 10 Games Package **$29.95**
". . . without a doubt, the best game value on the market"
- Vol. 2.1 Personal Computer Age
FUZZY WORM "Like Centipede" **$29.95**
CHOMPS "Pacman Like Game" **$29.95**
CHURCH MEMBERSHIP **$99.95**
BOWLING LEAGUE SECRETARY **$99.95**

WRITE FOR FREE CATALOG DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED

ENSIGN SOFTWARE
7337 NORTHVIEW
BOISE, IDAHO 83704 U.S.A.

Telephone Order Line
For Bank Card Sales
(208) 378-8086

VISA MasterCard

the top thirty

This Month	Last Month	Index	
1.	1.	360.57	**1-2-3**, Mitch Kapor and Jonathan Sachs; Lotus Development
2.	6.	94.83	**PFS:File**, John Page and D.D. Roberts; Software Publishing Corporation
3.	12.	87.11	**Microsoft Flight Simulator**, Bruce Artwick; Microsoft
4.	4.	69.46	**dBase II**,Wayne Ratliff; Ashton-Tate
5.	30.	63.95	**WordPerfect**, Alan Ashton and Bruce Bastian; Satellite Software International
6.	2.	60.64	**Wordstar**; MicroPro
	3.	60.64	**Multiplan**, Microsoft; IBM
8.	10.	54.03	**MultiMate**; Softword Systems
	9.	54.03	**PFS:Write**, Sam Edwards, Brad Crain, and Ed Mitchell; Software Publishing Corporation
10.	27.	49.62	**Crosstalk**; Microstuf
11.	18.	45.20	**Basic Compiler**, Microsoft; IBM
12.	5.	44.10	**VisiCalc**, Software Arts/Dan Bricklin and Robert Frankston; VisiCorp, IBM
13.	13.	43.00	**PFS:Report**, John Page; Software Publishing Corporation
	17.	43.00	**Norton Utilities**, Peter Norton; Peter Norton Inc.
15.	8.	41.90	**Asynchronous Communications Support 2.0**; IBM
16.	22.	38.59	**Macro Assembler**, Microsoft; IBM
	23.	38.95	**EasyWriter II**, Basic Software Group; Information Unlimited Software
18.	23.	34.18	**Smartcom II**; Hayes Microcomputer Products
19.	11.	31.97	**Typing Tutor**, Michael Sierchio (Dick Ainsworth and Al Baker); IBM (Microsoft)
	25.	31.97	**Volkswriter**, Camilo Wilson; Lifetree
21.	7.	27.56	**Home Accountant Plus**, Mike Farmer, Bob Schoenburg, Larry Grodin, and Steve Pollack; Continental Software
	19.	27.56	**The Instructor**, Jo-L Hendrickson; Individual Software
23.	—	23.15	**Friday!**; Ashton-Tate
24.	—	22.05	**General Ledger**, John Moss and Ken Debower; IBM (BPI)
	30.	22.05	**MasterType**, Bruce Zweig; Lightning Software
26.	—	19.84	**ProKey**, David Rose; RoseSoft
27.	—	17.64	**Peachtext**; Peachtree
28.	14.	15.43	**Cdex Training for the IBM PC**, Rohit Patel; Cdex Corporation
29.	25.	14.33	**PC Tutor**, Lora Meise and Rick Lane; Comprehensive Software Support
30.	—	13.23	**Snooper Troops I**, Tom Snyder; Spinnaker Software
	—	13.23	**SuperCalc**; Sorcim

An IBM-PC Without FAST FACTS™ is Like a Golfer Without His Bag.

Your IBM-PC is only half-ready for work if it doesn't have FAST FACTS, the executive's filing system. FAST FACTS, you see, makes full use of the IBM-PC's capability to handle information quickly and efficiently. No matter if you're a business executive or home executive, FAST FACTS can take care of your filing needs. And with its built-in *Report Writer,* FAST FACTS, makes it a snap to summarize selected portions of your files. What's more, FAST FACTS can share information with VisiCalc®, 1-2-3™ and WordStar®. It's also priced to fit easily in your computer budget.

So don't purchase an IBM-PC that's only half-ready for work. Get FAST FACTS, the latest introduction of Innovative Software, developers of proven executive businessware for the IBM-PC and its compatibles. Also ask your dealer about T.I.M. III, the user friendly data base manager and FAST GRAPHS, the full color business graphics package. Innovative Software's products are available at Computerlands®, Computer Marts, Entre Computer Centers℠ and other quality dealers. For more information call **1-800-255-0470.**

INNOVATIVE Software

developers of practical businessware for the executive.

9300 W. 110th St., Suite 380
Overland Park, KS 66210 USA
913/383-1089 • Telex: 209542
1-800-255-0470

Everything You Ever Wanted From Personal Computing

Faster Easier

SOLVING PROBLEMS vs READING MANUALS

The real benefits of personal computing come from putting the hardware and software to work solving your business problems and not spending hours reading through boring and tedious operating manuals.

PERSONAL COMPUTER BECOMES PERSONAL TUTOR

With Cdex Training programs you simply insert a Cdex diskette in your computer disk drive, turn on your computer, and in an instant your personal computer becomes your personal tutor.

COMPREHENSIVE TRAINING PROGRAMS

Each Cdex program contains at least three disks and many contain four disks. That's because Cdex Training programs are graphical, interactive, and comprehensive. They not only tell you how hardware and software work, but they allow you to operate it through simulations and hands-on exercises with the actual hardware and software.

REFERENCE GUIDE INCLUDED

In addition, each Cdex program comes with a Reference Guide that contains keyboard and/or command references for the pertinent hardware or software so that you can use it later to refresh your memory.

COMPETITIVELY PRICED

Surprisingly, given the above comprehensiveness of design and content, Cdex Training Programs are priced competitively with other computer-based training products that claim to provide training but only provide an introduction to training.

USABLE TODAY AND TOMORROW

With Cdex Training Programs you can use them today to train yourself on those features you need today and use them tomorrow to train yourself on the advanced features you need to implement sophisticated applications.

You get everything you ever wanted from personal computing. Faster and easier.

Cdex Training Programs are available for the IBM® PC or XT and IBM compatible personal computers, and the Apple II® Plus, Apple IIe and Apple III personal computers. See how effective a Cdex Training Program can be. Ask your computer dealer for a demonstration or call

(800) 982-1213

In California call (415) 964-7600.

cdex™

Cdex Corporation
5050 El Camino Real, Los Altos, CA 94022

cdex
Training Program

TRAINING FOR PERSONAL COMPUTERS:

- How to use your IBM® personal computer with PC DOS — PC or XT
- How to use your IBM® personal computer with CPM 86 or Concurrent CPM 86 — PC or XT
- IBM® PC communications using the IBM® PC Asynchronous Communications Program
- IBM® PC DOS 2.0
- How to use your Apple® IIe personal computer

TRAINING FOR PERSONAL COMPUTER SOFTWARE:

- Advanced Training for the Lotus™ 1-2-3 Program
- The Lotus™ 1-2-3 Program
- The MULTIPLAN™ Program
- The VisiWord™ Program
- The VisiTrend™ and VisiPlot™ Program
- The TK ! Solver Program
- The MultiMate™ Program
- The VisiCalc® Program
- The WordStar™ Program
- The SuperCalc™ and SuperCalc^2™ Program
- The EasyWriter™ II Program
- The dBase II® Program
- The DB Master™ Program — Version 4

TRAINING FOR PERSONAL COMPUTER ACCOUNTING SOFTWARE:

- The BPI® General Accounting Program
- The State of the Art® General Ledger System
- The Peachtree General Ledger System

TRAINING FOR BUSINESS PRODUCTIVITY USING PERSONAL COMPUTER SOFTWARE:

- "Managing Your Business Using Electronic Spreadsheets"
- "Making Business Decisions Using Electronic Spreadsheets"

These programs are for users of the Lotus™ 1-2-3 Program, MULTIPLAN™ Program, VisiCalc®, VisiCalc IV® or VisiCalc® Advanced Version Programs, or SuperCalc™ or SuperCalc^2™ Programs.